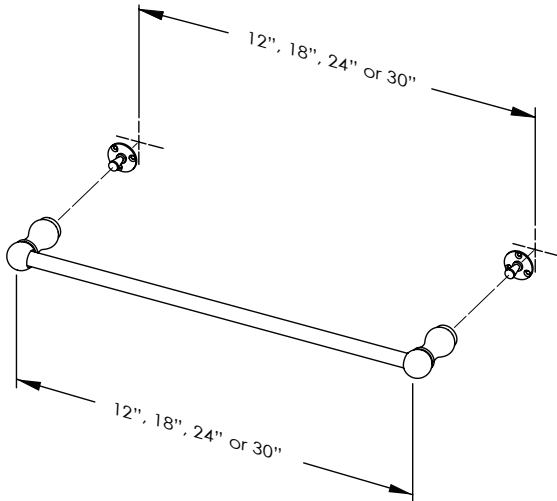


Towel Bar Installation Guide

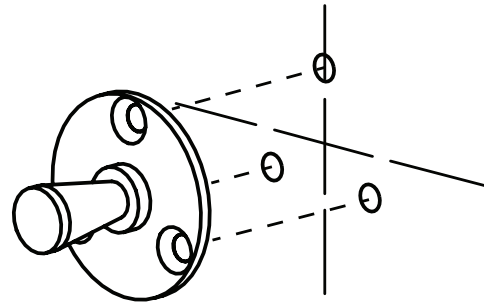
1 Locate Center of Mounting Plates

Make two marks on wall to locate center of mounting plates. Center to center spacing for mounting plates is the same as the length of the towel bar.



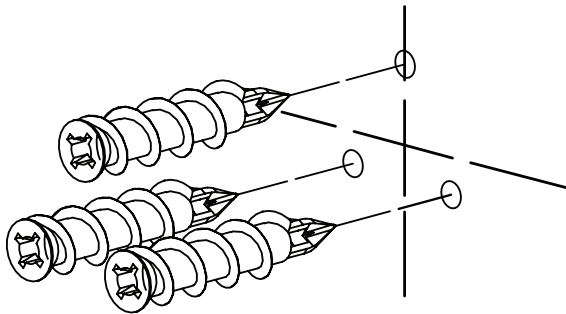
2 Install Mounting Plates

Mark three hole locations for each mounting plate.



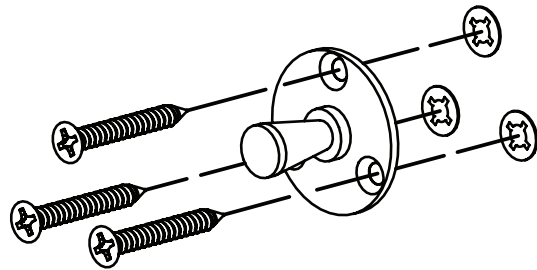
3 Install Screw Anchors

Use a screw driver to install three screw anchors into the wall for each mounting plate.



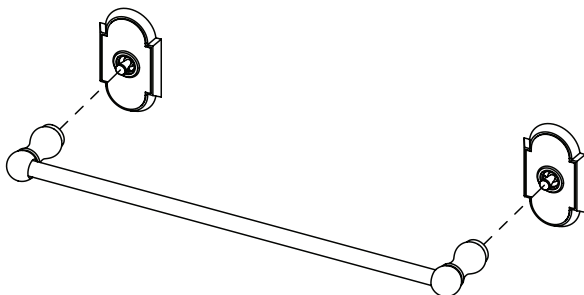
4 Install Mounting Plates

Secure mounting plates using screws provided.



5 Install Trim Plates and Towel Bar

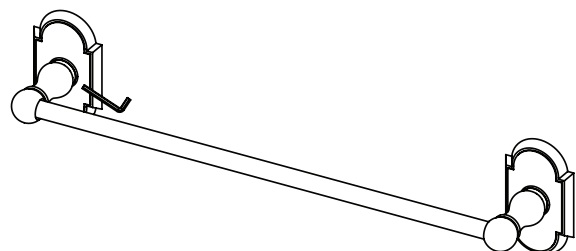
Slip Trim Plates and Towel Bar posts over the mounting plate studs.



Trim Plates vary depending on style

6 Tighten Set Screw

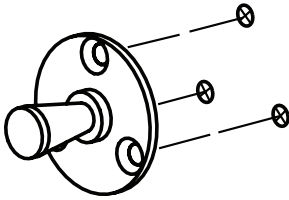
Tighten set screw at base of post with Allen Wrench Provided.



Towel Ring Installation Guide

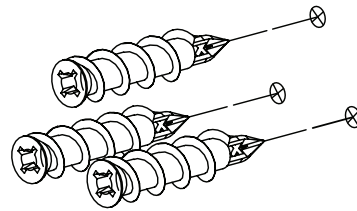
1 Mark Hole Locations

Using the mounting plate, mark the hole locations.



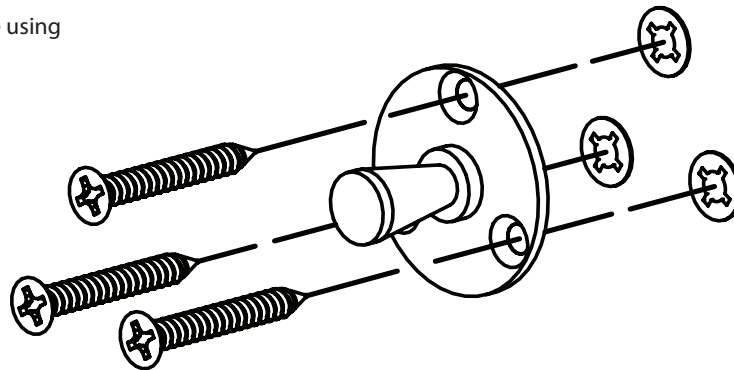
2 Install Screw Anchors

Use a screw driver to install three screw anchors into the wall

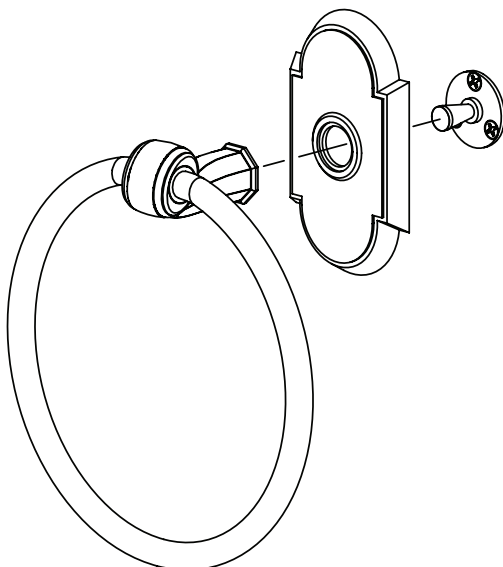


3 Install Mounting Plate

Secure mounting plate using screws provided

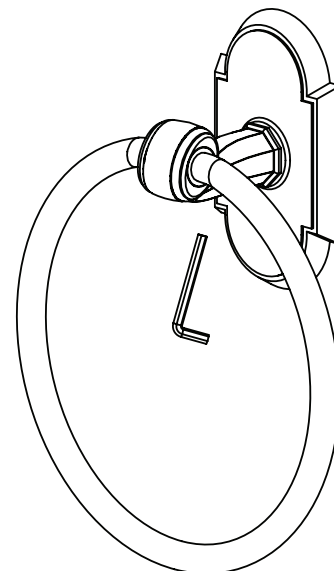


4 Install Trim Plate and Ring Post



Trim Plates vary depending on style

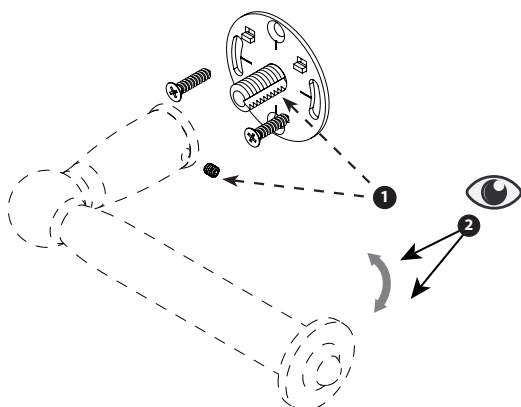
5 Tighten Set Screw



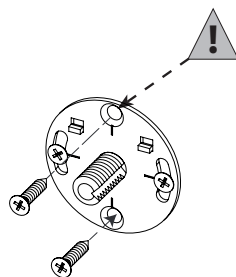
Tighten set screw at base of post with Allen Wrench provided.

Installation Guide for Paper Holder - Bar Style

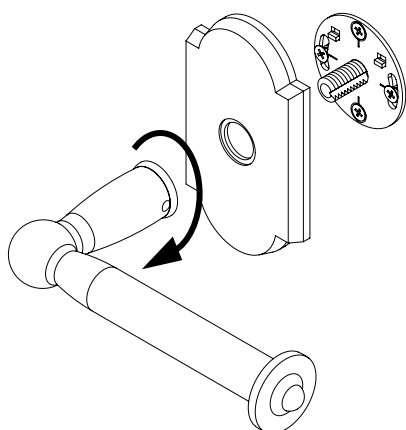
1 Install mounting plate & adjust for level



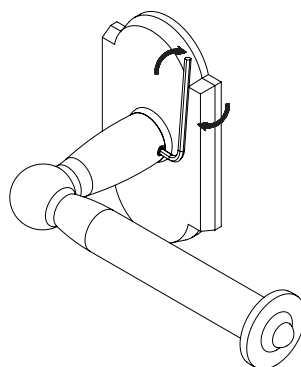
2 Rotate as needed before installing the second set of screws



3 Install trim plate



4 Tighten set screw

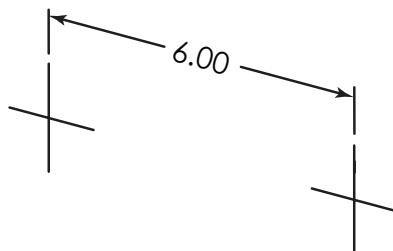


WARNING: This product can expose you to chemicals including lead, which is known to the state of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov.

Toilet Paper Holder with Spring Rod Installation Guide

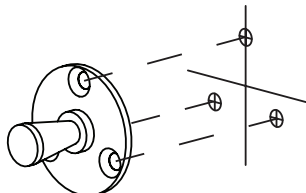
1 Mark center of mounting plates

Make two marks on wall to locate center of mounting plates. Center to center spacing for mounting plates is 6 inches.



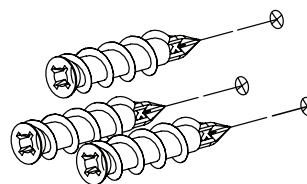
2 Mark hole locations

Using the mounting plate, mark three hole locations per mounting plate.



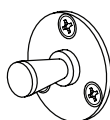
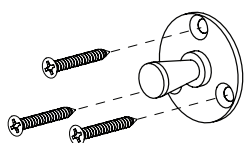
3 Install Screw Anchors

Use a screw driver to install six screw anchors into the wall (3 per plate)



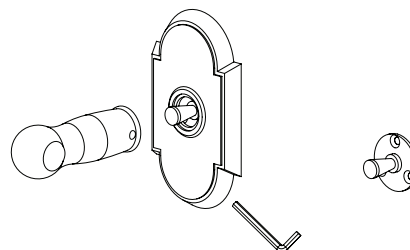
4 Install Mounting Plate

Install mounting plates on top of the Screw Anchors. Secure using screws provided.



5 Install trim plate and post

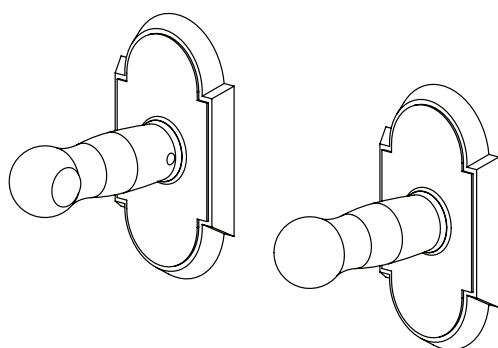
Slip trim plate and post over mounting plate stud. Tighten set screw at the base of post with Allen Wrench provided.



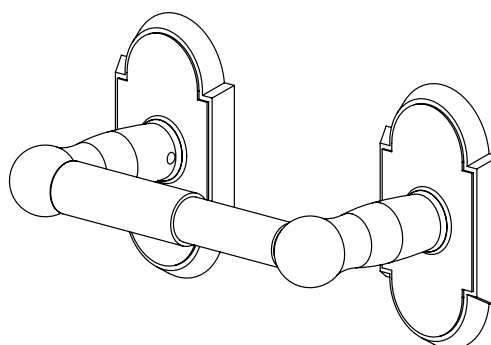
Trim Plates vary depending on style

6 Install trim plate and post cont.

Repeat step 5 for other trim plate and post.



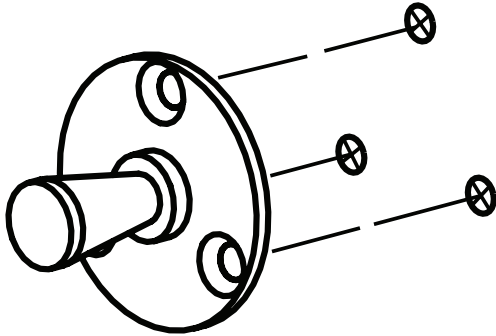
7 Install Paper Holder Spring Rod



Hook Installation Instructions

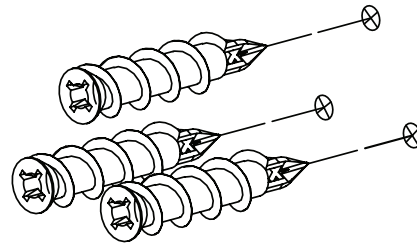
1 Mark hole locations

Use mounting plate as a template to mark location of screw holes.



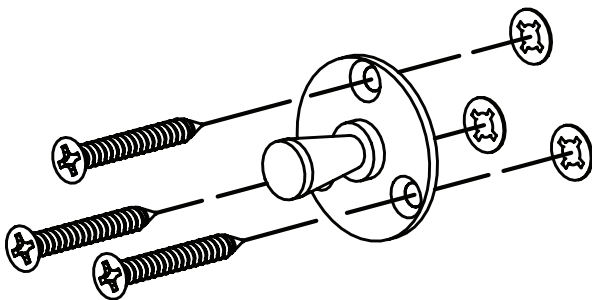
2 Install Screw Anchors

Use the marks as a guide to install three screw anchors (provided) into the wall.



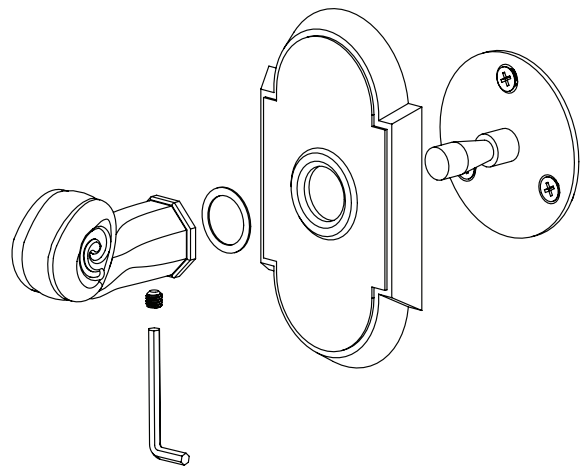
3 Install Mounting Plate

Place mounting plate on top of the Screw Anchors. Secure using screws provided.



4 Install trim plate and hook

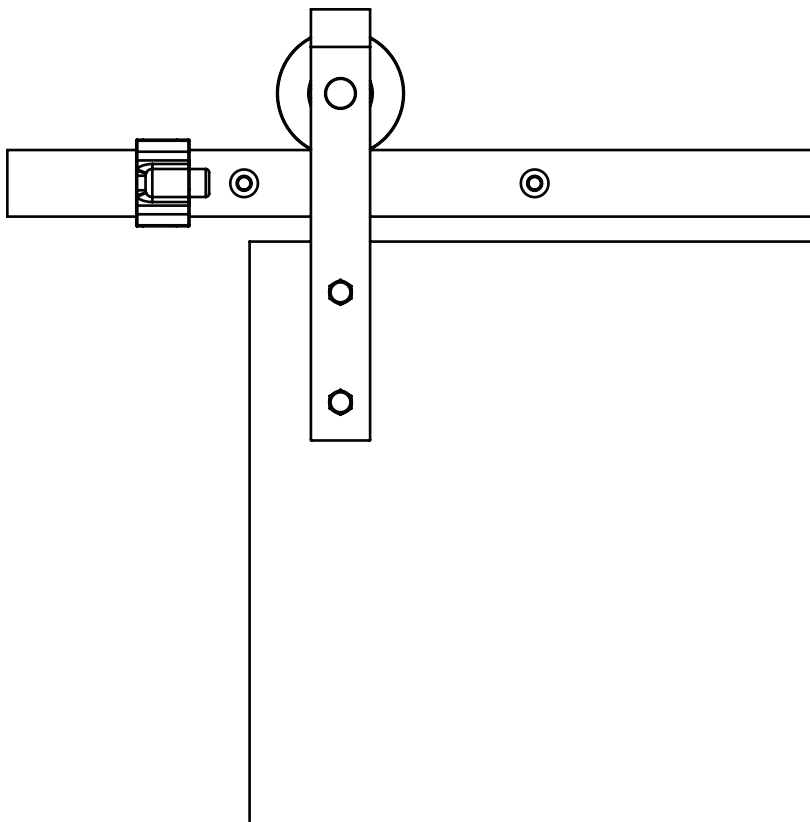
Slip trim plate and hook on the mounting plate stud. Tighten set screw at the base of post with Allen Wrench provided.



Trim Plates vary depending on style

FLAT TRACK SLIDING BARN DOOR HARDWARE

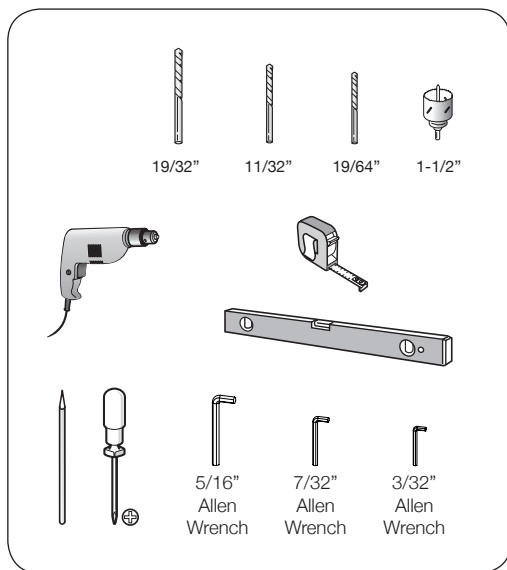
Face Mount Installation Instructions



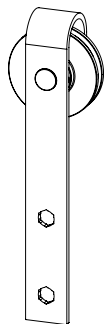
General Info

- The wall or structure that your system will be mounted on must be designed to support a maximum door weight of 400 lbs.
- Ensure that door panels are constructed with solid, structural material.
- Do not install directly into drywall. Must be installed into wall blocking or header board.
- Check with your contractor and/or your city of residence to confirm accordance with local building codes.
- For best results, seek qualified building professionals for installation.

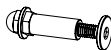
Tools Required



What's in the box



Hangers



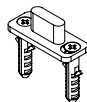
Hanger Bolts



Stops



Anti-jumps



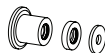
Floor Guide



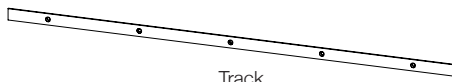
Track Fasteners



Drywall
Anti-crushes



Post & Spacers



Track

Splice Kit (Required for 10', 13' or 16' Lengths)

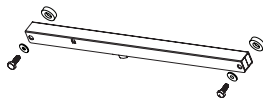


Bracket



Splice kit
screws

Optional Soft Open/Close



Soft Open/Close

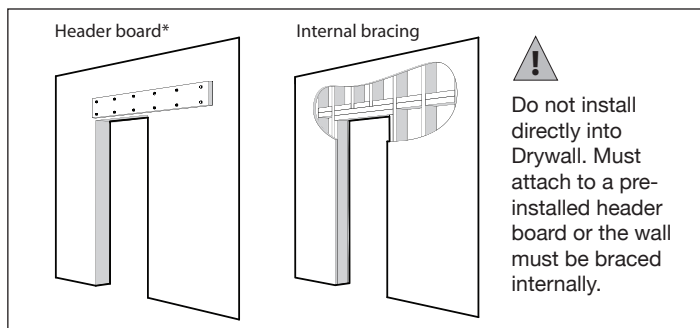


Catch

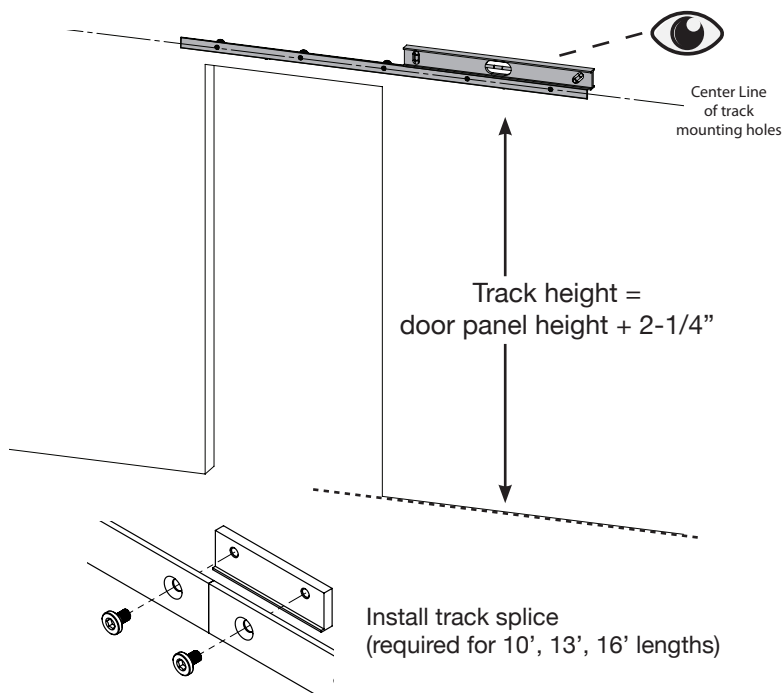
1

Mark for Track

Use the track as a template to mark the center of the holes. Tracks with splice kits have a unique hole spacing between splice.



*Header board and anchor screws not included.

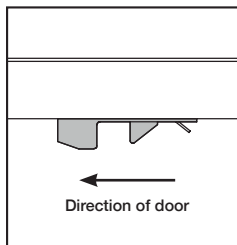
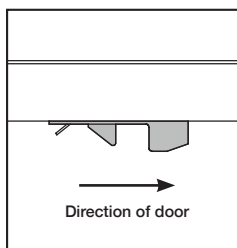
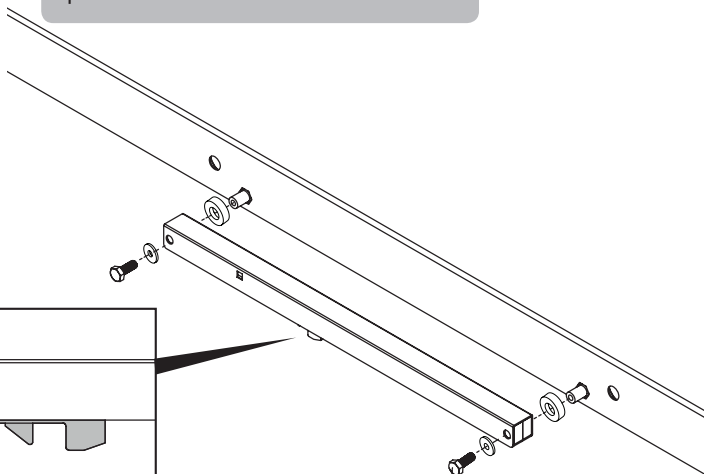


2

Install Optional Soft Open/Close - Part 1



Mount the soft open/close on the bottom of the track and ensure that it is oriented in the correct direction for operation.



3

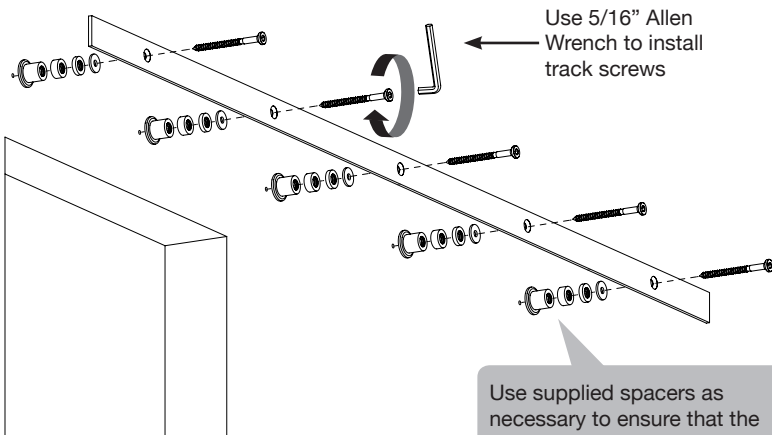
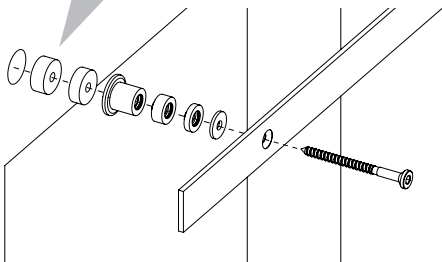
Secure Track

Drill 19/64" [7.54mm] pilot holes in marked locations for track fasteners.

Attach track to wall using track brackets and fasteners as shown.



Use supplied anti-crush discs if installing to an internally braced wall. NEVER attach directly to drywall.



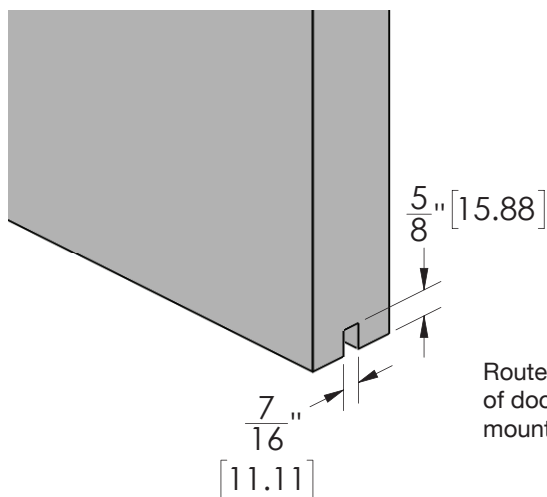
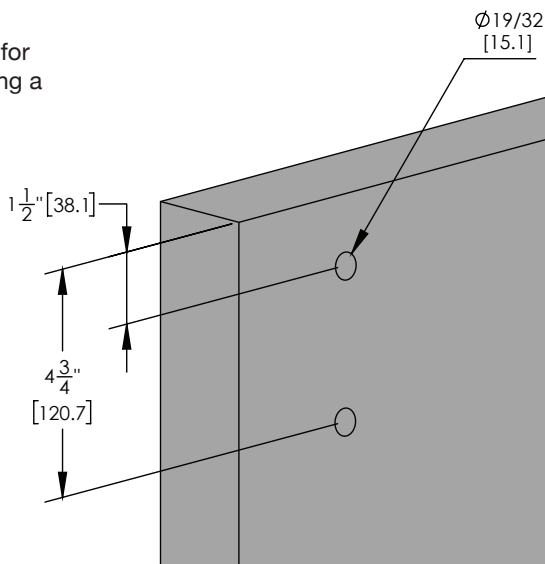
Use 5/16" Allen Wrench to install track screws

Use supplied spacers as necessary to ensure that the door has clearance from wall/moldings.

4

Prep Door for Hangers & Floor Guide

Drill Holes in door for hanger bolt by using a $\frac{19}{32}$ " bit.

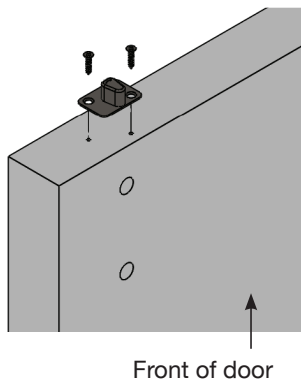


Route bottom, full length of door to receive floor mounted guide.

5

Install Anti-Jump

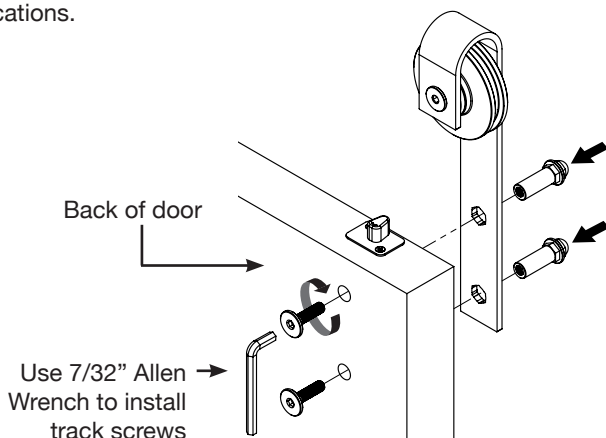
Install anti-jump flush to front of door.



6

Mount Hangers to Door

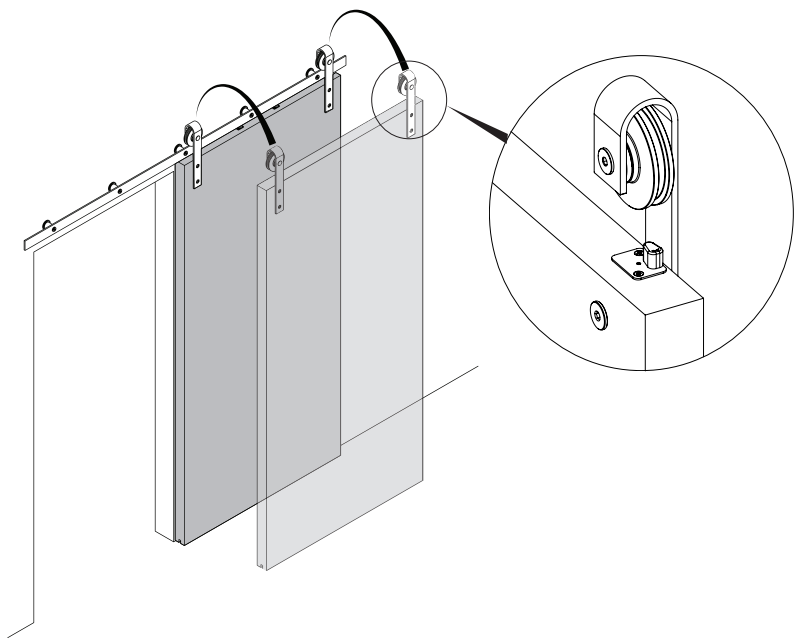
Tip: You may need to counterbore the back of the door for thick door applications.



7

Hang the Door

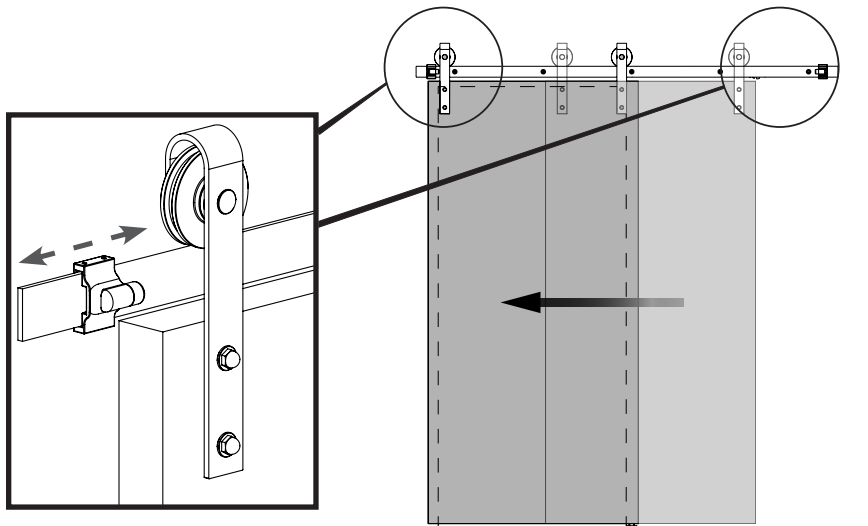
Prior to hanging door on track rotate anti-jump toward front face of door as shown to disengage.



8

Adjust the Stops

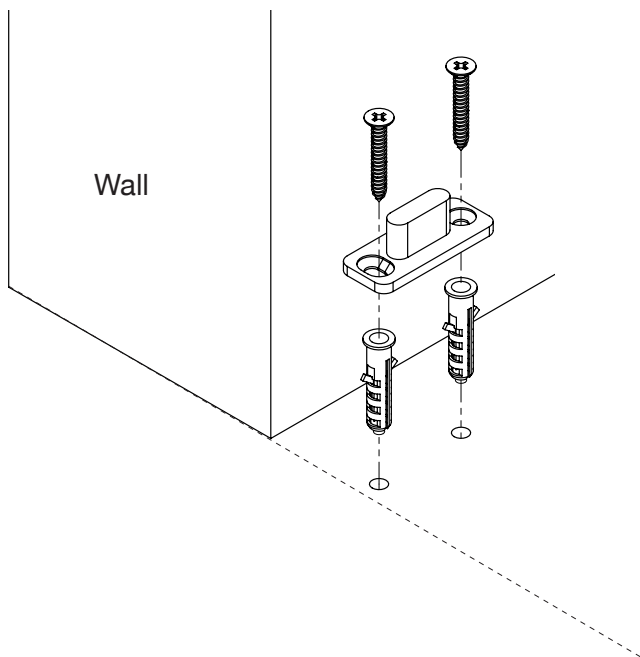
Tighten set screws. Start with bottom set screws then move to top set screws with sufficient force to drive set screws into bar after final adjustment. Ensure the stops allow for the door to extend the desired length over the door opening. Adjust stops accordingly.



9

Install Floor Guide

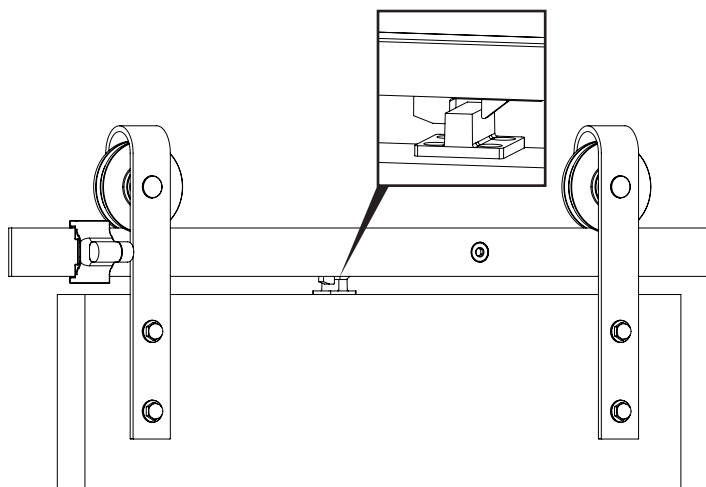
Drill pilot holes for anchors using 11/32" drill bit. Mount floor guide with anchors and screws provided.



Tip: Install floor guide in a position where it won't be exposed with door in the open or closed position.

Install Optional Soft Open/Close - Part 2

1. Move door to desired stop location.
2. Place soft catch under soft open/close as shown.
3. Mark location of soft catch.
4. Remove door from track
5. Install soft catch at marked location
6. Hang door on track



IN4-BARNFACEMNT

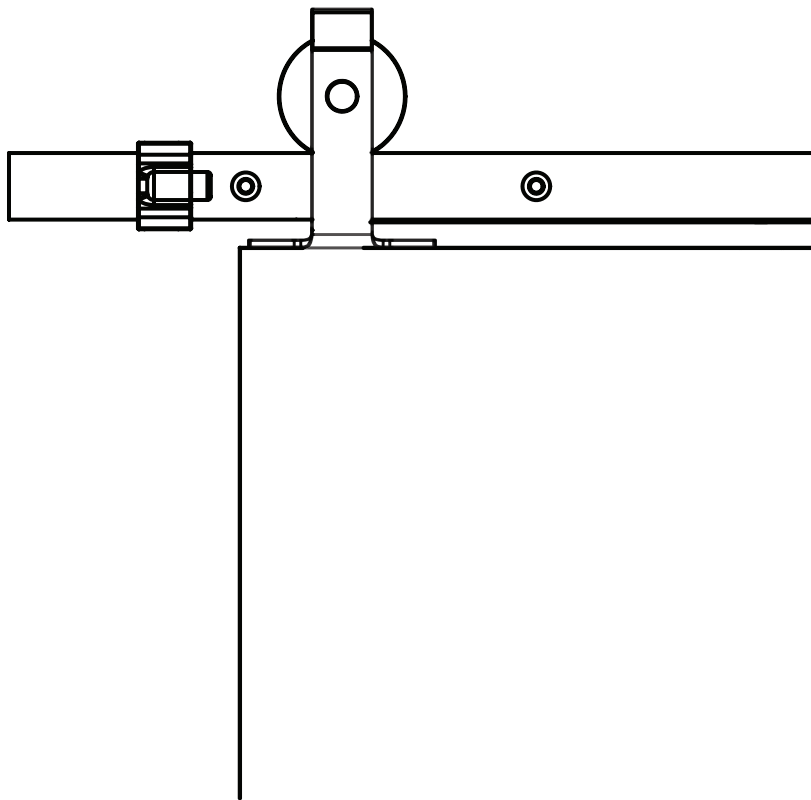
REV 18A 10-04-18

Copyright © 2018, EMTEK Products, Inc. an ASSA ABLOY Group company. All rights reserved. Reproduction in whole or in part without the express written permission of EMTEK Products, Inc. is prohibited.

⚠ WARNING: This product can expose you to chemicals including lead, which is known to the state of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov.

FLAT TRACK SLIDING BARN DOOR HARDWARE

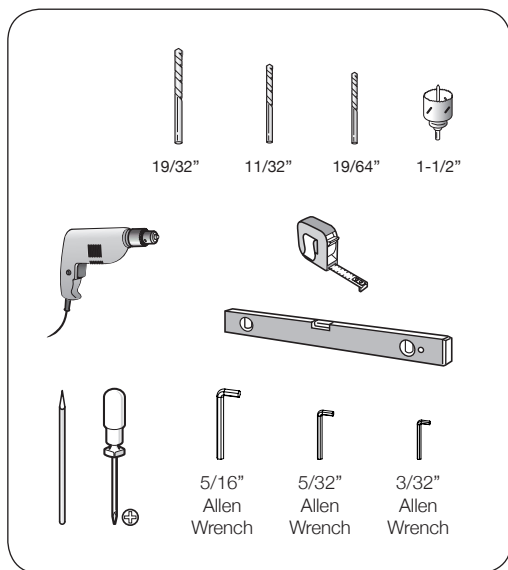
Top Mount Installation Instructions



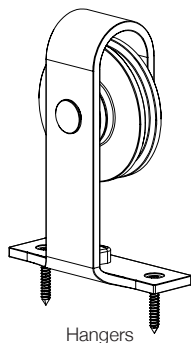
General Info

- The wall or structure that your system will be mounted on must be designed to support a maximum door weight of 400 lbs.
- Ensure that door panels are constructed with solid, structural material.
- Do not install directly into drywall. Must be installed into wall blocking or header board.
- Check with your contractor and/or your city of residence to confirm accordance with local building codes.
- For best results, seek qualified building professionals for installation.

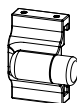
Tools Required



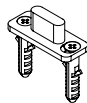
What's in the box



Hangers



Stops



Floor Guide



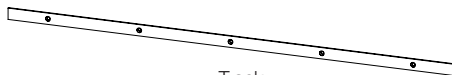
Track Fasteners



Drywall
Anti-crushes



Post & Spacers



Track

Splice Kit (Required for 10', 13' or 16' Lengths)

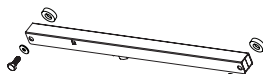


Bracket



Splice kit
screws

Optional Soft Open/Close



Soft Open/Close

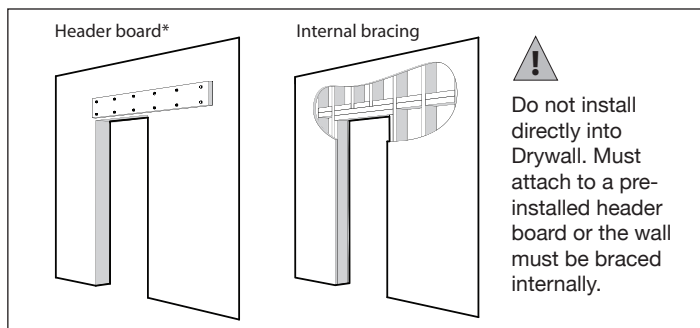


Catch

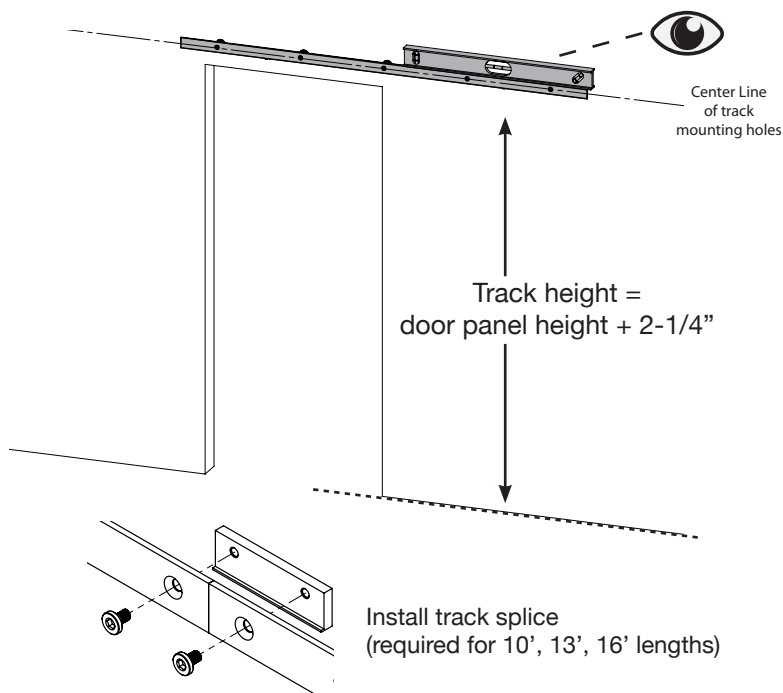
1

Mark for Track

Use the track as a template to mark the center of the holes. Tracks with splice kits have a unique hole spacing between splice.



*Header board and anchor screws not included.

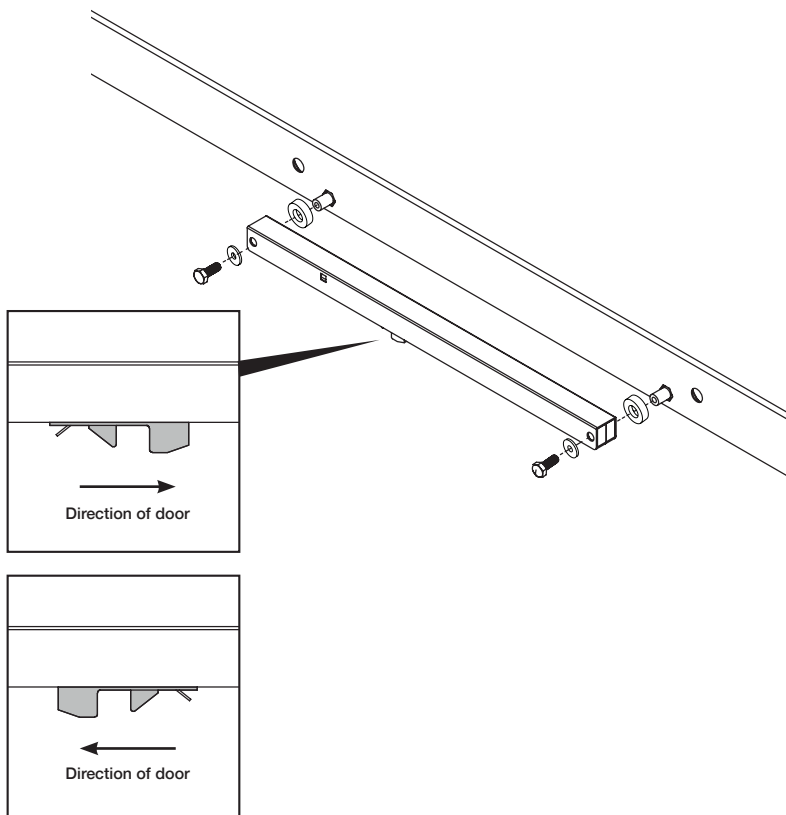


2

Install Optional Soft Open/Close - Part 1



Mount the soft open/close on the bottom of the track and ensure that it is oriented in the correct direction for operation.



3

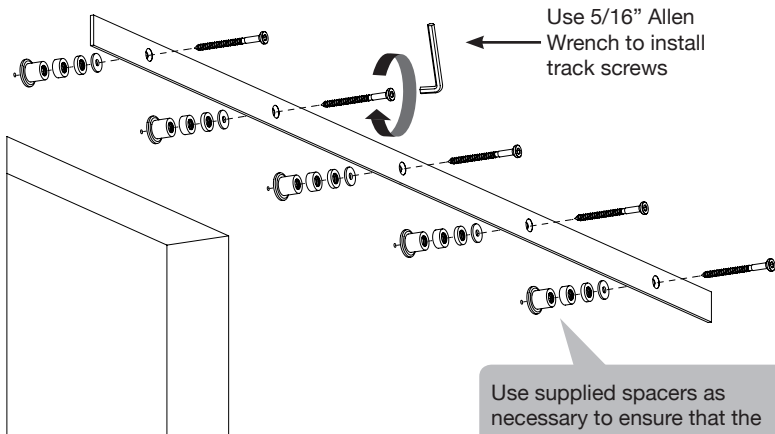
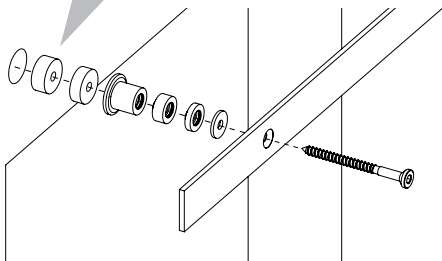
Secure Track

Drill 19/64" [7.54mm] pilot holes in marked locations for track fasteners.

Attach track to wall using track brackets and fasteners as shown.



Use supplied anti-crush discs if installing to an internally braced wall. **NEVER** attach directly to drywall.



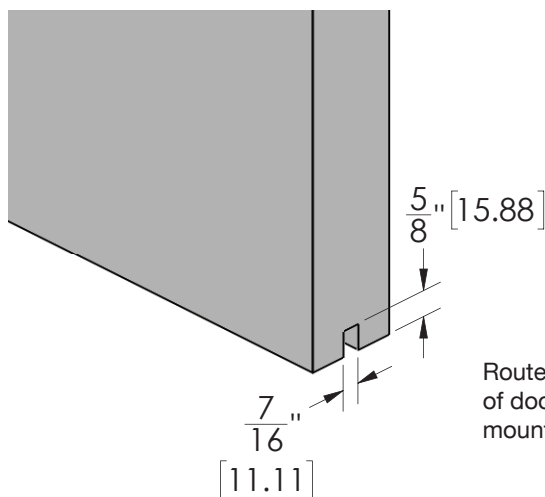
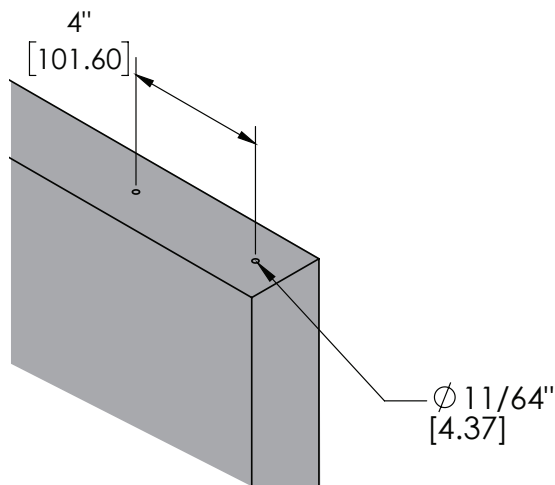
Use 5/16" Allen Wrench to install track screws

Use supplied spacers as necessary to ensure that the door has clearance from wall/moldings.

4

Prep Door for Hangers & Floor Guide

Pre-drill 2-1/2" deep holes using a 11/64" bit as shown.

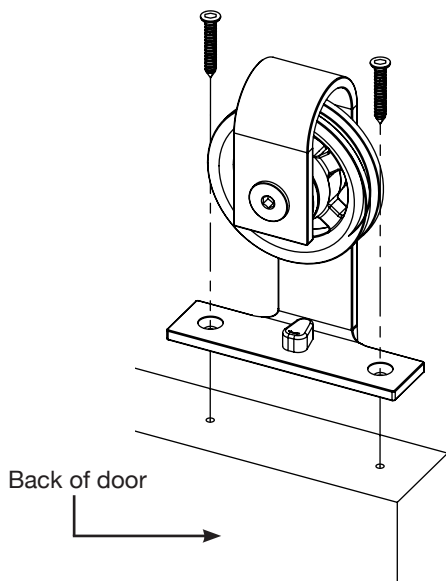


Route bottom, full length of door to receive floor mounted guide.

5

Mount Hangers to Door

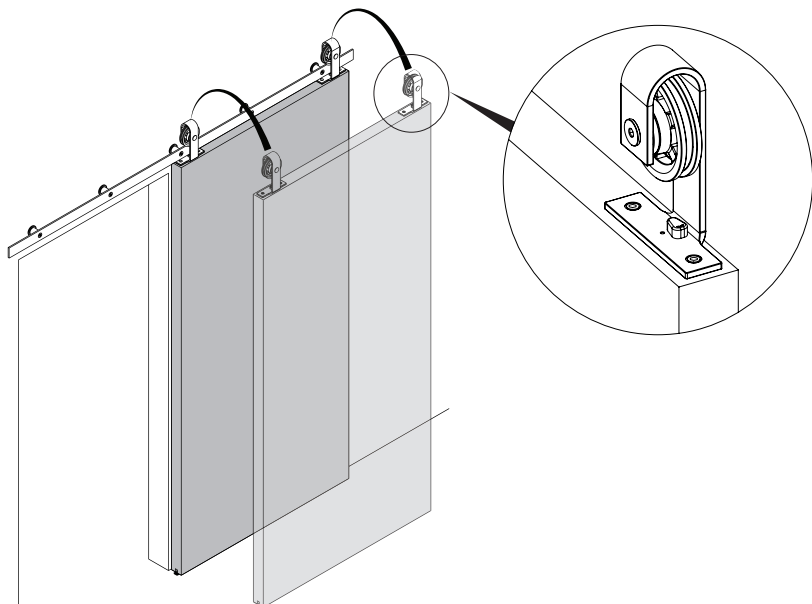
Install screws using an Allen Wrench.



6

Hang the Door

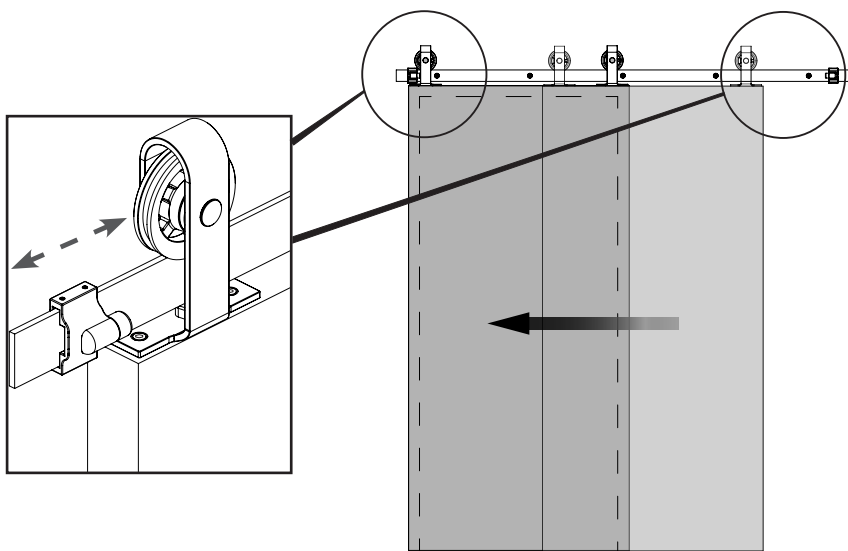
Prior to hanging door on track rotate anti-jump toward front face of door to disengage.



7

Adjust the Stops

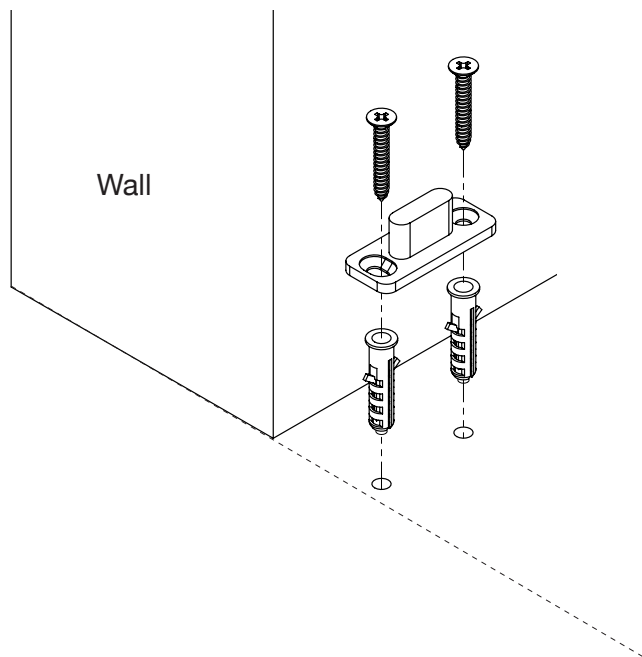
Tighten set screws. Start with bottom set screws then move to top set screws with sufficient force to drive set screws into bar after final adjustment. Ensure the stops allow for the door to extend the desired length over the door opening. Adjust stops accordingly.



8

Install Floor Guide

Drill pilot holes for anchors using 11/32" drill bit. Mount floor guide with anchors and screws provided.

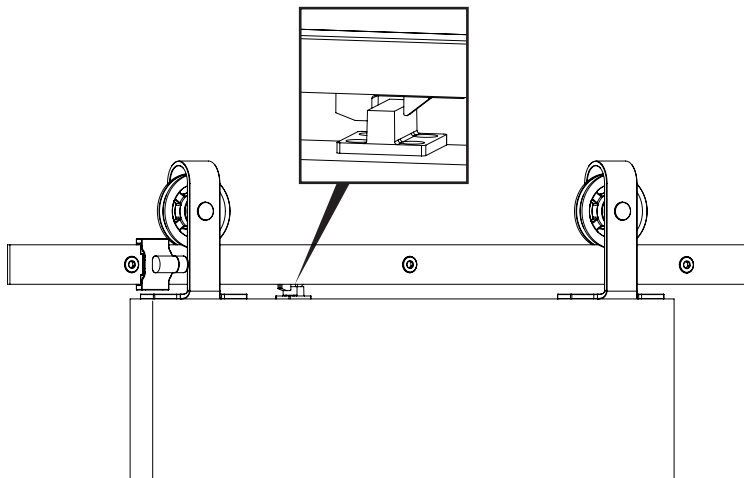


Tip: Install floor guide in a position where it won't be exposed with door in the open or closed position.

9

Install Optional Soft Open/Close - Part 2

1. Move door to desired stop location.
2. Place soft catch under soft open/close as shown.
3. Mark location of soft catch.
4. Remove door from track
5. Install soft catch at marked location
6. Hang door on track



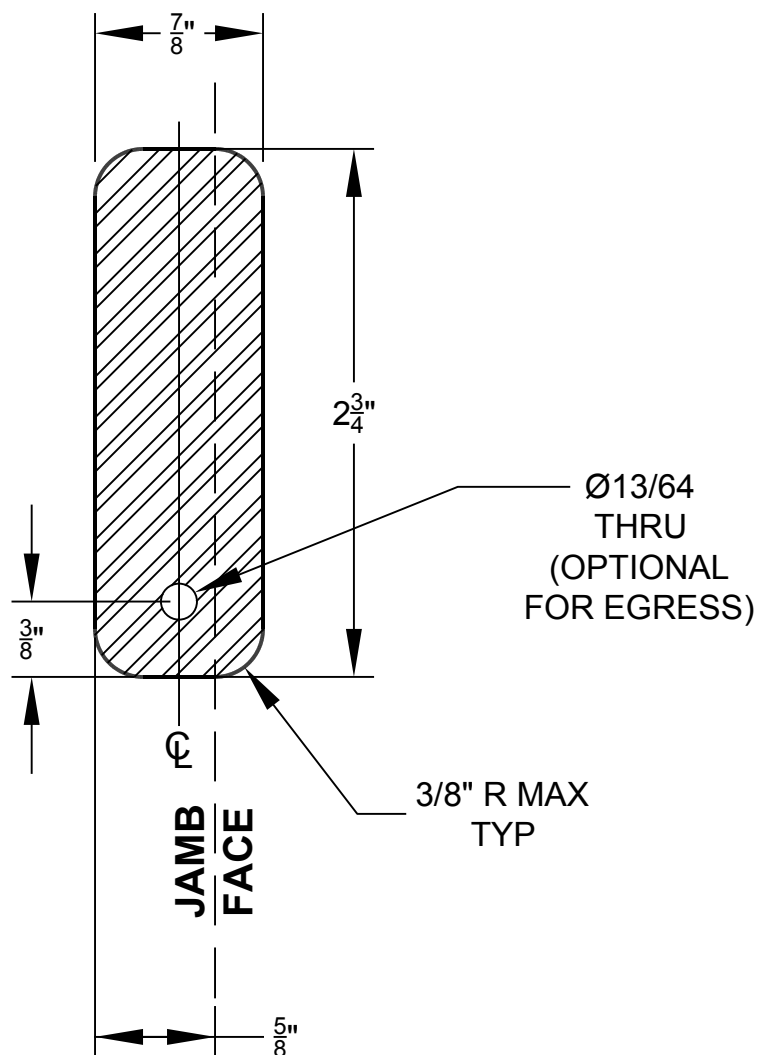
IN4-BARNTOPMNT

REV 18A 10-04-18

Copyright © 2018, EMTEK Products, Inc. an ASSA ABLOY Group company. All rights reserved. Reproduction in whole or in part without the express written permission of EMTEK Products, Inc. is prohibited.

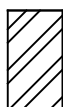
⚠ WARNING: This product can expose you to chemicals including lead, which is known to the state of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov.

MODERN RECTANGULAR BARN DOOR PRIVACY LOCK DOOR PREPARATION

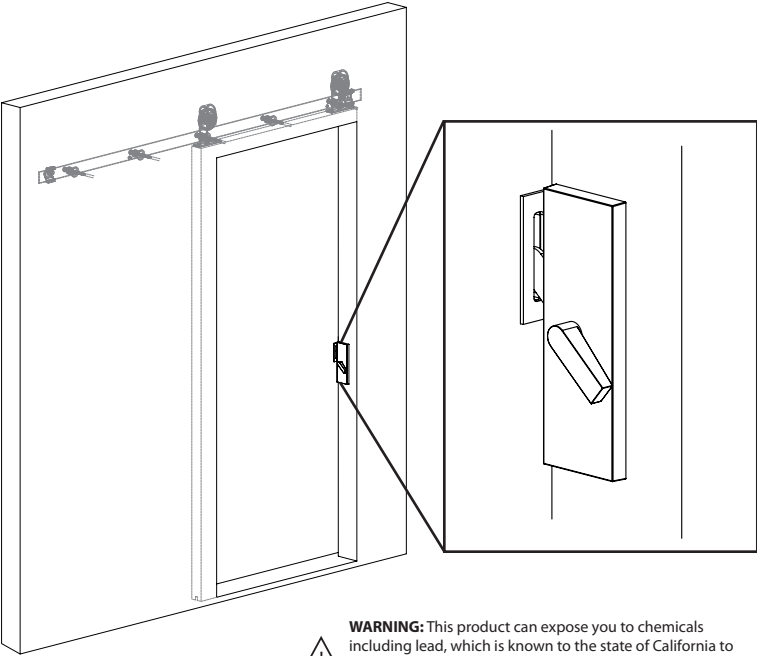


Caution:

If printed from electronic file
set print scale to 1:1. Measure
with ruler to check scale.



HATCHED AREA
1-3/16" DEEP



1. Door Prep

Use door template to prep the door

2. Install Strike

3. Install Mounting Base

Door Jamb

4. Install Lock Body

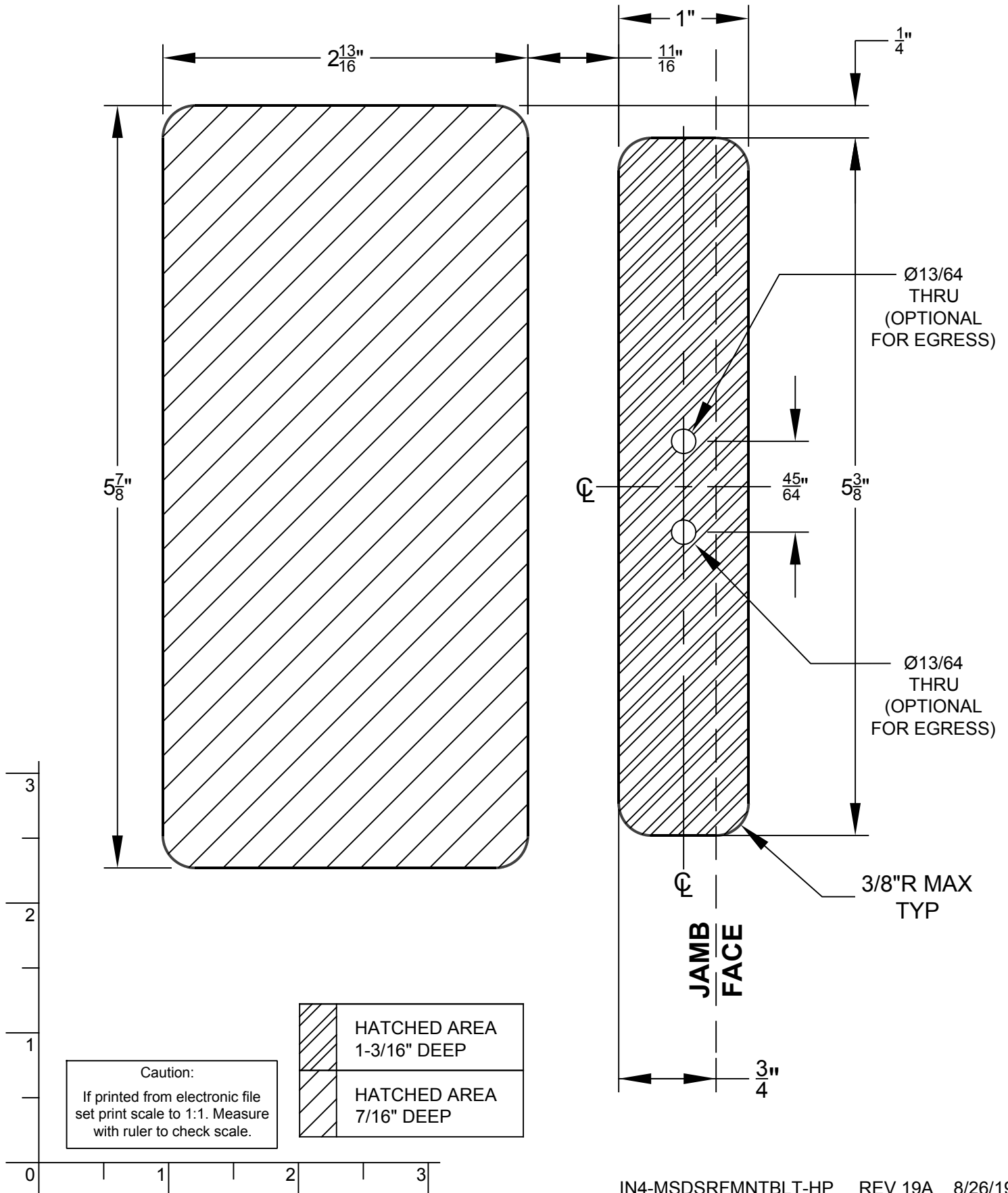
OPTIONAL FOR EGRESS

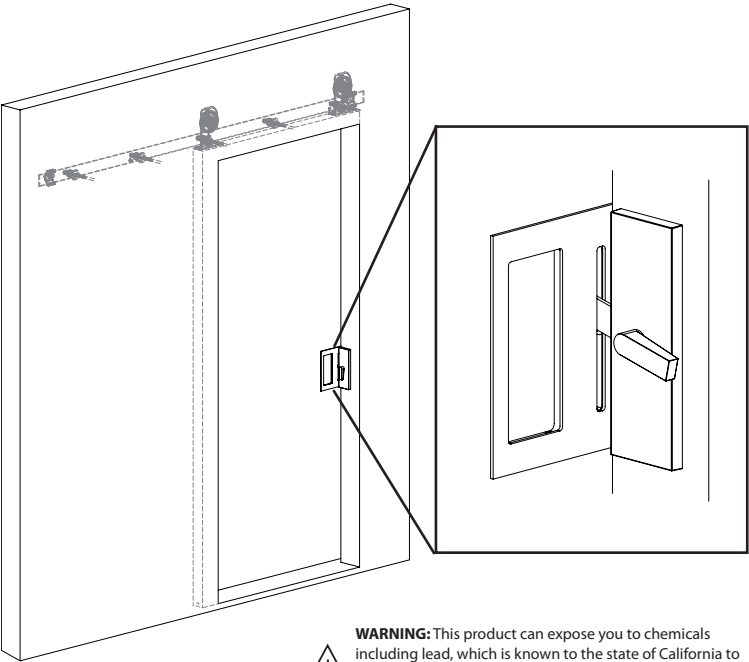
Sliding Door

Insert egress pin to unlatch door

Outside Inside Outside Inside

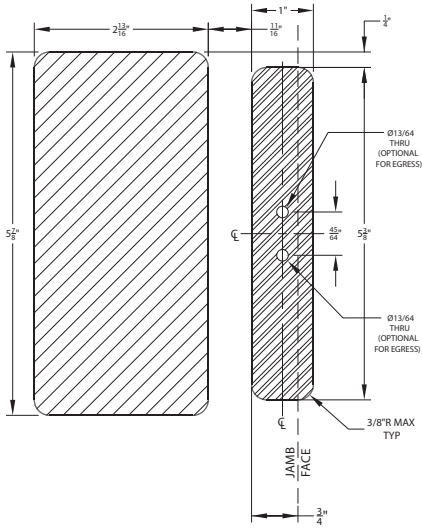
MODERN RECTANGULAR BARN DOOR PRIVACY LOCK AND FLUSH PULL WITH INTEGRATED STRIKE DOOR PREPARATION





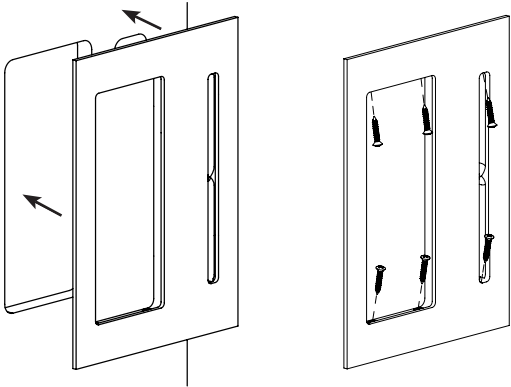
WARNING: This product can expose you to chemicals including lead, which is known to the state of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov.

1. Door Prep

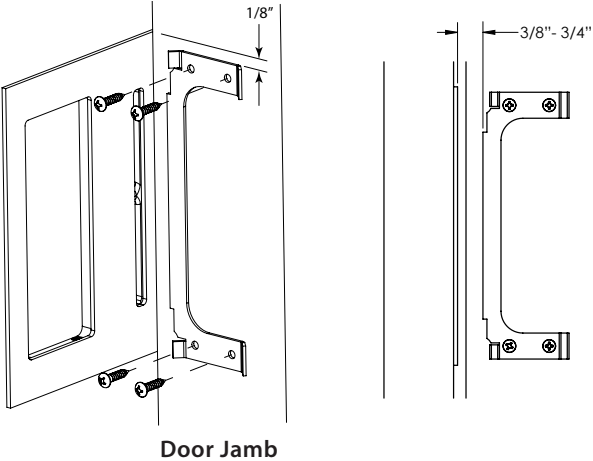


Use door template to prep the door

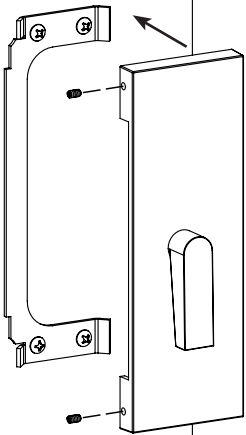
2. Install Flush Pull with Integrated Strike



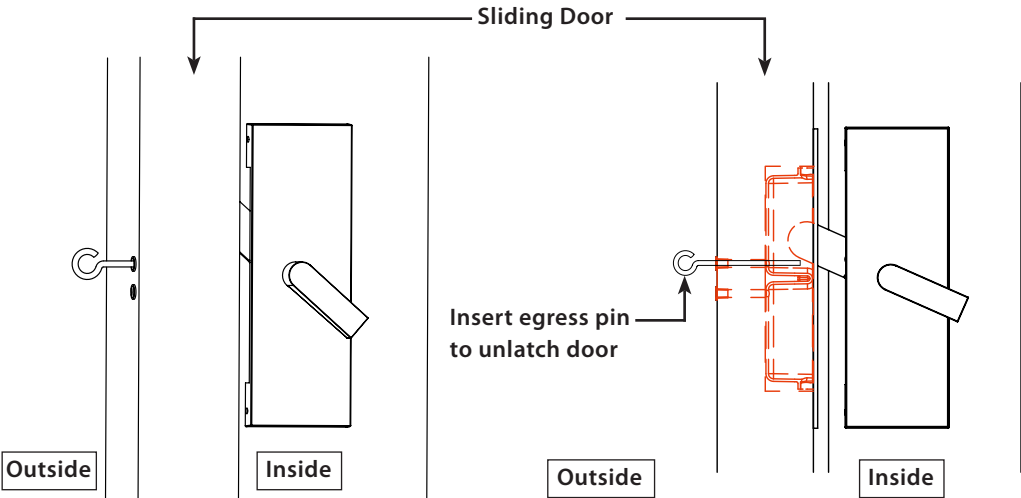
3. Install Mounting Base



4. Install Lock Body



OPTIONAL FOR EGRESS

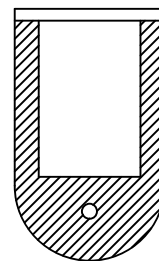
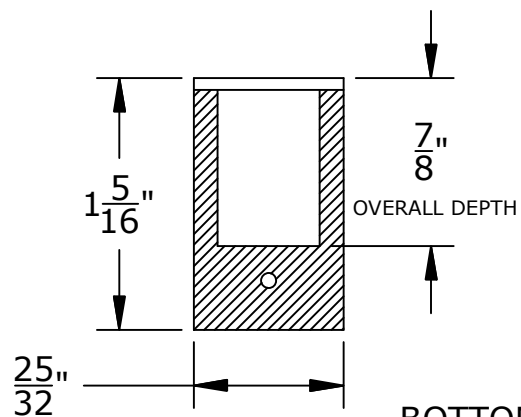
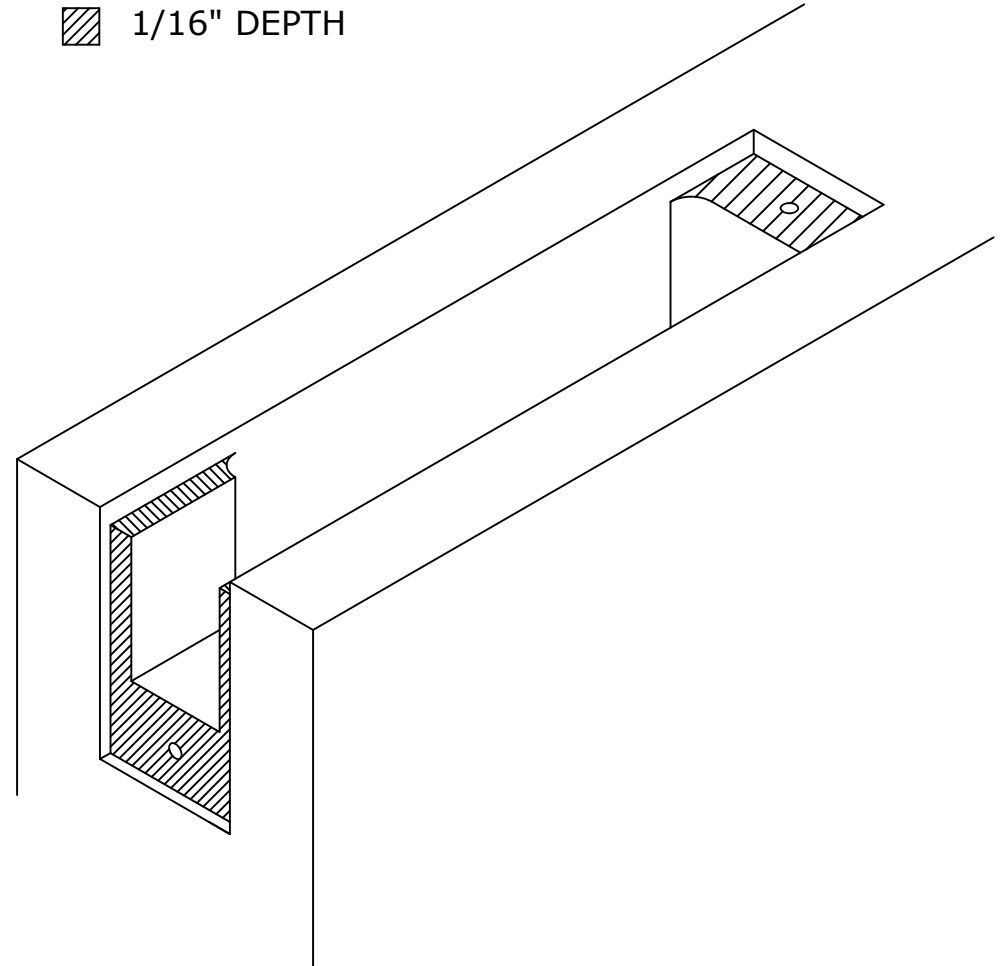
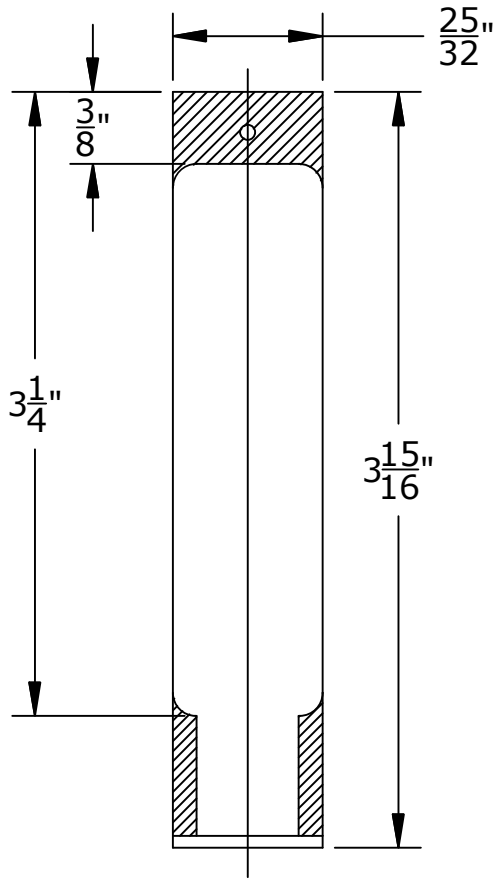


INSTALLATION TEMPLATE: SMALL FLUSH BOLT

SQUARE

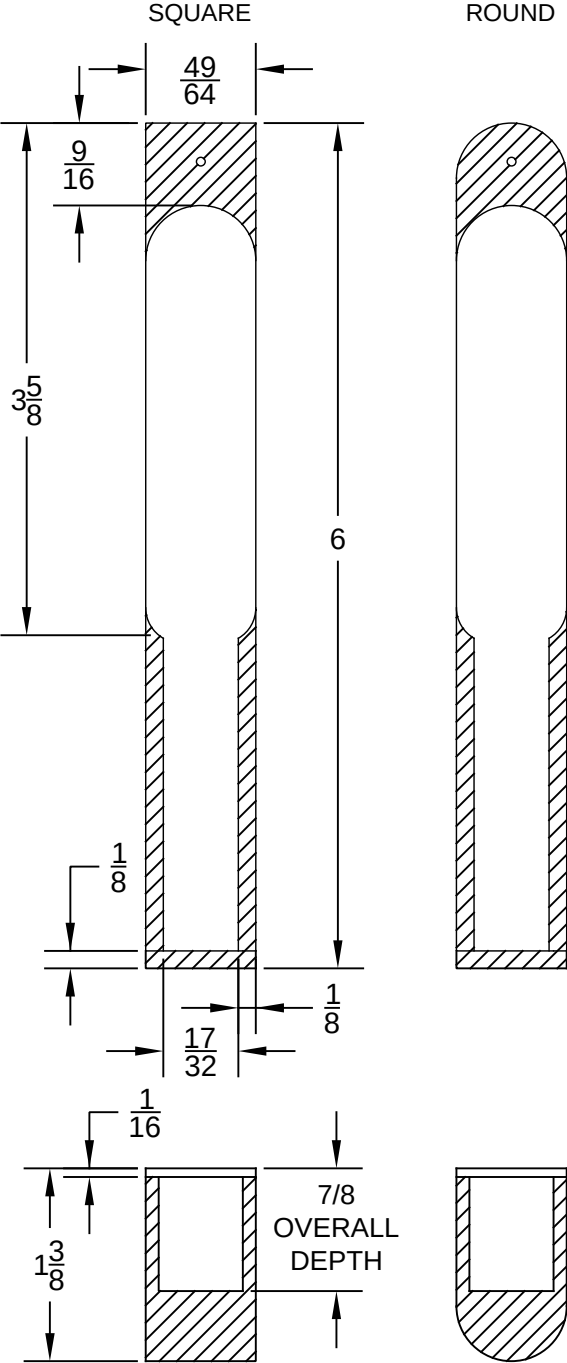
ROUND

 1/16" DEPTH

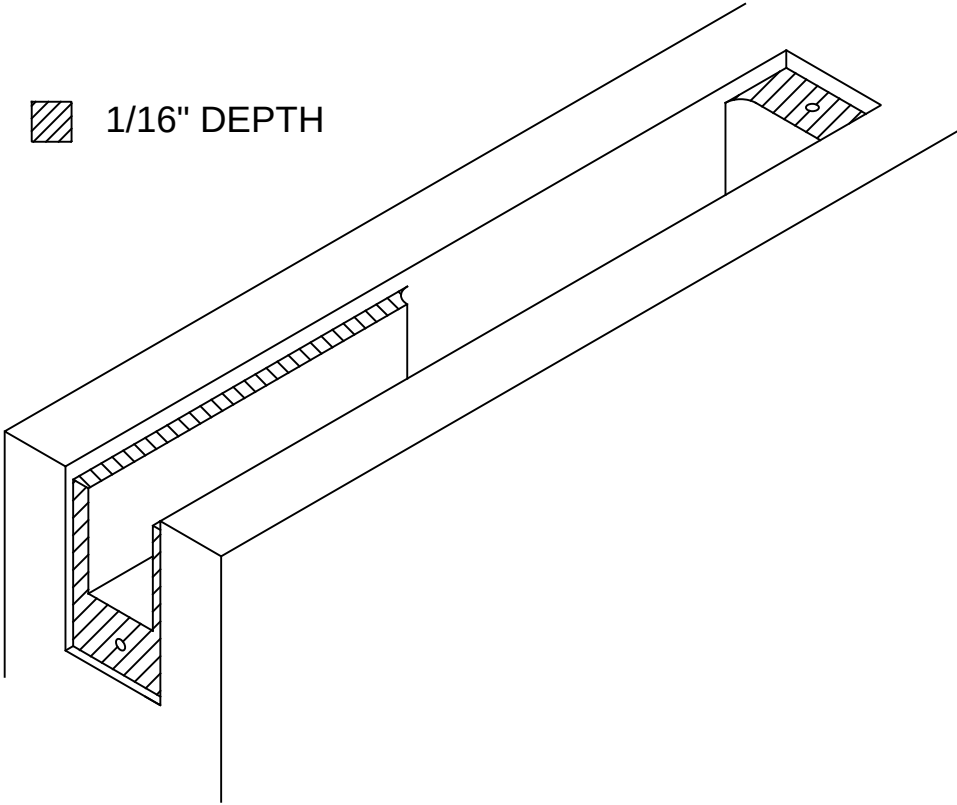


BOTTOM VIEW

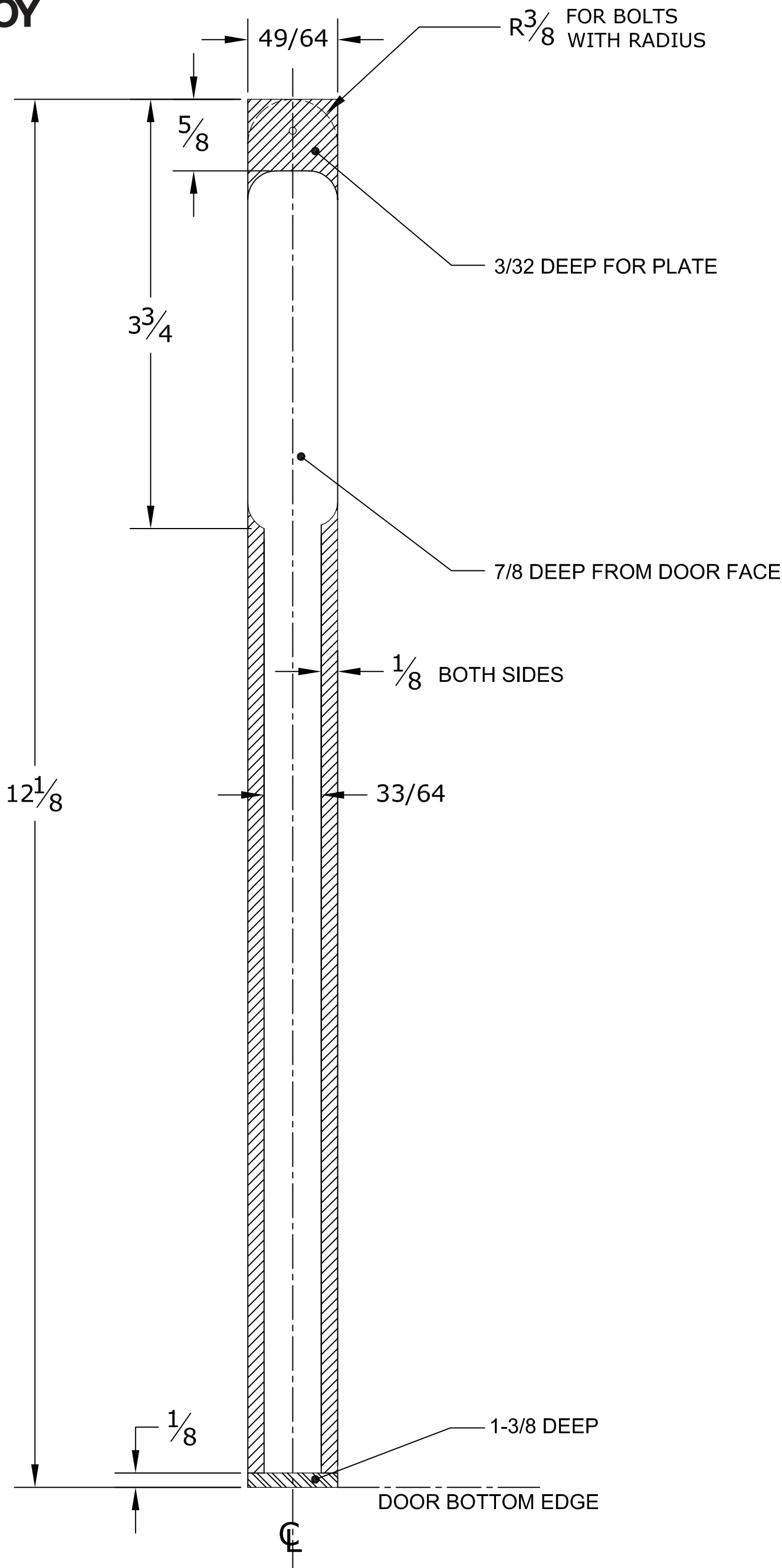
INSTALLATION TEMPLATE: 6" FLUSH BOLT



1/16" DEPTH



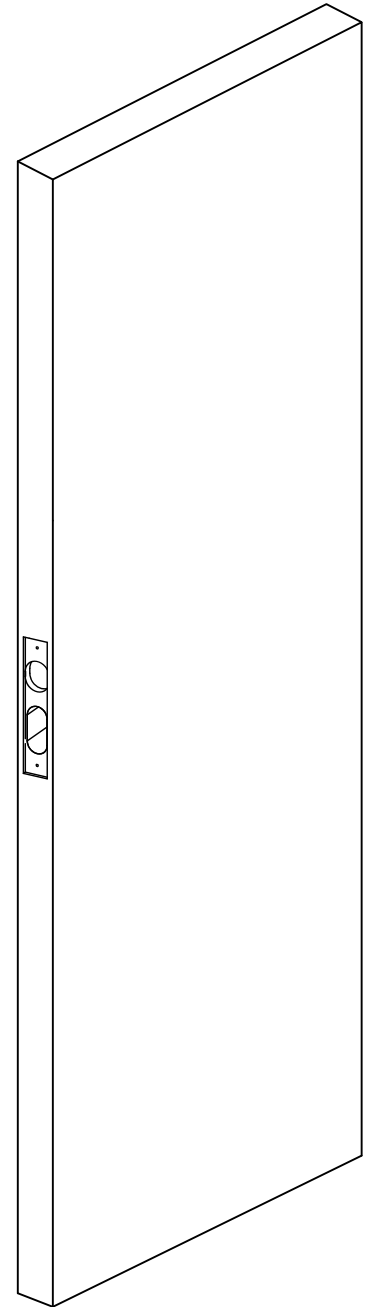
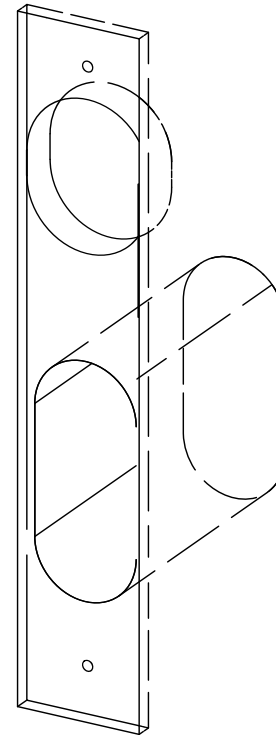
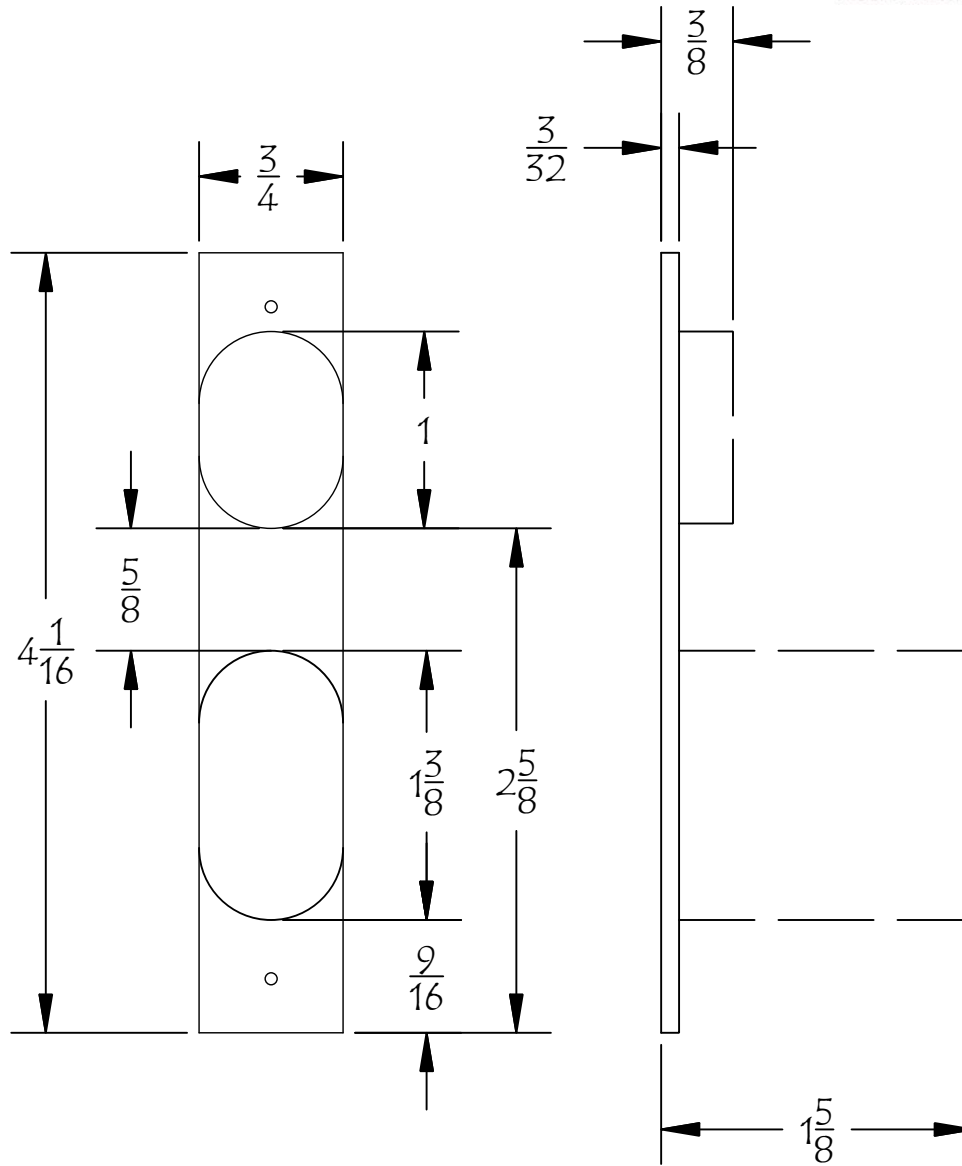
12" FLUSH BOLT INSTALATION TEMPLATE



THIS TEMPLATE IS SCALED
TO FIT A 11X17 SHEET

TEMPLATE - EDGE PULL

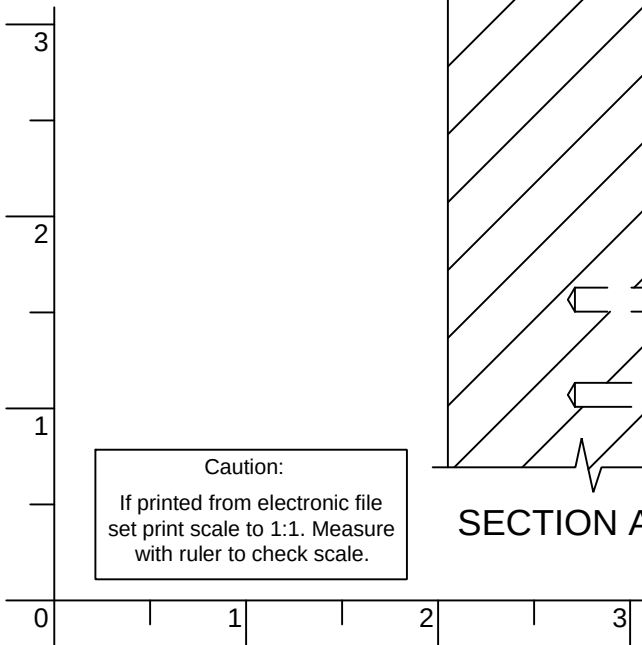
EMTEK
ASSA ABLOY



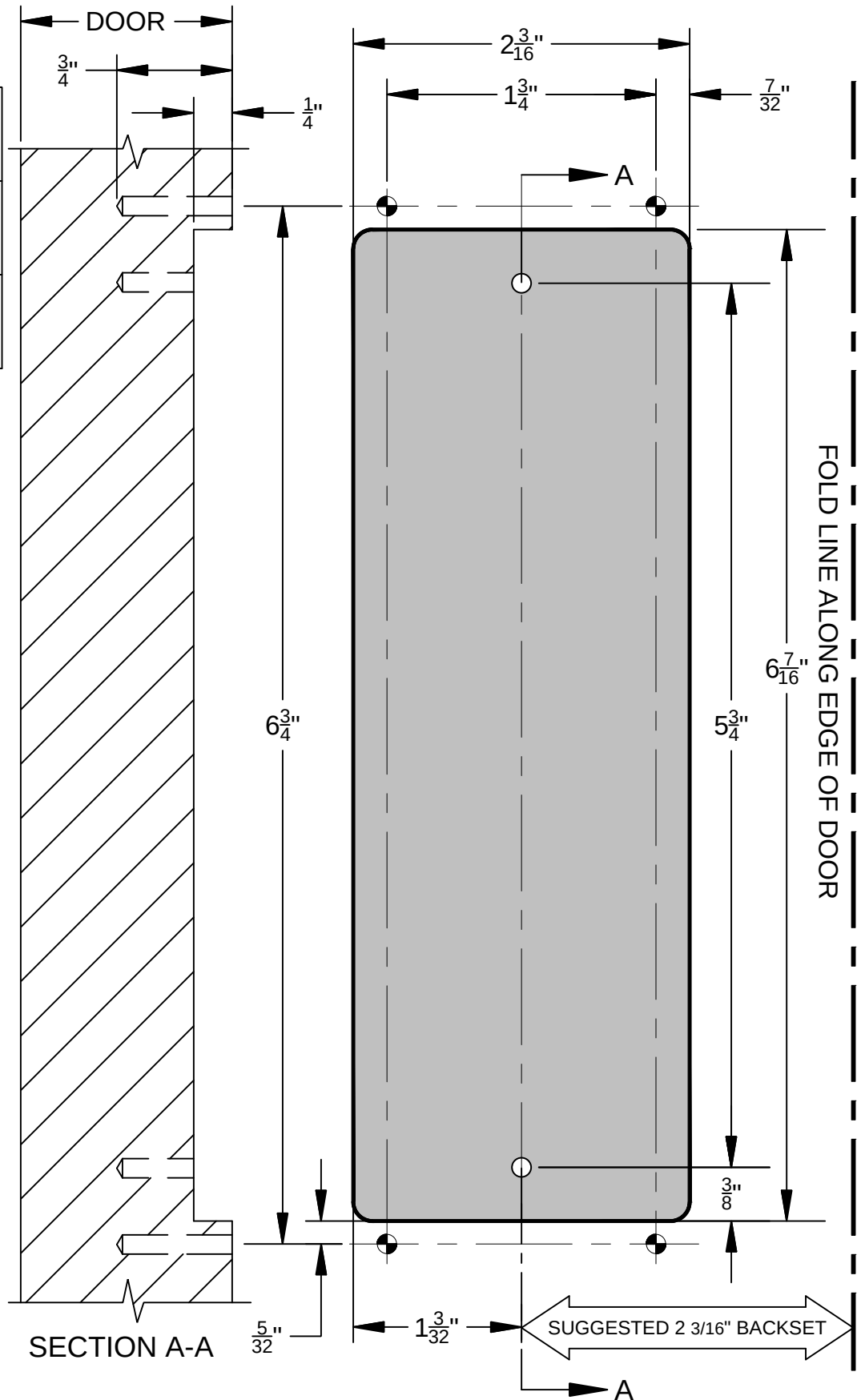
MODERN AND CLASSIC RECTANGULAR FLUSH PULL HOLE PREPARATION

EMTEK®
ASSA ABLOY

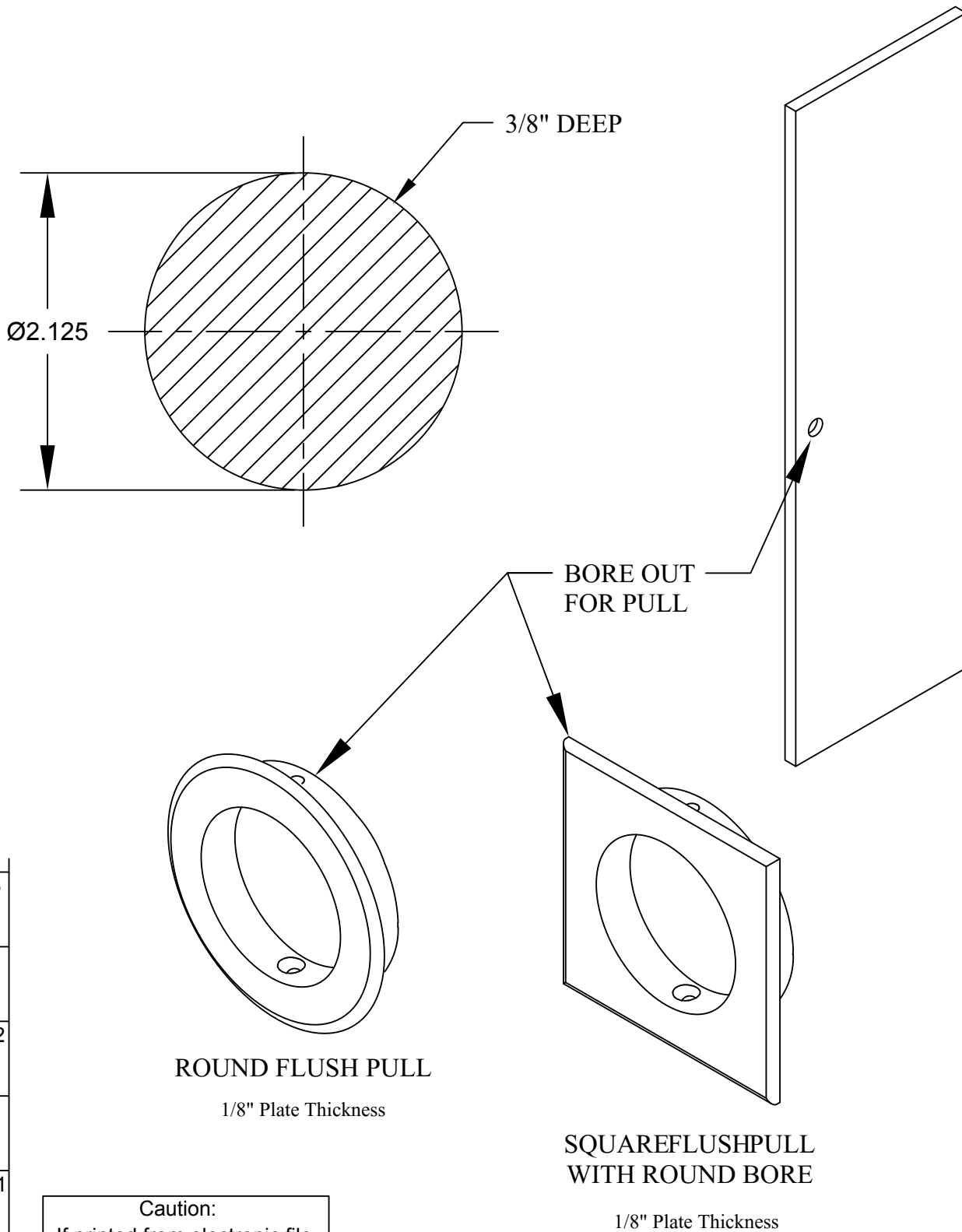
●	FOR CLASSIC TRIM DRILL 4X $\varnothing 1/8"$ X $3/4"$ DEEP PILOT HOLES
○	FOR MODERN TRIM DRILL 2X $\varnothing 1/8"$ X $3/4"$ DEEP PILOT HOLES
■	GRAYED POCKET AREA $1/4"$ DEEP



Caution:
If printed from electronic file
set print scale to 1:1. Measure
with ruler to check scale.

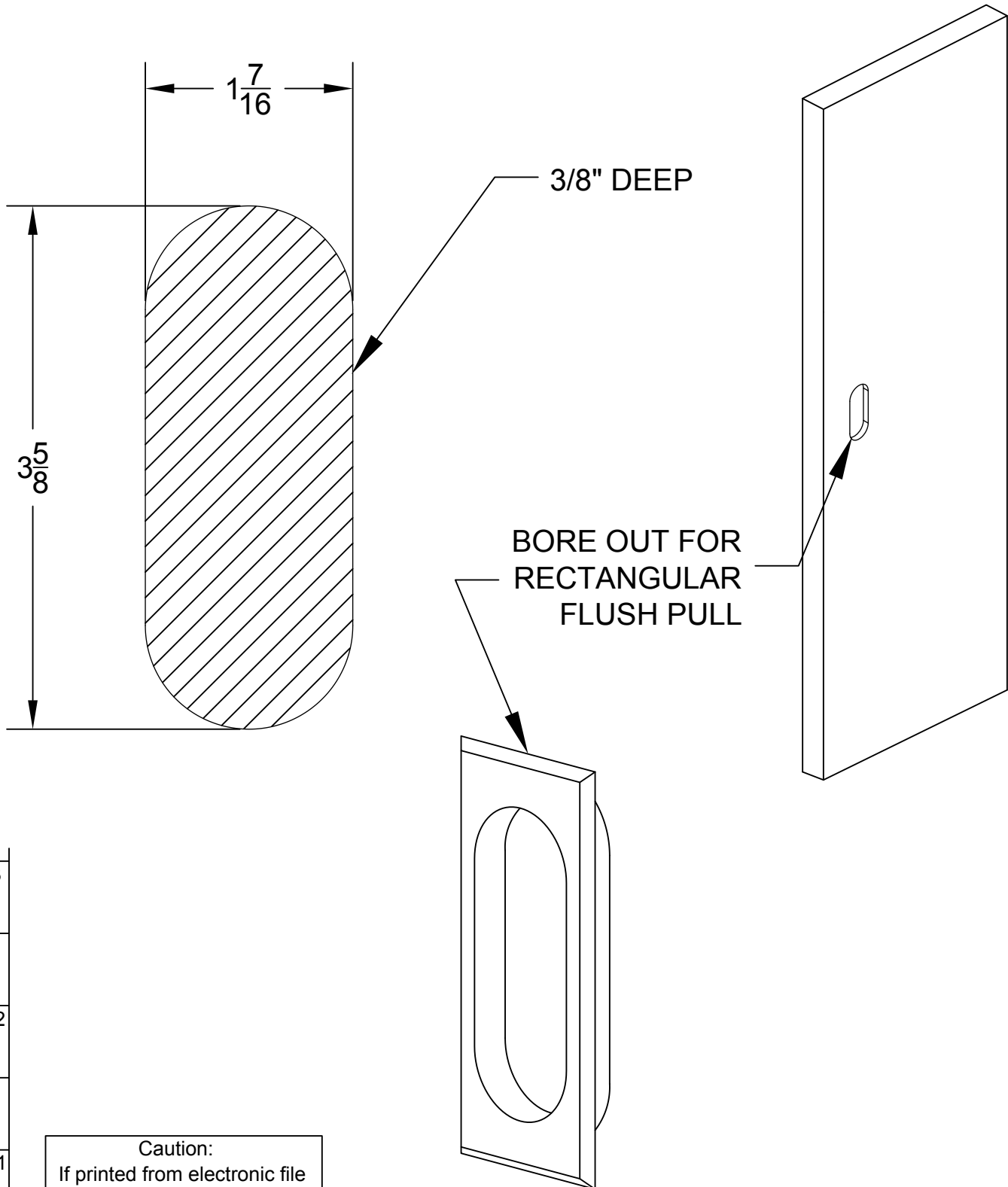


SQUARE/ROUND FLUSH PULL BORE HOLE PREPARATION

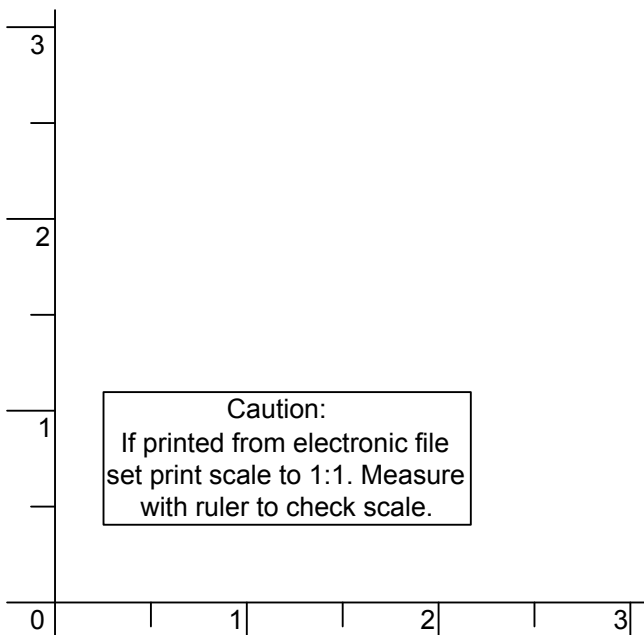


Caution:
If printed from electronic file
set print scale to 1:1. Measure
with ruler to check scale.

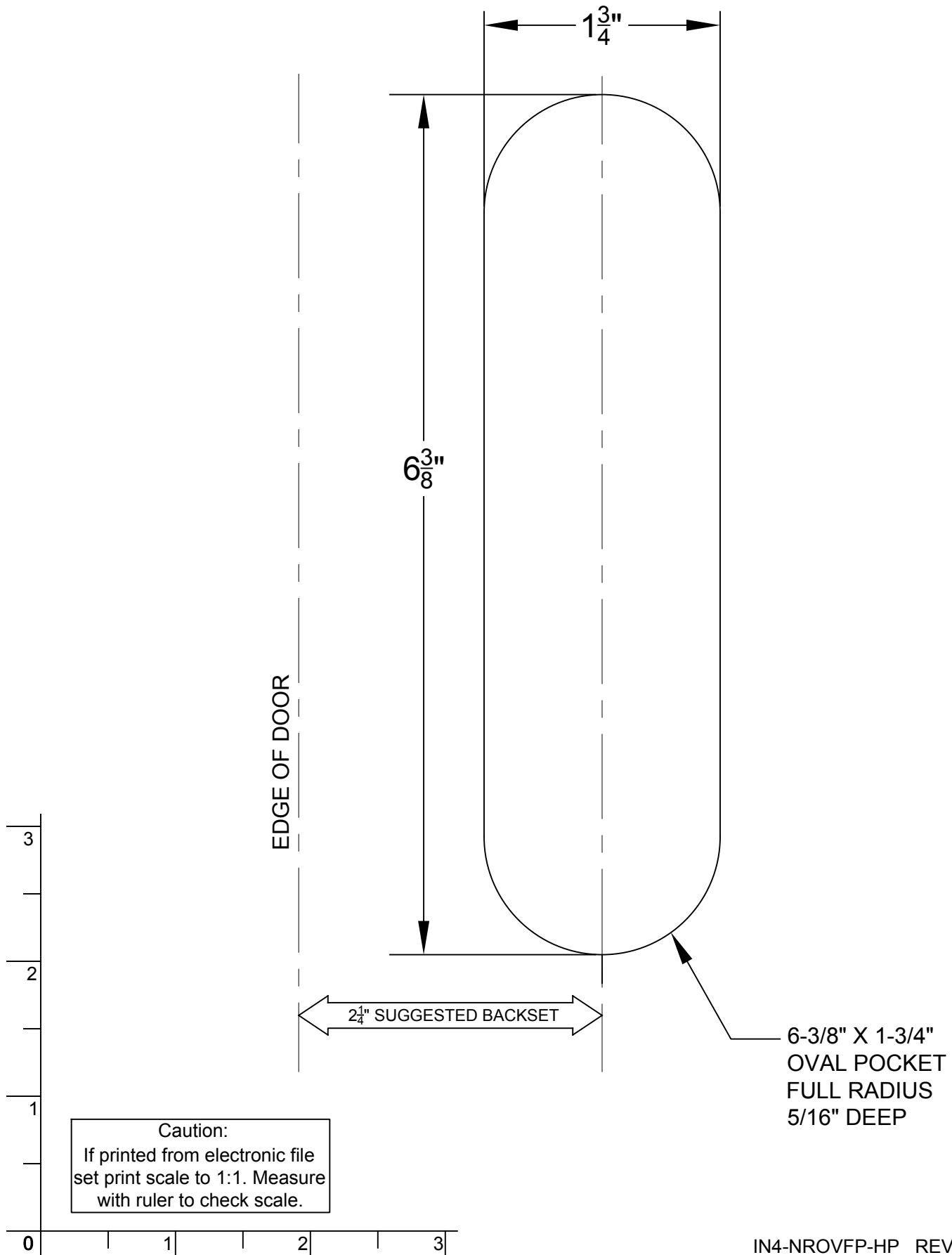
RECTANGULAR FLUSH PULL HOLE PREPARATION



Caution:
If printed from electronic file
set print scale to 1:1. Measure
with ruler to check scale.



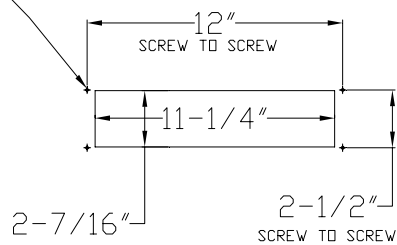
NARROW OVAL FLUSH PULL HOLE PREPARATION



Installation Instructions-Mail Slot

Door Prep

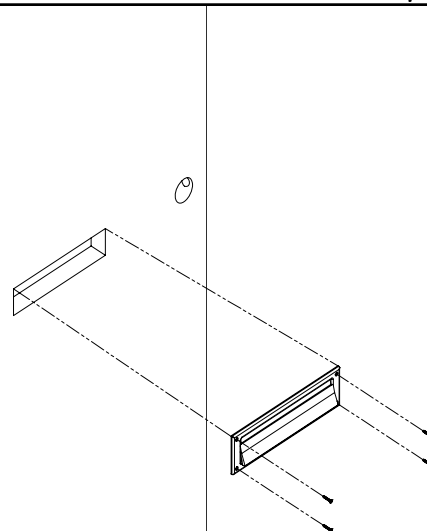
DRILL FOR WOOD SCREWS
PROVIDED 4 PLACES



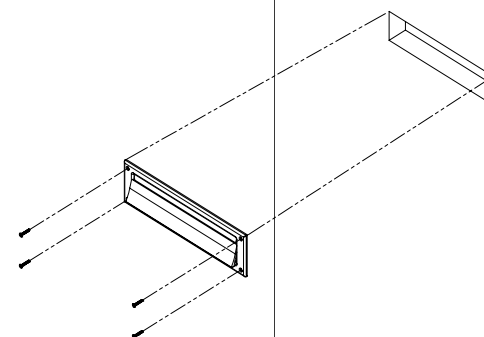
Prep mail slot opening by cutting thru door
And drill for wood screws provided.

Inside Trim

Attach inside slot cover with screws provided.



Outside Trim



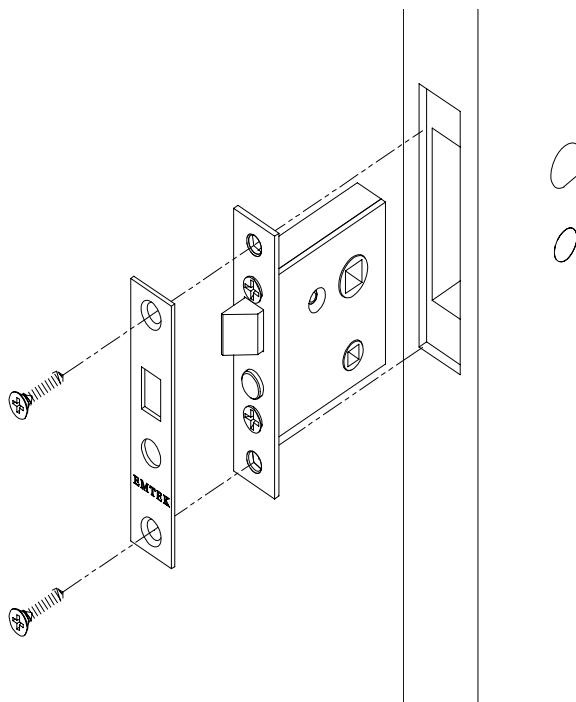
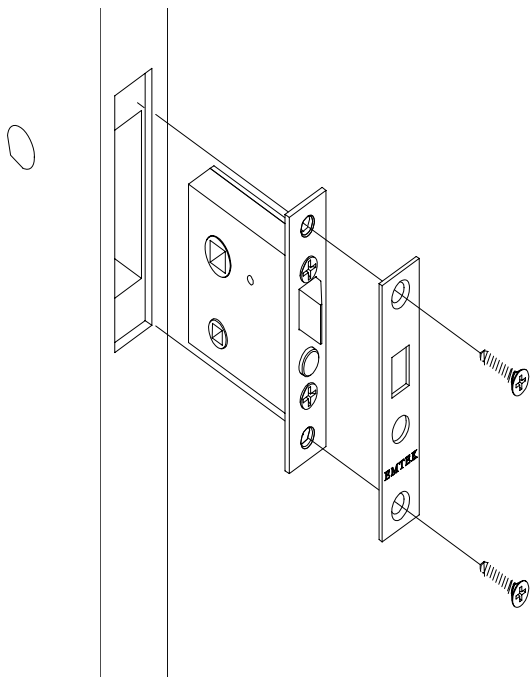
Attach outside slot cover with screws provided.
Note: outside cover is spring loaded.

Screen Door Mortise Lock Installation Guide

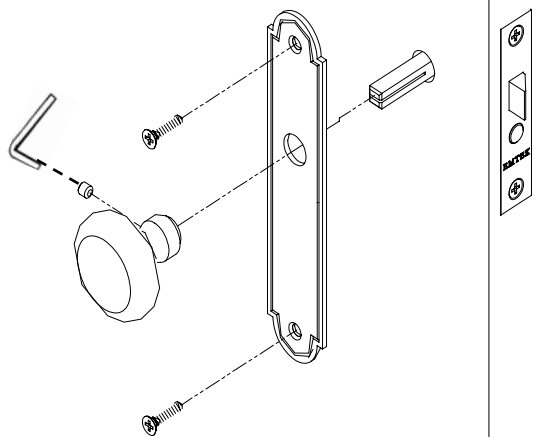
Outside

See template for door prep specifications

Inside

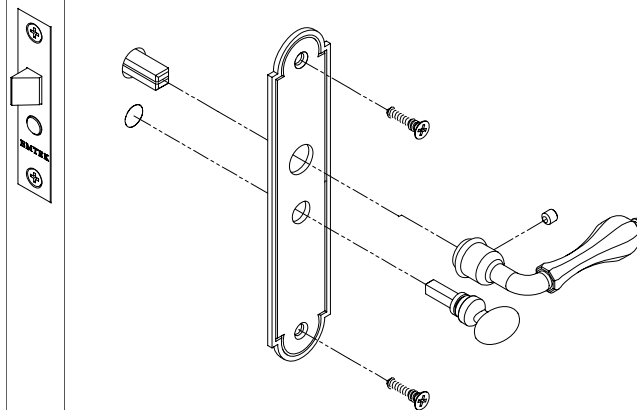


Outside Trim



Secure knob & Lever to spindle stem with Allen Wrench (provided)

Inside Trim

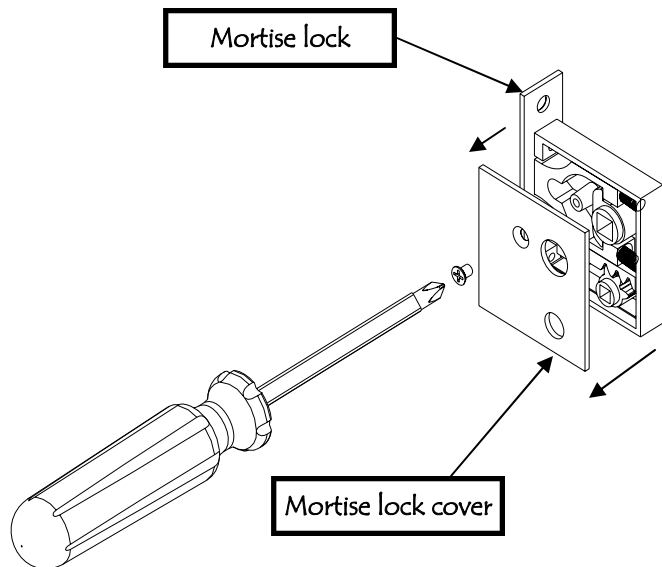


Plates and grips vary depending on style.

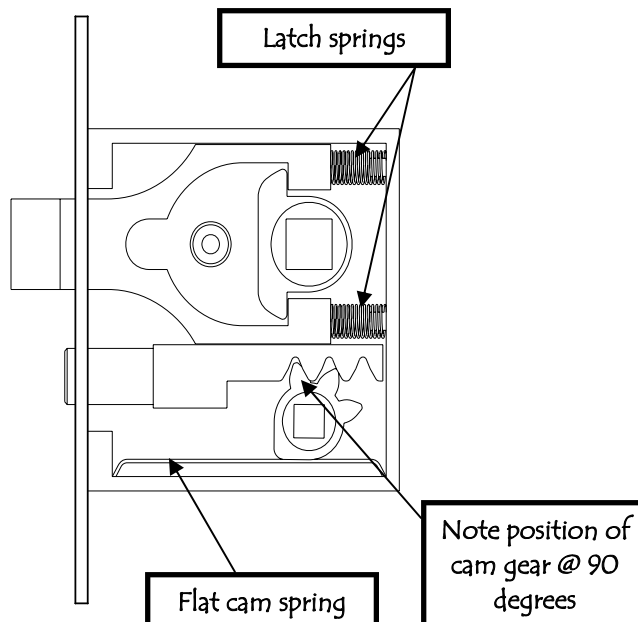
Step 1

To change latch configuration for left handed door:

Step 2



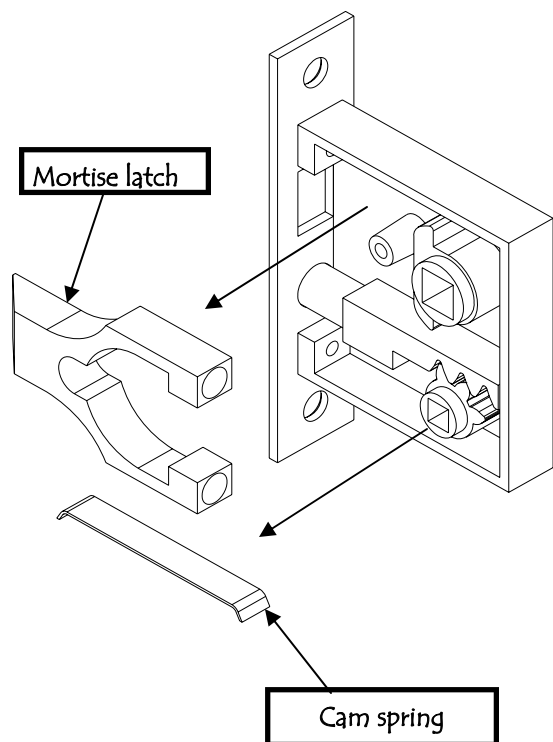
Remove mortise lock cover with Phillips screwdriver



Depress and remove latch springs & cam spring
Using needle nose pliers

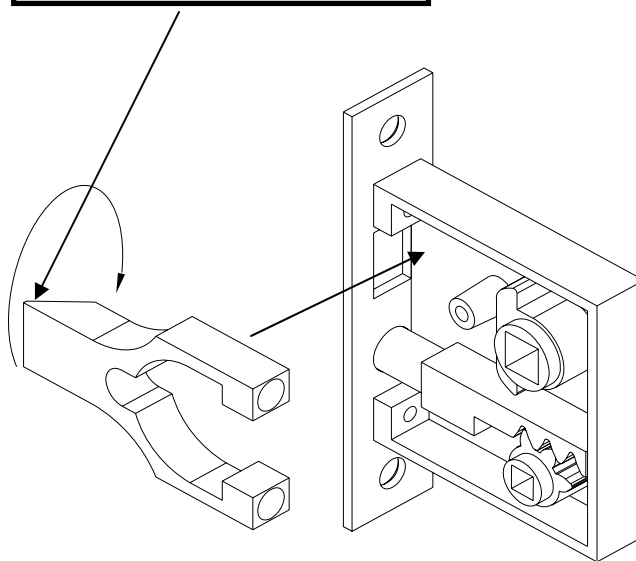
Step 3

Step 4



With all the springs removed, lift latch from mortise box

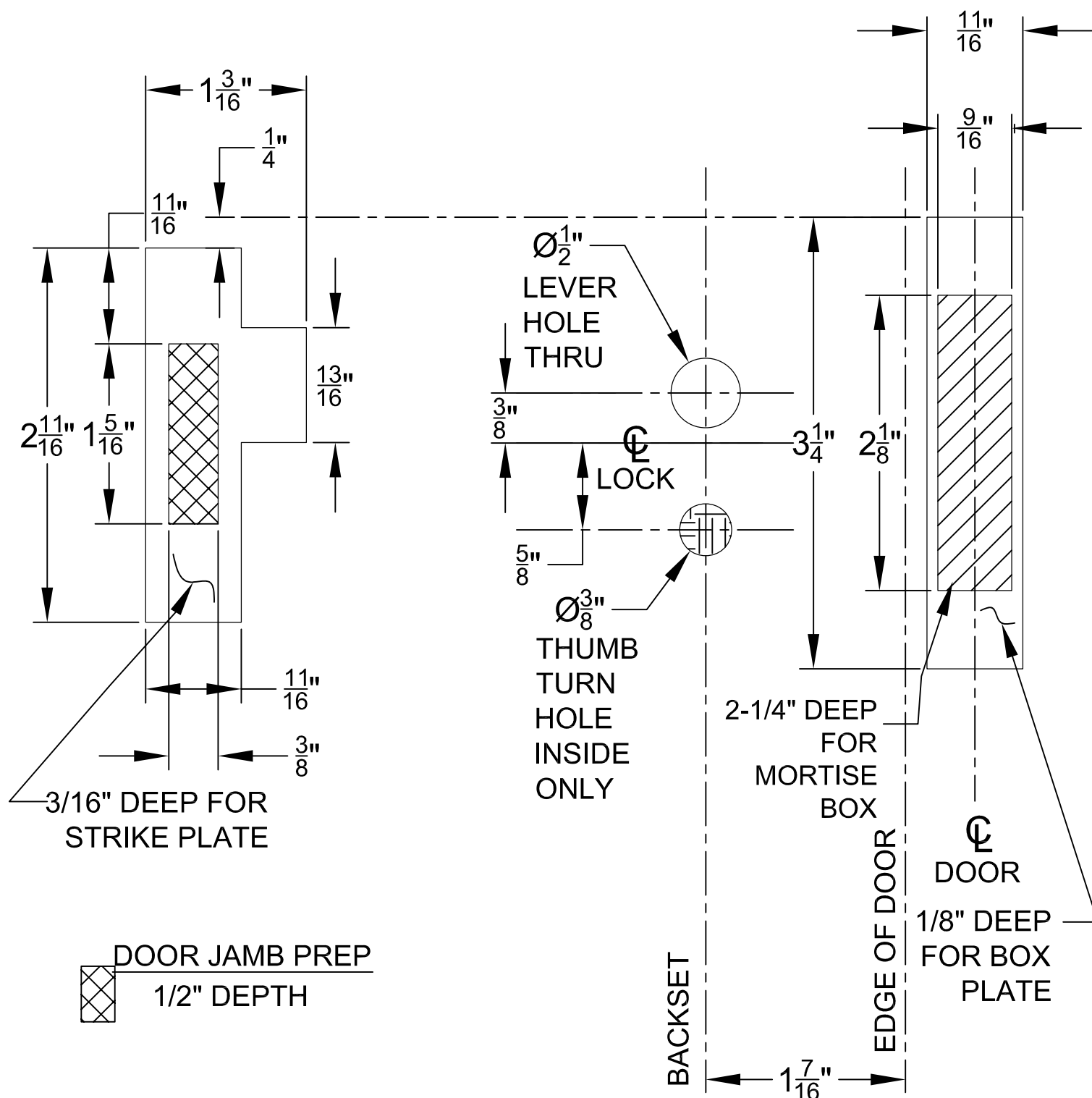
Note new latch nose orientation



Rotate latch as shown & reverse steps 1-3 to reassemble

ACTIVE SCREEN DOOR MORTISE LOCK HOLE PREPARATION (LEFT HAND)*

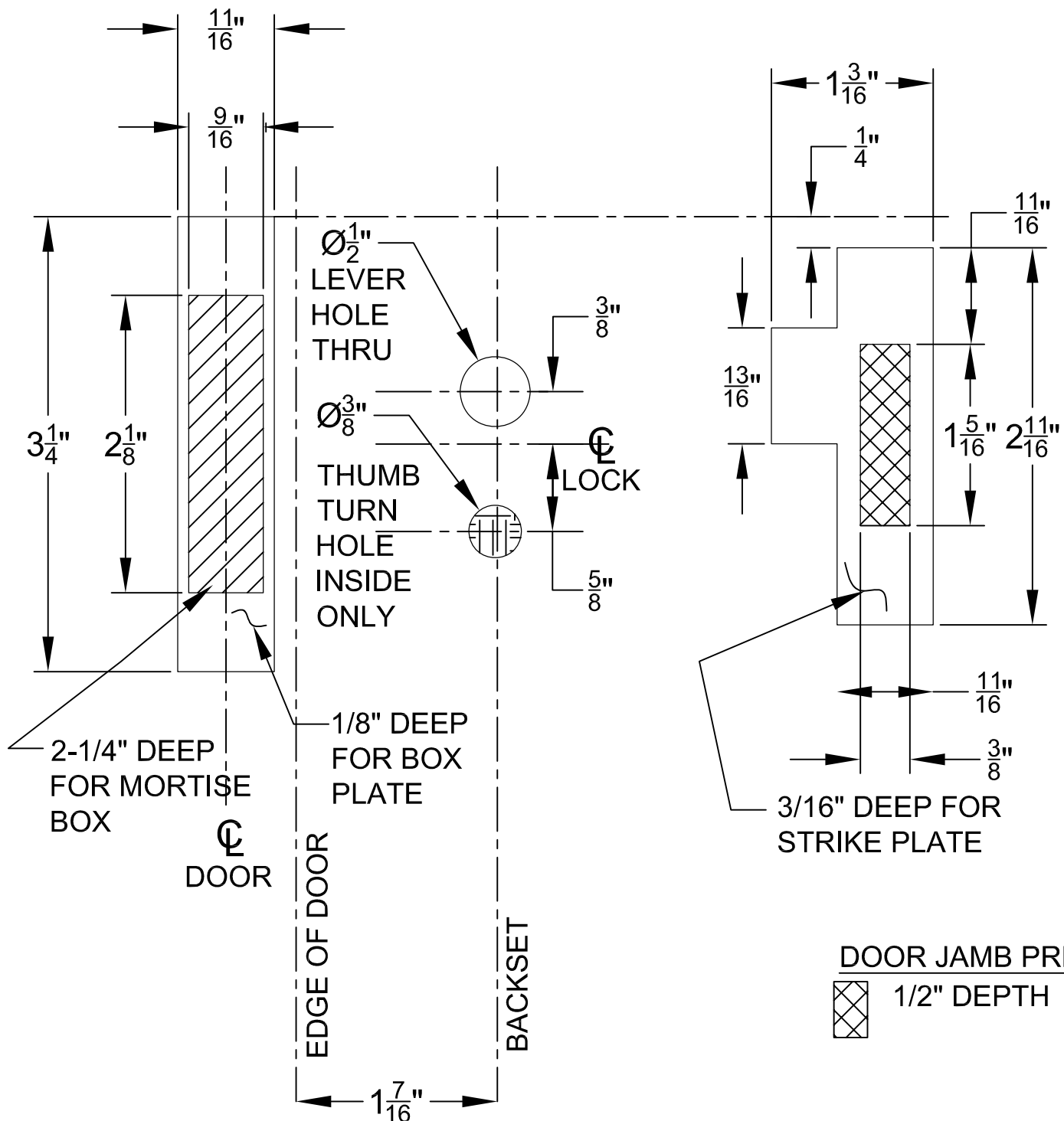
EMTEK®
ASSA ABLOY



NOTE:
THIS TEMPLATE IS DESIGNED FOR USE ON 1" THICK DOOR.

IN4-SCREENDOOR-L 05-09-08

ACTIVE SCREEN DOOR MORTISE LOCK HOLE PREPARATION (RIGHT HAND)*



NOTE:
THIS TEMPLATE IS DESIGNED FOR USE ON 1" THICK DOOR.

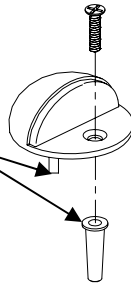
IN4-SCREENDOOR-R 05-09-08

Installation Instructions - Door Bumpers

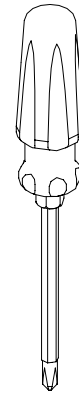
Low Base Style Door Bumper



Drill two 1/4" holes on floor 3/4" apart for metal stud & plastic anchor.

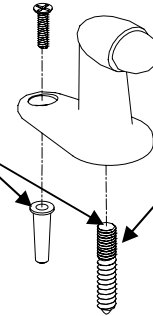


Goose Style Door Bumper



Note: Before drilling, determine the best location for bumper that suits your door stop needs.

Drill two 5/16" holes on floor 7/16" apart for stud & plastic anchor.



Install threaded stud to bumper

EMTEK
ASSA ABLOY

IN4-DOORBUMPERS

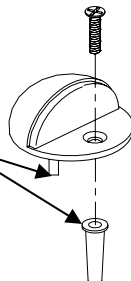
REV. 04-19-18

Installation Instructions - Door Bumpers

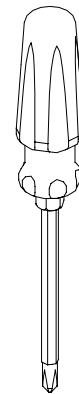
Low Base Style Door Bumper



Drill two 1/4" holes on floor 3/4" apart for metal stud & plastic anchor.

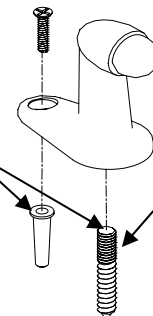


Goose Style Door Bumper



Note: Before drilling, determine the best location for bumper that suits your door stop needs.

Drill two 5/16" holes on floor 7/16" apart for stud & plastic anchor.



Install threaded stud to bumper

EMTEK
ASSA ABLOY

IN4-DOORBUMPERS

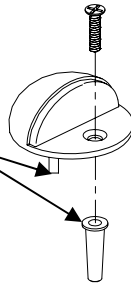
REV. 04-19-18

Installation Instructions - Door Bumpers

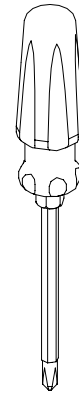
Low Base Style Door Bumper



Drill two 1/4" holes on floor 3/4" apart for metal stud & plastic anchor.

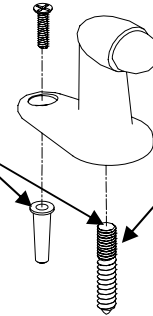


Goose Style Door Bumper



Note: Before drilling, determine the best location for bumper that suits your door stop needs.

Drill two 5/16" holes on floor 7/16" apart for stud & plastic anchor.



Install threaded stud to bumper

EMTEK
ASSA ABLOY

IN4-DOORBUMPERS

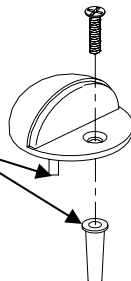
REV. 04-19-18

Installation Instructions - Door Bumpers

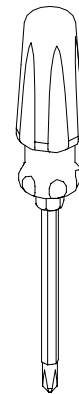
Low Base Style Door Bumper



Drill two 1/4" holes on floor 3/4" apart for metal stud & plastic anchor.

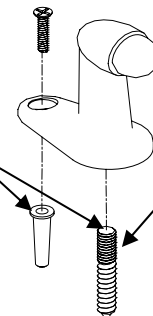


Goose Style Door Bumper



Note: Before drilling, determine the best location for bumper that suits your door stop needs.

Drill two 5/16" holes on floor 7/16" apart for stud & plastic anchor.



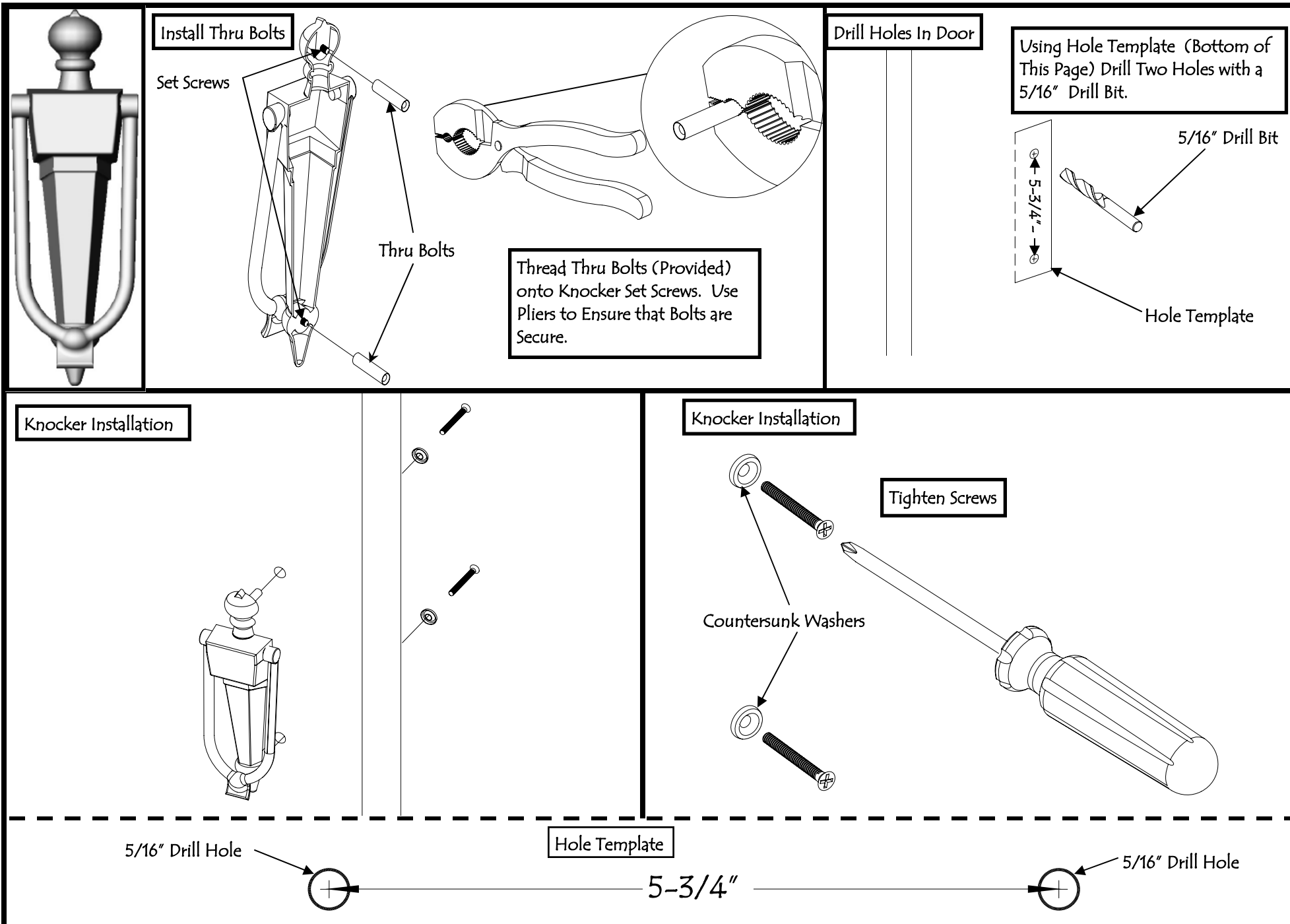
Install threaded stud to bumper

EMTEK
ASSA ABLOY

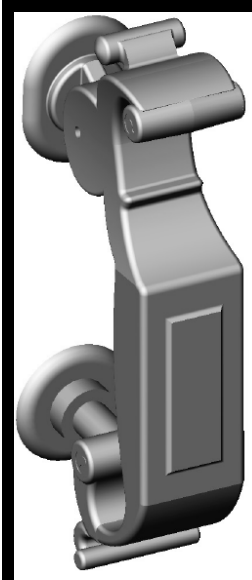
IN4-DOORBUMPERS

REV. 04-19-18

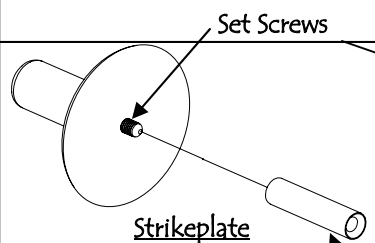
Installation Instructions-Door Knocker - Narrow Style - 2621



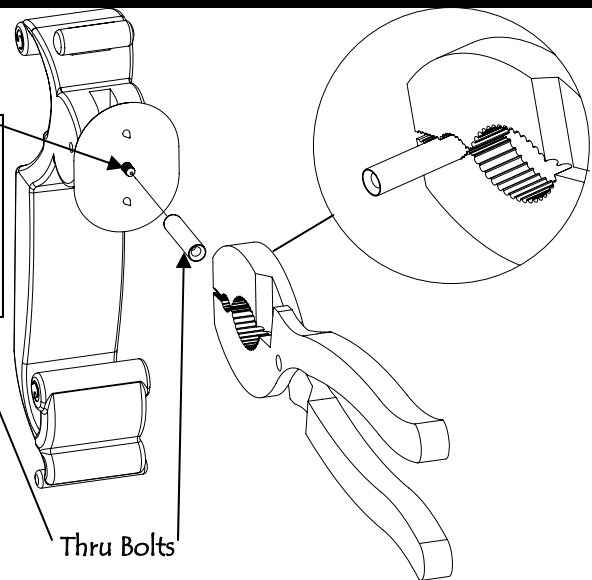
Installation Instructions—Door Knocker – S Style – 2622



Install Thru Bolts

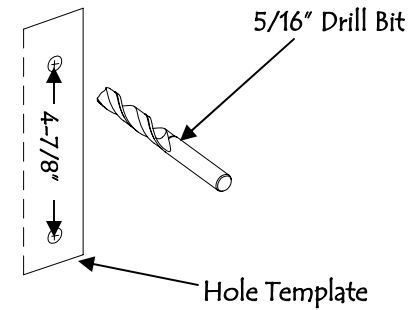


Thread Thru Bolts (Provided) onto Knocker & Strikeplate Set Screws. Use Pliers to Ensure that Bolts are Secure.

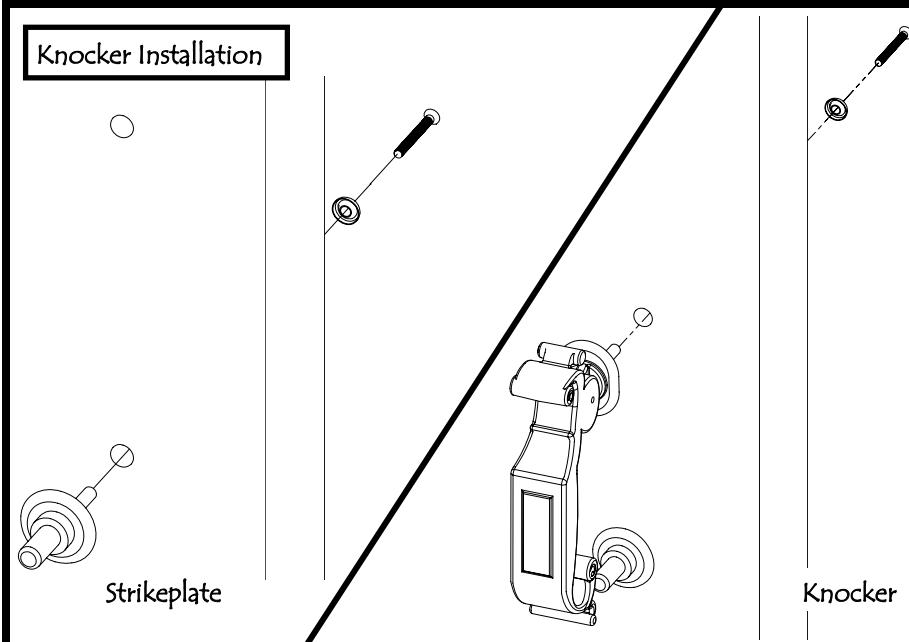


Drill Holes In Door

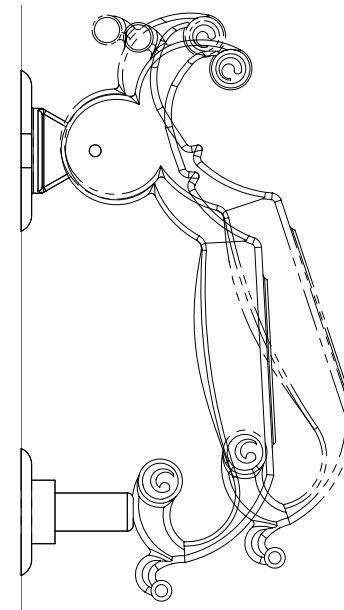
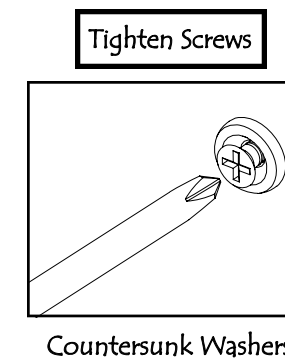
Using Hole Template (Bottom of This Page) Drill Two Holes with a 5/16" Drill Bit.



Knocker Installation



Knocker Installation



5/16" Drill Hole

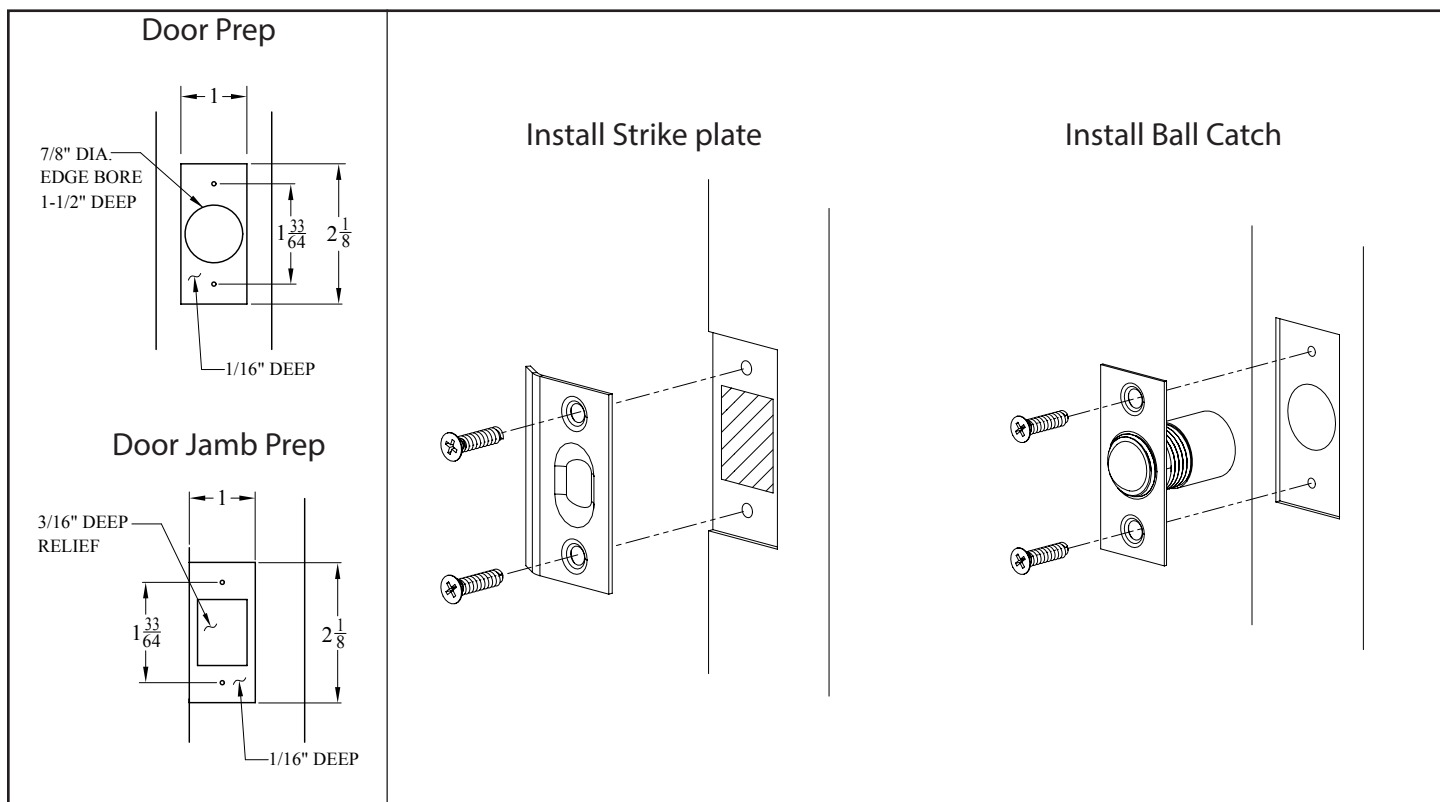
Hole Template

4-7/8"

5/16" Drill Hole

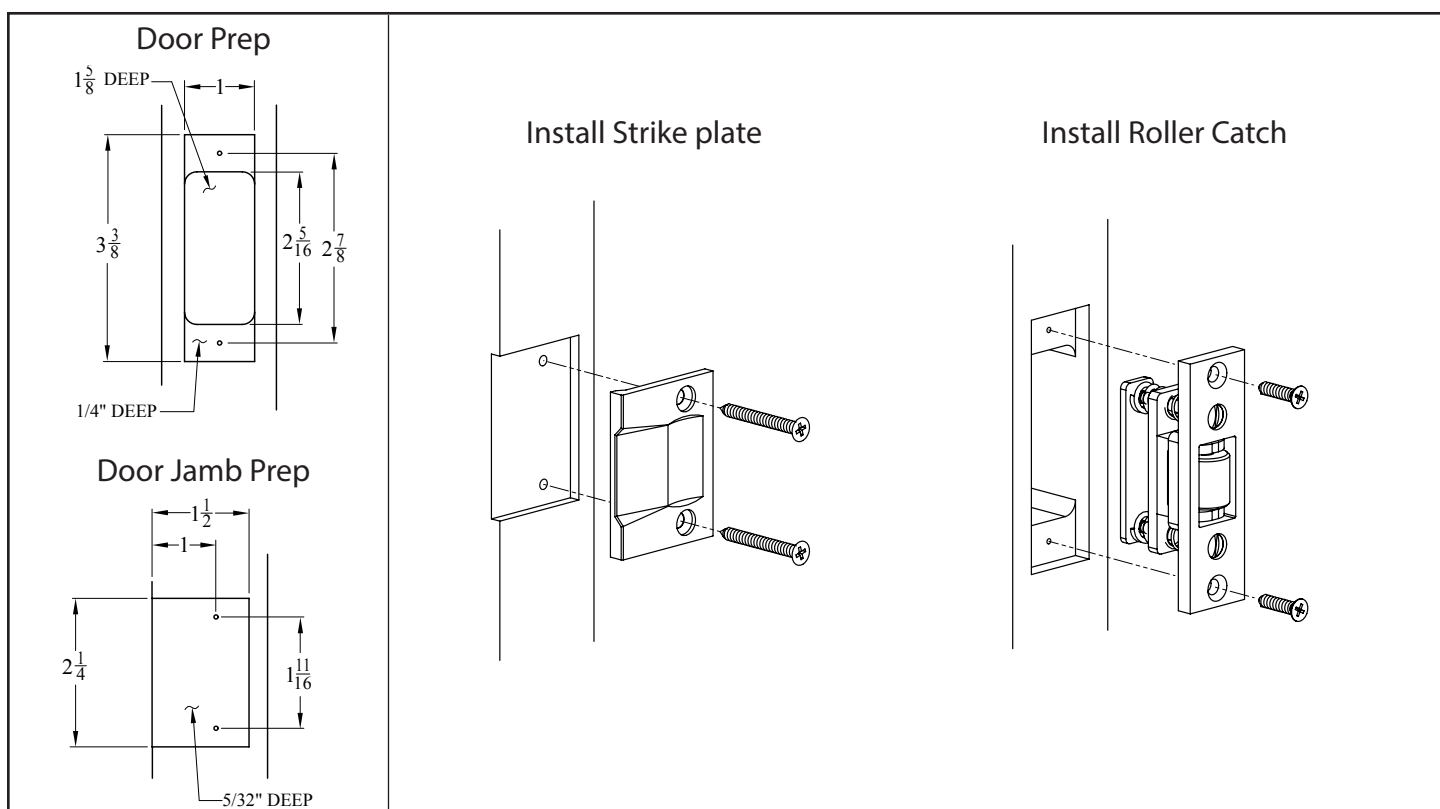
Installation Instructions-Ball Catch

EMTEK
ASSA ABLOY



Installation Instructions-Roller Catch

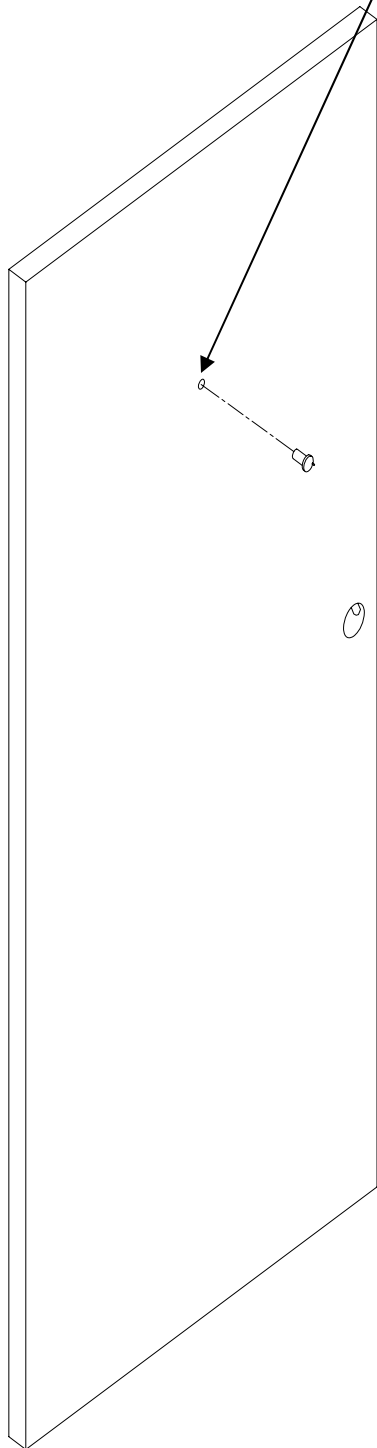
EMTEK
ASSA ABLOY



Installation Instructions-Door Viewer

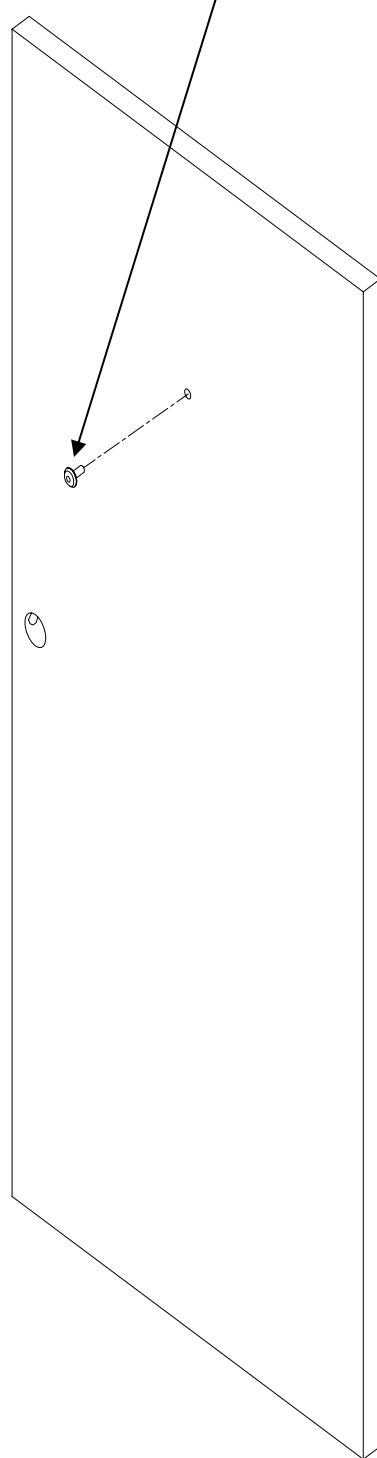
Inside View

Drill 5/8" thru hole for viewer on center of door at approx. eye level.



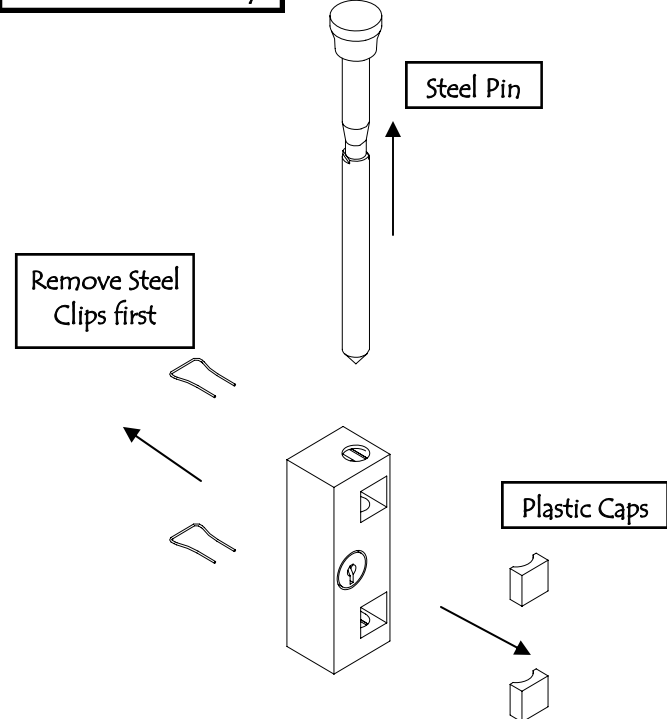
Outside View

Install both ends of viewer in door. Screw together and tighten.



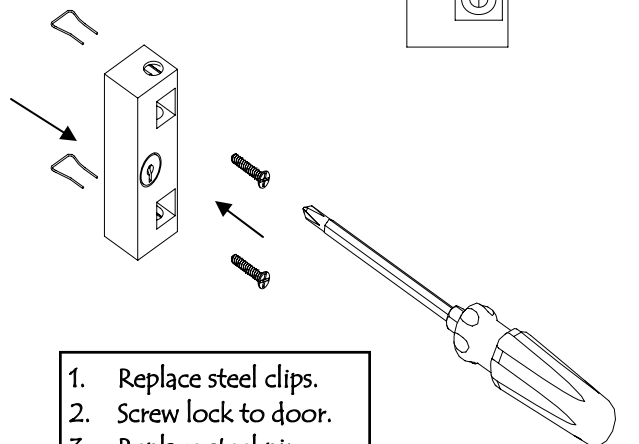
Installation Instructions-Patio Door Lock

Disassemble lock body



Install & Reassemble Lock

Use 5/32 drill two places to accept #10-32 sheet metal screws (provided).



1. Replace steel clips.
2. Screw lock to door.
3. Replace steel pin.
4. Replace plastic caps.

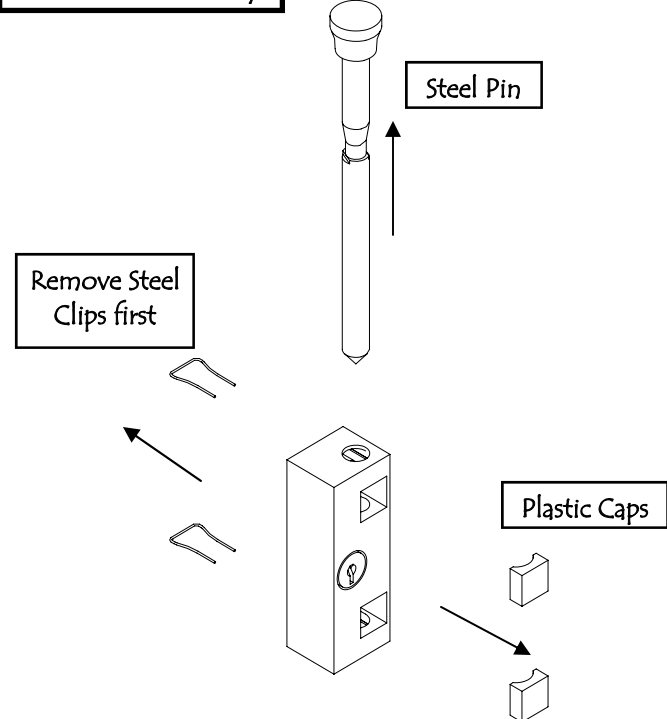
EMTEK
ASSA ABLOY

IN4-PATIODOOR

REV. 03-12-09

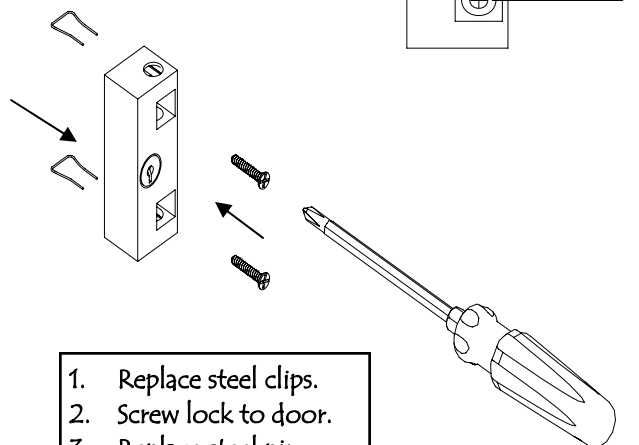
Installation Instructions-Patio Door Lock

Disassemble lock body



Install & Reassemble Lock

Use 5/32 drill two places to accept #10-32 sheet metal screws (provided).



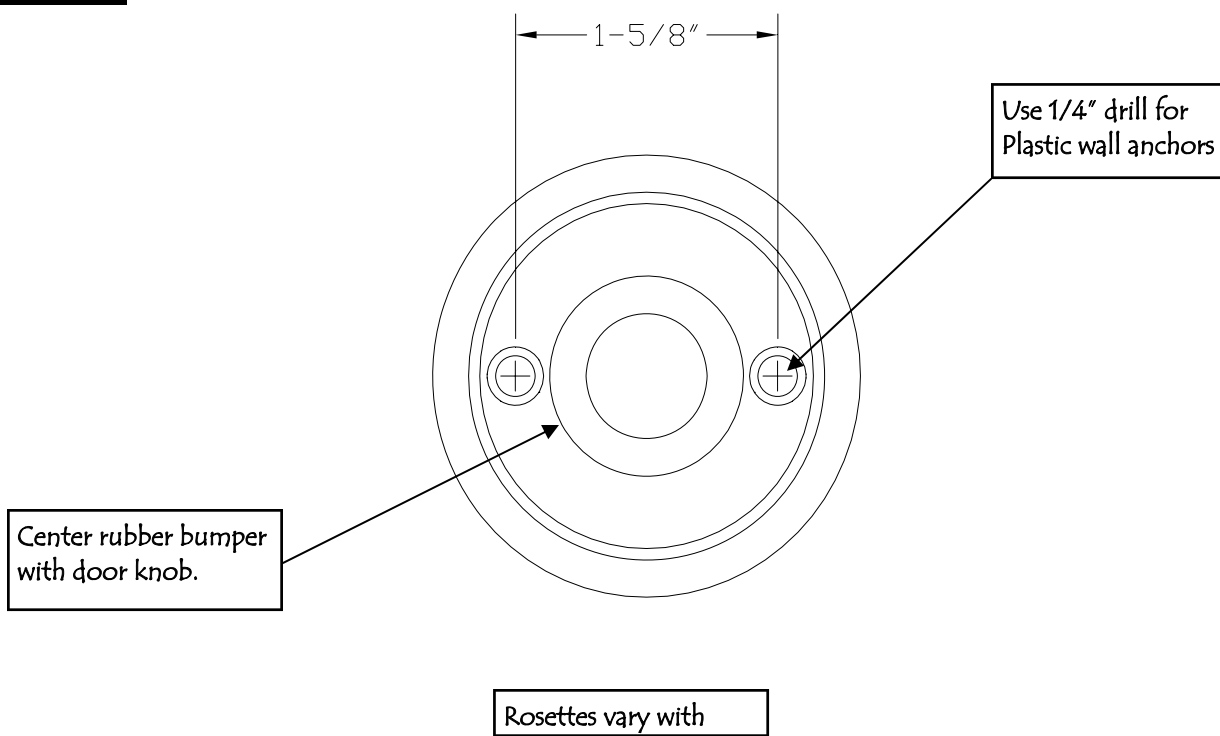
1. Replace steel clips.
2. Screw lock to door.
3. Replace steel pin.
4. Replace plastic caps.

EMTEK
ASSA ABLOY

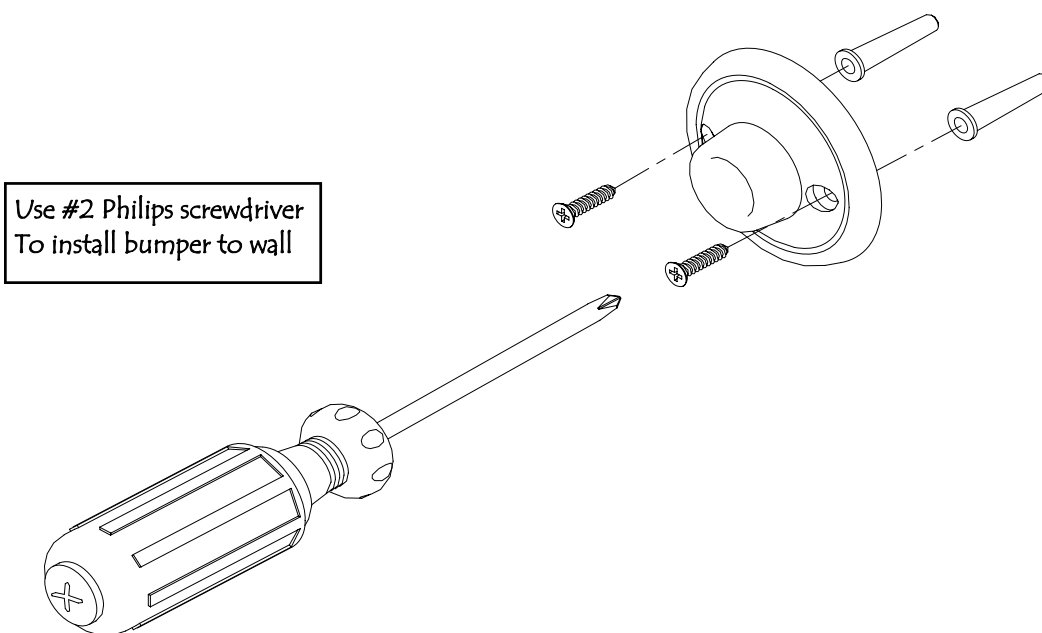
IN4-PATIODOOR

REV. 03-12-09

Drill Holes



Install Door Bumper



Installation Instructions - Pocket door lock - Passage/Privacy

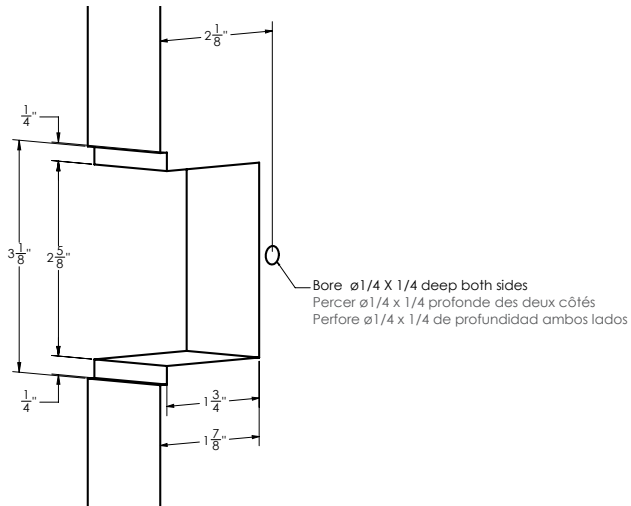
Instructions d'installation - serrure pour porte coulissante escamotable - Passage/Intimité

Instrucciones de Instalación - Cerradura de puerta corrediza de Privacidad/Pasador

EMTEK
ASSA ABLOY

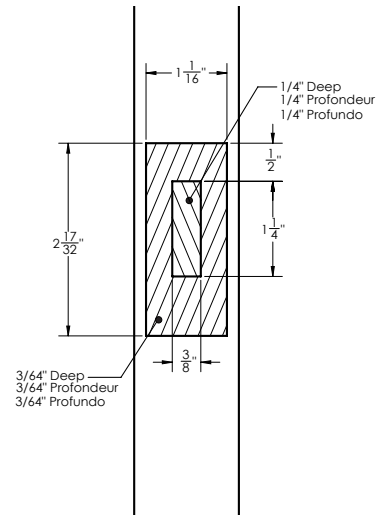
Door Prep

1 Préparation de la porte
Preparación de la puerta



Jamb Prep

2 Préparation de l'embrasure
Preparación de la puerta

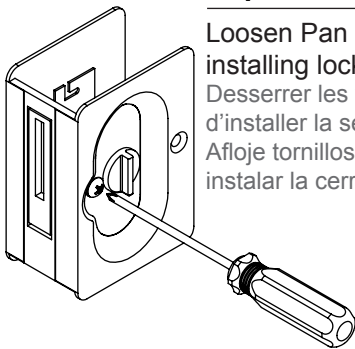


Loosen Screw

3 Desserrer la vis
Afloje el tornillo

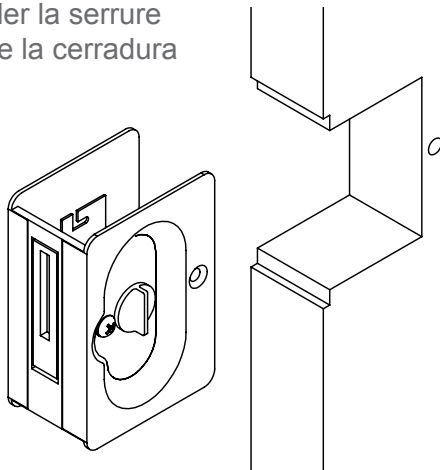
Important • Important • Importante

Loosen Pan Head Screws before installing lock to door - both sides
Desserrer les vis à tête ronde avant d'installer la serrure - deux
Afloje tornillos de cabeza redonda antes de instalar la cerradura en la puerta - ambos lados



Install Lock

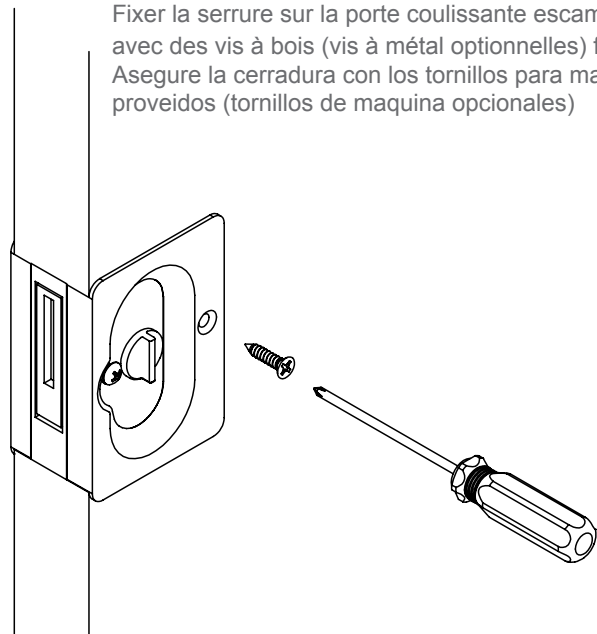
4 Installer la serrure
Instale la cerradura



Secure Lock

5 Fixer la serrure
Instale la cerradura

Secure Pocket door to door with wood screws provided (Machine screws optional)
Fixer la serrure sur la porte coulissante escamotable avec des vis à bois (vis à métal optionnelles) fournies
Asegure la cerradura con los tornillos para madera proveidos (tornillos de maquina opcionales)

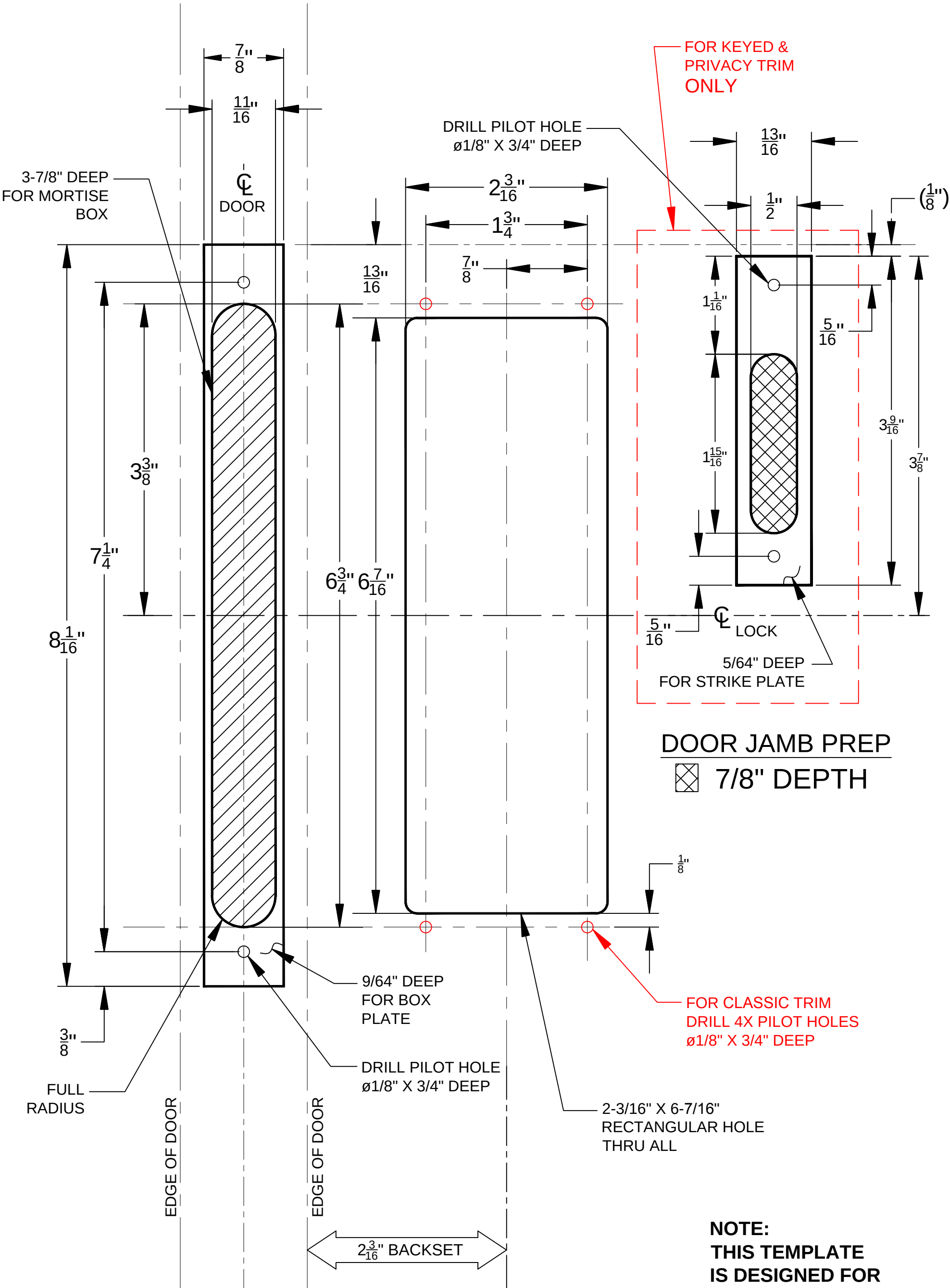


Remember to re-tighten all Pan Head Screws after installation.

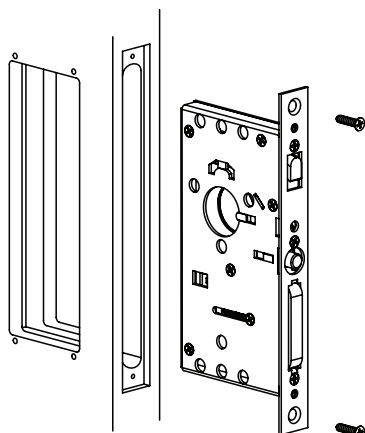
Ne pas oublier de resserrer toutes les vis à tête ronde après l'installation

Recuerde apretar todos los tornillos de cabeza redonda después de la instalación.

POCKET DOOR MORTISE HOLE PREPARATION



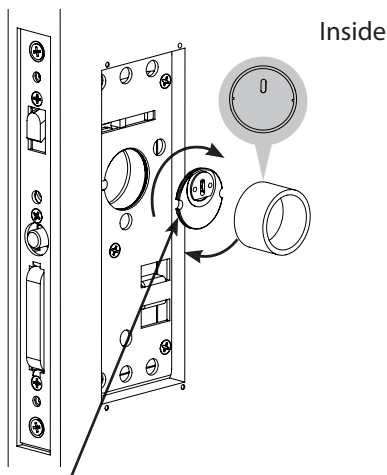
1 Install Lock Body



See template for door prep specifications

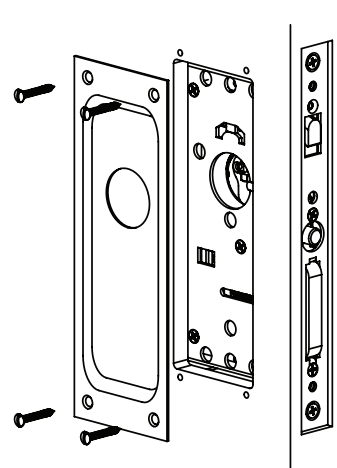
2 Install Drive Bar Cylinder

Use Cylinder Key to thread Drive Bar Cylinder clockwise on interior side of door.



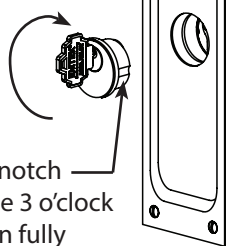
Note: Notch on cylinder must be in the 9 o'clock position when fully screwed into lock body.

3 Mount Outside Plate



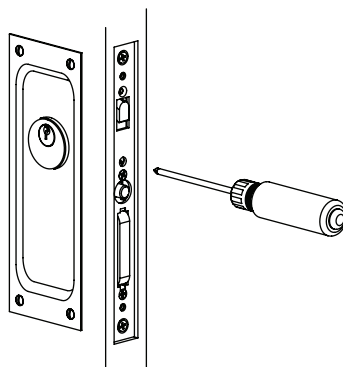
4 Thread Key Cylinder

Install Key Cylinder by threading it clockwise onto lock body plate



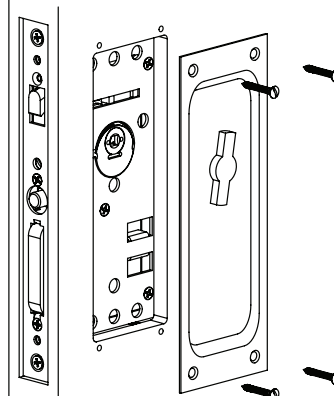
Key Cylinder notch must be at the 3 o'clock position when fully screwed in lock body.

5 Tighten Drive Bar Cylinder

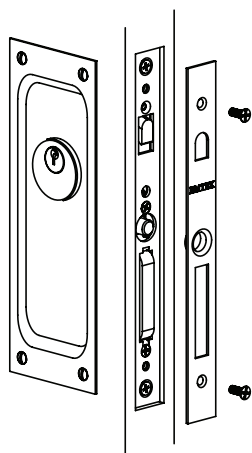


Tighten locking screw to engage notch on cylinder

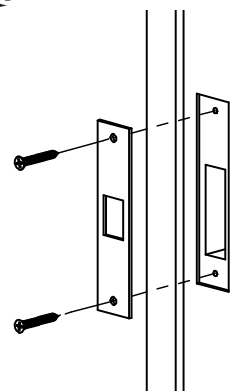
6 Mount Inside Plate



7 Install Trim Plate



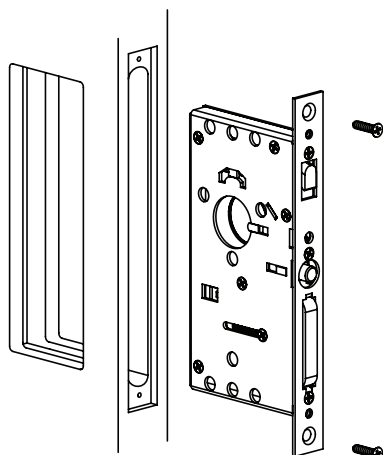
8 Install Door Jamb



Drill two 7/64" pilot holes

See template for door jamb prep specifications

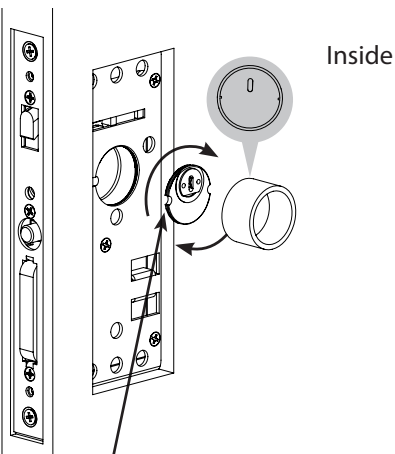
1 Install Lock Body



See template for door prep specifications

2 Install Drive Bar Cylinder

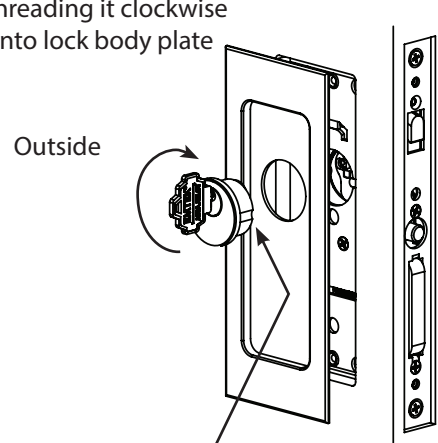
Use Cylinder Key to thread Drive Bar Cylinder clockwise on interior side of door.



Note: Notch on cylinder must be in the 9 o'clock position when fully screwed into lock body.

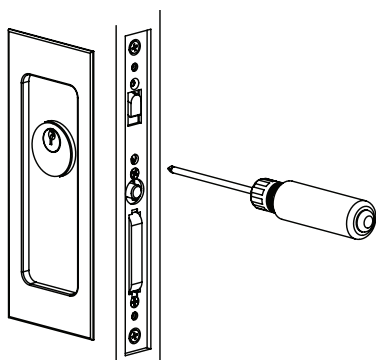
3 Mount Outside Plate and Thread Key Cylinder

Install Key Cylinder by threading it clockwise onto lock body plate



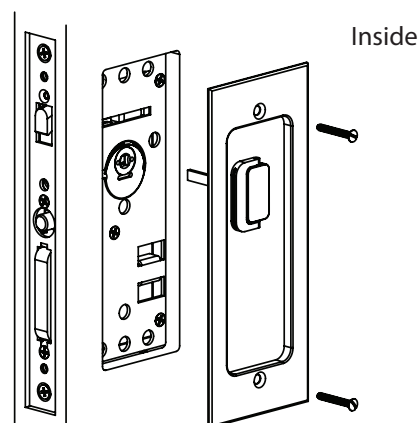
Key Cylinder notch must be at the 3 o'clock position when fully screwed in lock body.

4 Tighten Drive Bar Cylinder

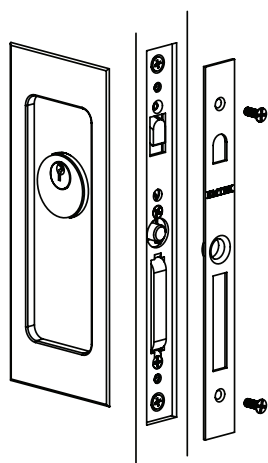


Tighten locking screw to engage notch on cylinder

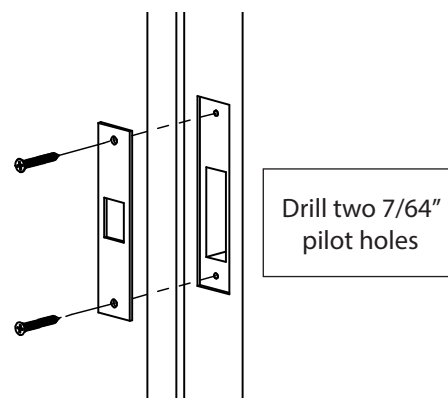
5 Mount Inside Plate



6 Install Trim Plate



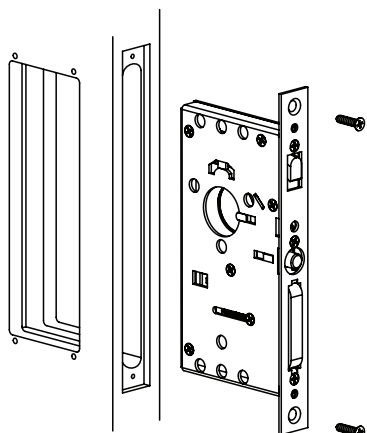
7 Install Door Jamb



Drill two 7/64" pilot holes

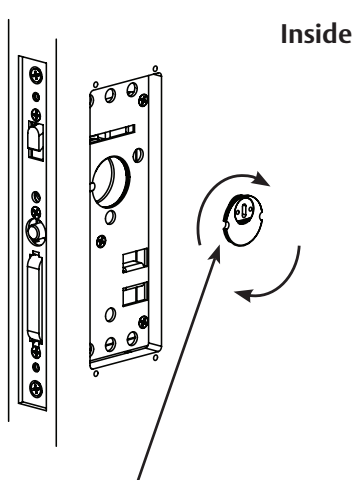
See template for door jamb prep specifications

1 Install Lock Body



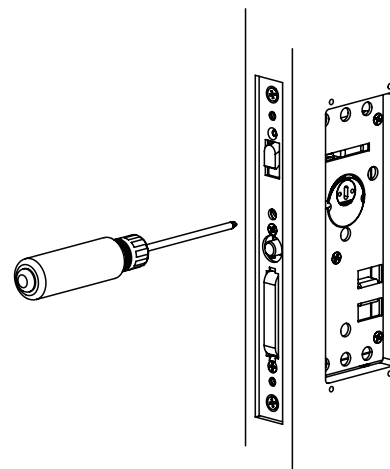
See template for door prep specifications

2 Install Drive Bar Cylinder



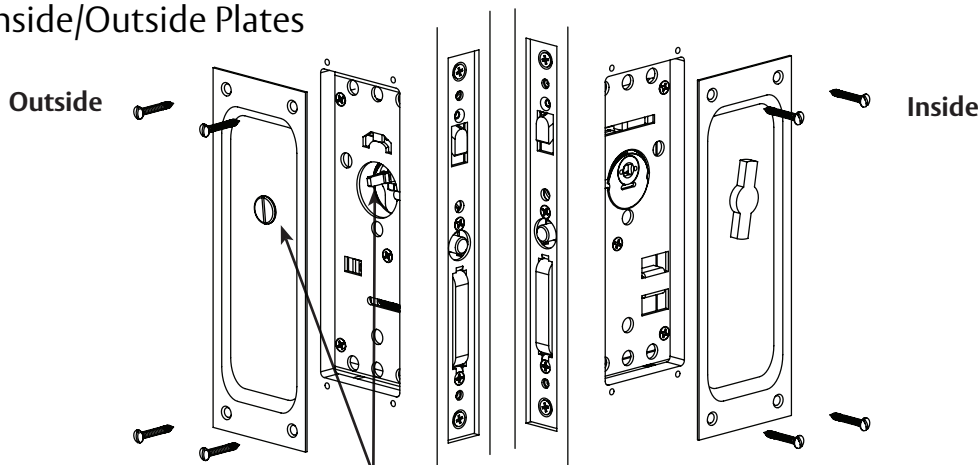
Note: Notch on cylinder must be in the 9 o' clock position when fully screwed into lock body.

3 Tighten Drive Bar Cylinder



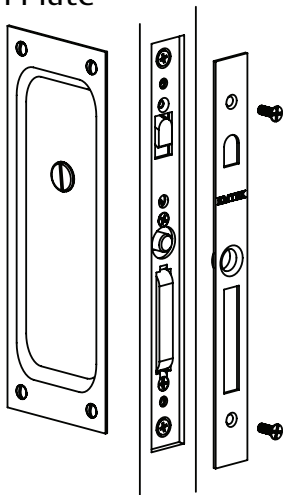
Tighten locking screw to engage notch on cylinder

4 Mount Inside/Outside Plates

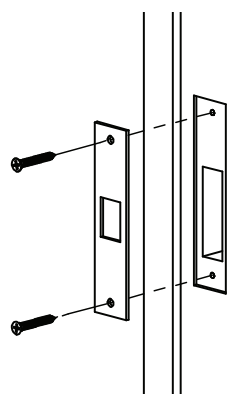


Align Passage/Privacy Button with Thumb-Turn spindle and secure trim plates to door.

5 Install Trim Plate



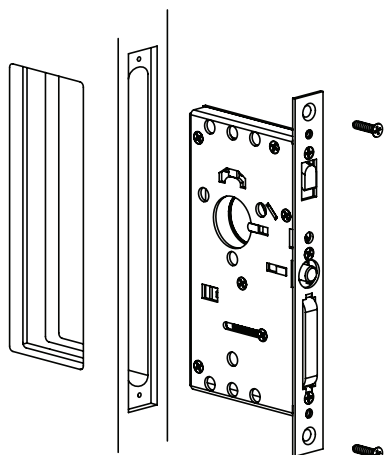
6 Install Door Jamb



Drill two 7/64" pilot holes

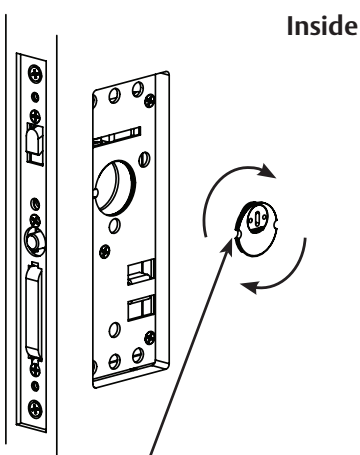
See template for door jamb prep specifications

1 Install Lock Body



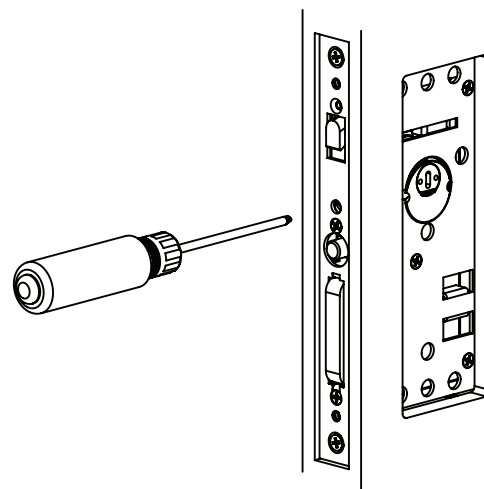
See template for door prep specifications

2 Install Drive Bar Cylinder



Note: Notch on cylinder must be in the 9 o' clock position when fully screwed into lock body.

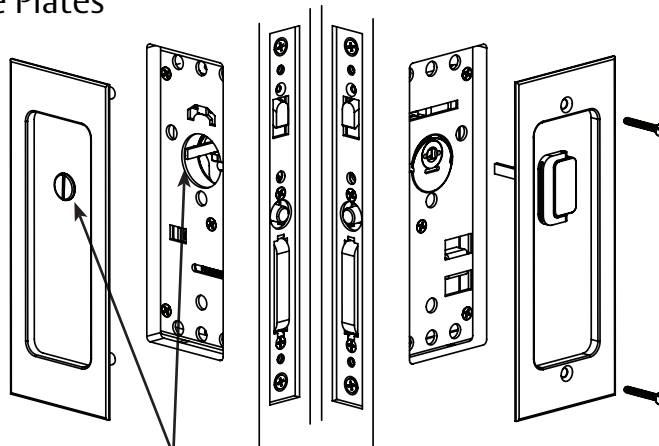
3 Tighten Drive Bar Cylinder



Tighten locking screw to engage notch on cylinder

4 Mount Inside/Outside Plates

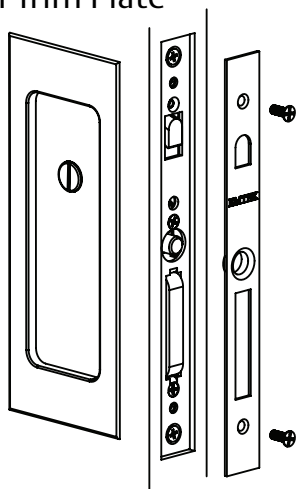
Outside



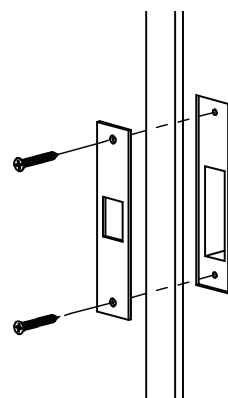
Inside

Align Passage/Privacy Button with Thumb-Turn spindle and secure trim plates to door.

5 Install Trim Plate



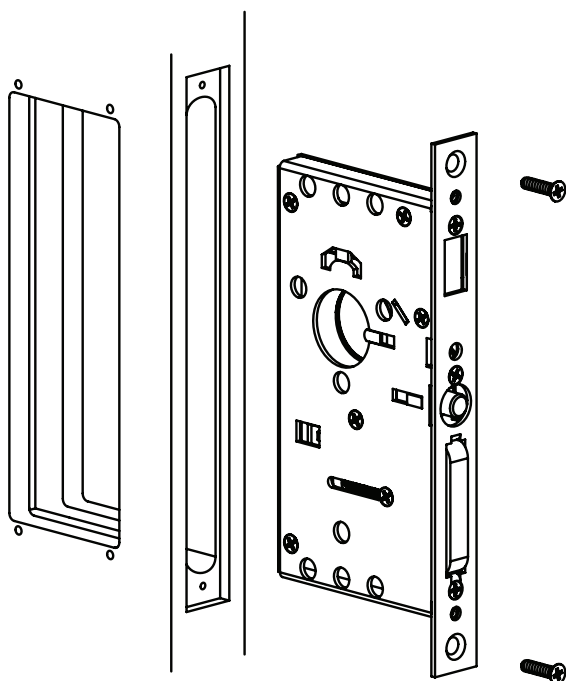
6 Install Door Jamb



Drill two 7/64" pilot holes

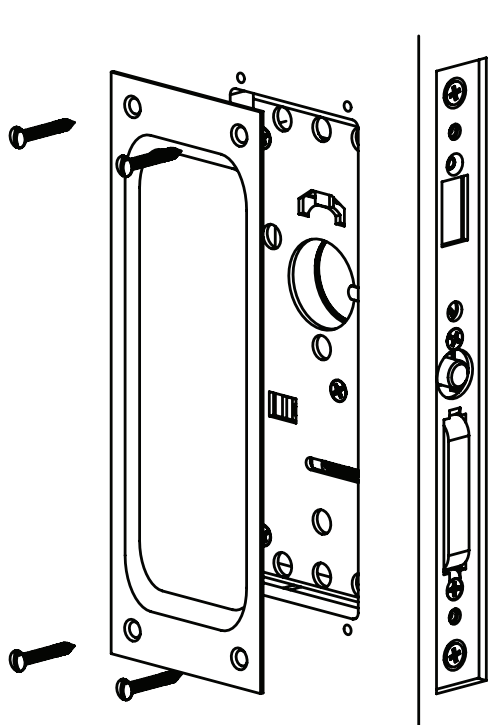
See template for door jamb prep specifications

1 Install Lock Body

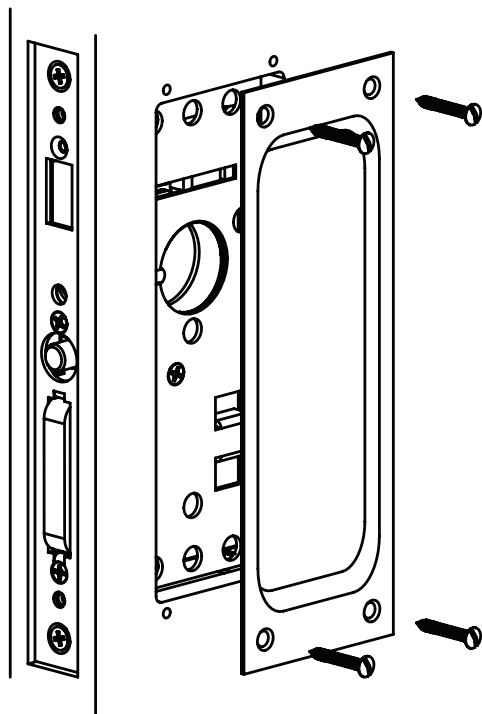


See template for door prep specifications

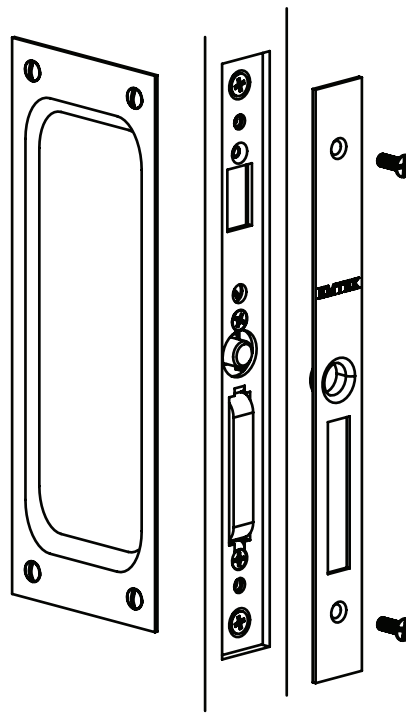
2 Install Outside Plate



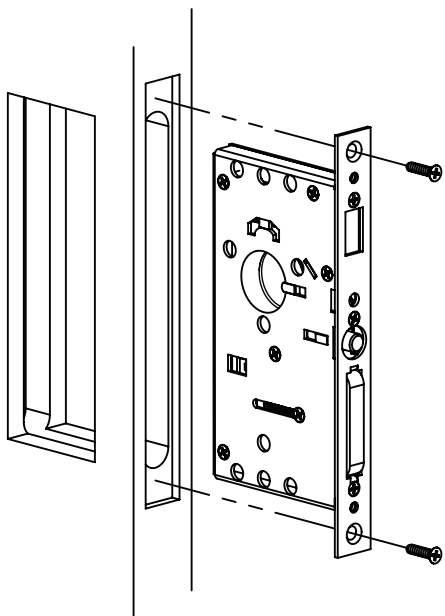
3 Install Inside Plate



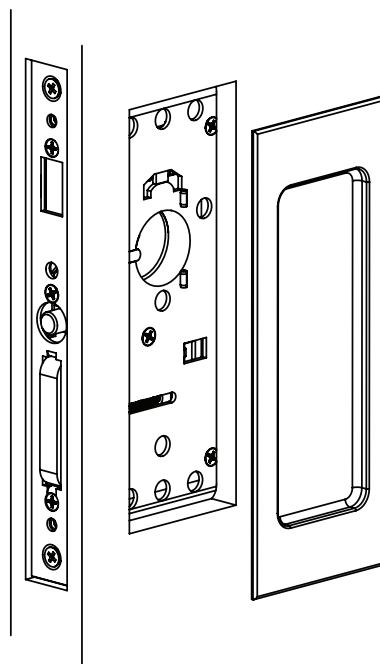
4 Install Trim Plate



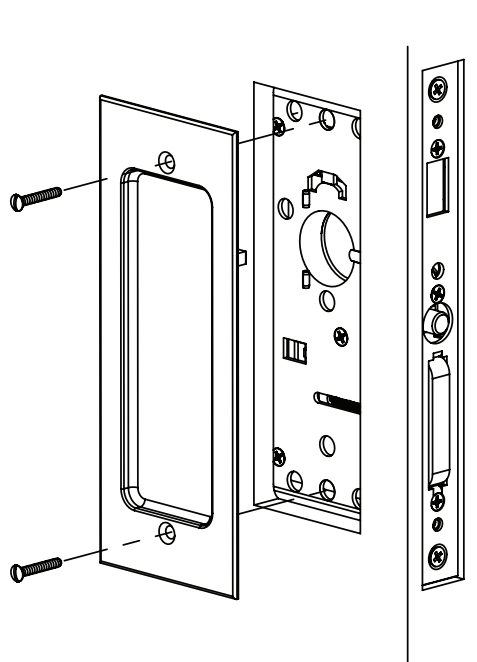
1 Install Lock Body



2 Hold Outside plate in place

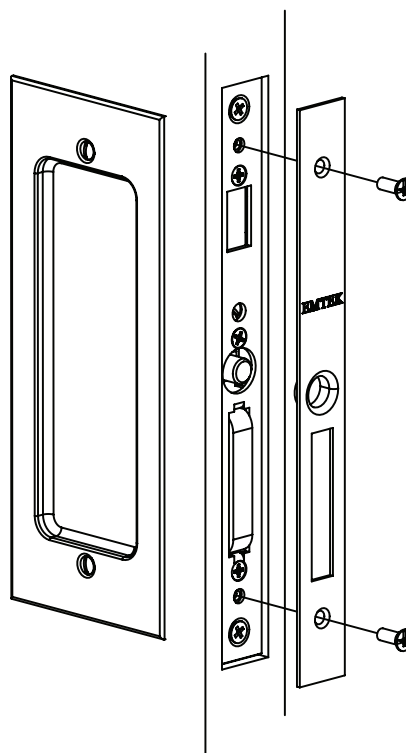


3 Secure both inside & outside plates

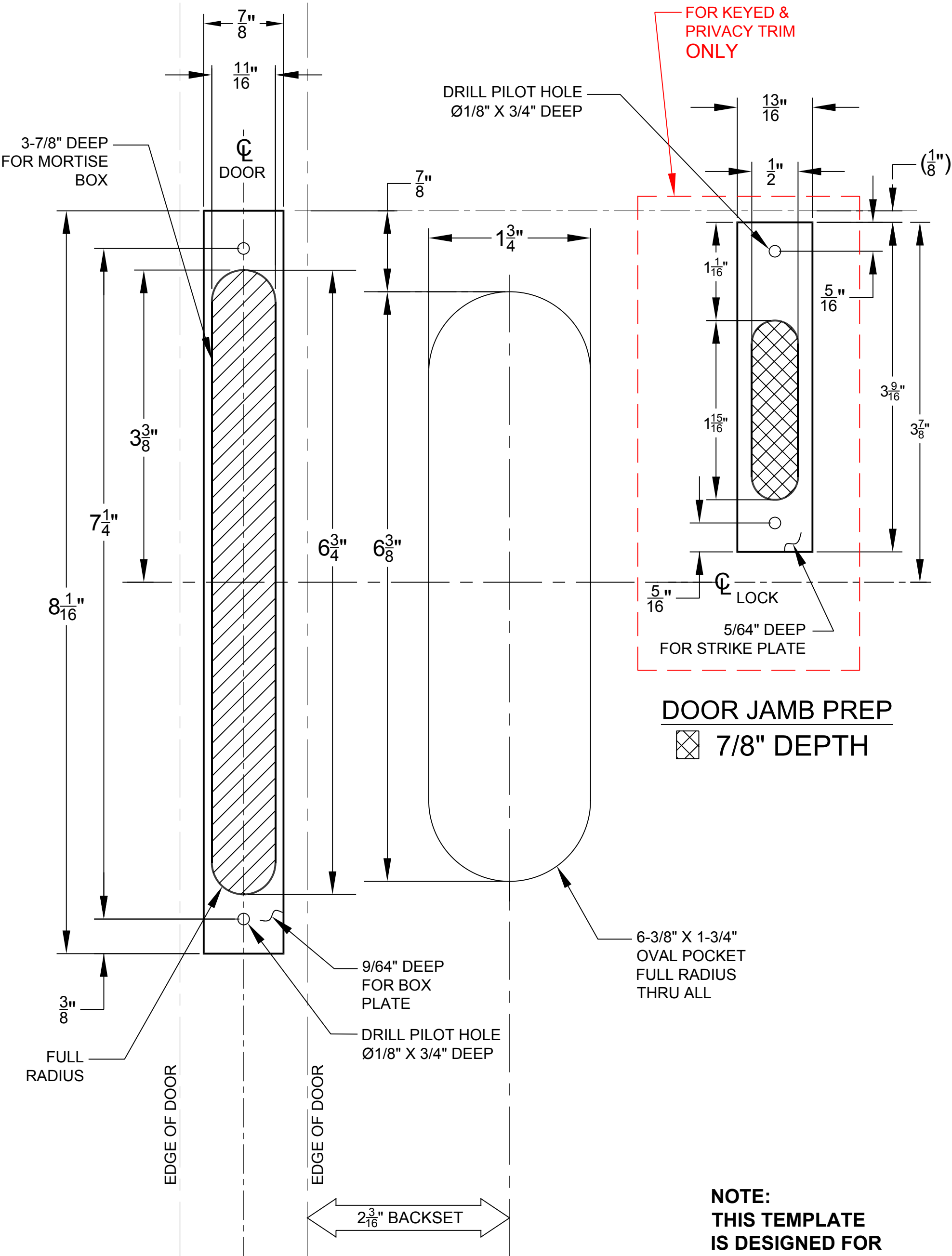


Secure both inside and outside plates using machine screws (provided)

4 Install Trim Plate



NARROW MODERN POCKET DOOR MORTISE HOLE PREPARATION OVAL & RECTANGULAR TRIMS



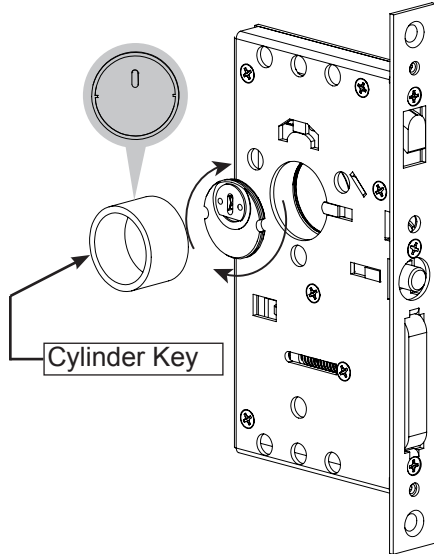
NOTE:
THIS TEMPLATE
IS DESIGNED FOR
1-3/8" THICK DOOR.

*** NOTE: 8-1/2" X 11" COPY OF THIS
TEMPLATE NOT TO SCALE.**

1. Thread Drive Bar Cylinder

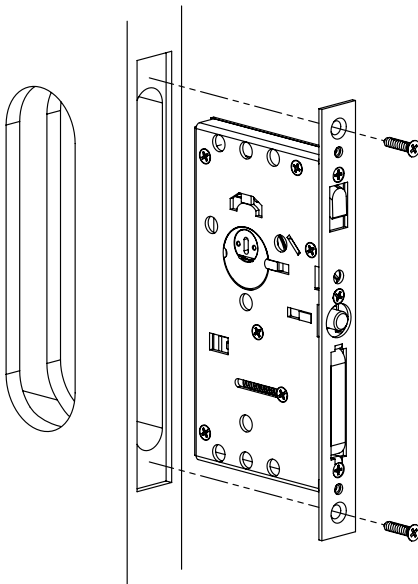
Use Cylinder Key to thread Drive Bar Cylinder clockwise on interior side of door.

Note: Drive Bar Socket must be in the 12 o' clock position as shown.



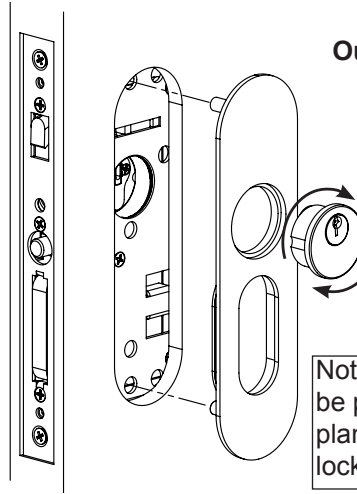
Note: Notches on cylinder must be parallel with the horizontal plane when fully screwed into lock body.

2. Install Lock Body



See template for door prep specifications

3. Install Outside Plate and Thread Key Cylinder



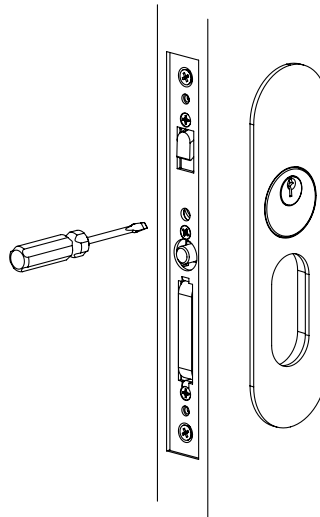
Outside

Install Key Cylinder by threading it clockwise onto lock body plate.

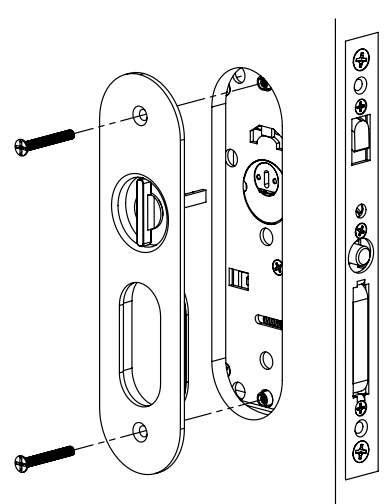
Note: Key Cylinder notches must be parallel with the horizontal plane when fully screwed into lock body.

4. Tighten Key Cylinder

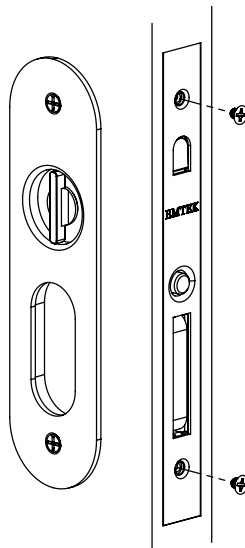
Tighten locking screw to engage notches on cylinder



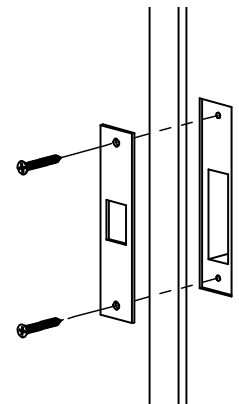
5. Mount Inside Plate



6. Install Trim Plate



Door Jamb Prep.

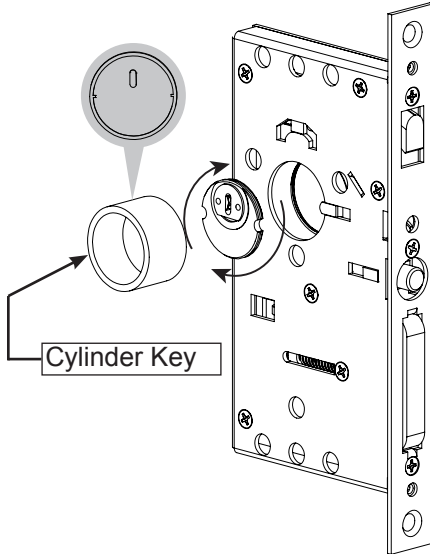


See template for door jamb prep specifications

1. Thread Drive Bar Cylinder

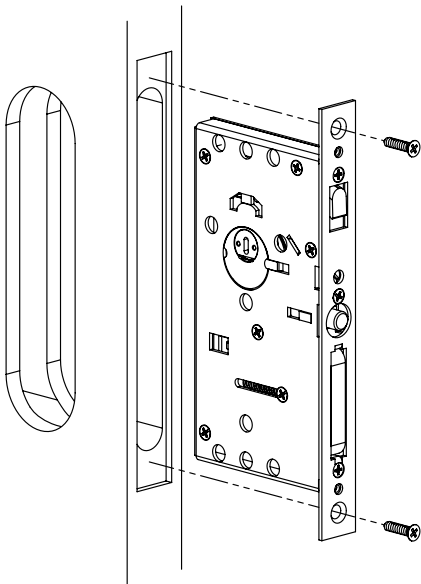
Use Cylinder Key to thread Drive Bar Cylinder clockwise on interior side of door.

Note: Drive Bar Socket must be in the 12 o' clock position as shown.



Note: Notches on cylinder must be parallel with the horizontal plane when fully screwed into lock body.

2. Install Lock Body



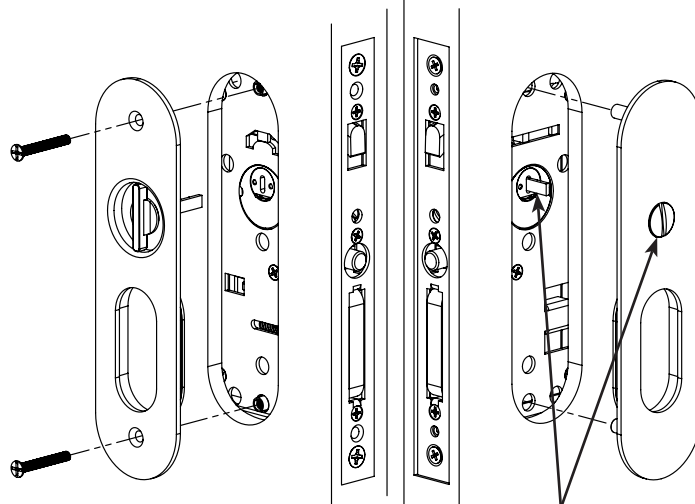
See template for door prep specifications

3. Install Inside and Outside Plates

Inside

Oval trim shown

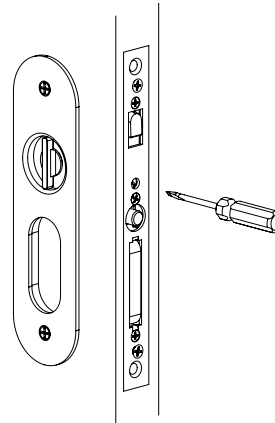
Outside



Align Passage/Privacy button with Thumb-turn spindle and secure trim plates to door.

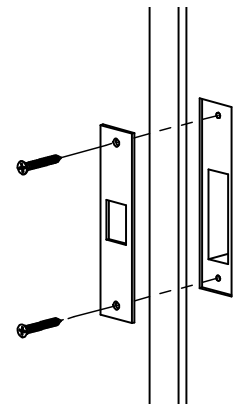
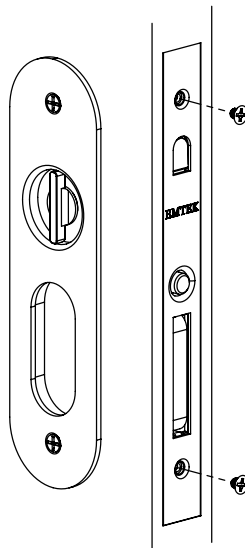
4. Tighten Key Cylinder

Tighten locking screw to engage notches on cylinder



5. Install Trim Plate

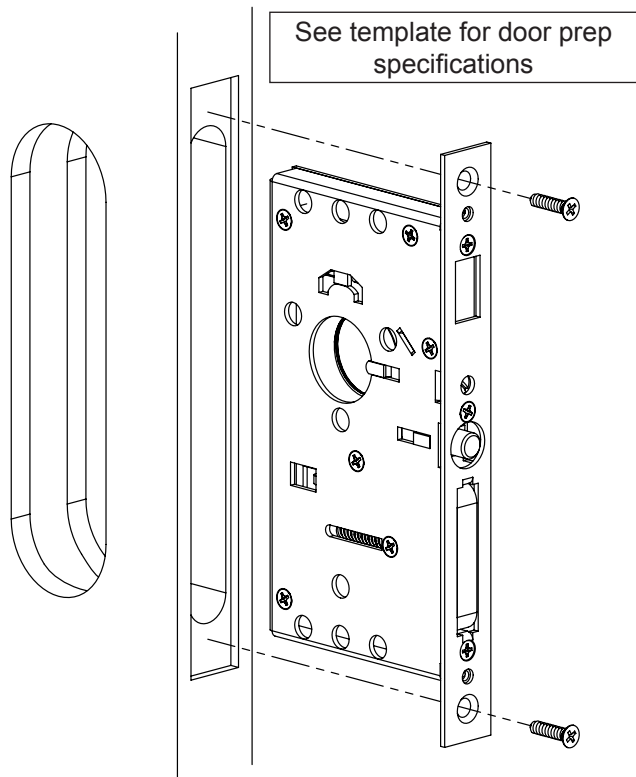
Door Jamb Prep.



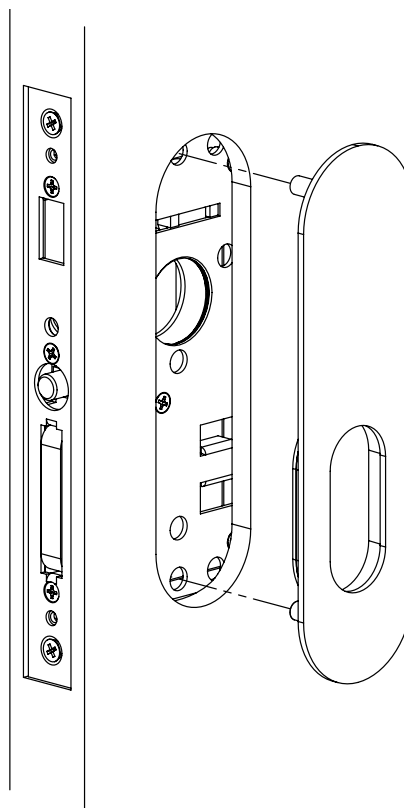
See template for door jamb prep specifications

Installation Guide - Narrow Modern Rectangular and Oval Pocket Mortise Lock - Passage and Dummy

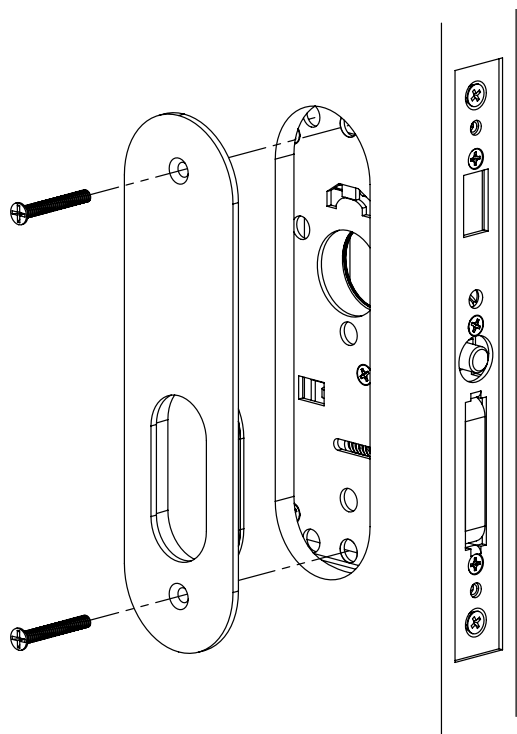
1. Install Lock Body



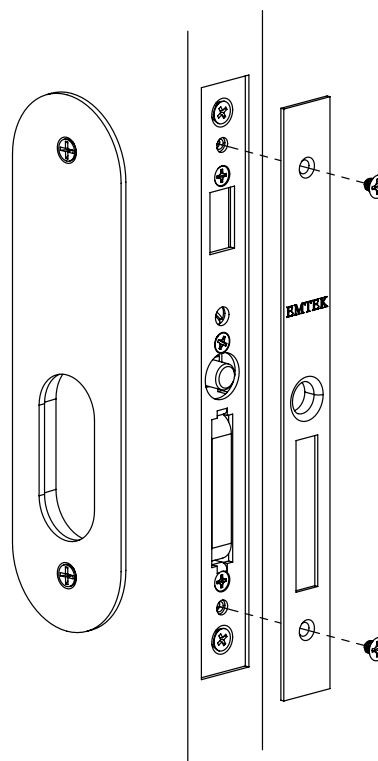
2. Install Outside Plate



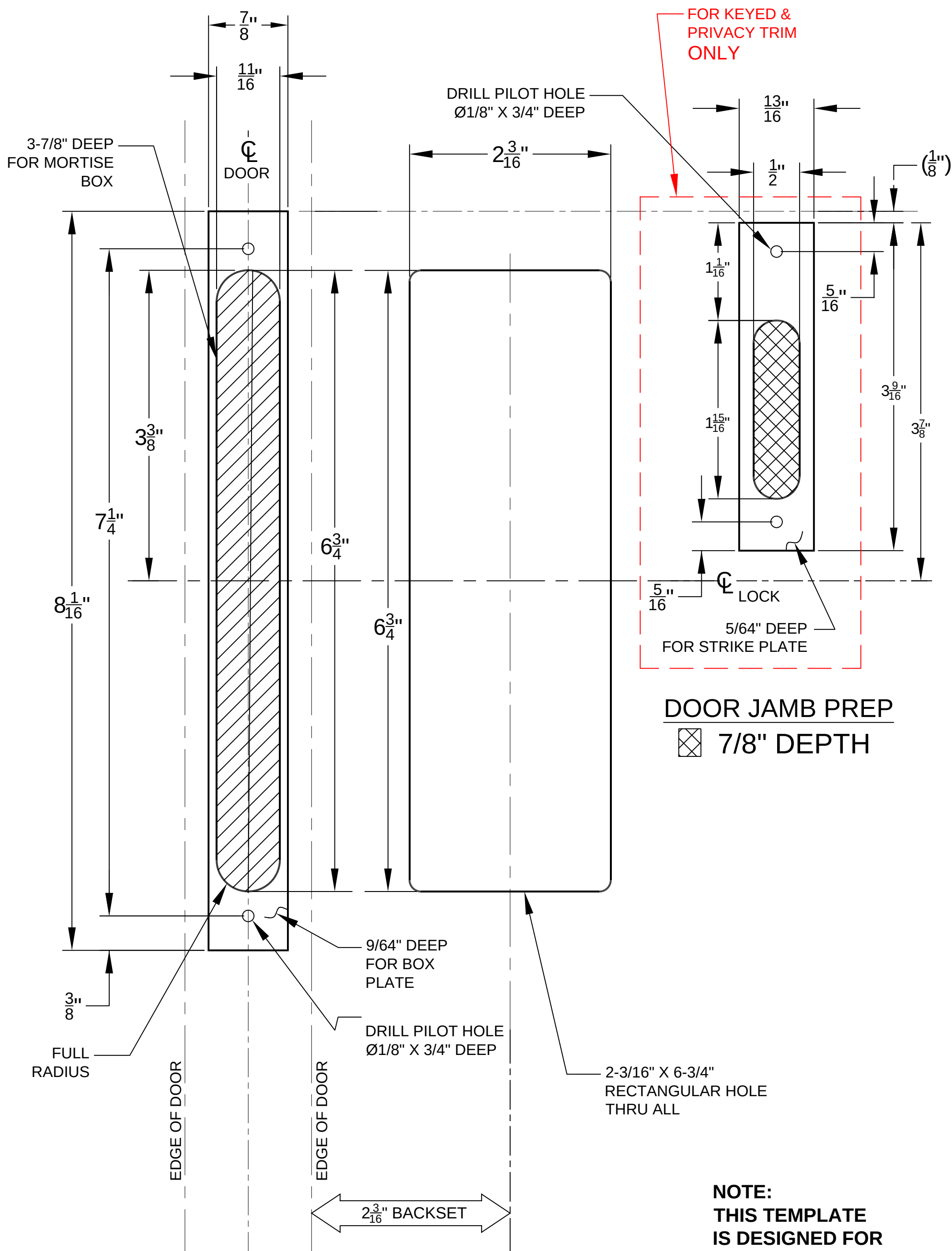
3. Install Inside Plate



4. Install Trim Plate



SANDCAST BRONZE RUSTIC MODERN POCKET DOOR MORTISE HOLE PREPARATION



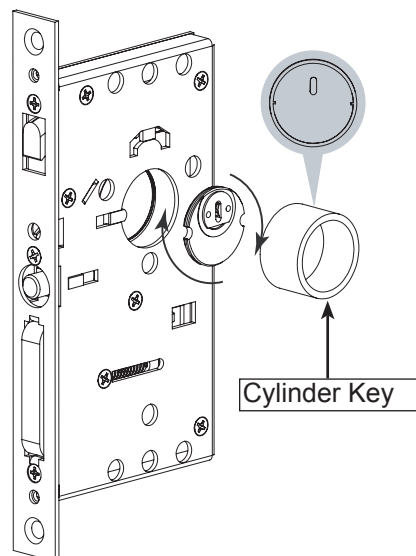
**NOTE:
THIS TEMPLATE
IS DESIGNED FOR
1-3/8" THICK DOOR.**

*** NOTE: 8-1/2" X 11" COPY OF THIS
TEMPLATE NOT TO SCALE.**

Installation Guide: Sandcast Bronze Rustic Modern Rectangular Pocket Mortise Lock Keyed Function

1 Thread Drive Bar Cylinder

Use Cylinder Key to thread Drive Bar Cylinder clockwise on interior side of door.

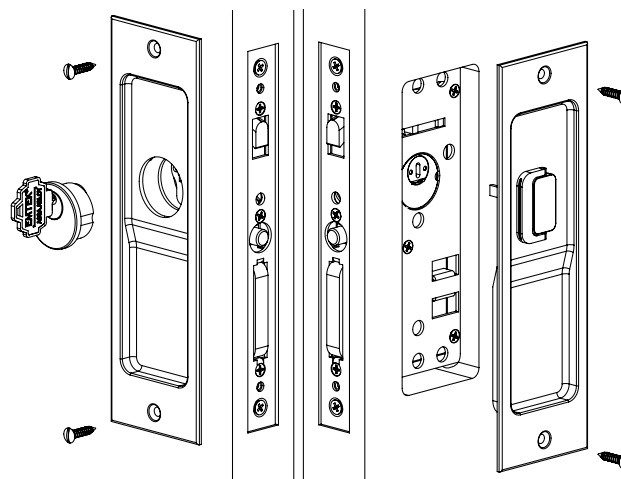


Note: Notches on cylinder must be parallel with the horizontal plane when fully screwed into lock body.

3 Install outside and inside plates

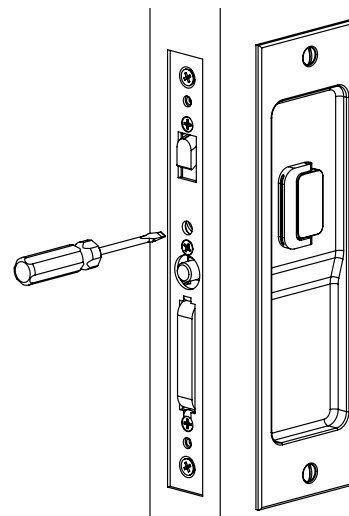
Outside

Inside

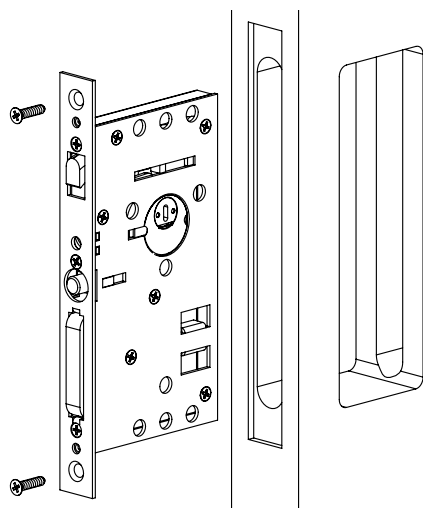


4 Tighten Key Cylinder

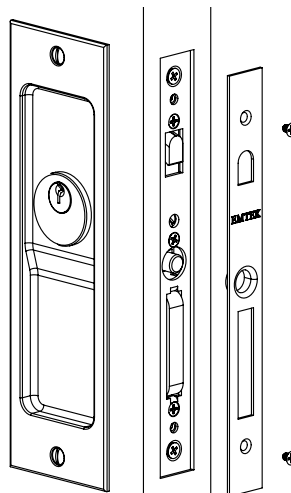
Tighten locking screw to engage notch on cylinder



2 Install Lock Body

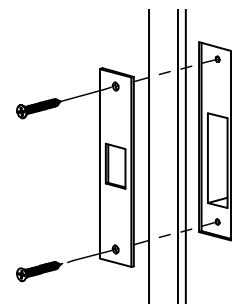


5 Install Trim Plate



6 Install Door Jamb

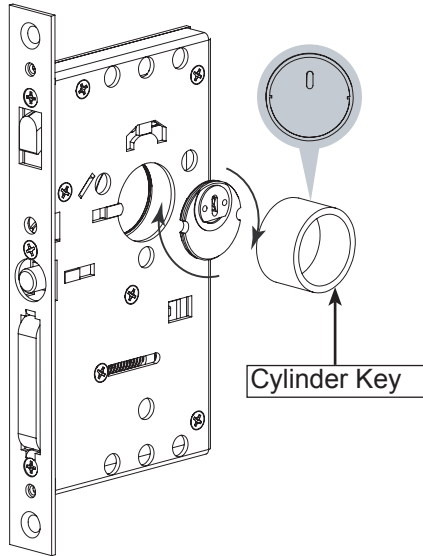
Drill two 7/64" pilot holes



See template for door jamb prep specifications

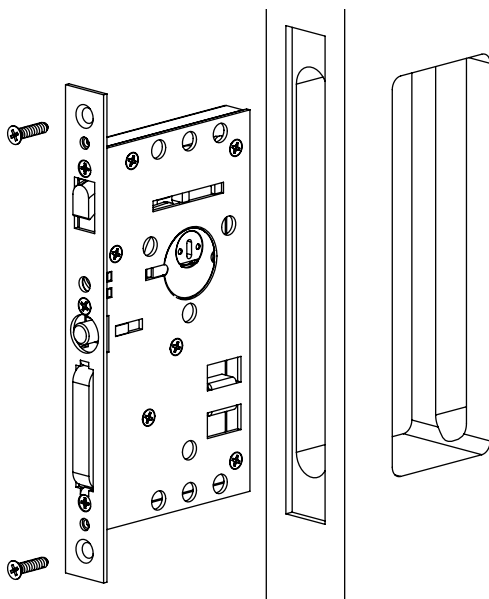
1 Thread Drive Bar Cylinder

Use Cylinder Key to thread Drive Bar Cylinder clockwise on interior side of door.

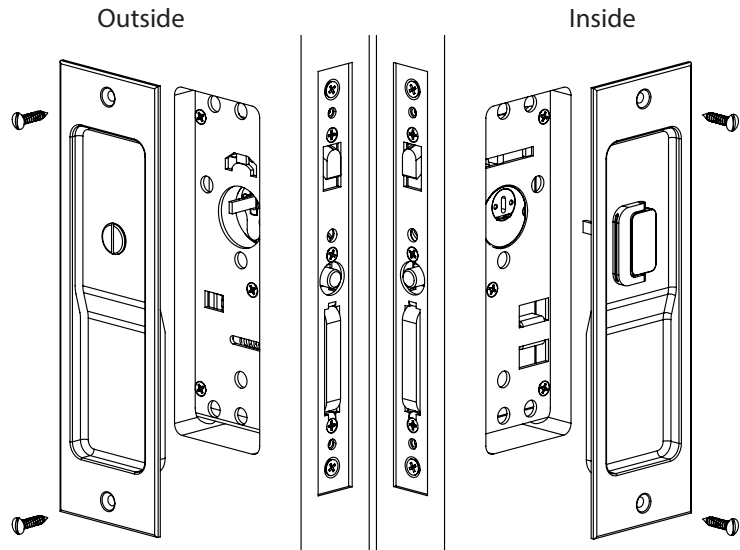


Note: Notches on cylinder must be parallel with the horizontal plane when fully screwed into lock body.

2 Install Lock Body

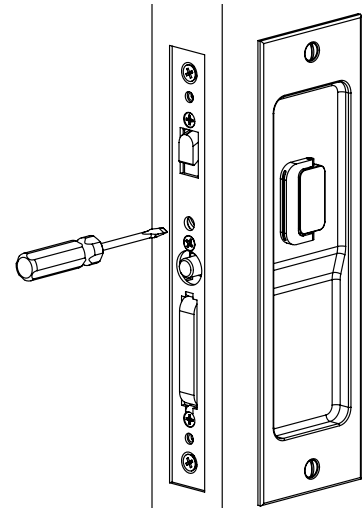


3 Install outside and inside plates

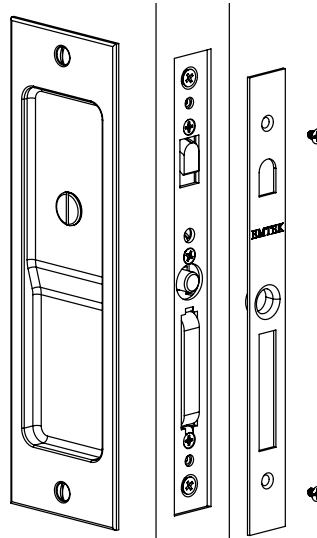


4 Tighten Key Cylinder

Tighten locking screw to engage notch on cylinder

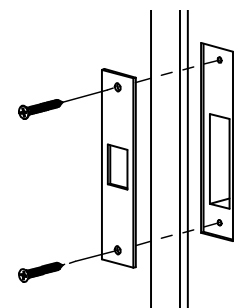


5 Install Trim Plate



6 Install Door Jamb

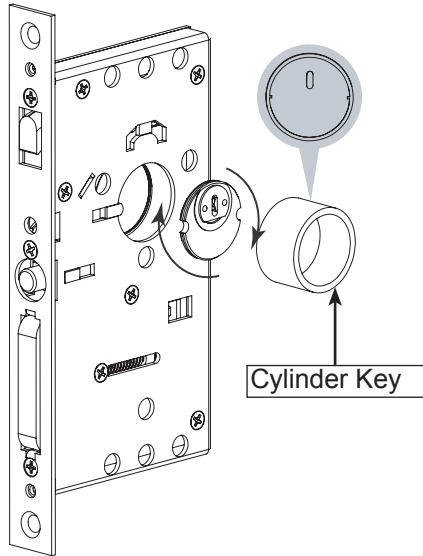
Drill two 7/64" pilot holes



See template for door jamb prep specifications

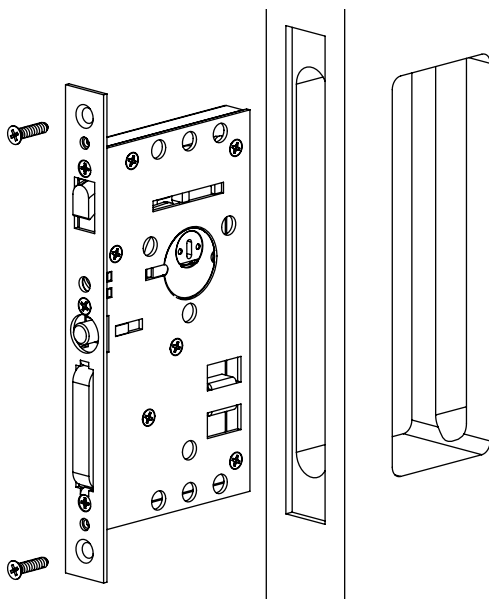
1 Thread Drive Bar Cylinder

Use Cylinder Key to thread Drive Bar Cylinder clockwise on interior side of door.

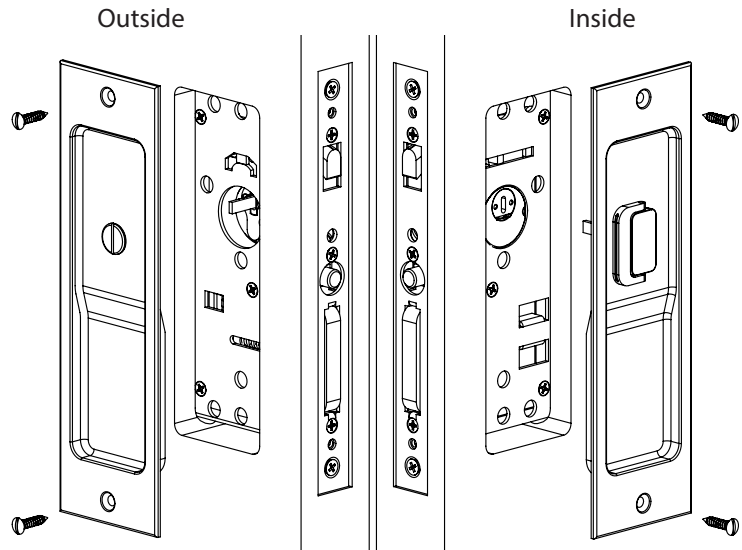


Note: Notches on cylinder must be parallel with the horizontal plane when fully screwed into lock body.

2 Install Lock Body

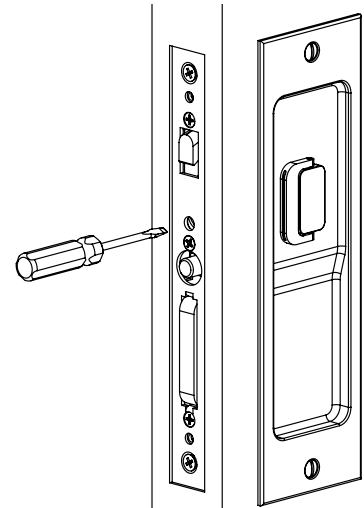


3 Install outside and inside plates

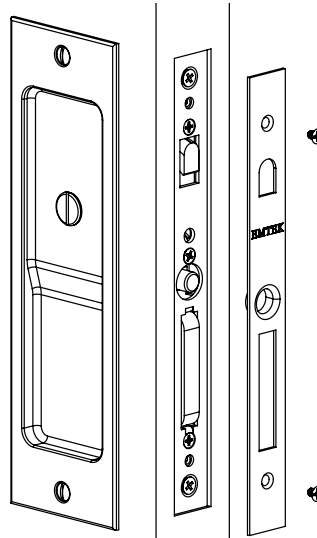


4 Tighten Key Cylinder

Tighten locking screw to engage notch on cylinder

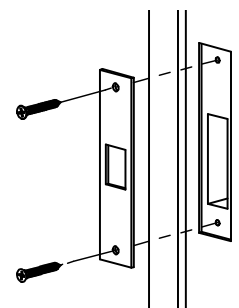


5 Install Trim Plate



6 Install Door Jamb

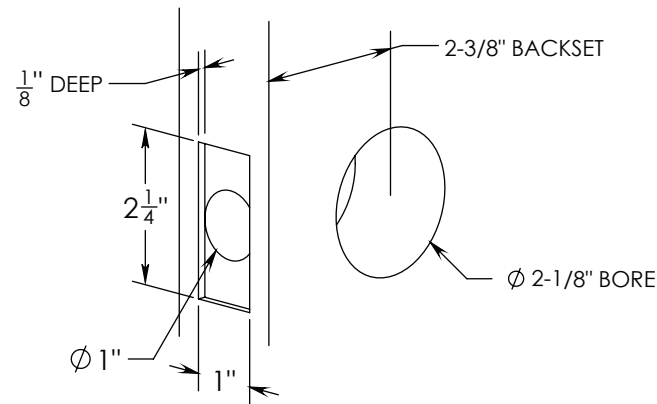
Drill two 7/64" pilot holes



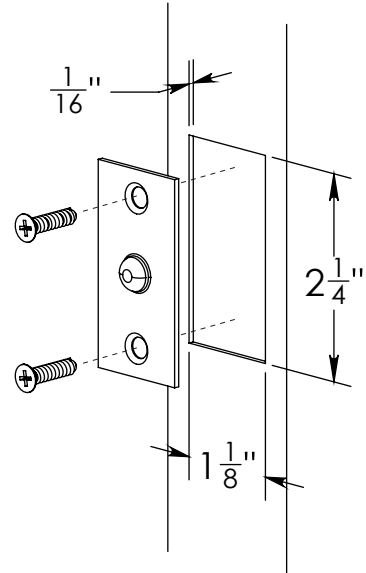
See template for door jamb prep specifications

Installation Instructions - Tubular Pocket Door Lock, Passage Function

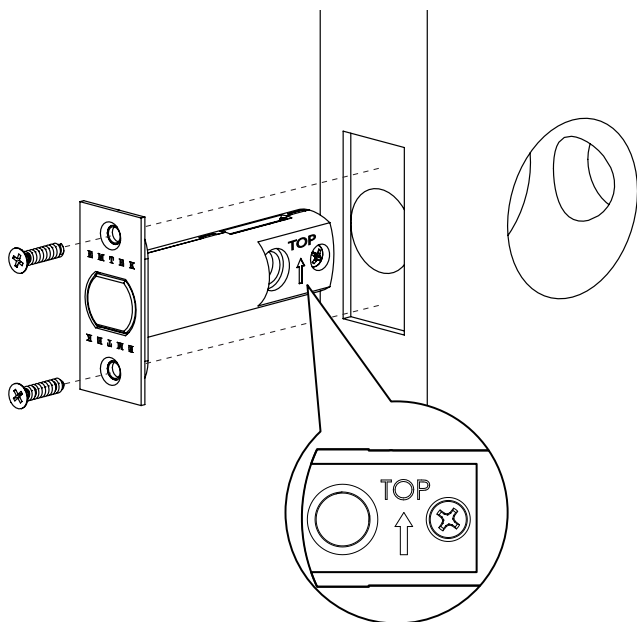
1 Door Prep



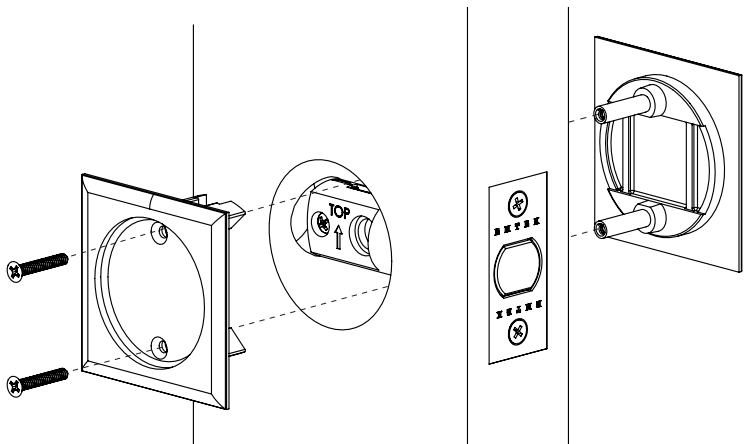
2 Jamb Prep



3 Install Latch

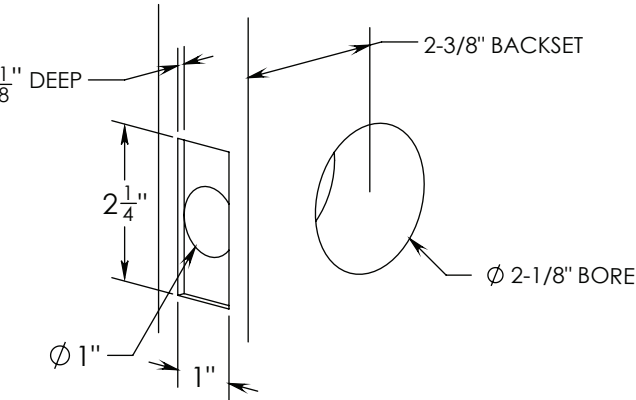


4 Install Interior and Exterior Trims

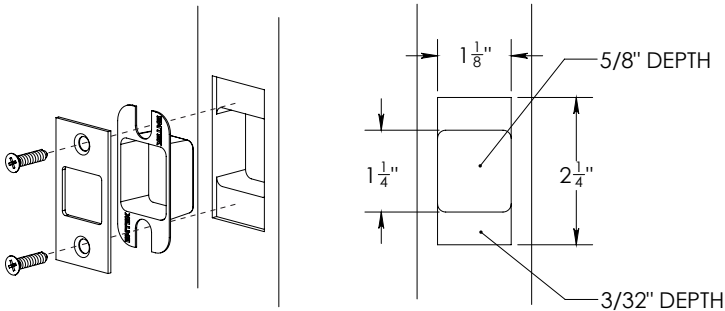


Installation Instructions - Tubular Pocket Door Lock, Privacy Function

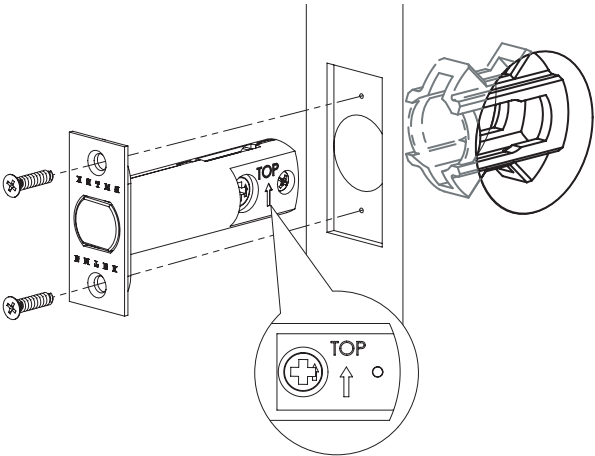
1 Door Prep



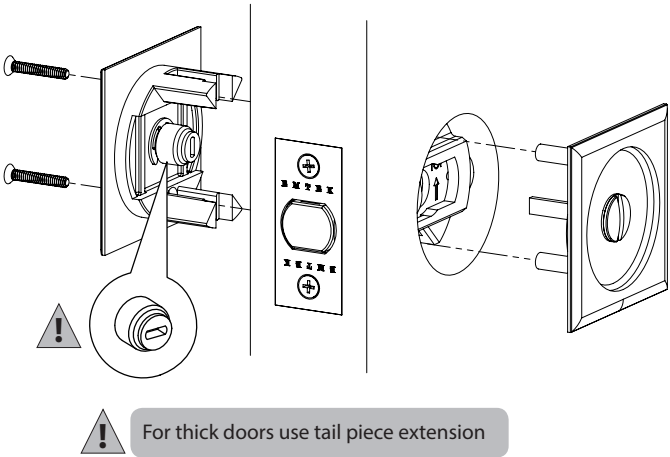
2 Jamb Prep



3 Install Latch

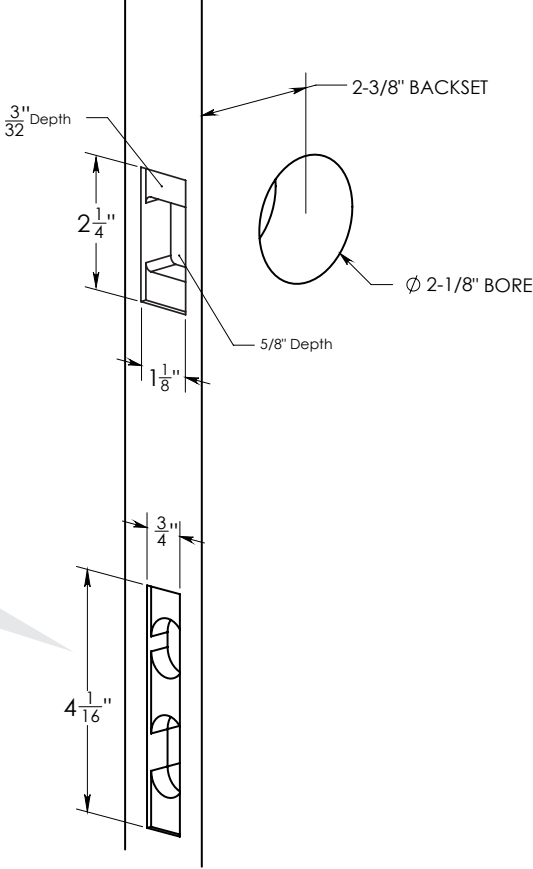
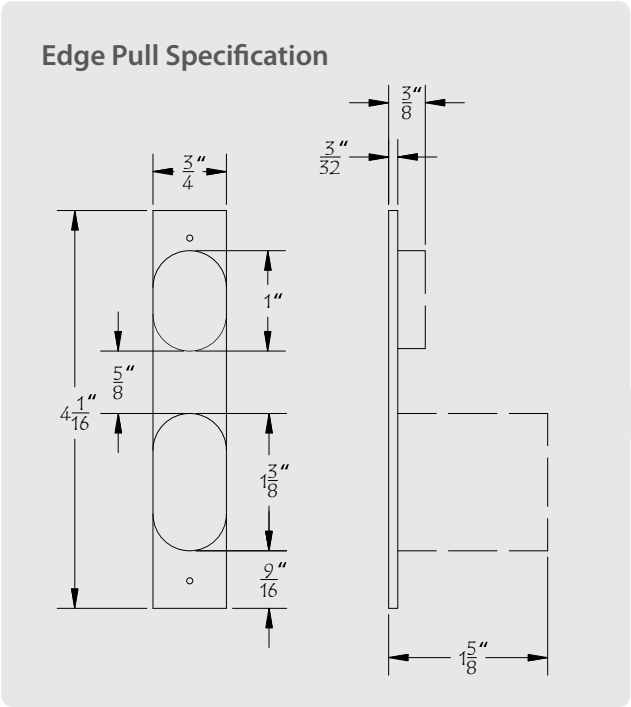


4 Installing Interior and Exterior Trims



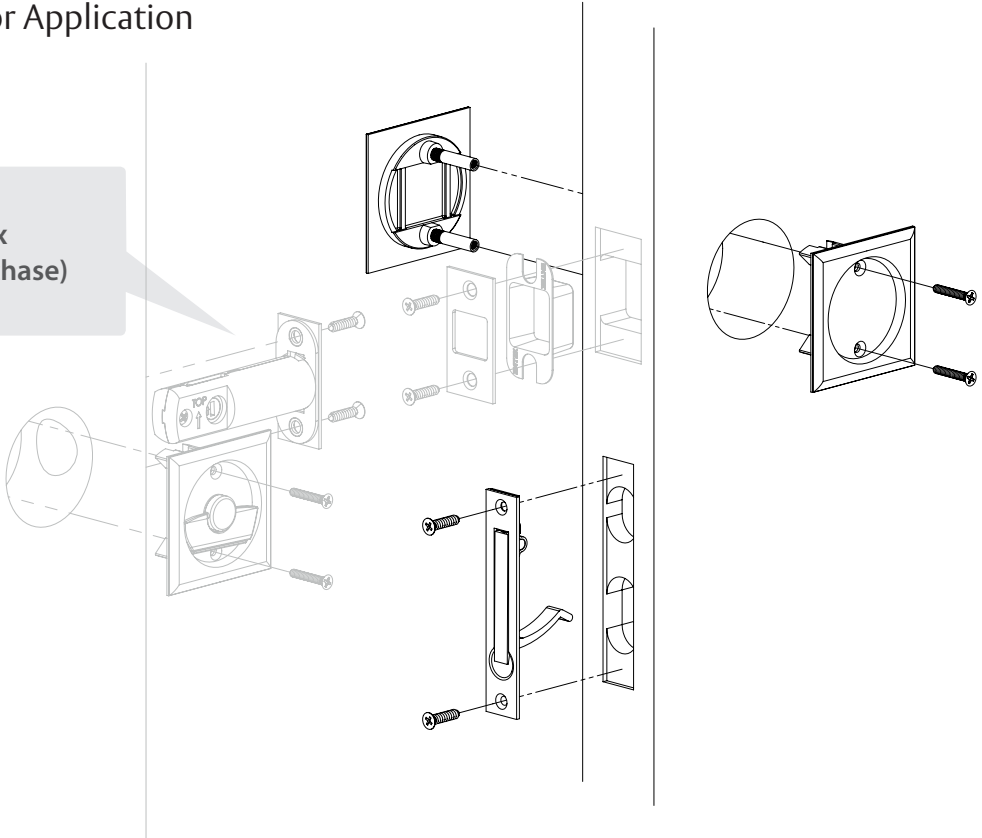
Installation Instructions - Tubular Pocket Door Lock, Dummy for Double Door Application

1 Door Prep



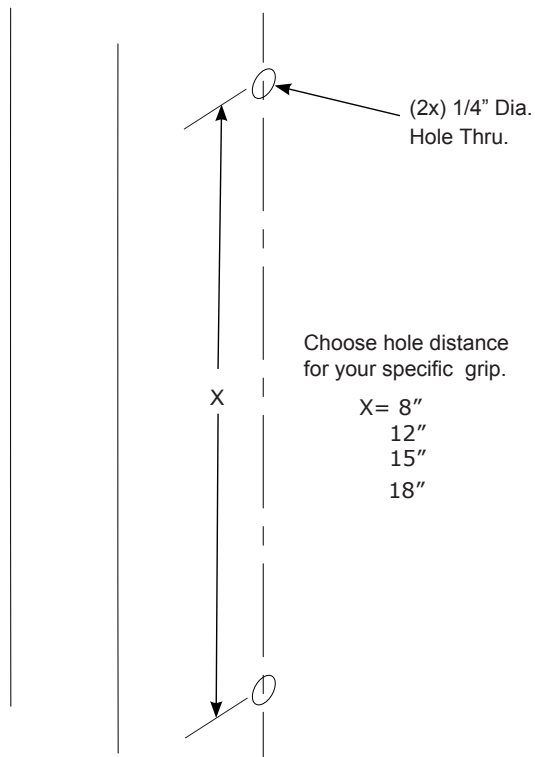
2 Dummy for Double Door Application

Privacy Strike Plate and Dust Box
(Included with Privacy Lock Purchase)



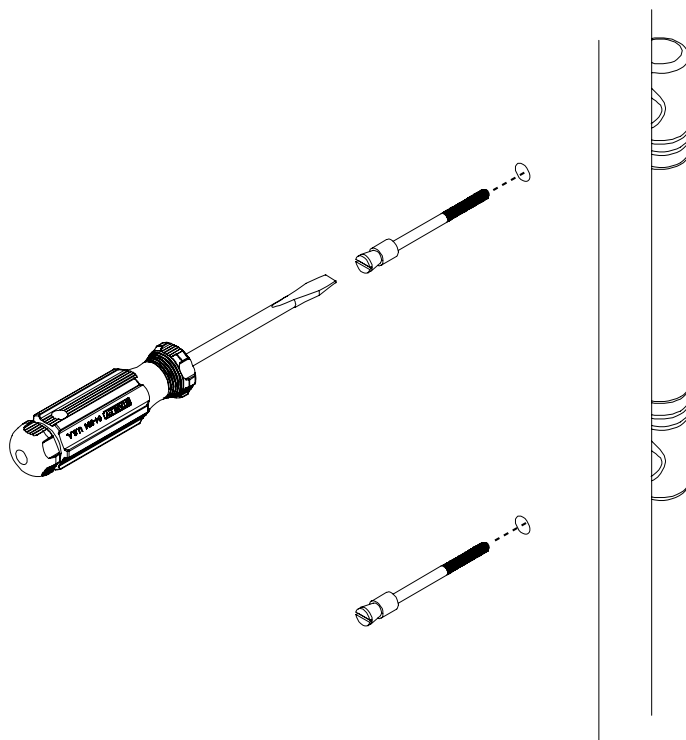
Installation Guide - Back To Back Door Pulls

1. Door Prep



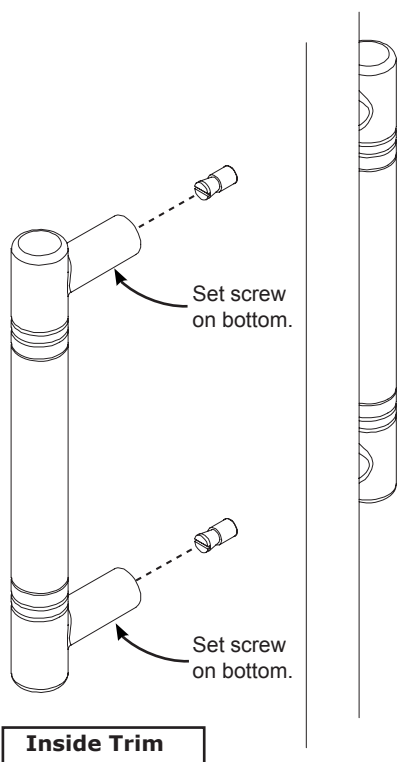
2. Screw Installation

From the inside, install and tighten Bevel Head Machine Screws to outside grip with flat blade screw driver.

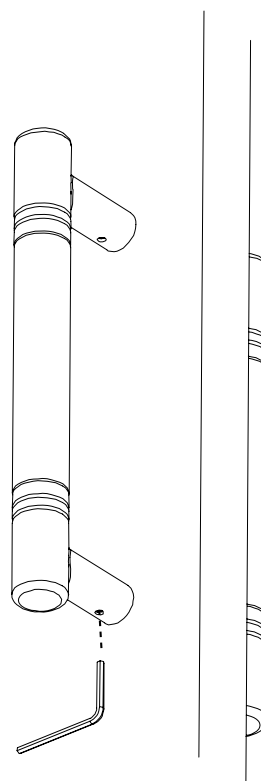


3. Mounting Inside Grip to Door

Mount inside grip on to Bevel Head Machine Screws.

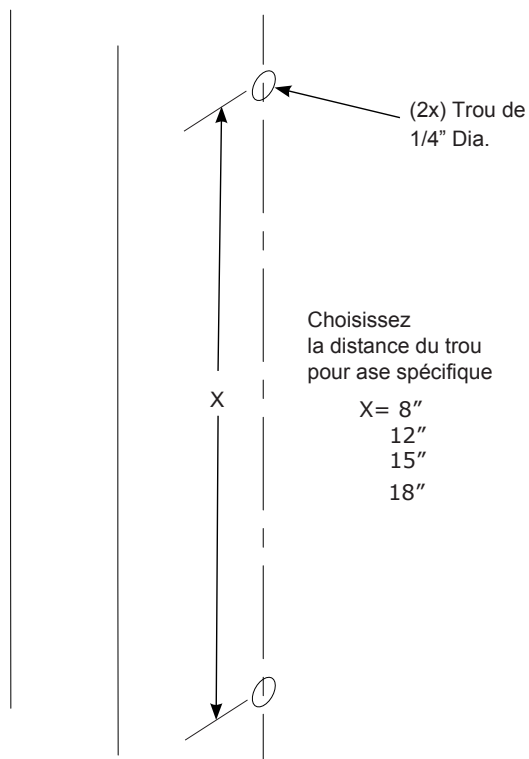


Tighten set screws (2 places) on inside grip. Secure to door with hex wrench (provided).



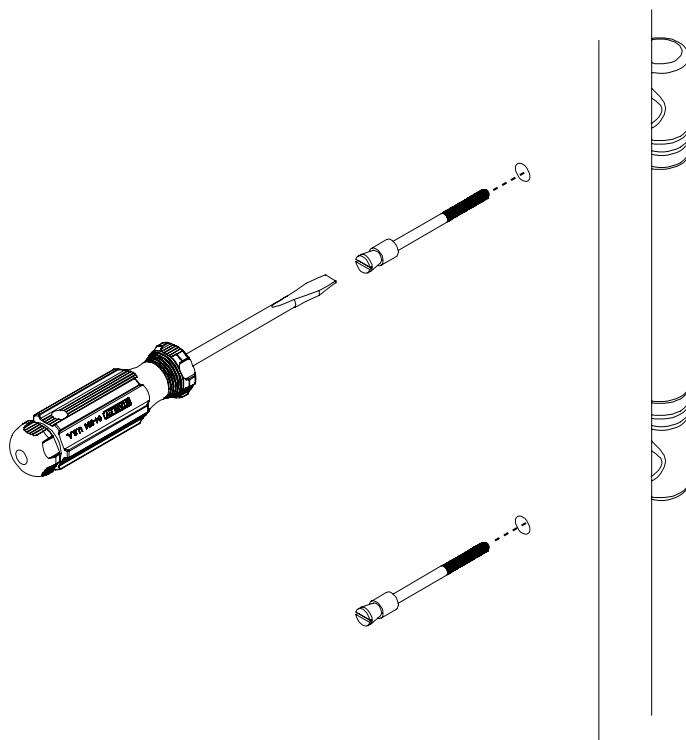
Guide d'installation - Poignées Double Face pour Porte

1. Préparation de la porte



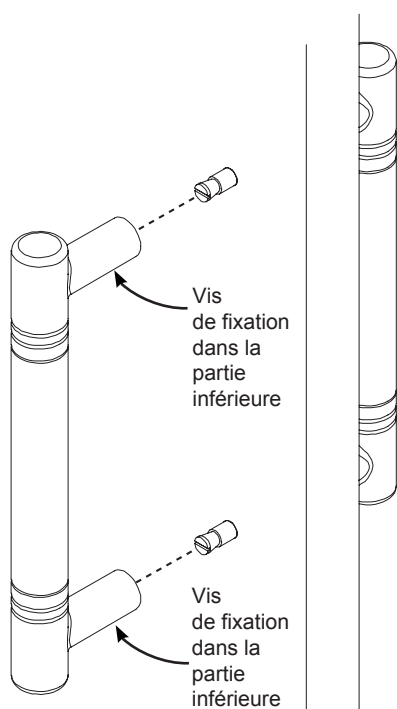
2. Installation des vis

De l'intérieur, installer et fixer les Vis à Tête Biseauté à la ase extérieure avec le tournevis à lame plate



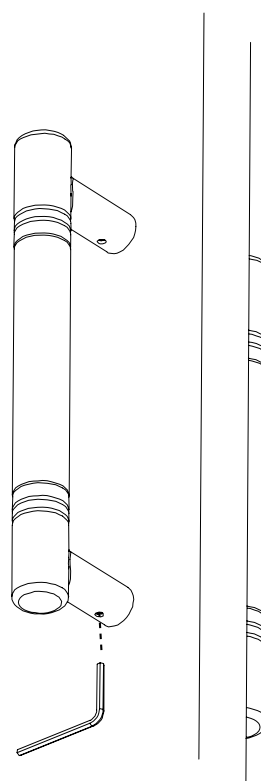
3. Montage de la ase intérieure à la porte

Monter la ase intérieur sur les vis à tête biseauté



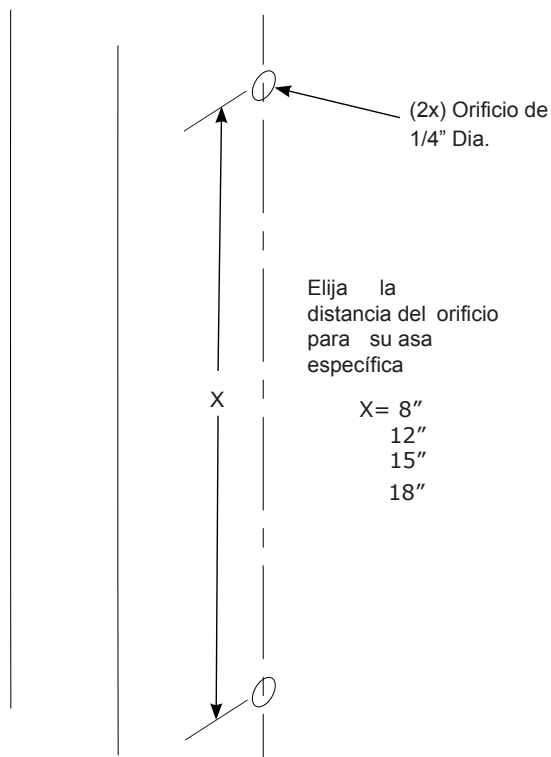
Garniture Intérieure

Serrer les vis (2 places) sur la ase intérieure. Fixer la porte avec la clé hexagonale (fournie).



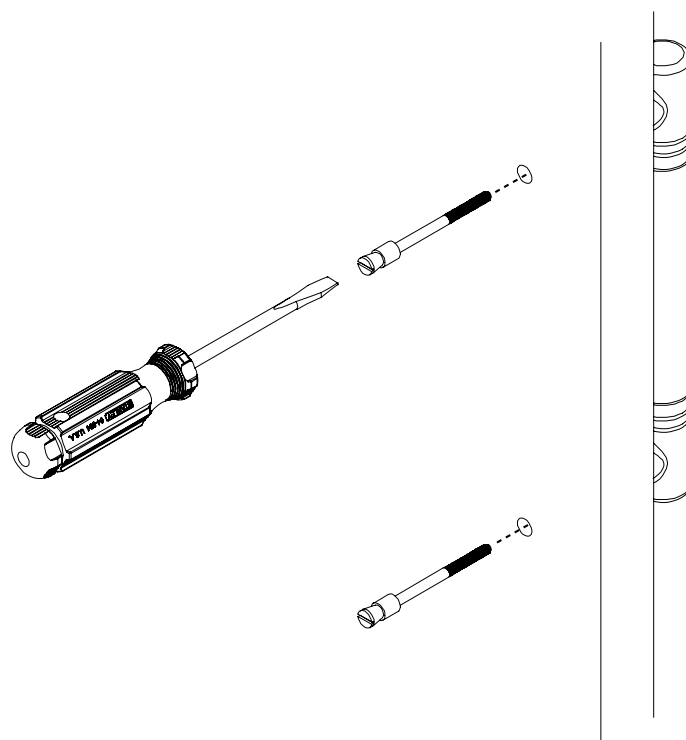
Guía de Instalación - Manijas de Doble Cara para Puerta

1. Preparación de la puerta



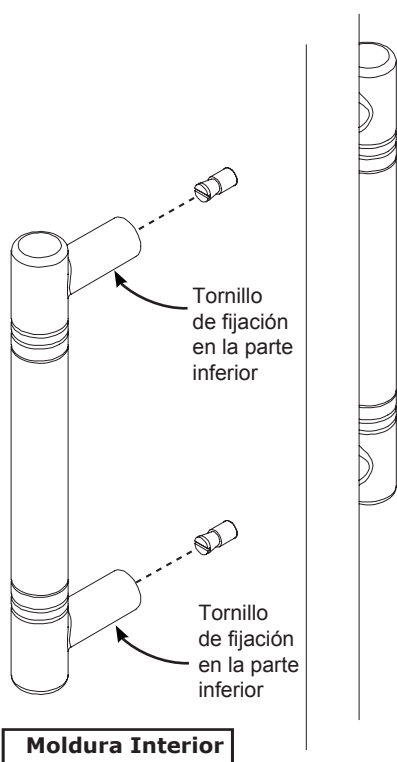
2. Instalación de los tornillos

Desde el interior, instale y asegure los Tornillos de Cabeza Biselada a la asa exterior con el destornillador de hoja plana

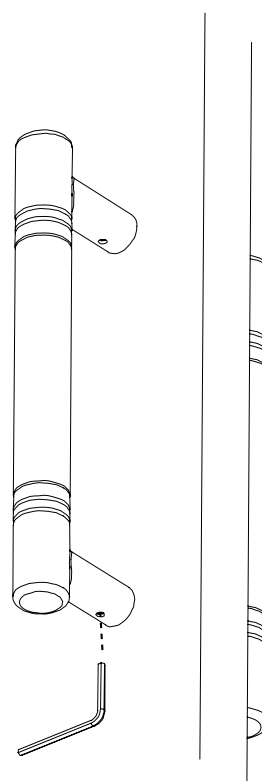


3. Montando el Asa Interior a la Puerta

Monte el asa interior sobre los Tornillos de Cabeza Biselada

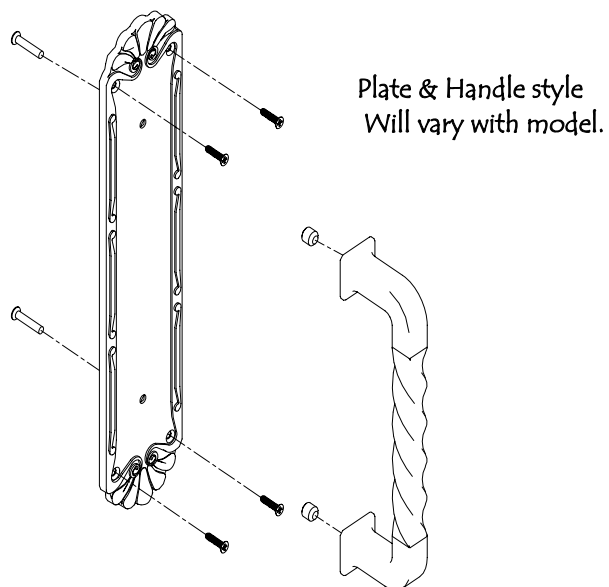


Asegure los tornillos de fijación (2 lugares) en el asa interior. Asegure la puerta con la llave Allen (provista).



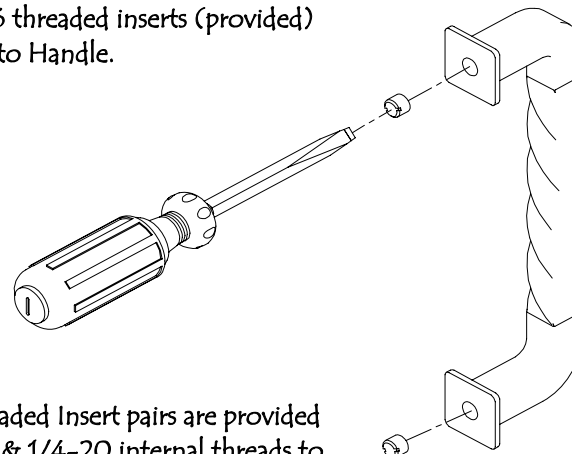
Installation Instructions-8" Brass & Tuscany Door Pulls and Plates.

Exploded View



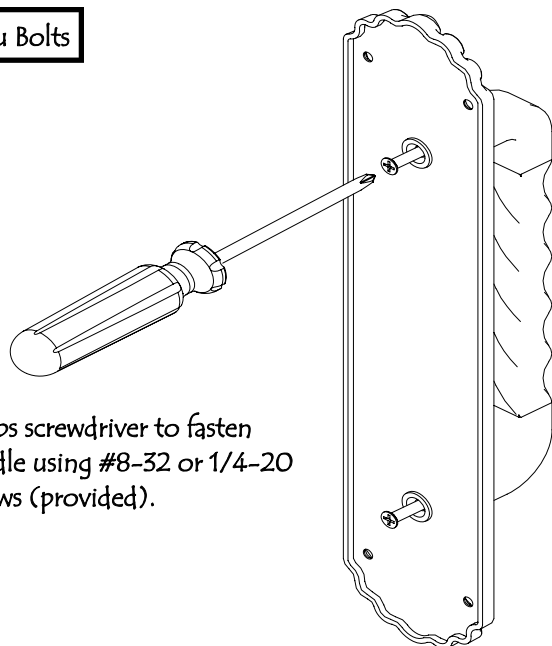
Install Insert Screws

Use flat head screwdriver to install
3/8-16 threaded inserts (provided)
Flush to Handle.



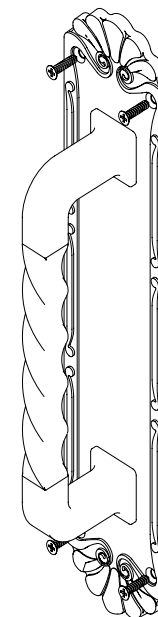
Note: Threaded Insert pairs are provided
With 8-32 & 1/4-20 internal threads to
Be used with corresponding screw size.

Install Thru Bolts



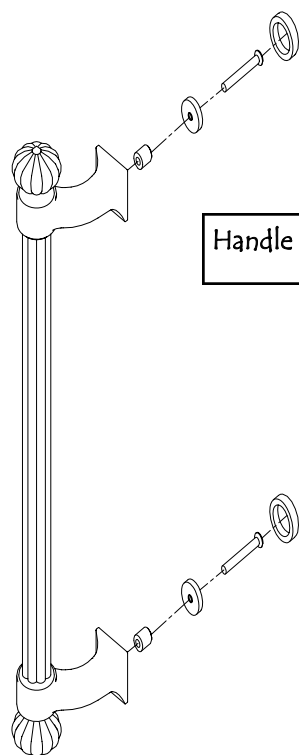
Use #2 Phillips screwdriver to fasten
Plate to Handle using #8-32 or 1/4-20
machine screws (provided).

Tighten Screws



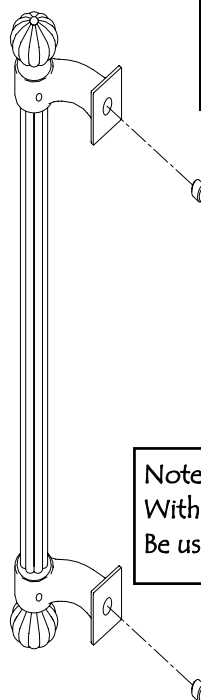
Position Door Pull on door and
Secure with wood screws (provided).

Exploded View



Handle style Will vary with model.

Install Threaded Adapters

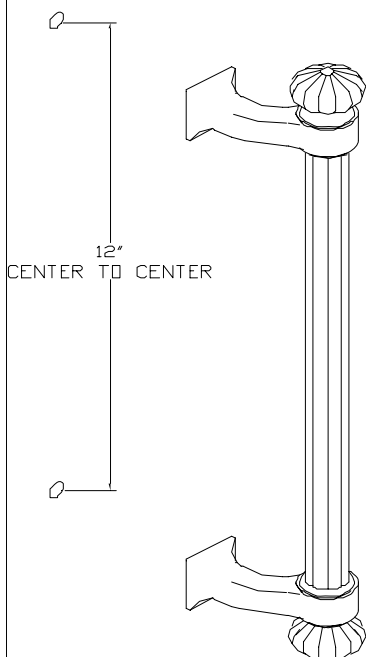


Use flat head screwdriver to install 3/8-16 threaded inserts (provided) Flush to Handle.

Note: Threaded Insert adapters are provided With 8-32 & 1/4-20 internal threads to Be used with corresponding screw size.

Door Preparation

Drill two 3/16" or larger holes 12" apart on center thru door.



Install Thru Bolts & Caps

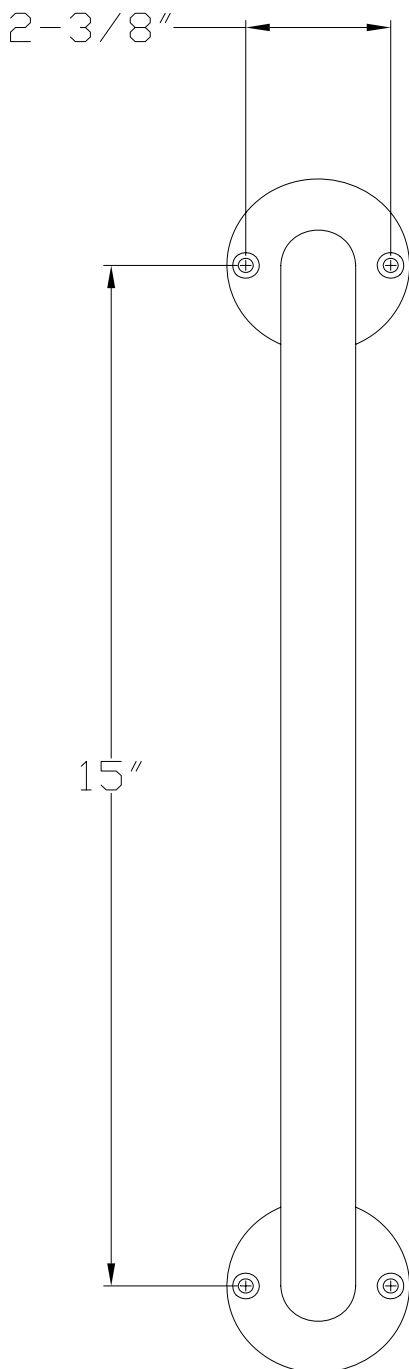
Position Door Pull on door and Secure with #10 wood screws (provided) from the opposite side. Use #2 Phillips screwdriver.



Hand tighten Decorative Cap over threaded washer (provided).

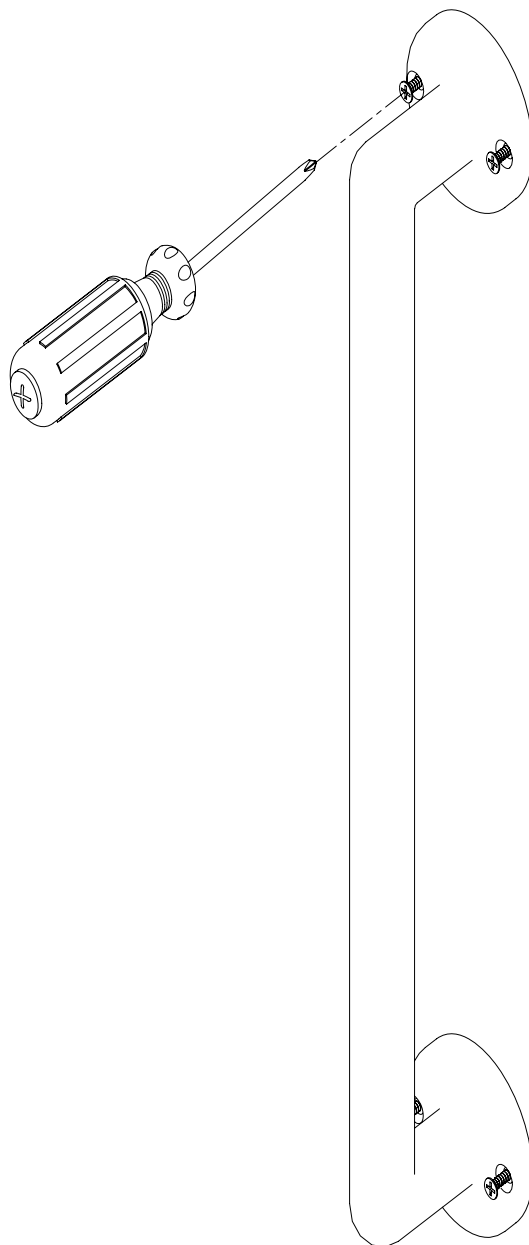
Drill Holes

Drill four 5/32" holes



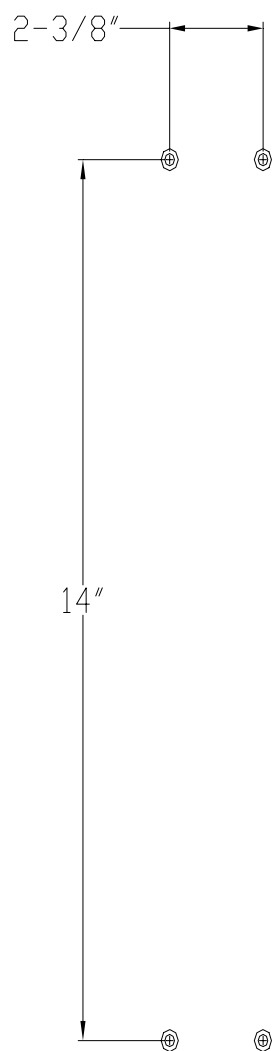
Install Rod Pull

Position Rod Pull on door. Use #2 Phillips head screwdriver to install #10 wood screws (provided).



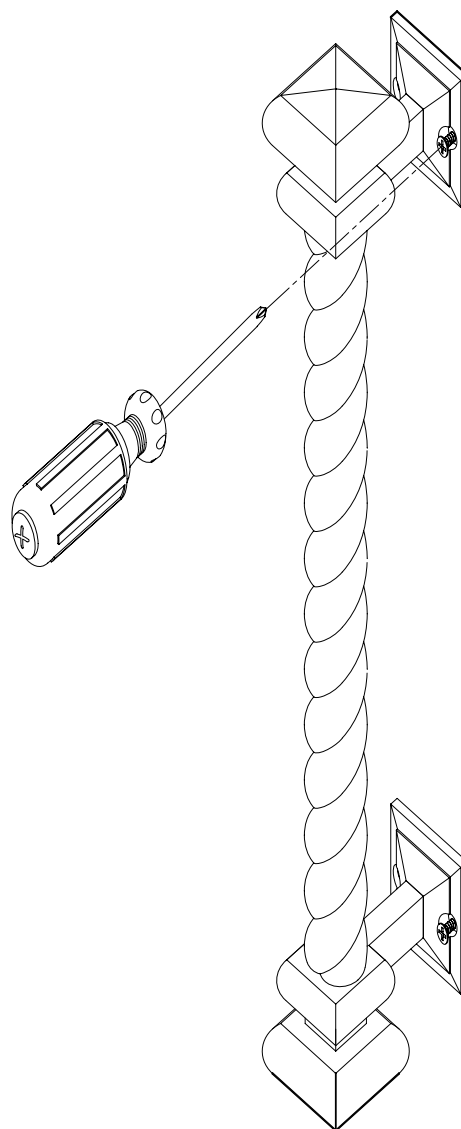
Drill Holes

Drill four 5/32" holes



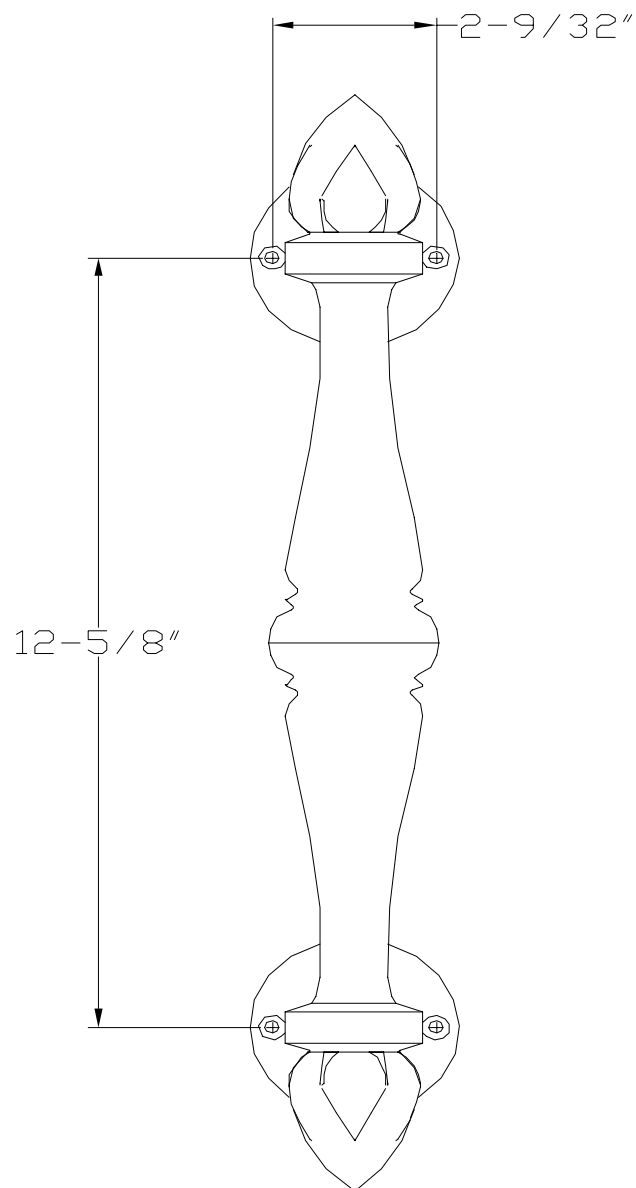
Install Rope Pull

Position Rope Pull on door. Use #2 Phillips head screwdriver to install #10 wood screws (provided).



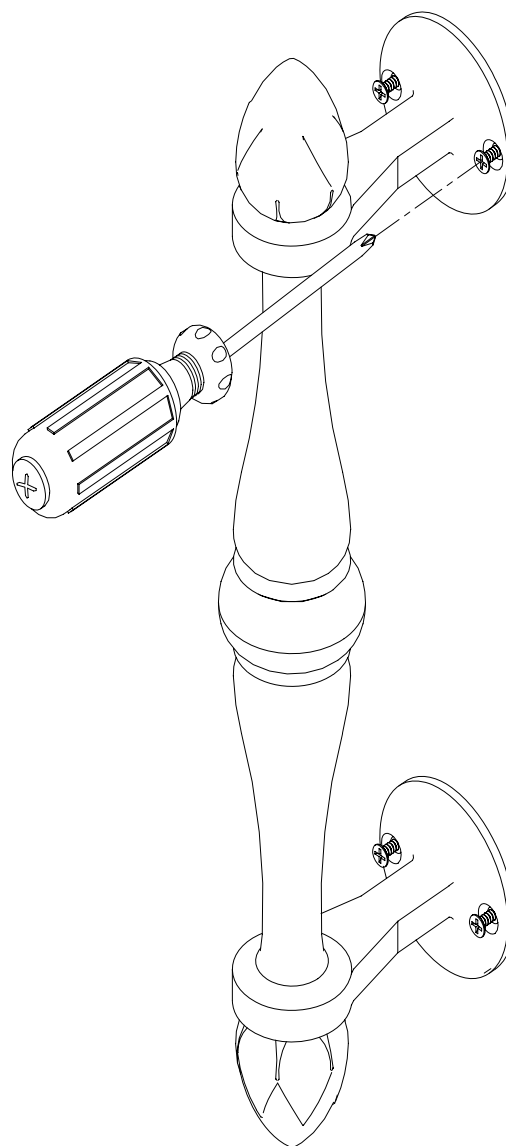
Drill Holes

Drill four 5/32" holes

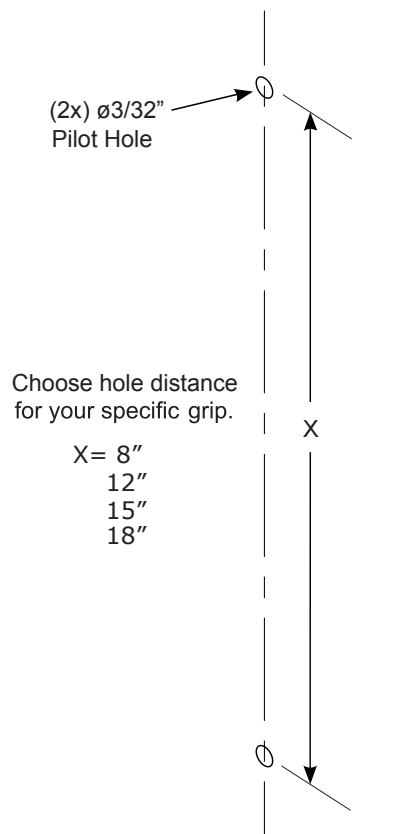


Install Door Pull

Position Door Pull on door. Use #2 Phillips head screwdriver to install #10 wood screws (provided).

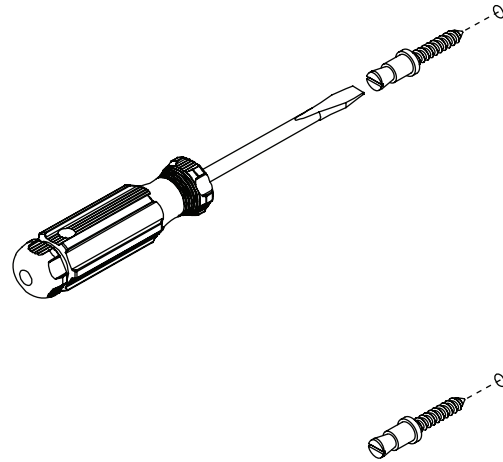


1 Door Prep

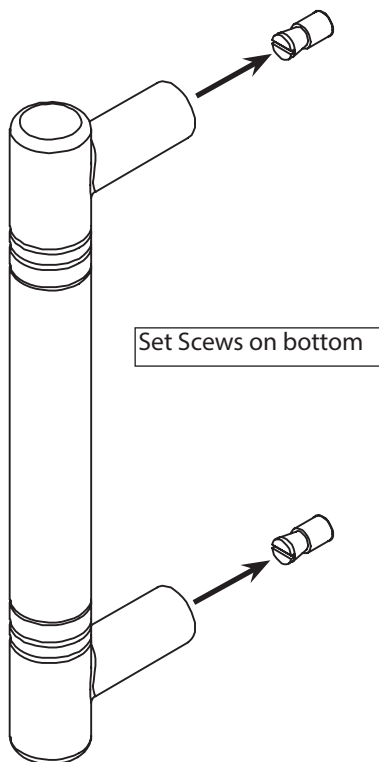


2 Install Screws

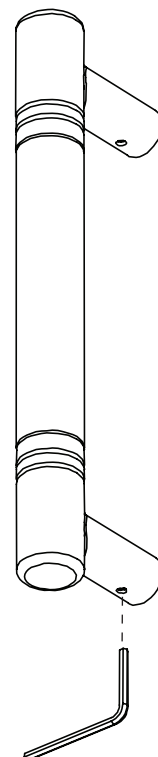
Use a flat head screw driver to thread the screws clockwise into the door.



3 Mount Pull to door

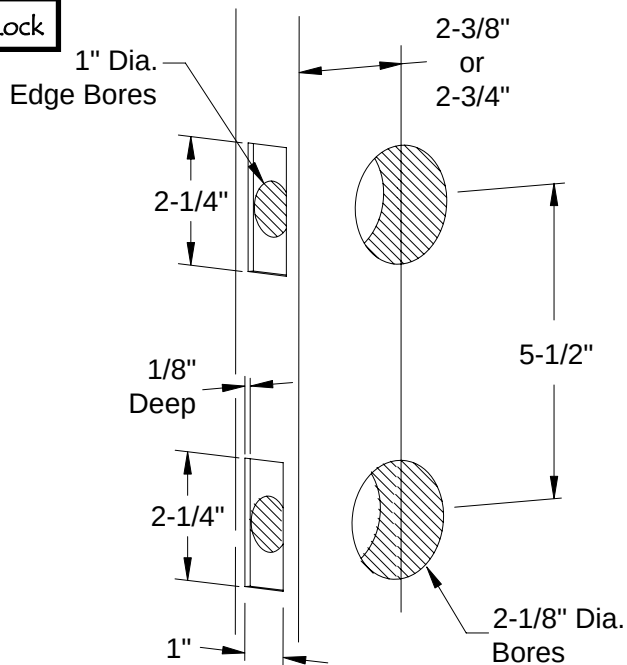


4 Tighten set screws

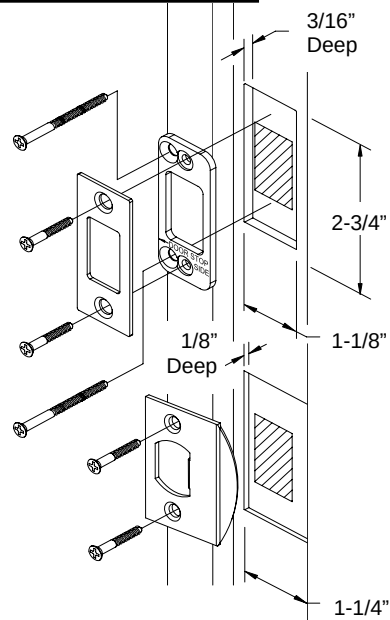


Installation Instructions-Tubular Monolithic Entry Set - Single Cylinder Deadbolt

Door Prep - Active Lock

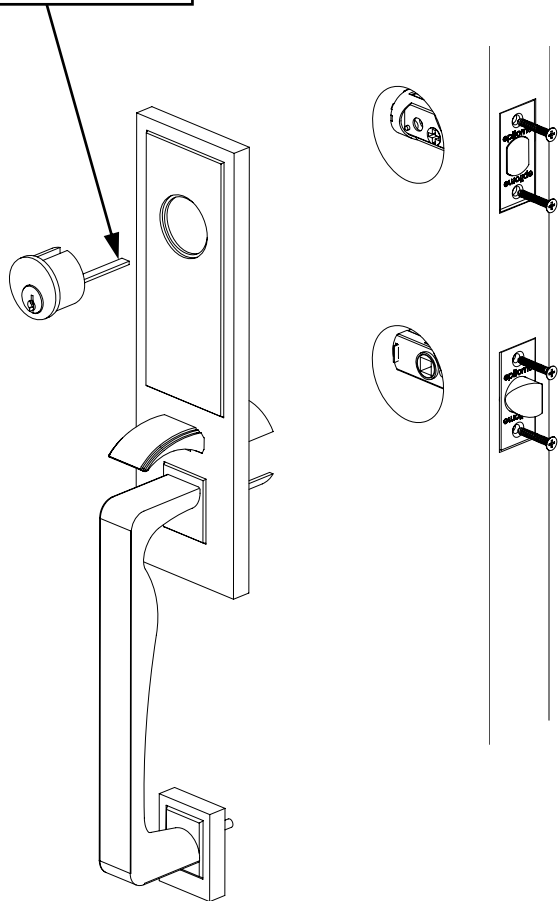


Door Jamb for Active Locks

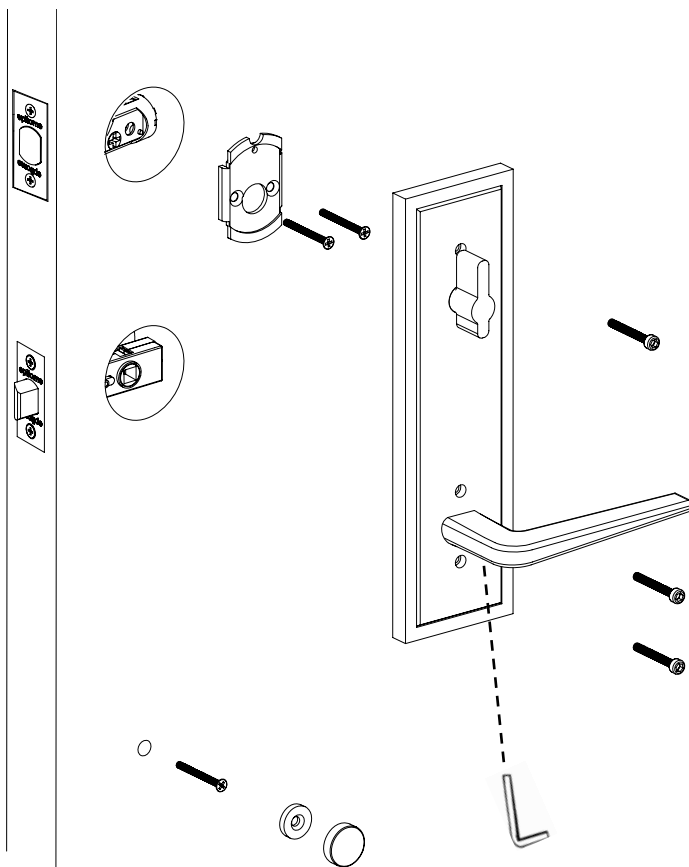


Outside Trim

Tailpiece Horizontal



Inside Trim



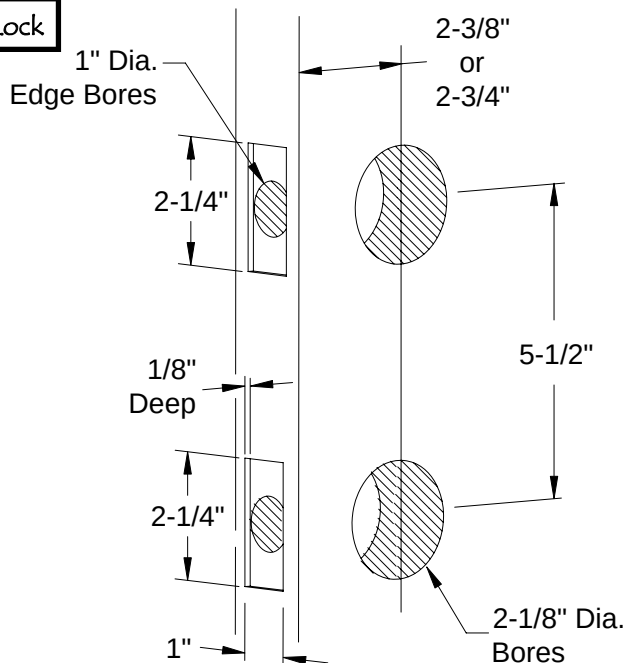
Plates and grip vary depending on style.

epitome[®]
ASSA ABLOY

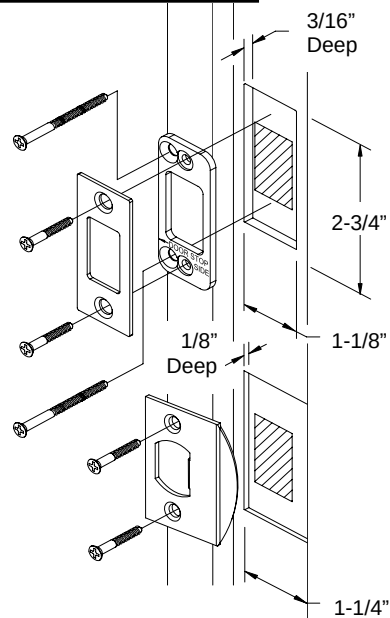
After lock has been installed tighten set screw with allen wrench.

Installation Instructions-Tubular Monolithic Entry Set - Double Cylinder Deadbolt

Door Prep - Active Lock

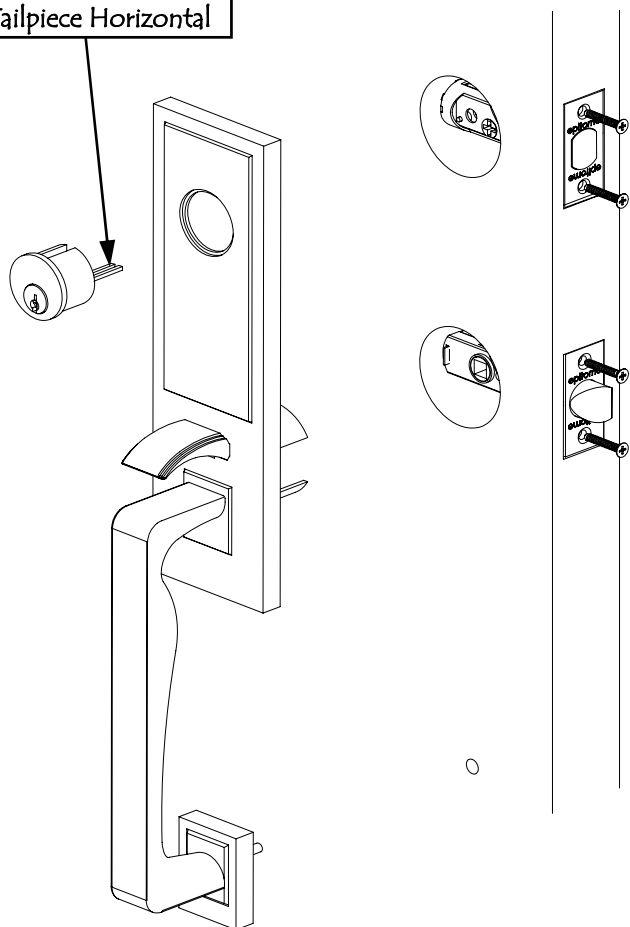


Door Jamb for Active Locks



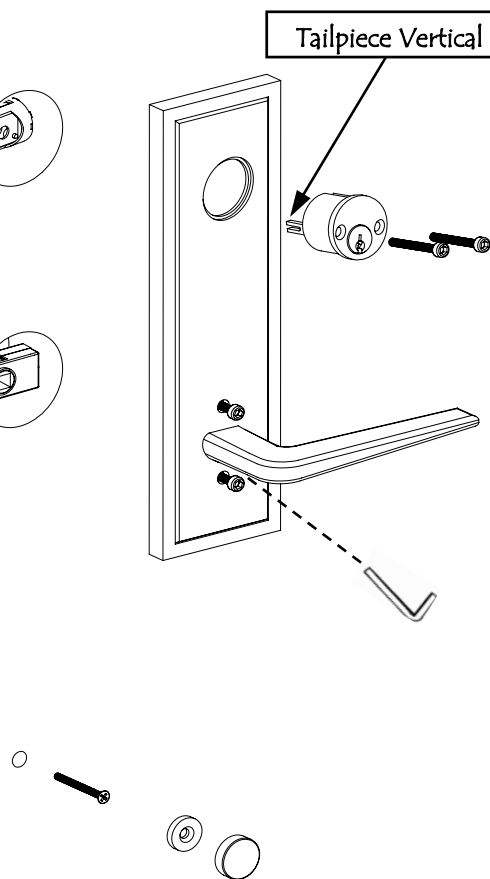
Outside Trim

Tailpiece Horizontal



Inside Trim

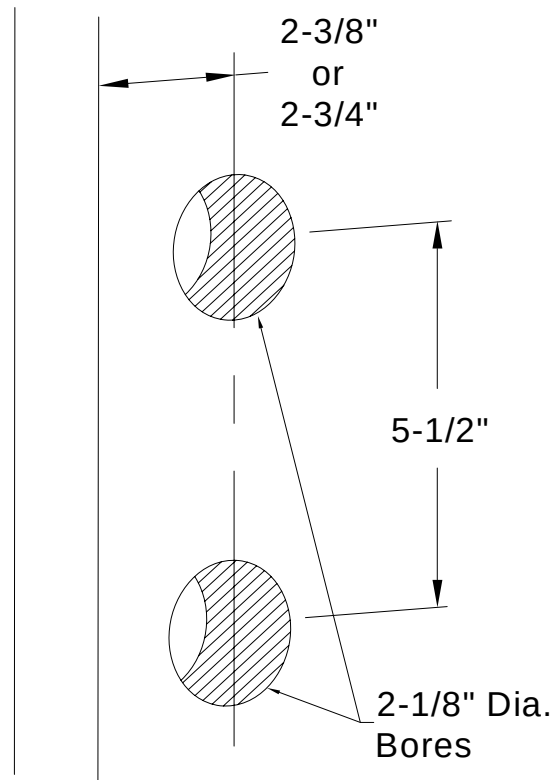
Tailpiece Vertical



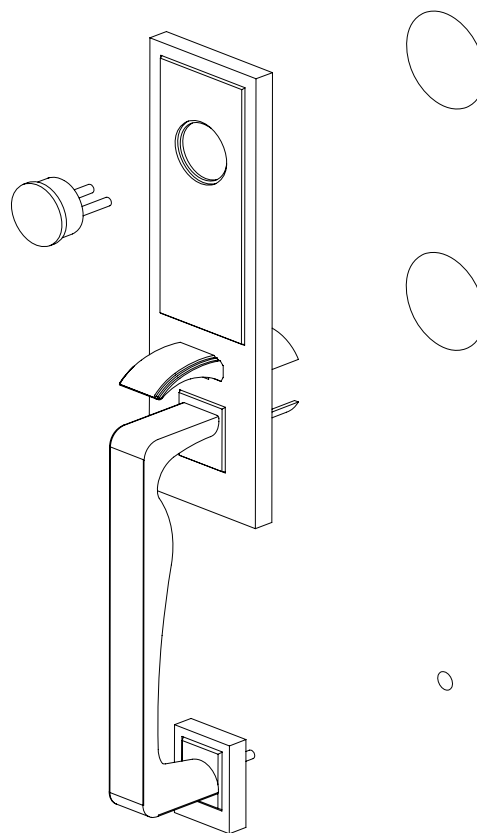
epitome[®]
ASSA ABLOY

Installation Instructions– Dummy Entryset

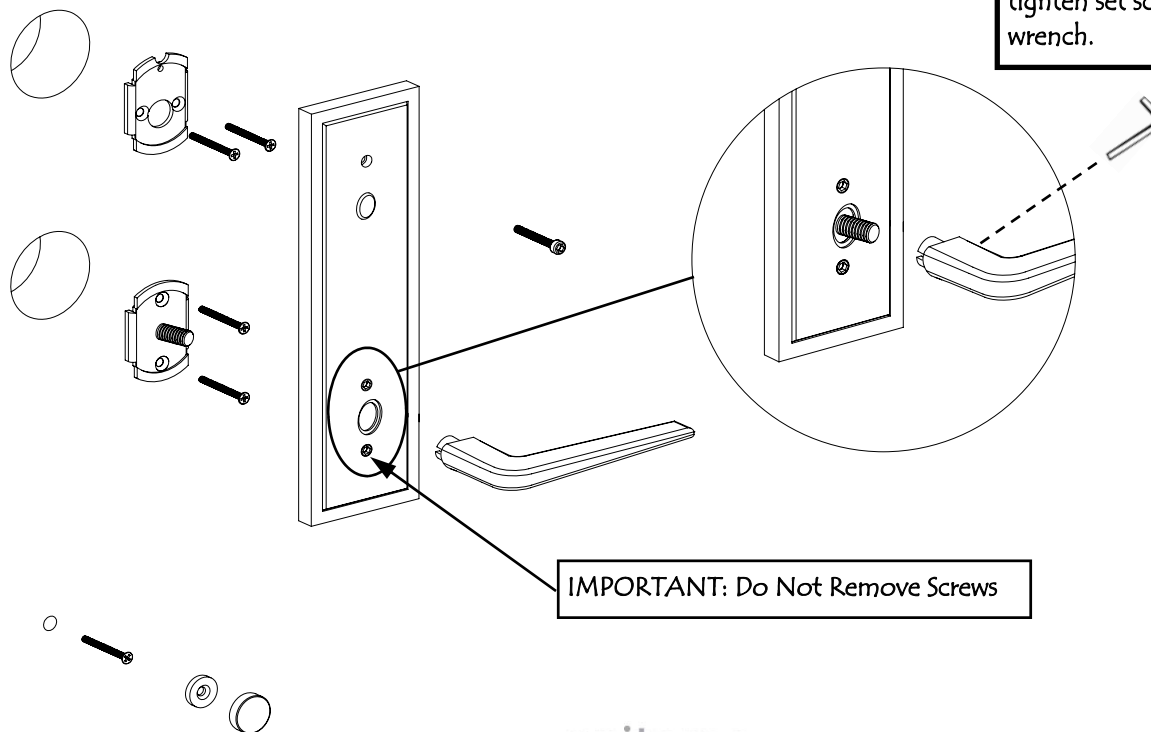
Door Prep – Active Lock



Outside Trim



Inside Trim

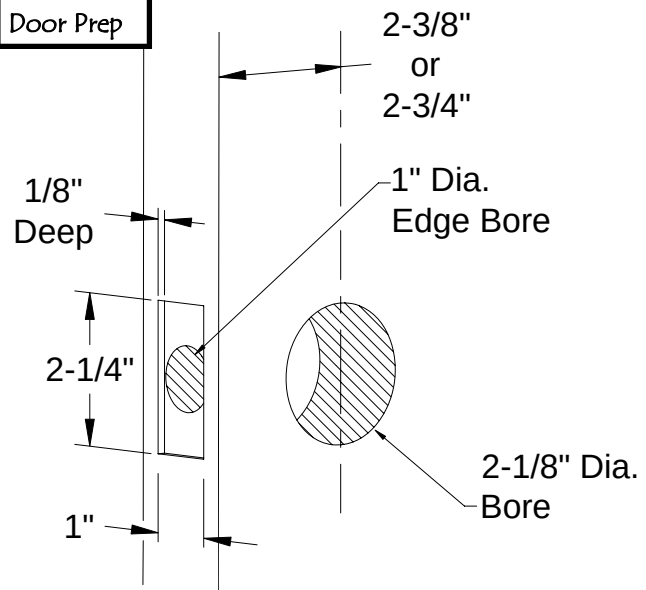


After lock has been installed
tighten set screw with allen
wrench.

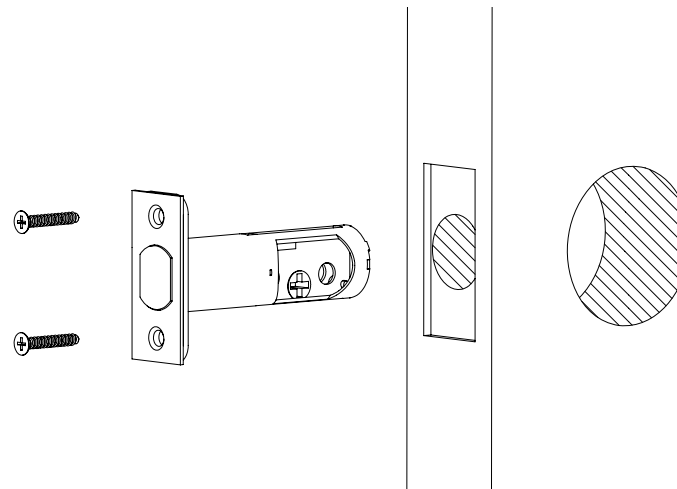
epitome®
ASSA ABLOY

Installation Instructions-Single Cylinder Deadbolts

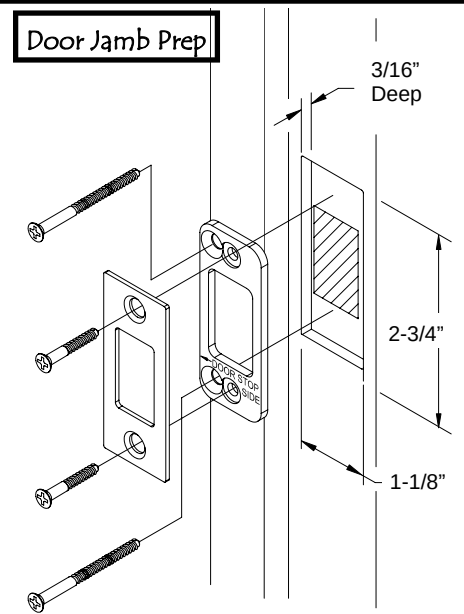
Door Prep



Install Bolt

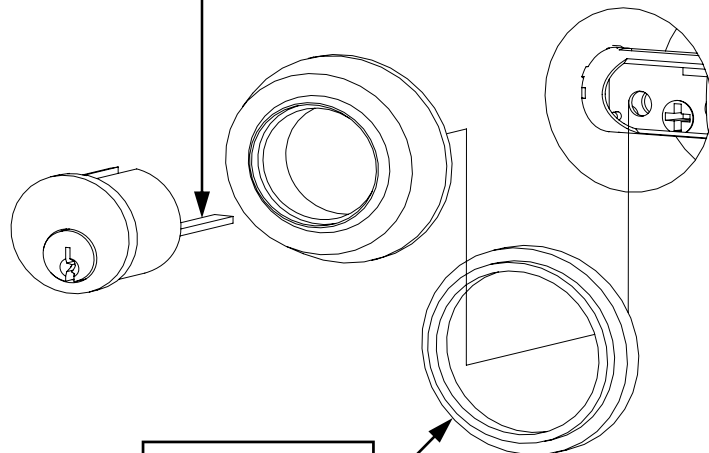


Door Jamb Prep



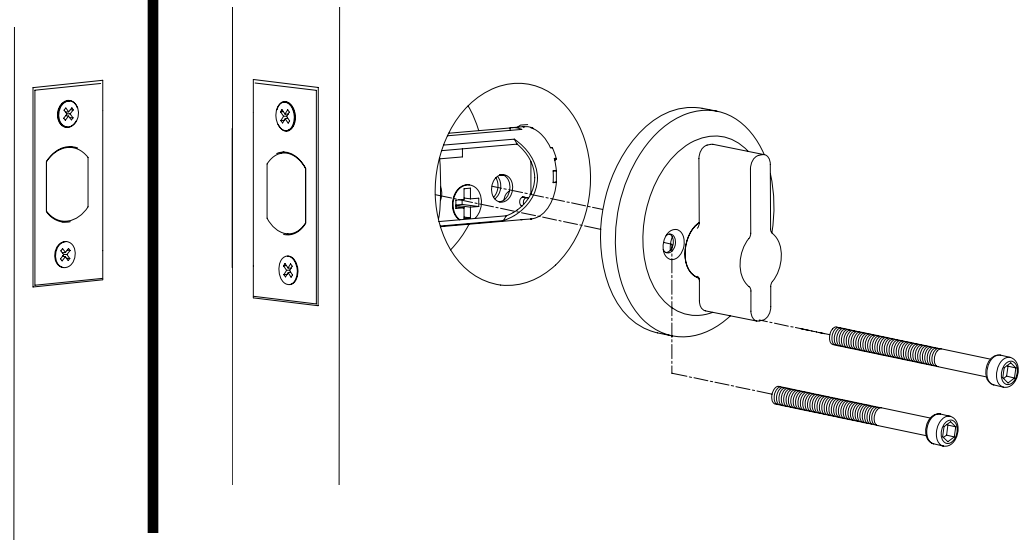
Outside

Tailpiece Horizontal



Use spacer on thin doors

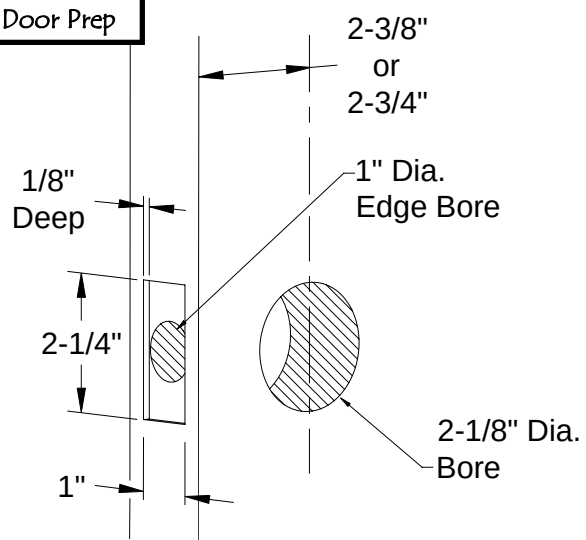
Inside



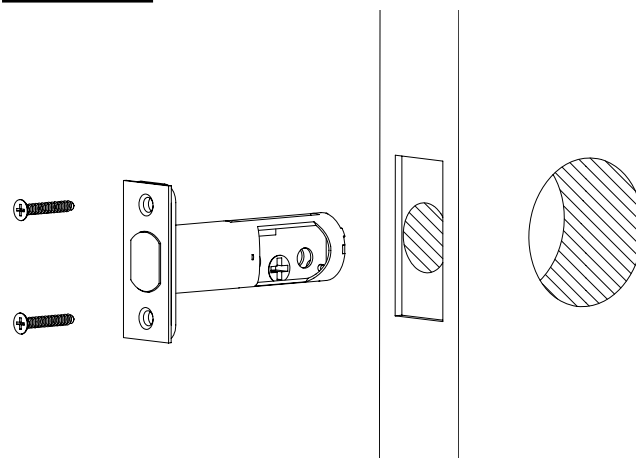
epitome[®]
ASSA ABLOY

Installation Instructions-Double Cylinder Deadbolts

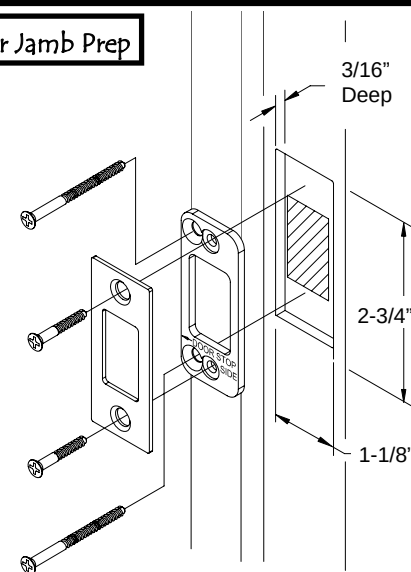
Door Prep



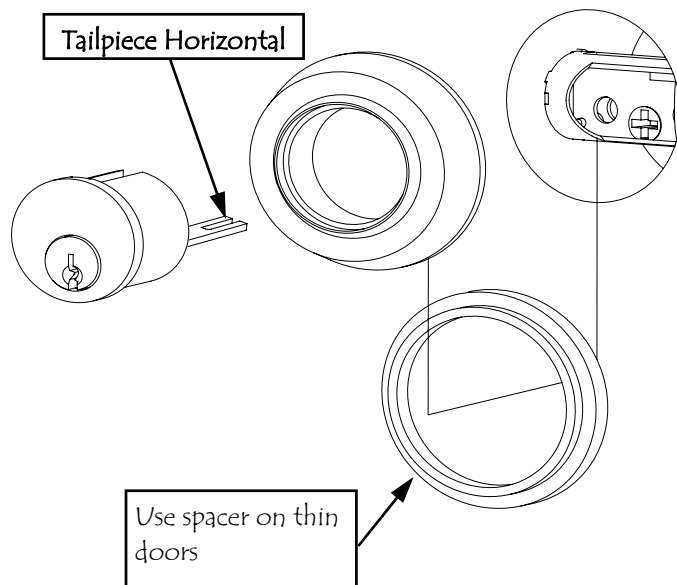
Install Bolt



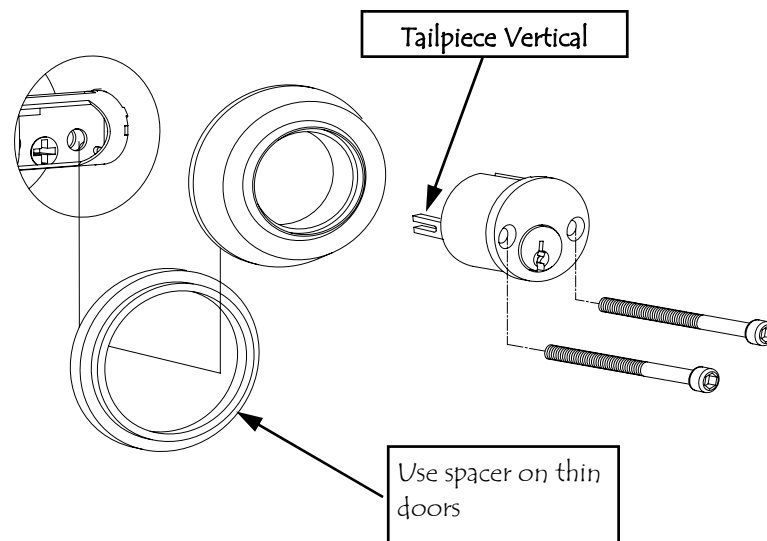
Door Jamb Prep



Outside



Inside

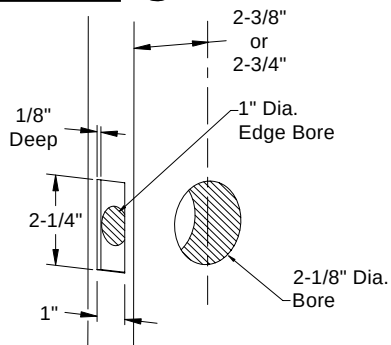


epitome
ASSA ABLOY

Installation Instructions-Privacy or Passage - Lever

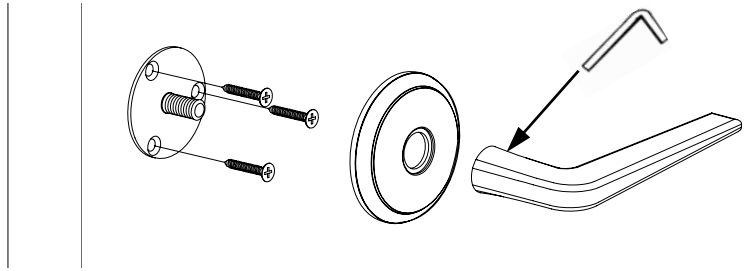
Passage/Private Door Prep.

1



Dummy Set

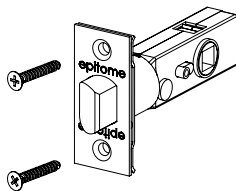
Surface Mounted, No bore Hole



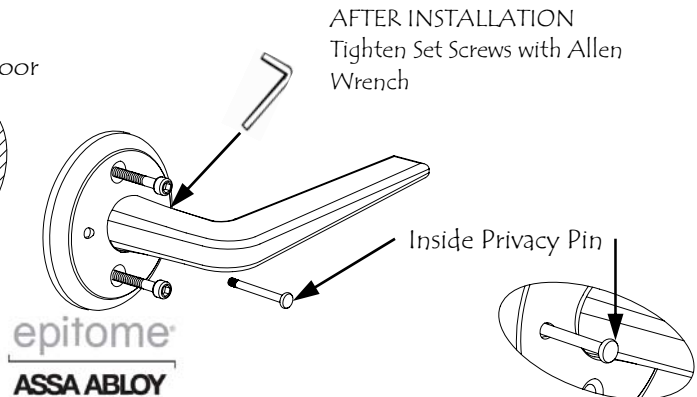
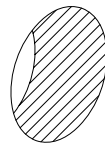
Passage/Privacy Set

2

Install Latch, Rotate Latch
As Required



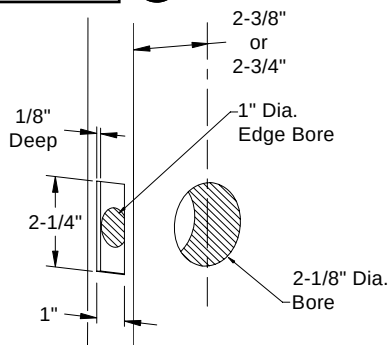
Inside Of Door



Installation Instructions-Privacy or Passage - Lever

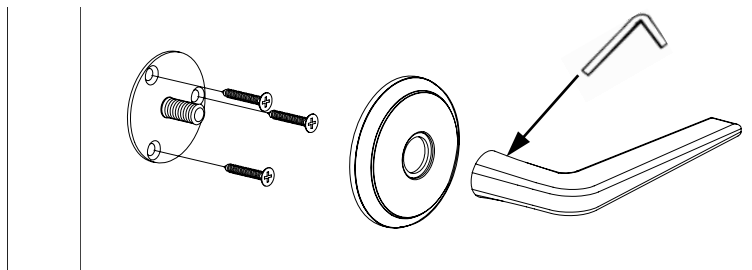
Passage/Private Door Prep.

1



Dummy Set

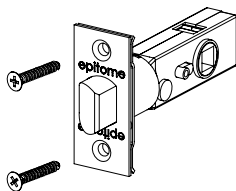
Surface Mounted, No bore Hole



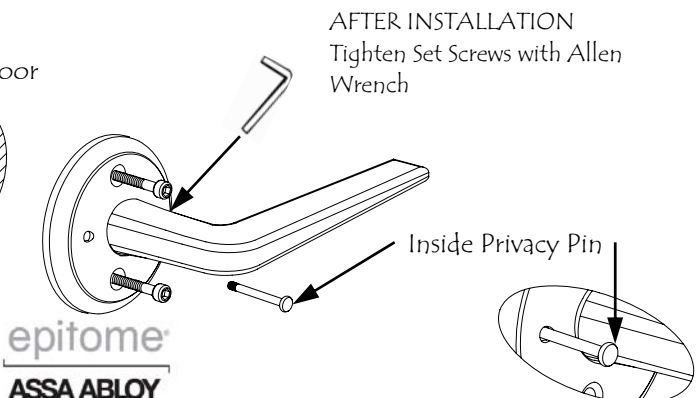
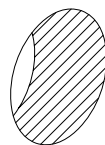
Passage/Privacy Set

2

Install Latch, Rotate Latch
As Required

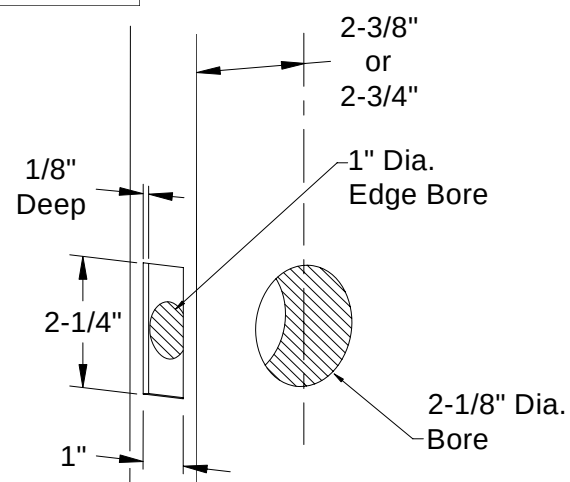


Inside Of Door

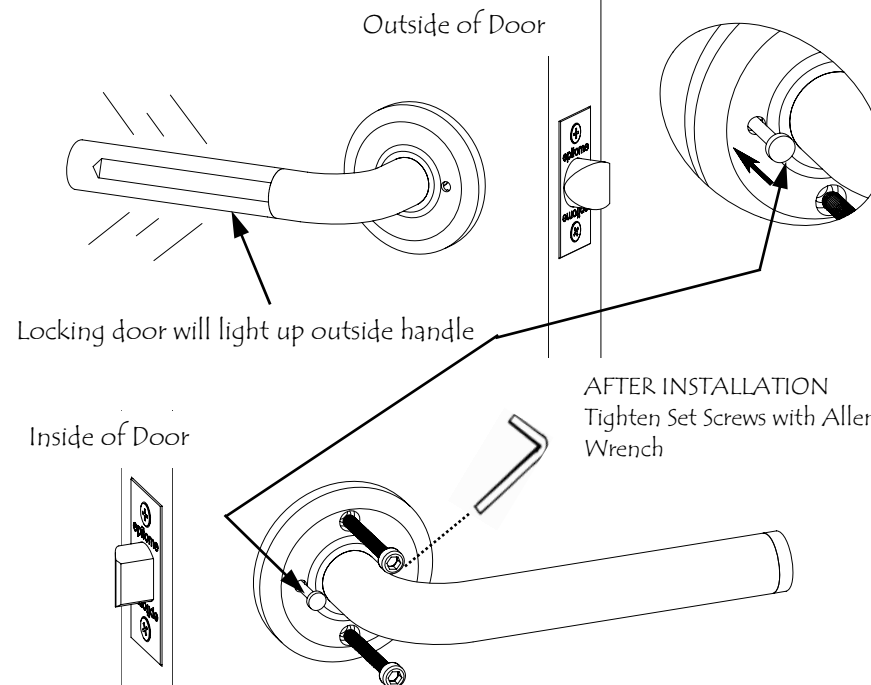
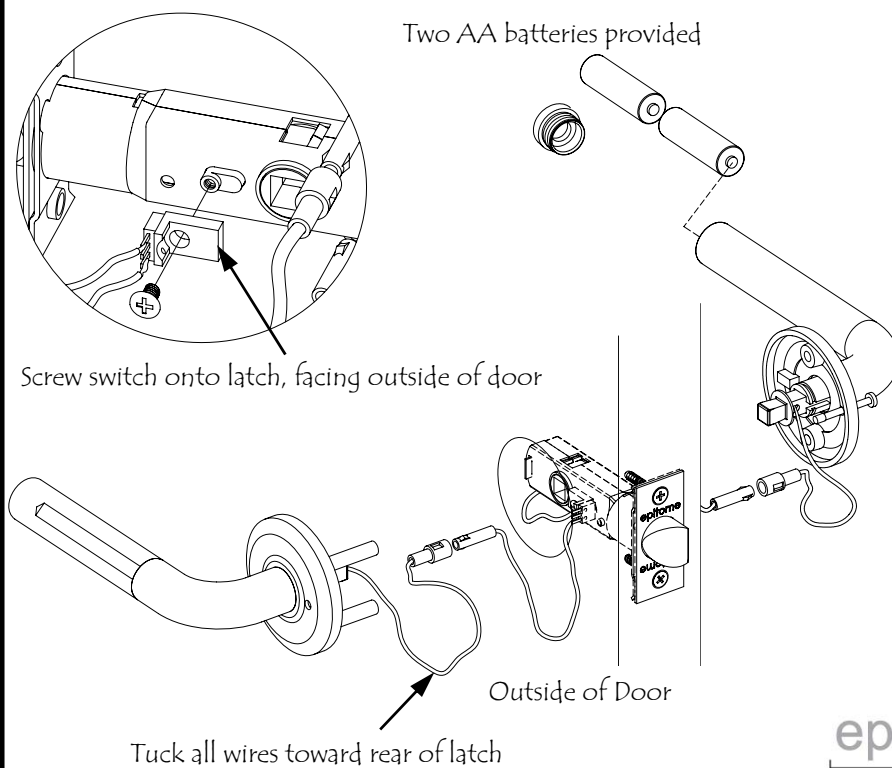
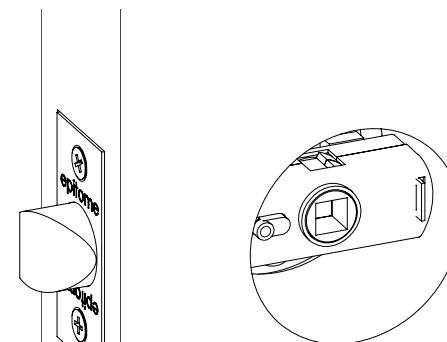
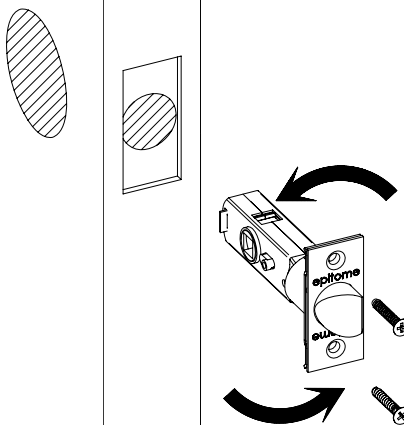


Installation Instructions - Epitome Brite Handle

Door Prep.

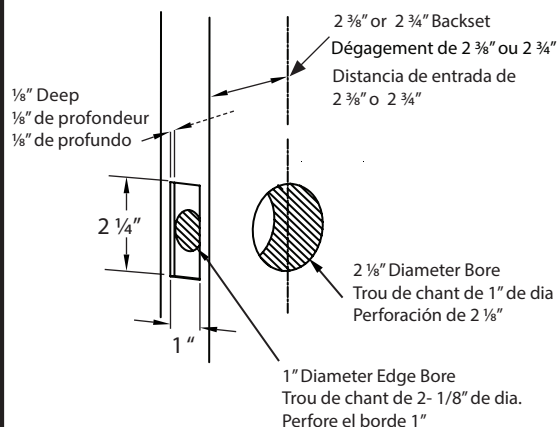


Install latch, rotate latch as required

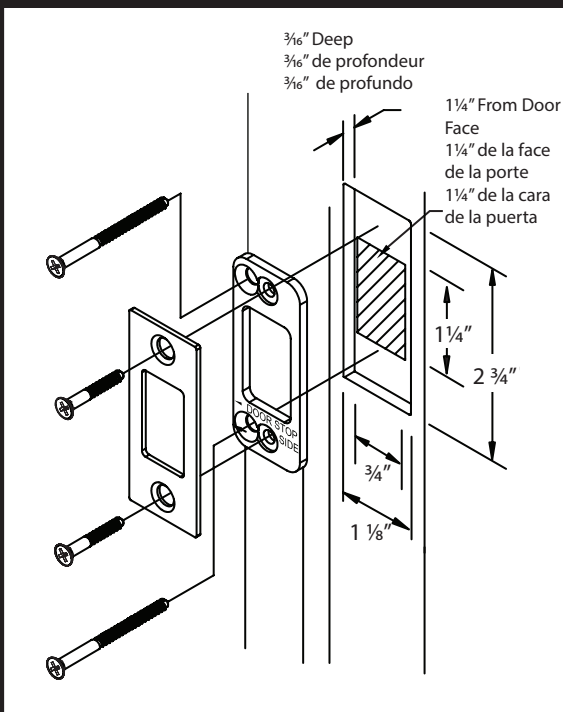


epitome[®]
ASSA ABLOY

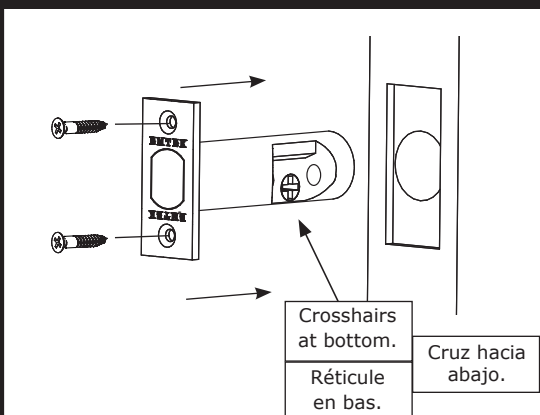
1. Door Prep 1. Préparation de la porte
1. Preparación de la puerta



2. Door Jamb Prep 2. Préparation de l'embranchure 2. Preparación del marco

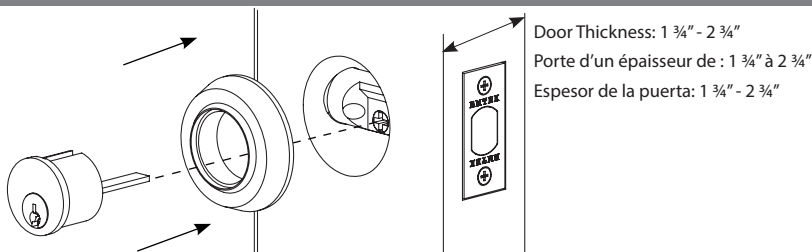


3. Install Latch 3. Installation du pêne
3. Instale el pestillo

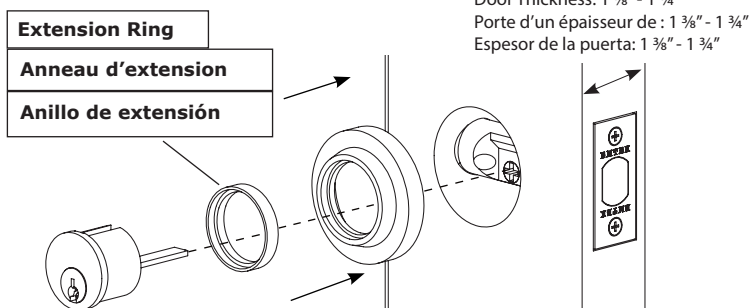


4. Outside Installation 4. Installation extérieur 4. Instalación externa

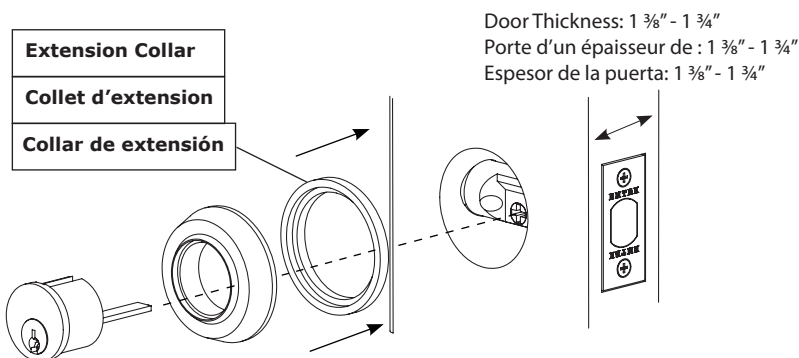
Install Deadbolt on regular door • Installation du pêne sur une porte régulière • Instale el cerrojo en una puerta regular.



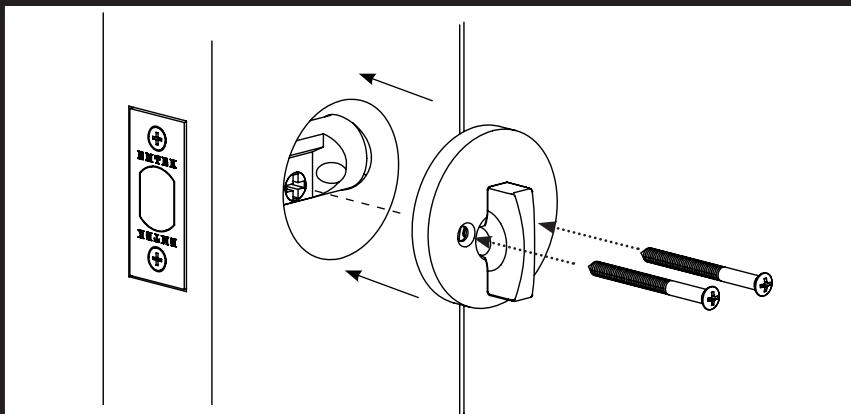
Install Deadbolt on thin door. Extension Ring is provided for the following products: 8454, 8466, 8468, 8458, 8459, 8467, 8469, 8475
Installation du pêne sur une porte mince. Le collet est fourni pour les produits suivants: 8454, 8466, 8468, 8458, 8459, 8467, 8469, 8475
Instale el cerrojo en una puerta delgada. El anillo de extensión es proveído para los siguientes productos: 8454, 8466, 8468, 8458, 8459, 8467, 8469, 8475



Install Deadbolt on thin door. Extension Collar is provided for the following products: 8455, 8464
Installation du pêne sur une porte mince. Le collet est fourni pour les produits suivants : 8455, 8464
Instale el cerrojo en una puerta delgada. Collar de extensión es proveído para los siguientes productos: 8455, 8464



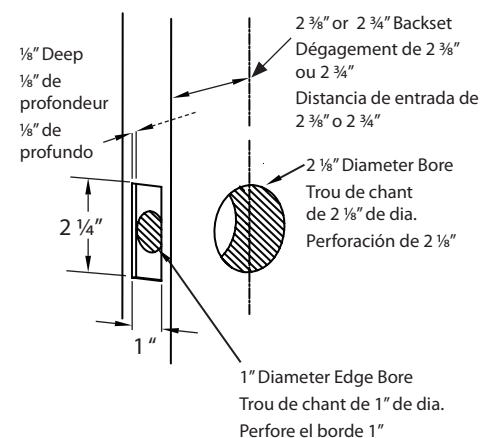
5. Inside Installation 5. Installation intérieure 5. Instalación interna



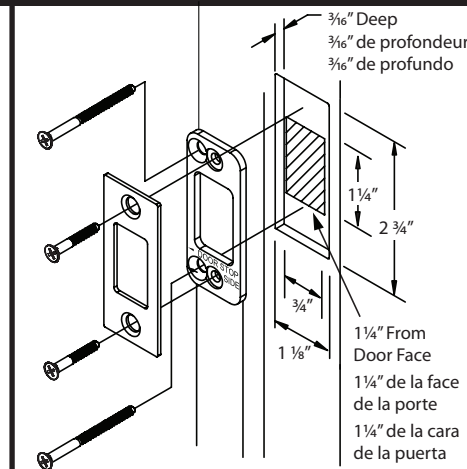
Installation Guide - Double Cylinder Deadbolts **Guide d'installation - Pênes dormant à cylindre double** **Guía de instalación - Cerrojos de doble cilindro**

EMTEK®
ASSA ABLOY

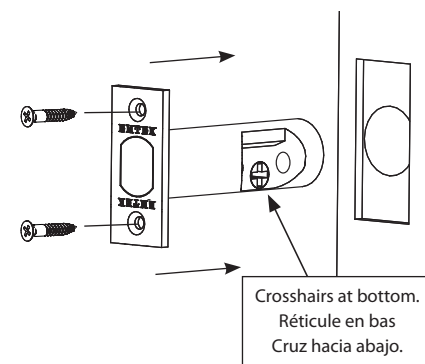
1. Door Prep 1. Préparation de la porte
 1. Preparación de la puerta



2. Door Jamb Prep 2. Préparation de l'embrasure
 2. Preparación del marco de la puerta



3. Install Latch 3. Installation du pêne
 3. Instale el pestillo

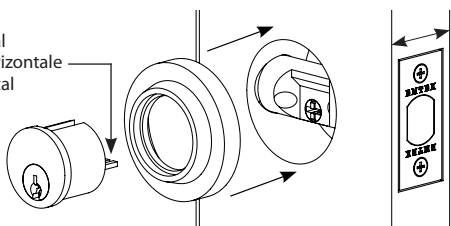


4. Outside Installation 4. Installation extérieure 4. Instalación externa

Install Deadbolt on regular door. • Installation du pêne sur une porte régulière.
 Instale el cerrojo en una puerta regular.

Door Thickness: 1 3/4" - 2 3/4" • Porte d'un épaisseur de: 1 3/4" à 2 3/4"
 Espesor de la puerta: 1 3/4" - 2 3/4"

Tail Piece Horizontal
 Queue de pêne horizontale
 Eje trasero horizontal

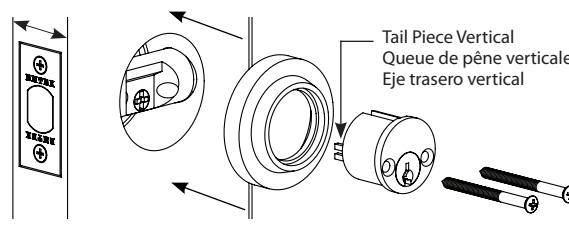


5. Inside Installation 5. Installation intérieure 5. Instalación interna

Install Deadbolt on regular door. • Installation du pêne sur une porte régulière.
 Instale el cerrojo en una puerta regular.

Door Thickness: 1 3/4" - 2 3/4" • Porte d'un épaisseur de: 1 3/4" à 2 3/4"
 Espesor de la puerta: 1 3/4" - 2 3/4"

Tail Piece Vertical
 Queue de pêne verticale
 Eje trasero vertical

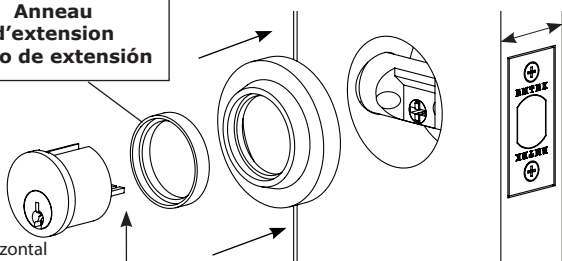


Install Deadbolt on thin door. Extension Ring is provided for the following products: 8454, 8466, 8468, 8458, 8459, 8467, 8469, 8475
 Installation du pêne sur une porte mince. Le collet est fourni pour les produits suivants: 8454, 8466, 8468, 8458, 8459, 8467, 8469, 8475
 Instale el cerrojo en una puerta delgada. El anillo de extensión es proveído para los siguientes productos: 8454, 8466, 8468, 8458, 8459, 8467, 8469, 8475

Extension Ring
 Anneau d'extension
 Anillo de extensión

Door Thickness: 1 3/8" - 1 3/4"
 Porte d'un épaisseur de: 1 3/8" à 1 3/4"
 Espesor de la puerta: 1 3/8" - 1 3/4"

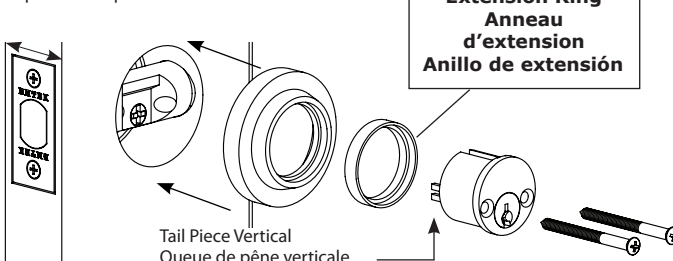
Tail Piece Horizontal
 Queue de pêne horizontale
 Eje trasero horizontal



Door Thickness: 1 3/8" - 1 3/4"
 Porte d'un épaisseur de: 1 3/8" à 1 3/4"
 Espesor de la puerta: 1 3/8" - 1 3/4"

Extension Ring
 Anneau d'extension
 Anillo de extensión

Tail Piece Vertical
 Queue de pêne verticale
 Eje trasero vertical

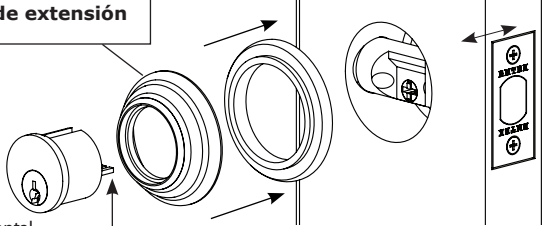


Install Deadbolt on thin door. Extension Collar is provided for the following products: 8355, 8364
 Installation du pêne sur une porte mince. Le collet est fourni pour les produits suivants: 8355, 8364
 Instale el cerrojo en una puerta delgada. El anillo de extensión es proveído para los siguientes productos: 8355, 8364

Extension Collar
 Collet d'extension
 Collar de extensión

Door Thickness: 1 3/8" - 1 3/4"
 Porte d'un épaisseur de: 1 3/8" à 1 3/4"
 Espesor de la puerta: 1 3/8" - 1 3/4"

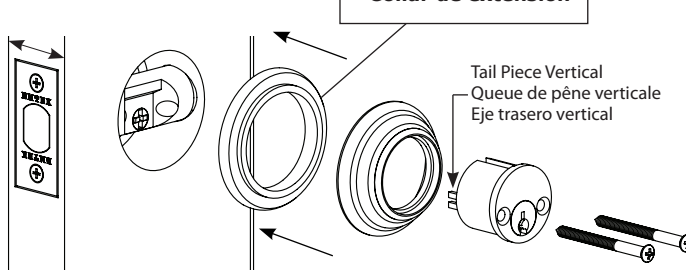
Tail Piece Horizontal
 Queue de pêne horizontale
 Eje trasero horizontal



Door Thickness: 1 3/8" - 1 3/4"
 Porte d'un épaisseur de: 1 3/8" à 1 3/4"
 Espesor de la puerta: 1 3/8" - 1 3/4"

Extension Collar
 Collet d'extension
 Collar de extensión

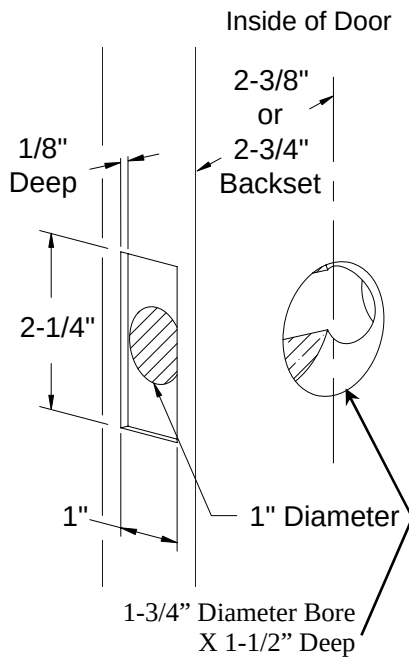
Tail Piece Vertical
 Queue de pêne verticale
 Eje trasero vertical



Installation Guide-Single Sided Deadbolt

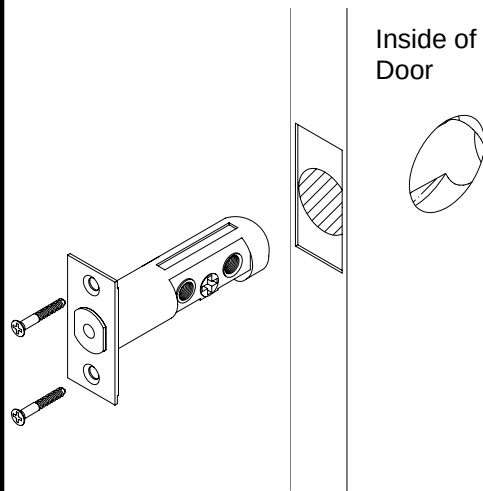
Door Prep.

For Doors Thickness:
1-5/8" to 2-3/8"

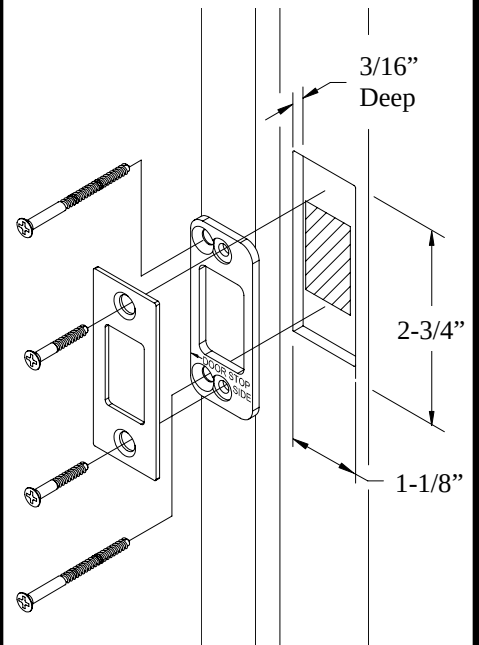


(NOTE: Bore from the inside.
Do not bore all the way
through the door.)

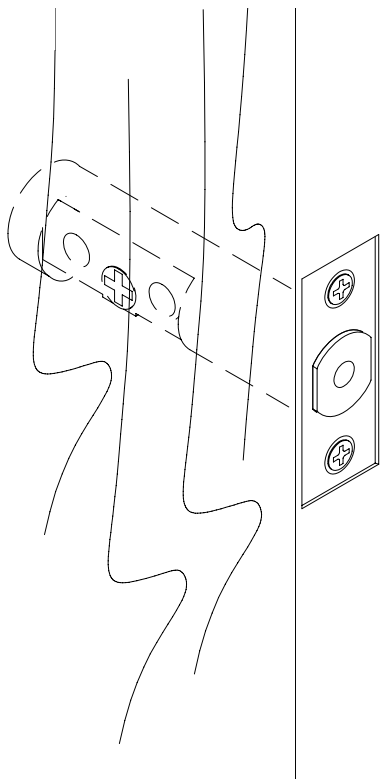
Install Bolt



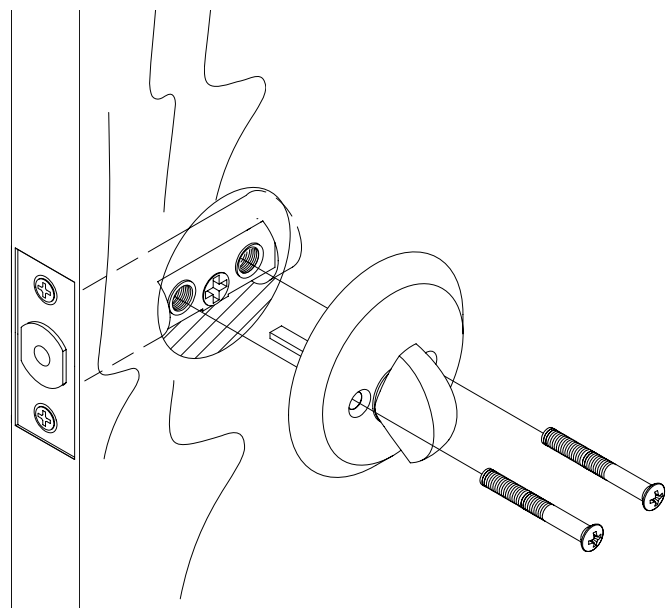
Door Jam Prep



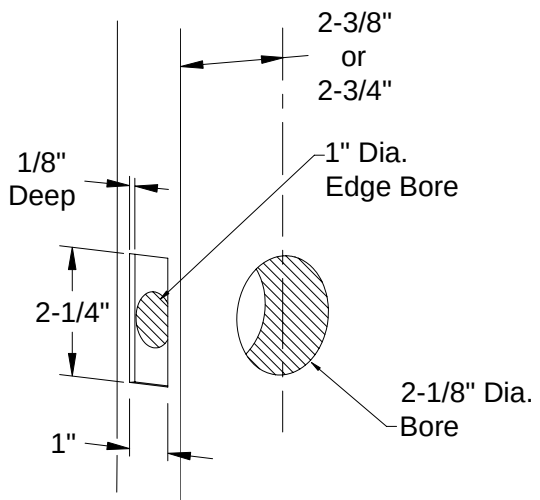
Outside



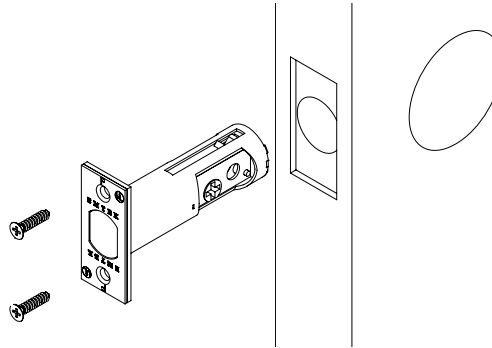
Inside



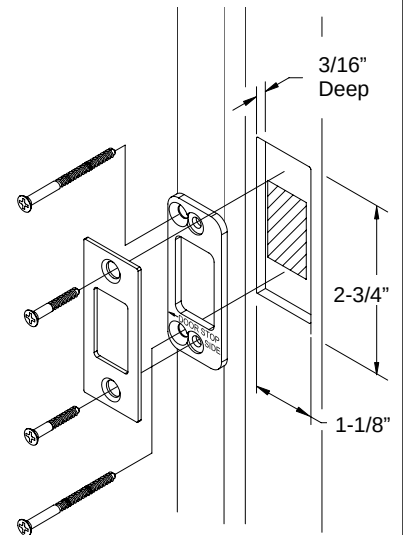
Door Prep



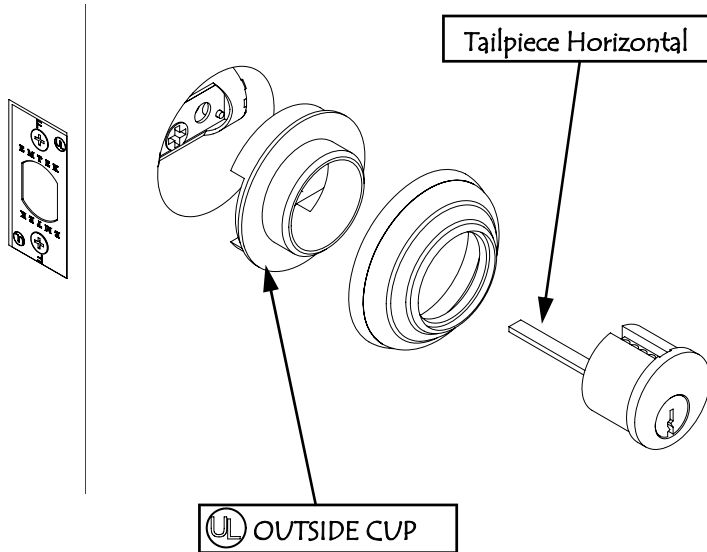
Install Bolt



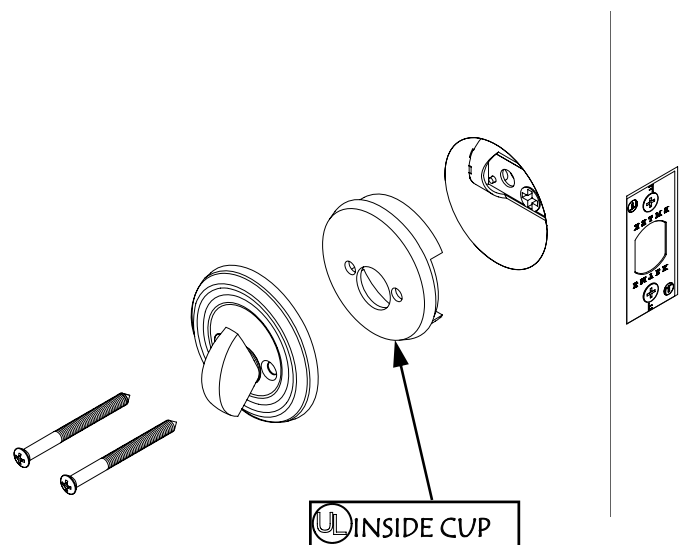
Door Prep Jamb



Outside



Inside



Tubular Entryset Lock Model Description

REV. 19A 10-03-2019

MODEL "A"

LARAMIE, SHERIDAN
DENVER, REMINGTON
RECTANGULAR MONOLITHIC & SECTIONAL

MODEL "B"

ART NOUVEAU, OCTAGON, IMPERIAL,
MELROSE, RIBBON & REED,
OVAL RIBBON & REED, ARTS & CRAFTS,
WILSHIRE, HAMDEM, LAFAYETTE, NORMANDY
KNOXVILLE, ORLEANS, VALLEY FORGE
OCTAGON, APOLLO, ORION, ZEUS, ARES
BADEN, DAVOS, LAUSANNE, EMTouch™
RIDGEMONT, LOGAN, BRIGHTON, MARTINIQUE
TRANSITIONAL HERITAGE

MODEL "C"

GREELEY, TUSCANY, CRESTON, RICHMOND
MARIETTA, SARATOGA, NASHVILLE
RECTANGULAR FULL LENGTH, WILMINGTON
QUINCY, FRANKLIN, ADAMS, JEFFERSON
RUSTIC MODERN RECTANGULAR SECTIONAL,
MONOLITHIC & FULL LENGTH

MODEL "D"

SAN CARLOS

Tubular Entryset Lock Model Description

REV. 19A 10-03-2019

MODEL "A"

LARAMIE, SHERIDAN
DENVER, REMINGTON
RECTANGULAR MONOLITHIC & SECTIONAL

MODEL "B"

ART NOUVEAU, OCTAGON, IMPERIAL,
MELROSE, RIBBON & REED,
OVAL RIBBON & REED, ARTS & CRAFTS,
WILSHIRE, HAMDEM, LAFAYETTE, NORMANDY
KNOXVILLE, ORLEANS, VALLEY FORGE
OCTAGON, APOLLO, ORION, ZEUS, ARES
BADEN, DAVOS, LAUSANNE, EMTouch™
RIDGEMONT, LOGAN, BRIGHTON, MARTINIQUE
TRANSITIONAL HERITAGE

MODEL "C"

GREELEY, TUSCANY, CRESTON, RICHMOND
MARIETTA, SARATOGA, NASHVILLE
RECTANGULAR FULL LENGTH, WILMINGTON
QUINCY, FRANKLIN, ADAMS, JEFFERSON
RUSTIC MODERN RECTANGULAR SECTIONAL,
MONOLITHIC & FULL LENGTH

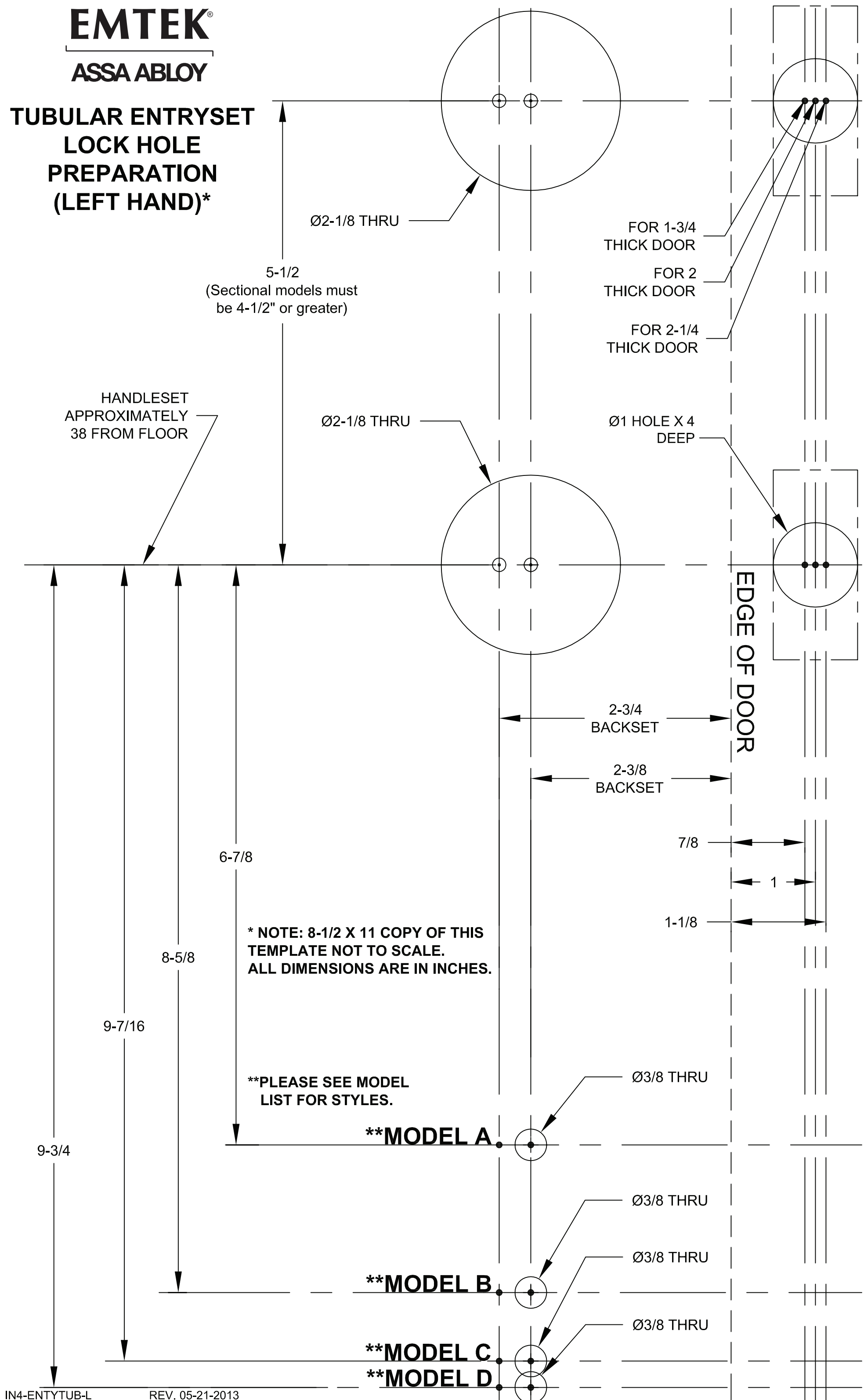
MODEL "D"

SAN CARLOS

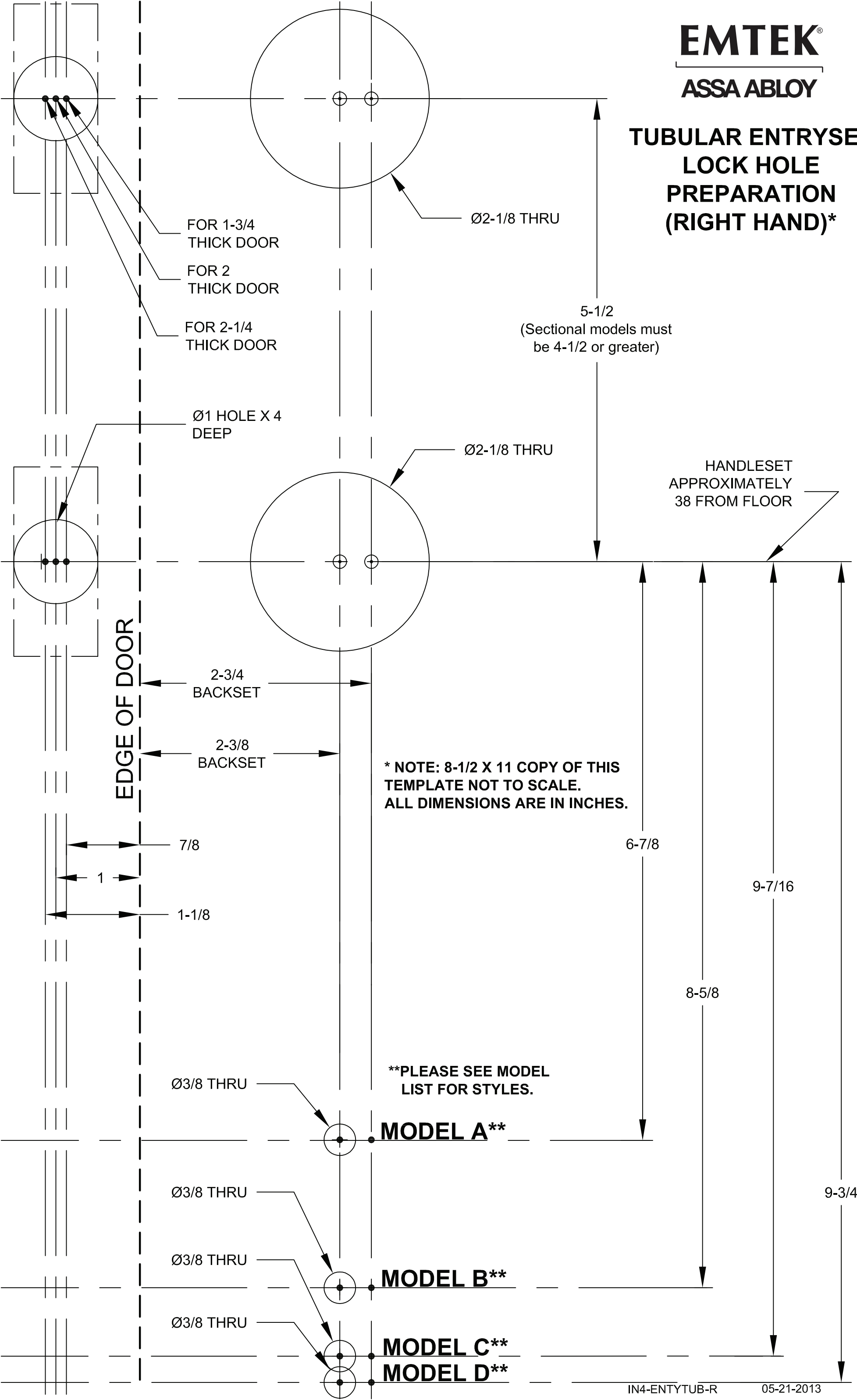
EMTEK®

ASSA ABLOY

**TUBULAR ENTRYSET
LOCK HOLE
PREPARATION
(LEFT HAND)***

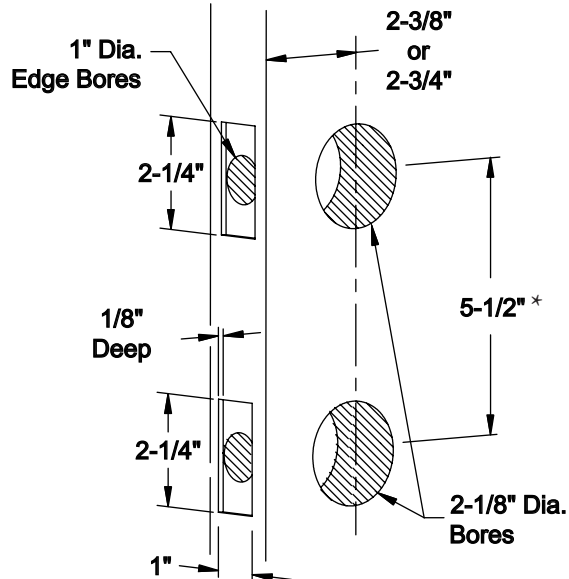


**TUBULAR ENTRYSET
LOCK HOLE
PREPARATION
(RIGHT HAND)***



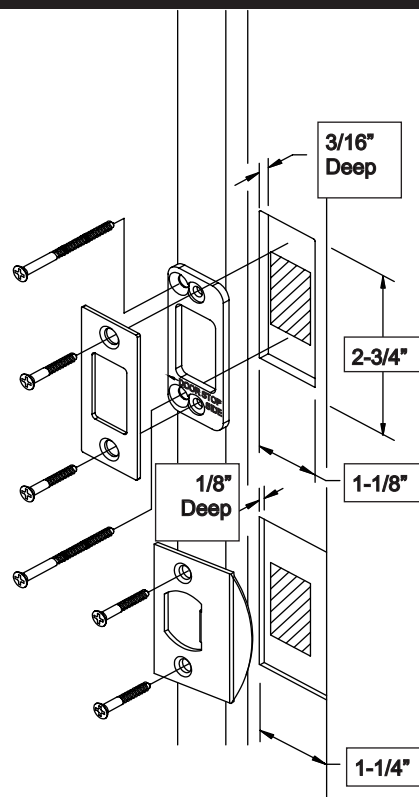
Installation Guide - Tubular Sectional Entry Set - Single Cylinder Deadbolt

1. Door Prep



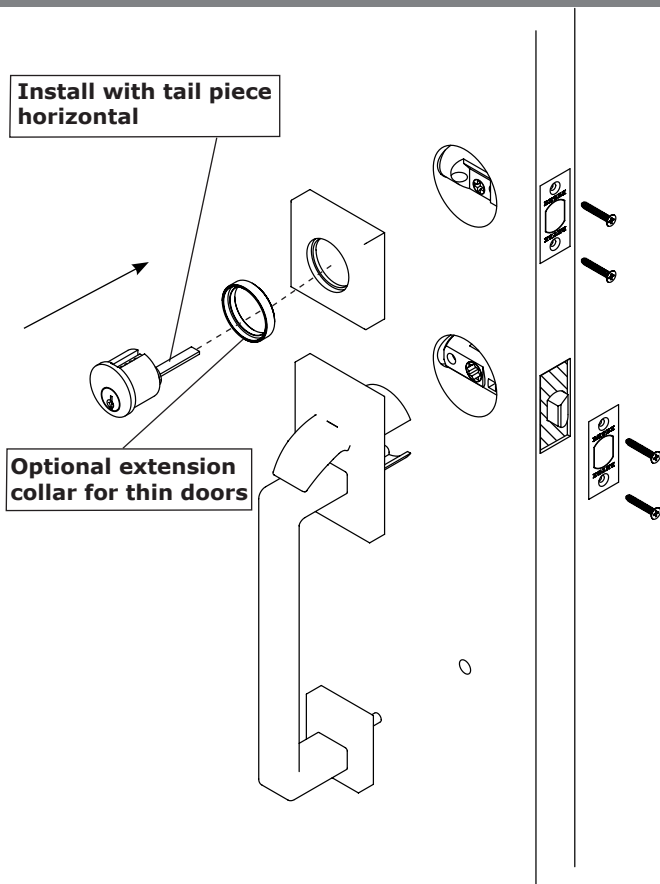
See template for door prep specifications.

2. Door Jamb Prep



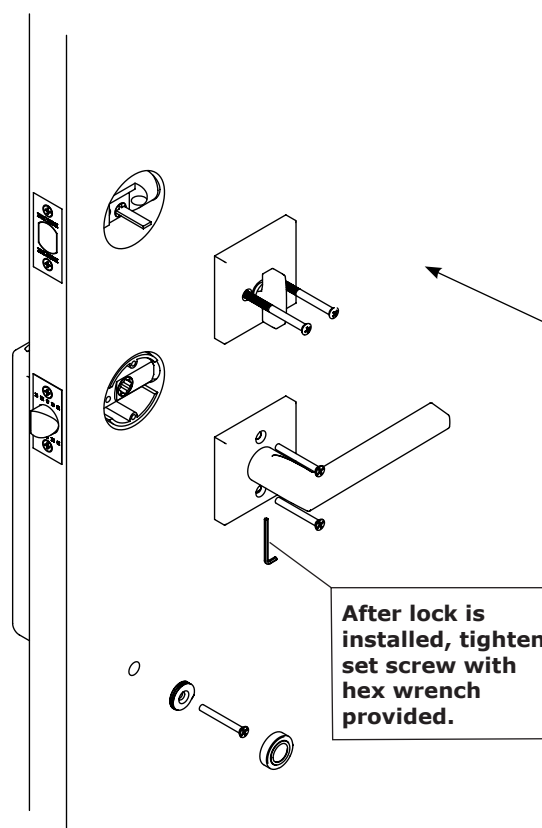
3. Outside Installation

Extension Collar is provided for thin doors.

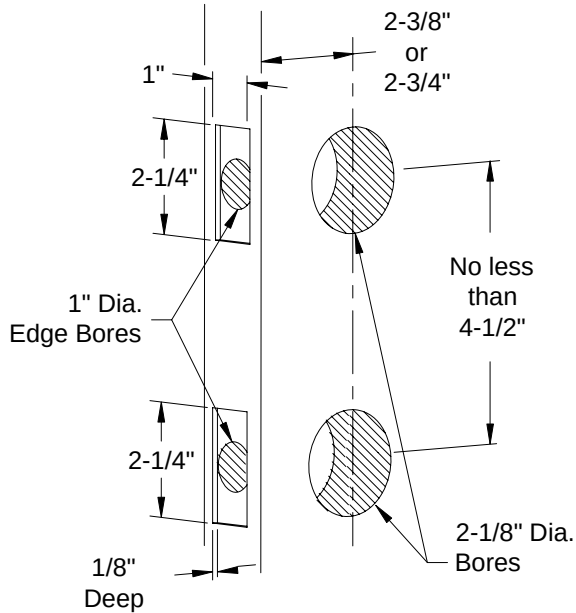


Plates and grips vary depending on style.

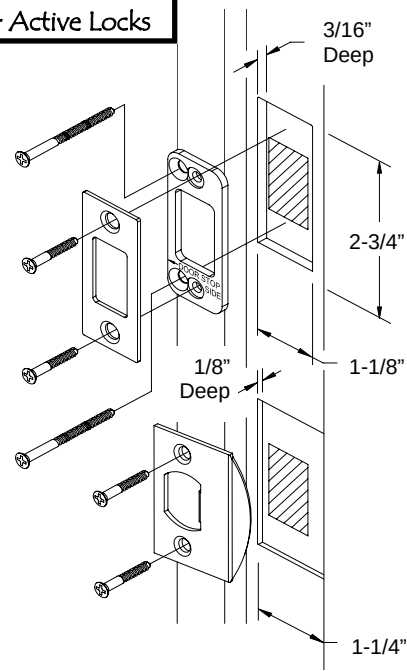
4. Inside Installation



Door Prep - Active Lock

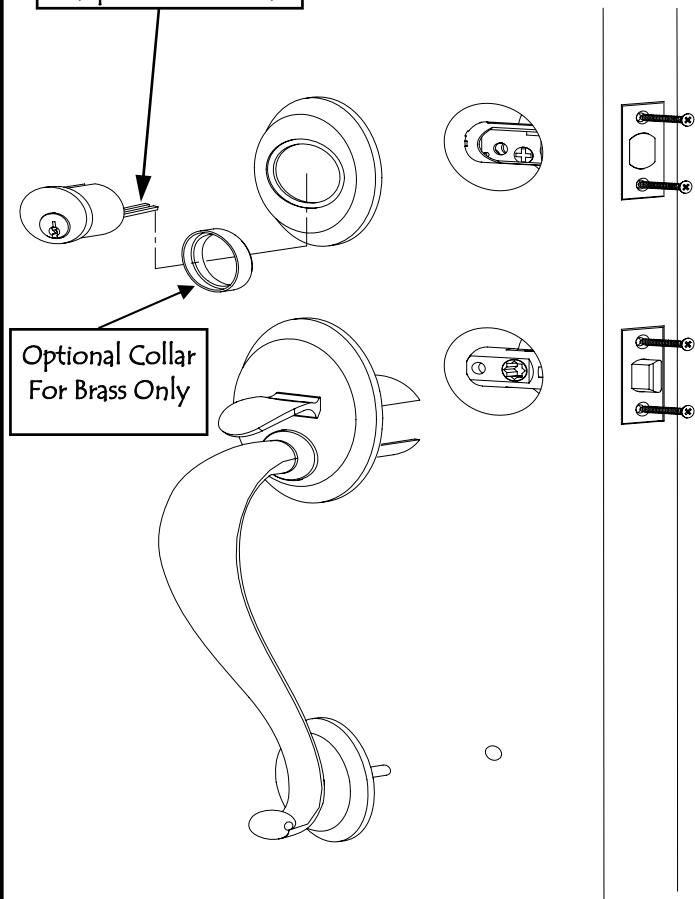


Door Jamb for Active Locks



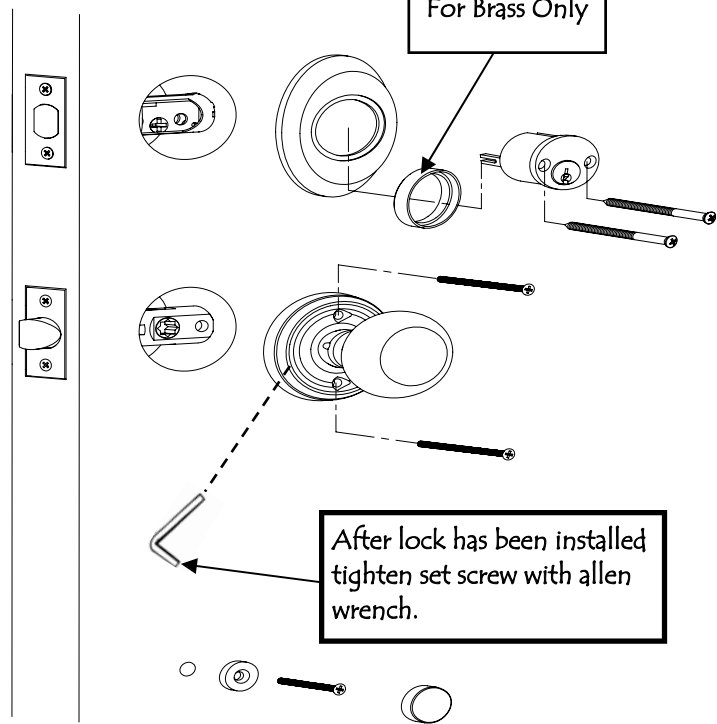
Outside Trim

Tailpiece Horizontal



Inside Trim

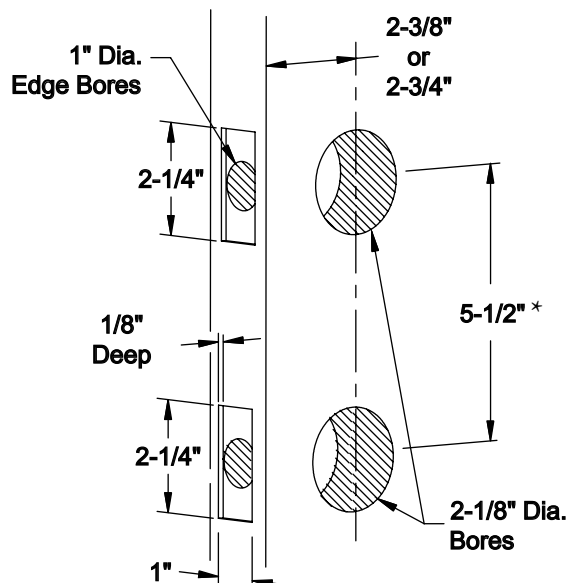
Optional Collar For Brass Only



Plates and grip vary depending on style.

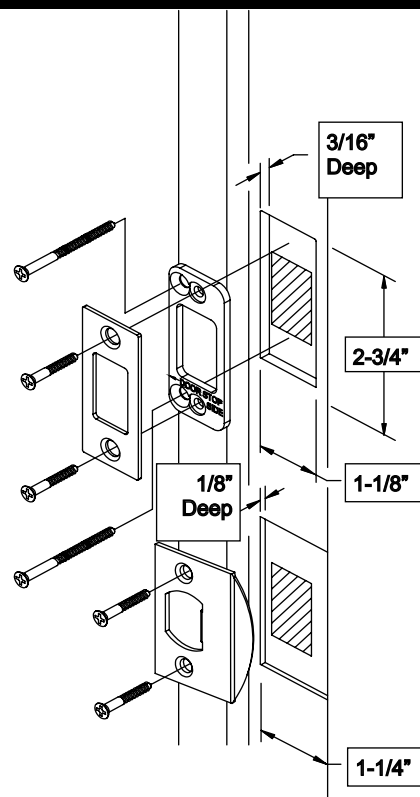
Installation Guide - Tubular Monolithic Entry Set - Single Cylinder Deadbolts

1. Door Prep



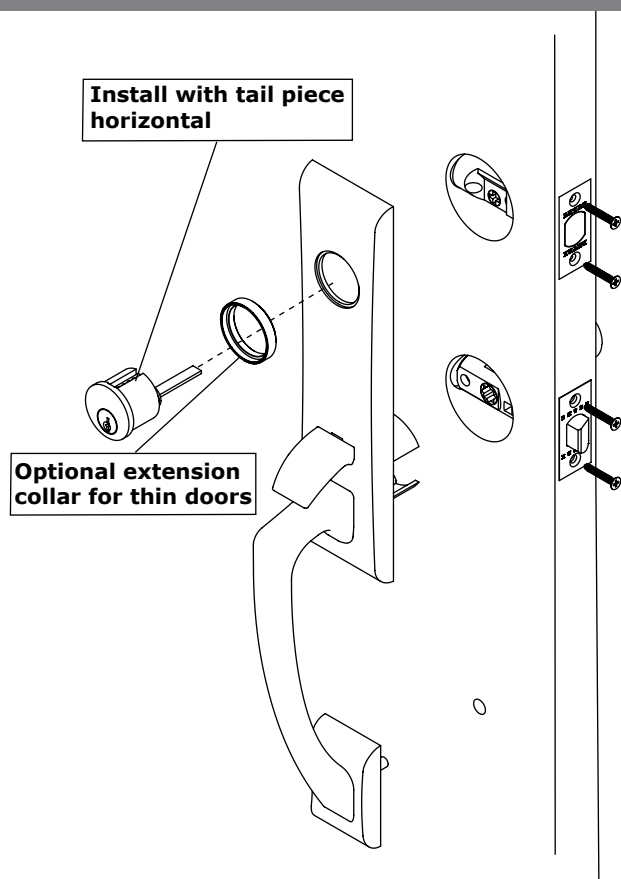
* Marretta 6 style locks have 6" center to center bore spacing.

2. Door Jamb Prep



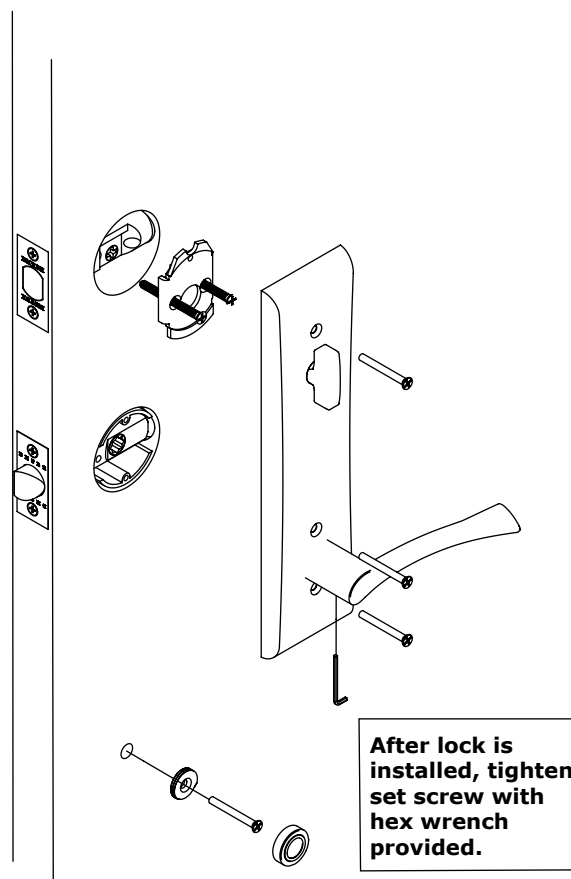
3. Outside Installation

Extension Collar is provided for thin doors.



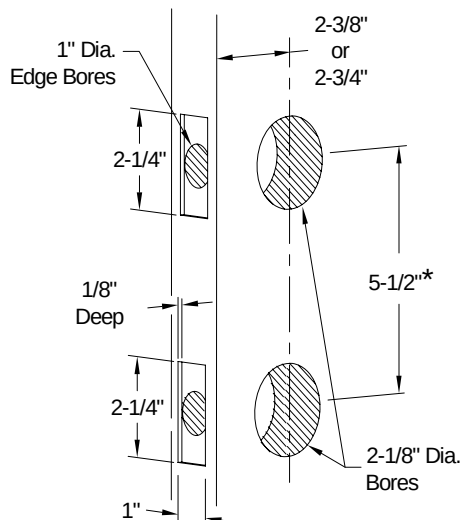
Plates and grips vary depending on style.

4. Inside Installation



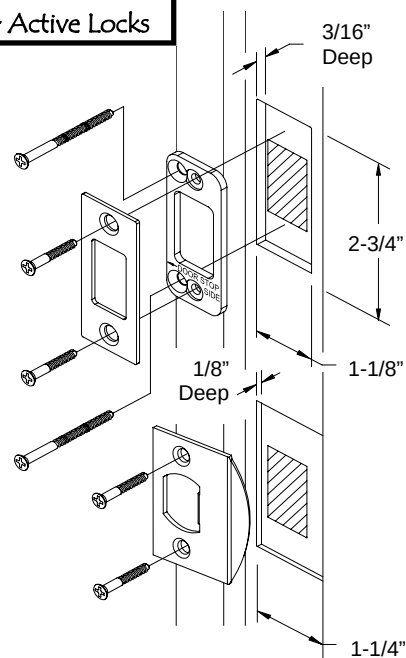
Installation Instructions-Tubular Monolithic Entry Set - Double Cylinder Deadbolt

Door Prep - Active Lock



*Marietta-6 locks have 6" center bore spacing.

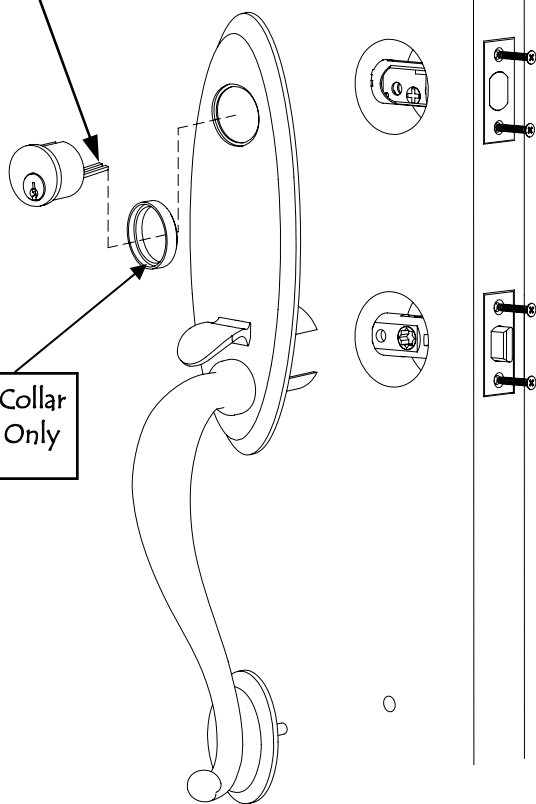
Door Jamb for Active Locks



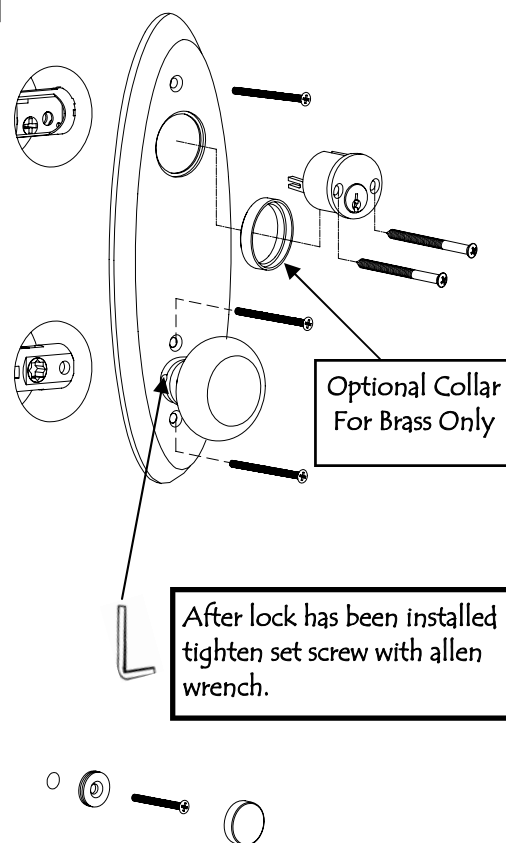
Outside Trim

Tailpiece Horizontal

Optional Collar For Brass Only

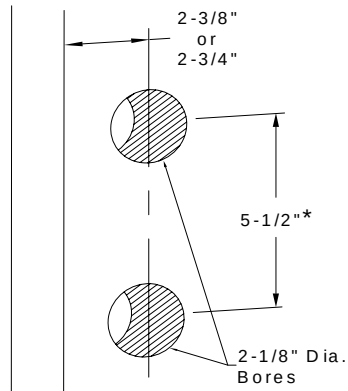


Inside Trim

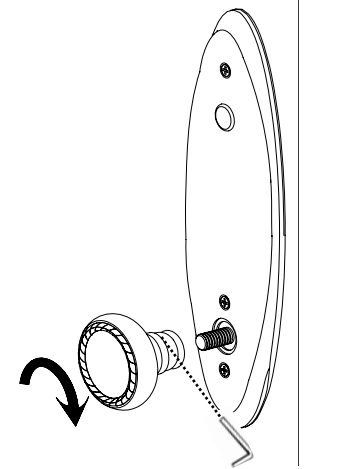
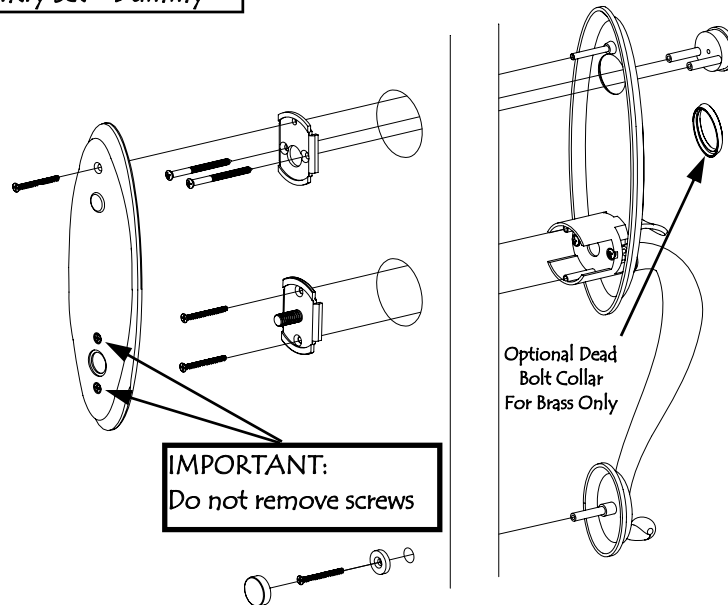


Plates and grip vary depending on style.

Installation Instructions-Tubular Monolithic Entry Set - Dummy

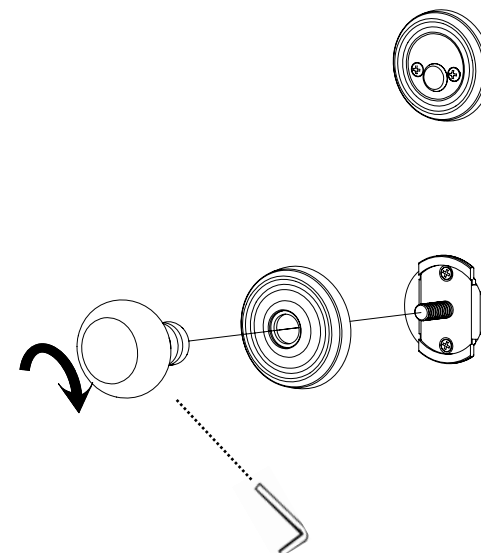
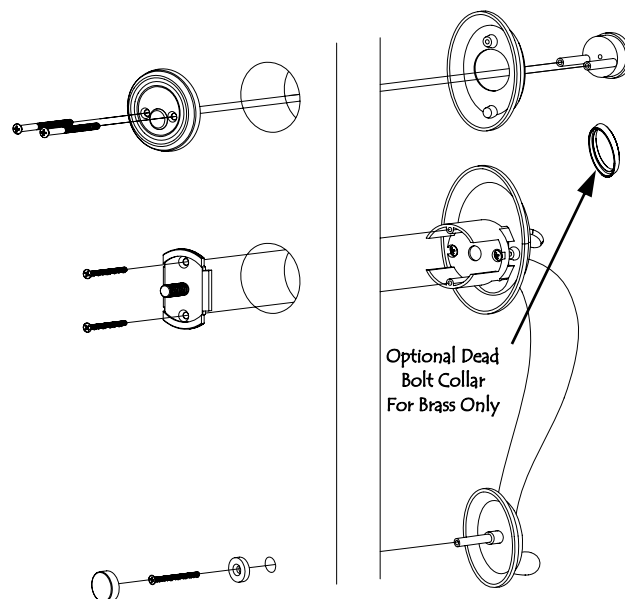
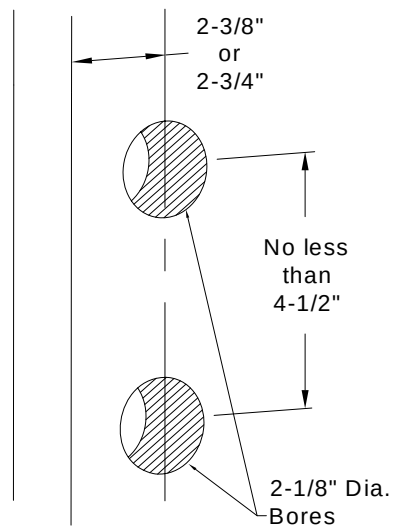


* Marietta 6 style locks have 6" center to center bore spacing.



AFTER LOCK HAS BEEN INSTALLED
Tighten Set Screws with Allen Wrench

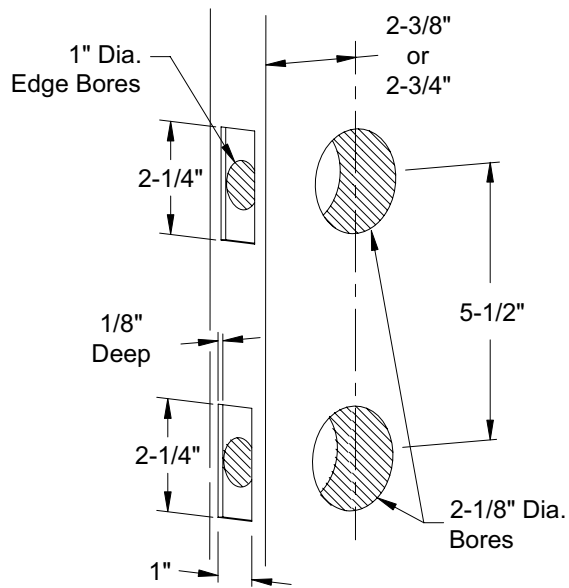
Installation Instructions-Tubular Sectional Entry Set - Dummy



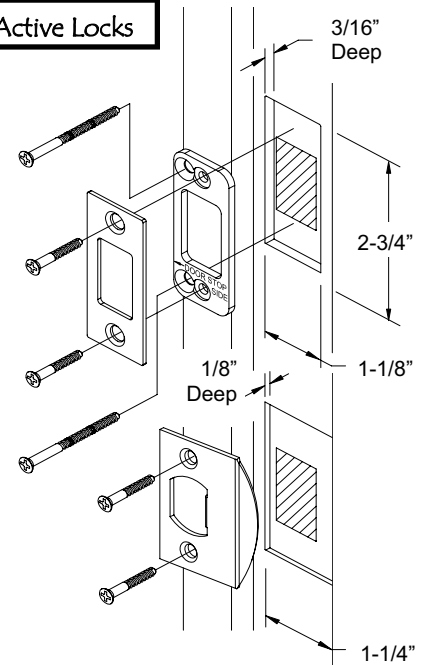
AFTER LOCK HAS BEEN INSTALLED
Tighten Set Screws with Allen Wrench

Installation Instructions-Grip by Grip Entryset - Single Cylinder Deadbolt

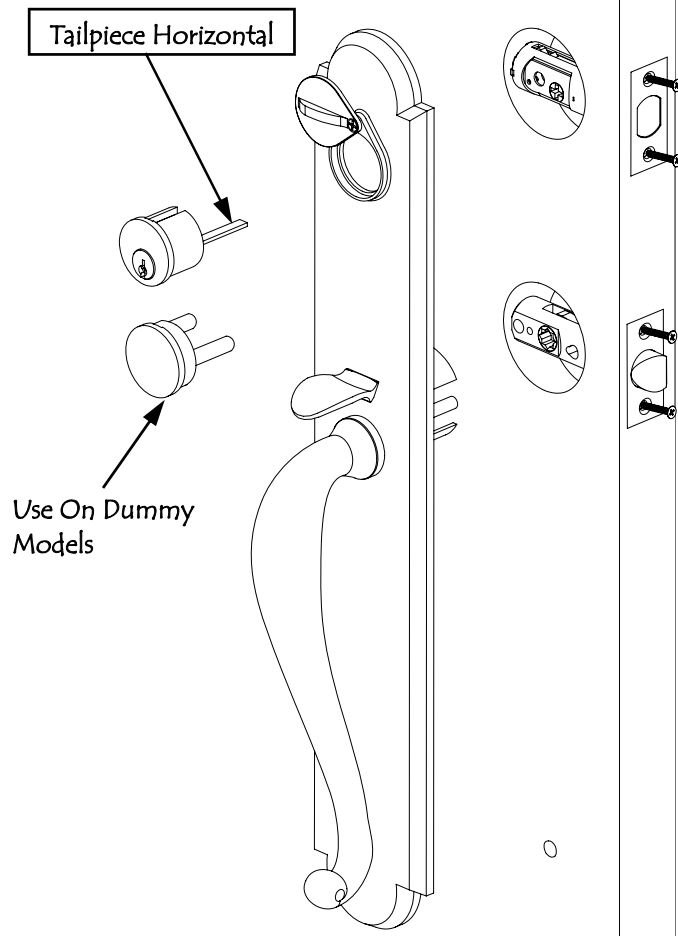
Door Prep - Active Lock



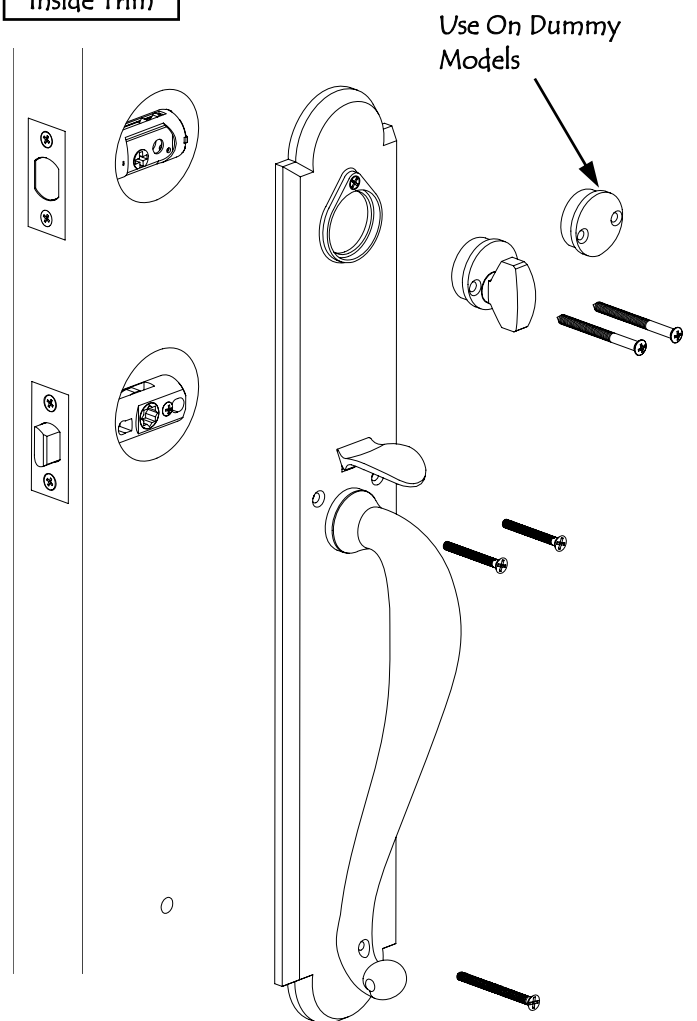
Door Jamb for Active Locks



Outside Trim



Inside Trim



Plates and grip vary depending on style.

Installation Guide - Grip by Grip Entry Set - Double Cylinder Deadbolts

1. Active Door Prep	2. Door Jamb Prep	3. Outside Installation	4. Inside Installation
1" Dia. Edge Bores 2-1/4" 1/8" Deep 2-3/8" or 2-3/4" 5-1/2" 2-1/8" Dia. Bores	3/16" Deep 2-3/4" 1-1/8" 1/8" Deep 1-1/4"	Tailpiece Horizontal Plates and grips vary depending on style.	Tailpiece Vertical

Installation Guide - Grip by Grip Entry Set - Dummy

1. Dummy Door Prep	2. Outside Installation	3. Inside Installation
2-3/8" or 2-3/4" 5-1/2" 2-1/8" Dia. Bores	Outside Dummy Plug Plates and grips vary depending on style.	Inside Dummy Plug

Active Mortise Lock Model Description

Rev. 08-09-17

MODEL "A":

CHEYENNE, DENVER
RECTANGULAR MONOLITHIC
RECTANGULAR SECTIONAL
MORGAN

MODEL "B":

HAMILTON, NORMANDY
LAFAYETTE, MANHATTAN, REGENCY
CRAFTSMAN, VERSAILLES, MELROSE
OVAL RIBBON & REED, OCTAGON
ART NOUVEAU, ARTEMIS, HERA
MILLS, ZEUS, MORMONT
LUGANO, SONOMA, LONGMONT
ADELAIDE, BRISBANE

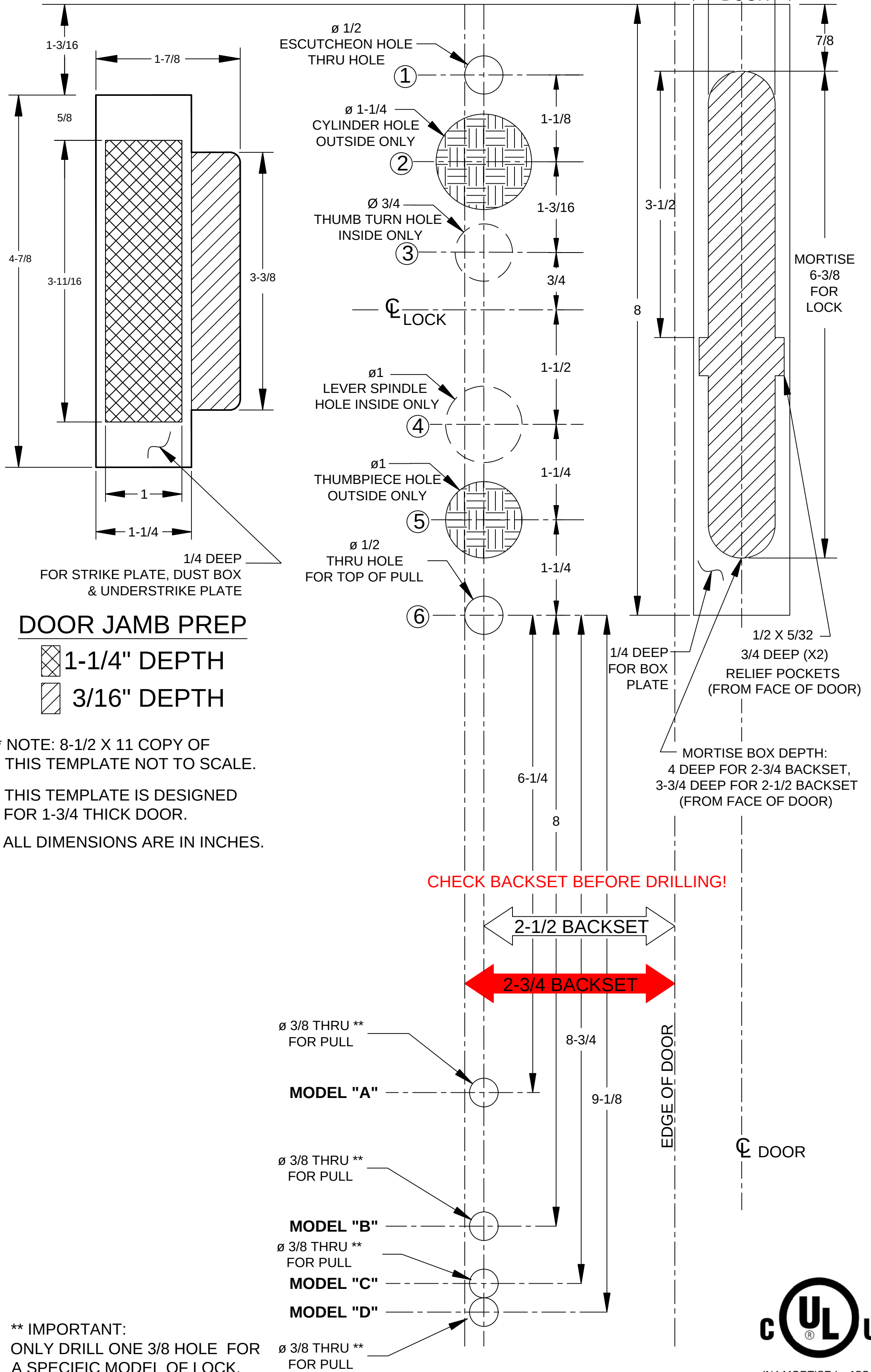
MODEL "C":

MEMPHIS, SALEM, TOPEKA
DA VINCI, RECTANGULAR FULL
ROCKFORD, CHARLESTON, ALBANY
HARRISON, MIDDLETON

MODEL "D":

SAN CARLOS

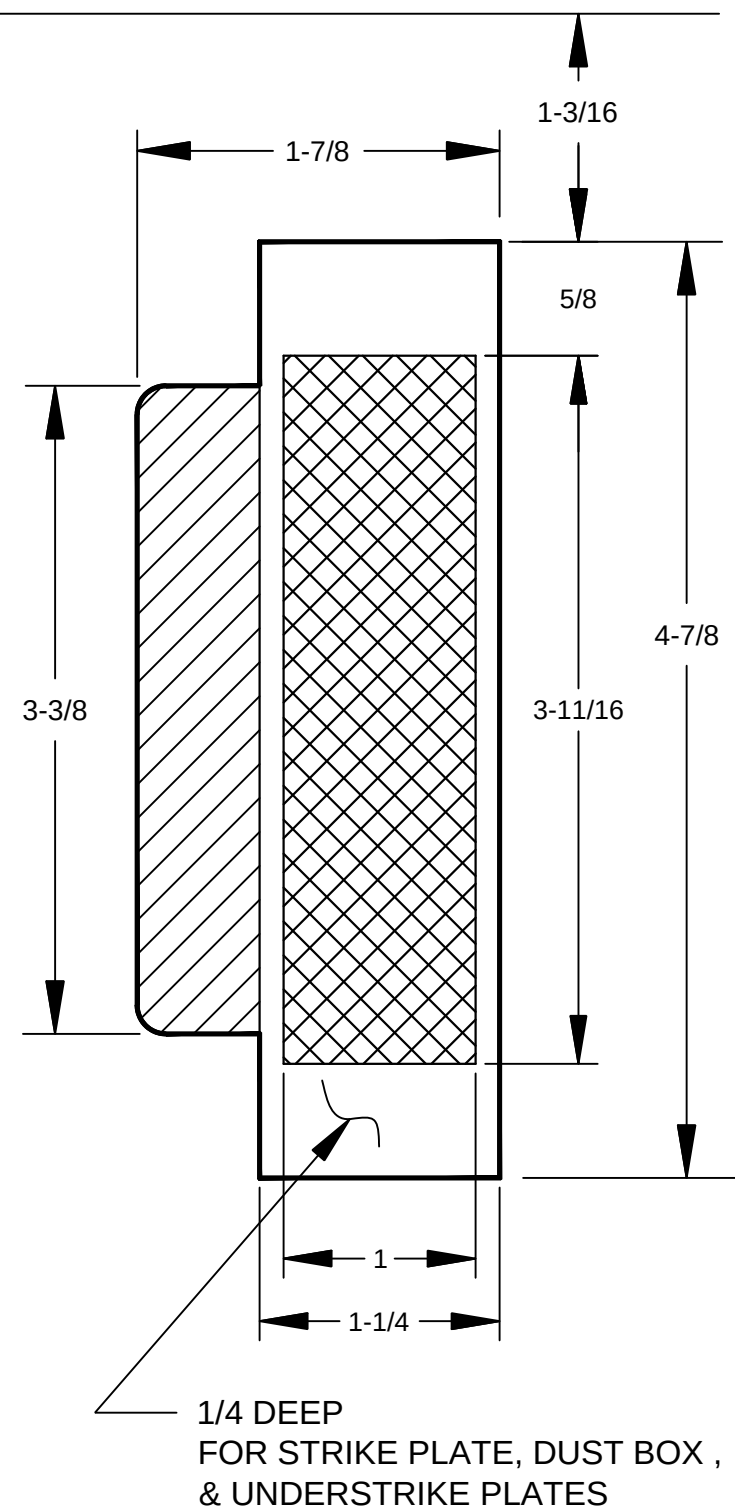
**UL GRIP BY LEVER, GRIP BY KNOB
ACTIVE MORTISE LOCK
HOLE PREPARATION
(LEFT HAND)***



* NOTE: 8-1/2 X 11 COPY OF THIS TEMPLATE NOT TO SCALE.
THIS TEMPLATE IS DESIGNED FOR 1-3/4 THICK DOOR.
ALL DIMENSIONS ARE IN INCHES.

** IMPORTANT:
ONLY DRILL ONE 3/8 HOLE FOR A SPECIFIC MODEL OF LOCK.

EMTEK®
ASSA ABLOY



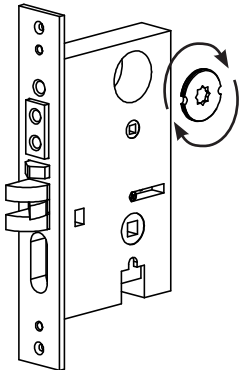
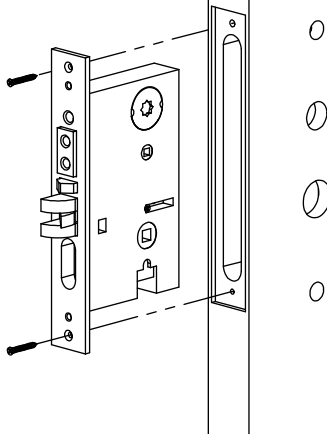
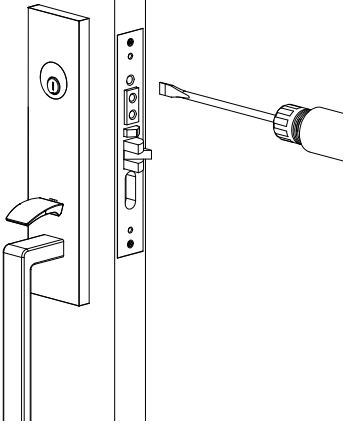
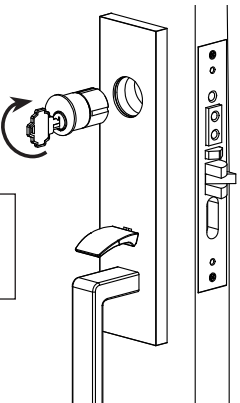
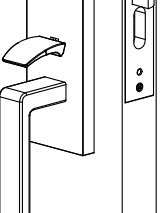
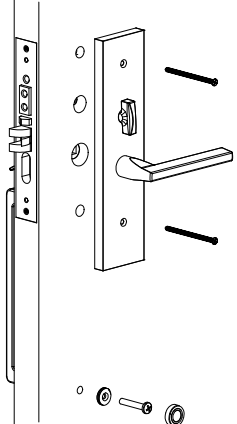
 1-1/4" DEPTH

 3/16" DEPTH

ALL DIMENSIONS ARE IN INCHES.

**** IMPORTANT:**
ONLY DRILL ONE 3/8 HOLE FOR
A SPECIFIC MODEL OF LOCK.



		1. Install Cylinder Plug Install cylinder plug by threading it clockwise onto lock body 1. Instalar Tapón del Cilindro Instalar el tapón en la caja de la cerradura girando hacia la derecha 1. Installer le Disque Installer le disque cylindrique en le vissant dans le sens des aiguilles d'une montre	2. Install Mortise Lock 2. Instalar Cerradura Embutida 2. Installer la serrure à mortaise 
Note: Notch on cylinder plug must be in the 9 o' clock position when fully screwed onto lock body.	Nota: La hendidura del tapón del cilindro debe quedar en la posición de las nueve en punto una vez atornillado completamente en la caja de la cerradura.	Remarque : L'encoche du disque cylindrique doit être en position horizontal lorsqu'il est complètement vissé dans la mortaise.	See template for door prep specifications Ver especificaciones de la preparación de la puerta en plantilla Voir le gabarit pour la préparation de la porte
3. Install Key Cylinder Install key ¾ of the way into the key cylinder and thread it clockwise onto trim plate. 3. Instalar Cilindro de la Llave Introducir la llave ¾ de su recorrido en el cilindro de la llave y atornillarlo a la derecha sobre la placa decorativa. 3. Installer le Cylindre Mortaise Installez la clé à ¾ du chemin dans le cylindre et visser vers la droite dans la plaque de garniture.			
		4. Tighten Key Cylinder After key cylinder is installed, secure cylinder by tightening screw 4. Apretar Cilindro de la Llave Una vez instalado el cilindro de la llave, fijar el cilindro apretando el tornillo 4. Fixer le Cylindre Mortaise Après avoir installé le cylindre, fixer le cylindre en serrant la vis sur la mortaise	
Outside Exterior Extérieur 		5. Mount Inside Trim to Door Montar Unidad Interior en la Puerta 5. Montage en Dedans de la Garniture de Porte	
Plates and grip vary depending on style. Las placas y agarradera varían dependiendo del tipo de cerradura. Les plaques et manipuler varient selon le style.		Inside Interior Intérieur	

6. Install Trim Plate

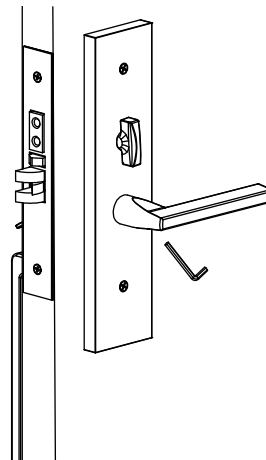
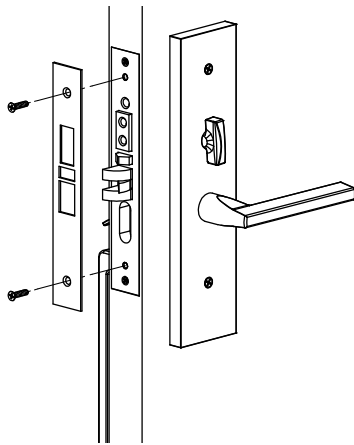
6. Instalar Placa Decorativa

6. Installer la Têtière de la Mortaise

7. Tighten Inside Lever or Knob

7. Apretar Manija/Pomo Interior

7. Serrer la béquille ou bouton interne



Tighten Lever with $\frac{3}{32}$
Hex wrench (provided).

Apretar la manija con una llave
hexagonal de $\frac{3}{32}$ (incluida).

Fixer la béquille avec une clé
hexagonale $\frac{3}{32}$ (fournie).

8. Install Door Jamb

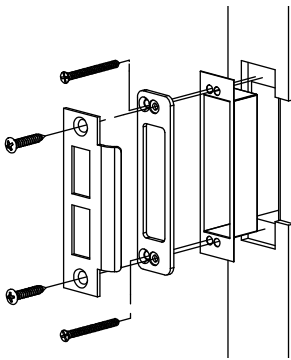
8. Instalar la jamba de la puerta

8. Installer la gâche au cadre de porte

Instructions to reverse swing

Instrucciones para invertir el sentido de apertura

Instructions pour inverser le sens d'ouverture



See template for door jamb prep
specifications

Ver especificaciones de la preparación
de la jamba de la puerta en plantilla

Voir le gabarit pour la préparation du
cadre de porte

1. Remove dowel screw. (Replace after
reversing swing)

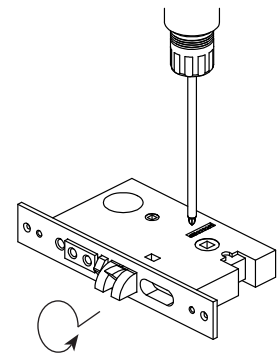
1. Retirar el tornillo de pasador. (Sustituir
tras invertir el sentido)

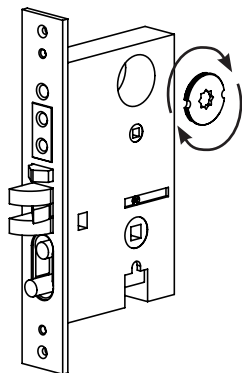
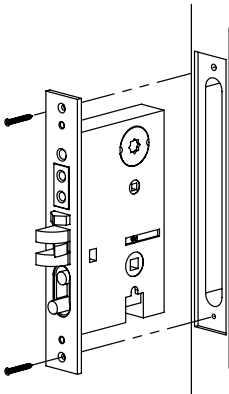
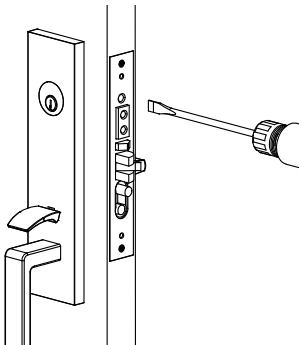
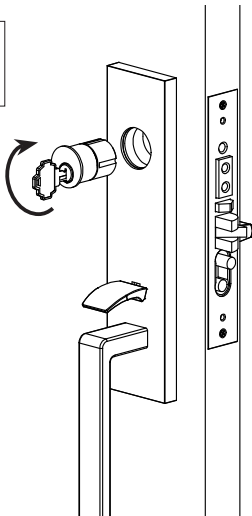
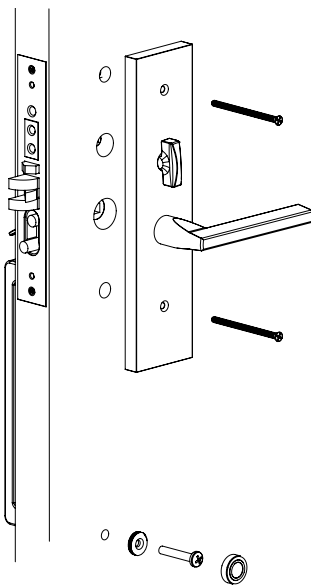
1. Retirer la vis de retenue. (Replacer après
avoir inversé le sens d'ouverture)

2. Pull out and rotate latch bolt to reverse
its direction.

2. Extraer y girar el cerrojo para invertir el
sentido de apertura.

2. Sortir et tourner le pêne pour inverser
son sens d'ouverture.

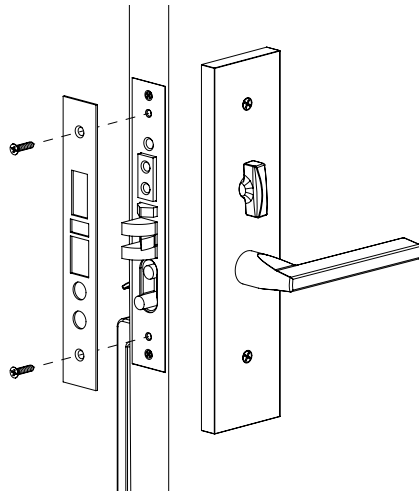


	1. Install Cylinder Plug Install cylinder plug by threading it clockwise onto lock body 1. Instalar Tapón del Cilindro Instalar el tapón del cilindro en la caja de la cerradura girando hacia la derecha 1. Installer la Prise du Cylindre Installer la prise du cylindre en la vissant vers la gauche dans le crampon	2. Install Mortise Lock 2. Instalar Cerradura Embutida 2. Installer la Serrure à Mort aise		See template for door prep specifications Ver especificaciones de la preparación de la puerta en plantilla Voir le modèle pour les spécifications de préparation de la porte
Note: Notch on cylinder plug must be in the 9 o'clock position when fully screwed onto lock body.				
Nota: La hendidura del tapón del cilindro debe quedar en la posición de las nueve en punto una vez atornillado completamente en la caja de la cerradura.				
Remarque : L'encoche sur la prise du cylindre doit être en position 9h lorsqu'elle est complètement vissée dans le crampon.				
3. Install Key Cylinder Install key ¾ of the way into the key cylinder and thread it clockwise onto trim plate.		4. Tighten Key Cylinder After key cylinder is installed, secure cylinder by tightening screw		
3. Instalar Cilindro de la Llave Introducir la llave ¾ de su recorrido en el cilindro de la llave y atornillarlo hacia la derecha sobre la placa decorativa.		4. Apretar Cilindro de la Llave Una vez instalado el cilindro de la llave, fijar el cilindro apretando el tornillo		
3. Installer le Barillet de Serrure Installez la clé à ¾ du chemin dans le barillet et visser vers la droite dans la plaque de garniture.		4. Fixer le Barillet de Serrure Après avoir installé le barillet, Fixer le cylindre au moyen d'une vis de serrage		
		5. Mount Inside Trim to Door 5. Montar Unidad Interior en la Puerta 5. Montage en Dedans de la Garniture de Porte		
				
Outside Exterior Extérieur		Inside Interior Intérieur		
Plates and grip vary depending on style. Las placas y agarradera varían dependiendo del tipo de cerradura. Les plaques et manipuler varient selon le style.				

6. Install Trim Plate

6. Instalar Placa Decorativa

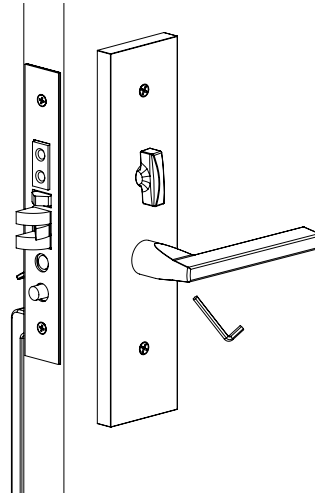
6. Installer la Plaque de Garniture



7. Tighten Inside Lever or Knob

7. Apretar Manija/Pomo Interior

7. Serrer la Béquille ou Bouton interne



Tighten Lever with $\frac{3}{32}$ Hex wrench (provided).

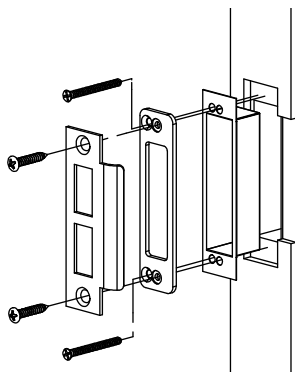
Apretar la manija con una llave hexagonal de $\frac{3}{32}$ (incluida).

Fixer la béquille avec une clé hexagonale $\frac{3}{32}$ (fournie).

8. Install Door Jamb

8. Instalar la Jamba de la Puerta

8. Installer le Montant de Porte



See template for door jamb prep specifications

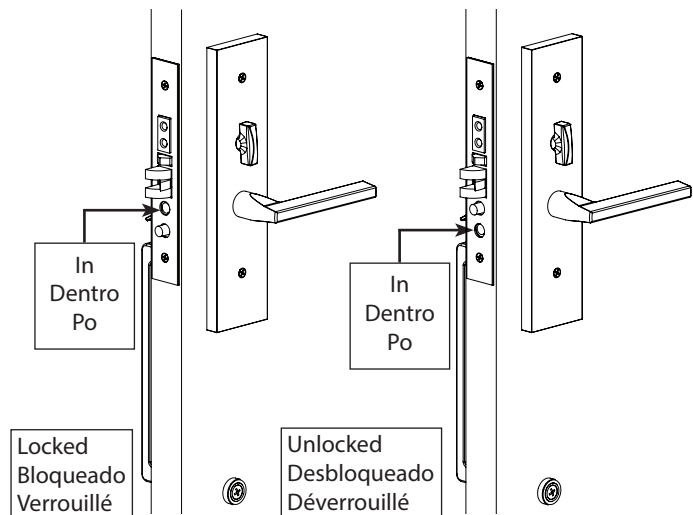
Ver especificaciones de la preparación de la jamba de la puerta en plantilla

Voir le modèle pour les spécifications de préparation du montant de porte

9. Passage/Privacy Lock

9. Bloqueo de Pestillo

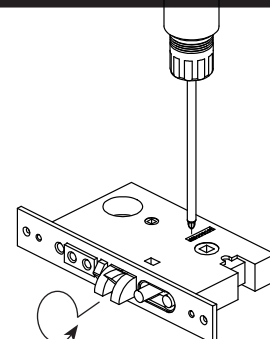
9. Clé Autorisée/de Passage



Instructions to reverse swing • Instrucciones para Invertir el Sentido de Apertura • Instructions Pour Inverser le sens d'ouverture

1. Remove dowel screw. (Replace after reversing swing)
1. Retirar el tornillo de pasador. (Sustituir tras invertir el sentido)
1. Retirer la vis de cheville. (Remplacer après avoir inversé le sens d'ouverture)

2. Pull out and rotate Latch bolt to reverse its direction.
2. Extraer y girar el cerrojo para invertir el sentido de apertura.
2. Sortir et tourner le pêne pour inverser son sens d'ouverture.



Dummy Mortise Lock Model Description

Rev. 07-01-2014

MODEL "A":

CHEYENNE, DENVER
RECTANGULAR MONOLITHIC
RECTANGULAR SECTIONAL
MORGAN

MODEL "B":

HAMILTON, NORMANDY
LAFAYETTE, MANHATTAN, REGENCY
CRAFTSMAN, VERSAILLES
MELROSE, OVAL RIBBON & REED
OCTAGON, ART NOUVEAU
ARTEMIS, HERA, MILLS, ZEUS
MORMONT, LUGANO, SONOMA
LONGMONT

MODEL "C":

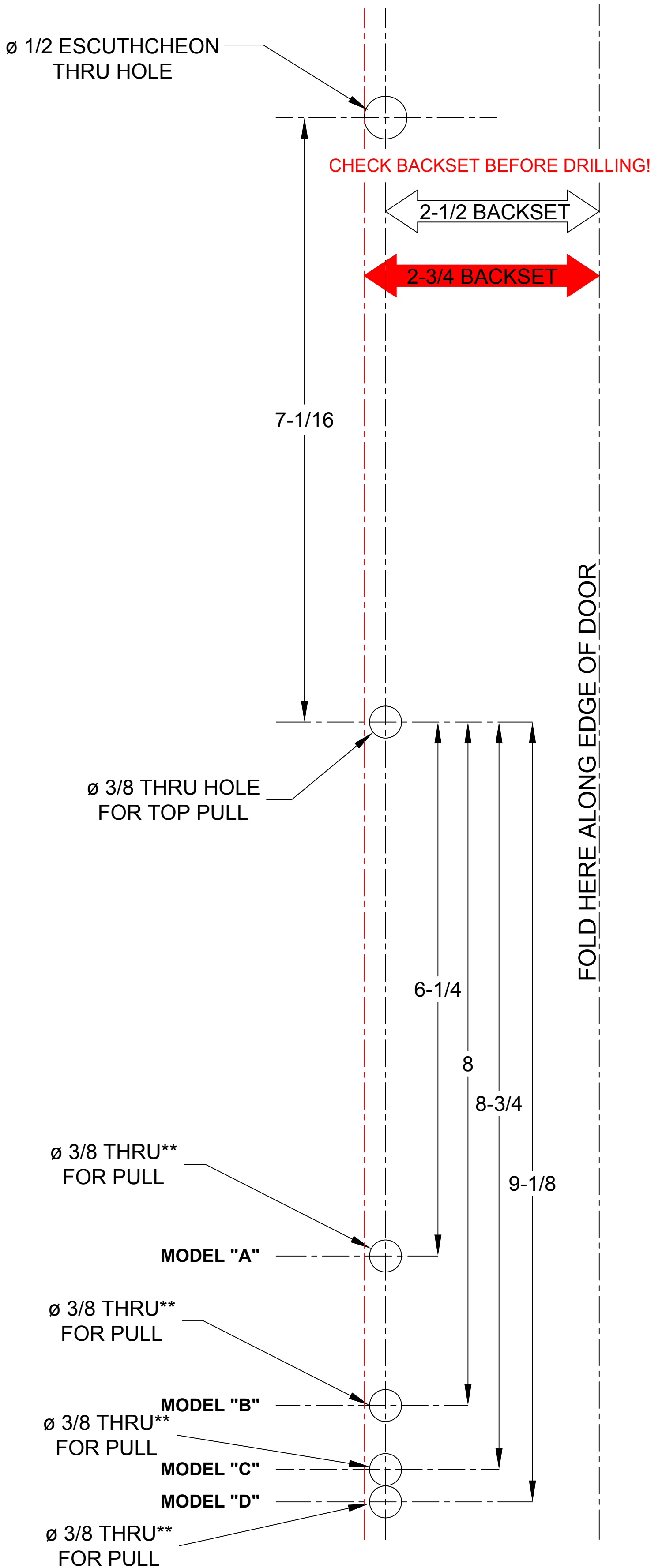
MEMPHIS, SALEM, TOPEKA
DA VINCI, RECTANGULAR FULL
ROCKFORD, CHARLESTON, ALBANY
HARRISON, MIDDLETON

MODEL "D":

SAN CARLOS



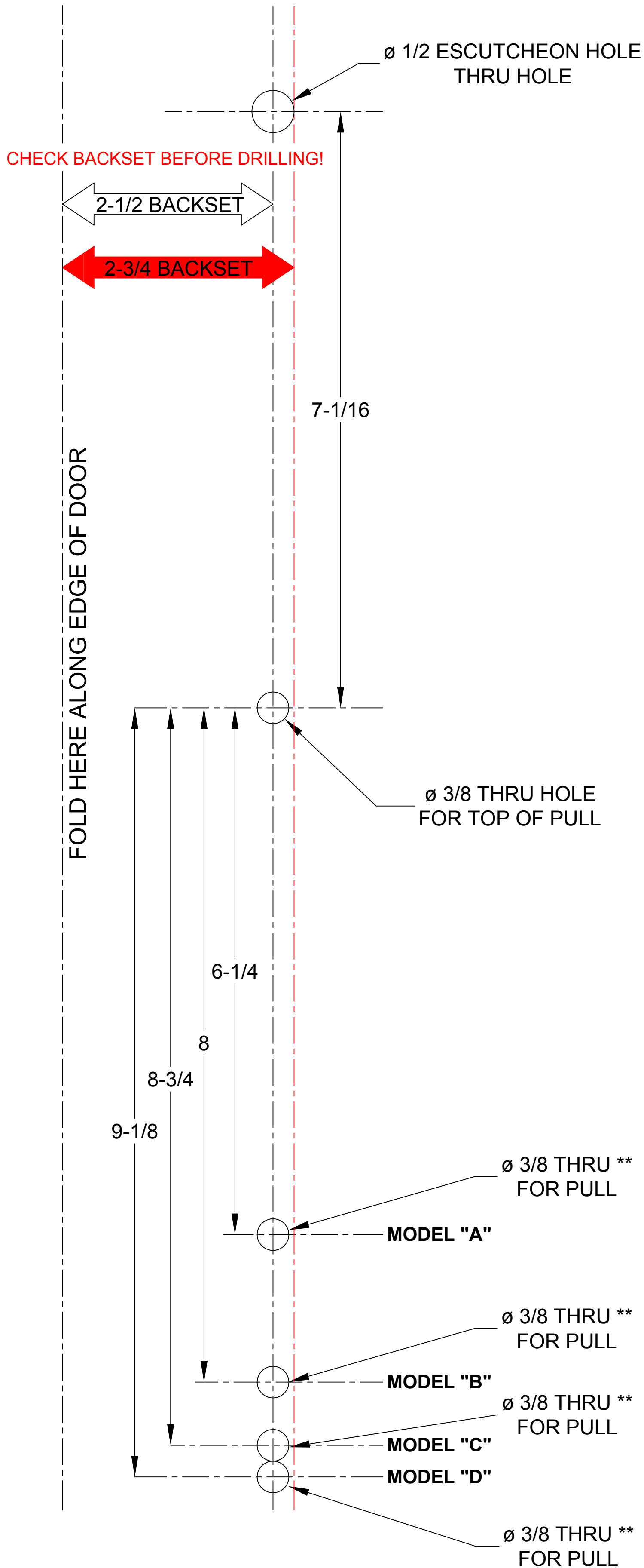
DUMMY MORTISE LOCK
HOLE PREPARATION FOR
TUBULAR ESCUTCHEON SETS
(LEFT HAND) *



* NOTE: 8-1/2 X 11 COPY OF
THIS TEMPLATE NOT TO SCALE.
ALL DIMENSIONS ARE IN INCHES.

** IMPORTANT: ONLY DRILL ONE 3/8
HOLE FOR A SPECIFIC MODEL OF
LOCK. SEE MODEL DESCRIPTION FOR
APPLICATION.

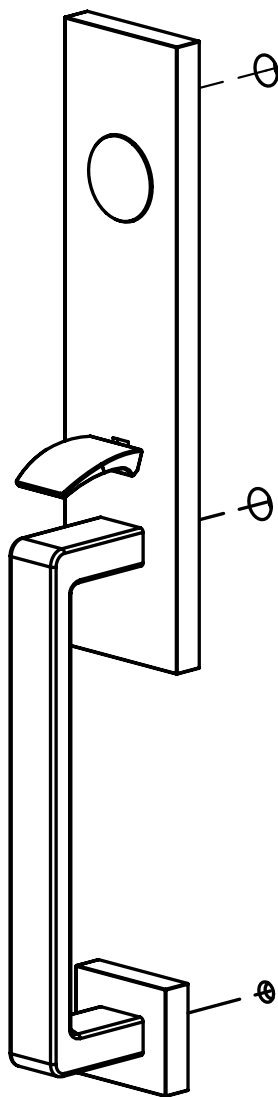
**DUMMY MORTISE LOCK
HOLE PREPARATION FOR
TUBULAR ESCUTCHEON SETS
(RIGHT HAND) ***



*** NOTE: 8-1/2 X 11 COPY OF THIS TEMPLATE NOT TO SCALE. ALL DIMENSIONS ARE IN INCHES.**

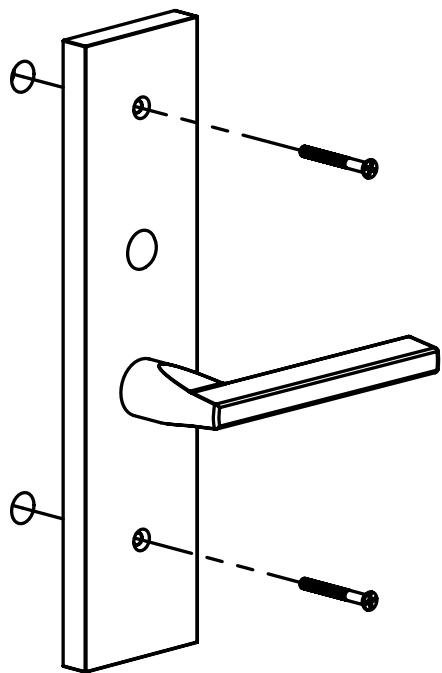
**** IMPORTANT: ONLY DRILL ONE 3/8 HOLE FOR A SPECIFIC MODEL OF LOCK. SEE MODEL DESCRIPTION FOR APPLICATION.**

Outside

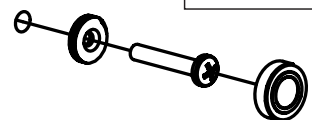


See template for door prep specifications

Inside



Assemble to
bottom tube



Plates and grip vary depending on style.

UL BÉQUILLE PAR BÉQUILLE BOUTON PAR BOUTON SERRURE À MORTAISE ACTIVE PRÉPARATION DU TROU (CÔTÉ GAUCHE)

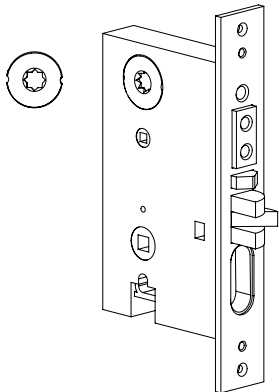
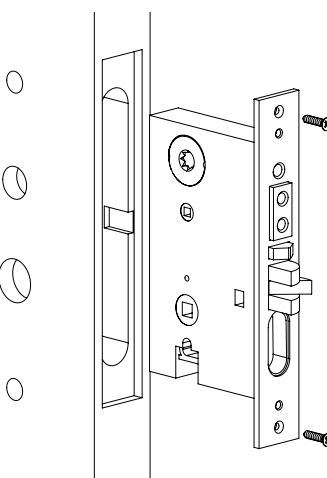
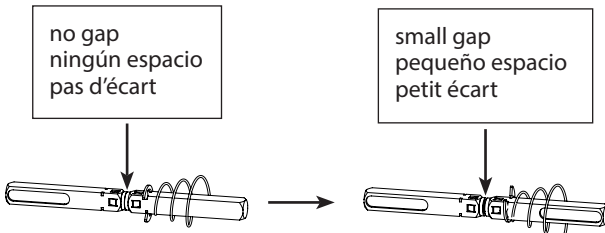
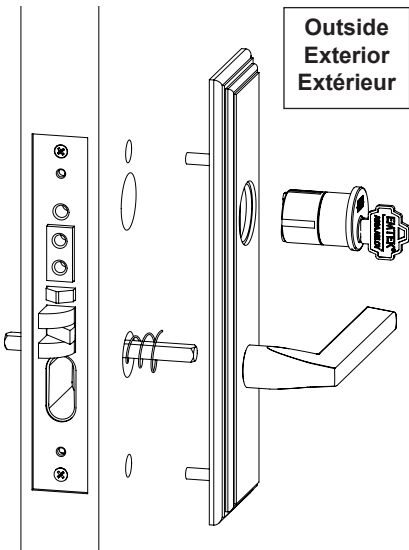
NOTA: COPIA DE 8-1/2 x 11 DE ESTA PLANTILLA NO ESTA A ESCALA. ESTA PLANTILLA SE HA DISEÑADO PARA UNA PUERTA DE GROSOR 1-3/4. TODAS LAS DIMENSIONES SE INDICAN EN PULGADAS
REMARQUE: COPIE 8-1/2 x 11 DE CE MODÈLE N'EST PAS À L'ÉCHELLE. CE MODÈLE EST CONCU POUR UNE PORTE DE 1-3/4 D'ÉPAISSEUR TOUTES LES DIMENSIONS SONT EN POUCES



CERRADURA ACTIVA PARA EMBUTIR CLASIFICADA UL / MANIJA - MANIJA / POMO - POMO PREPARACIÓN DE AGUJEROS (DERECHA)
UL BÉQUILLE PAR BÉQUILLE BOUTON PAR BOUTON SERRURE À MORTAISE ACTIVE PRÉPARATION DU TROU (CÔTÉ DROIT)

NOTA: COPIA DE 8-1/2 x 11 DE ESTA PLANTILLA NO ESTA A ESCALA. ESTA PLANTILLA SE HA DISEÑADO PARA UNA PUERTA DE GROSOR 1-3/4. TODAS LAS DIMENSIONES SE INDICAN EN PULGADAS
REMARQUE: COPIE 8-1/2 x 11 DE CE MODÈLE N'EST PAS À L'ÉCHELLE. CE MODÈLE EST CONÇU POUR UNE PORTE DE 1-3/4 D'ÉPAISSEUR TOUTES LES DIMENSIONS SONT EN POUCES



			1. Install Cylinder Plug Install cylinder plug by threading it clockwise onto lock body 1. Instalar Tapón del Cilindro Instalar el tapón en la caja de la cerradura girando hacia la derecha 1. Installer le Disque Installer le disque cylindrique en le vissant dans le sens des aiguilles d'une montre			2. Install Mortise Lock 2. Instalar Cerradura Embutida 2. Installer la serrure à mortaise 		
Note: Notch on cylinder plug must be in the 9 o' clock position when fully screwed onto lock body.			Nota: La hendidura del tapón del cilindro debe quedar en la posición de las nueve en punto una vez atornillado completamente en la caja de la cerradura.			Remarque : L'encoche du disque cylindrique doit être en position horizontale lorsqu'il est complètement vissé dans la mortaise.		
3. Adjust and Install Spindle Rotate one full turn until both slots are facing the same way.			3. Ajustar e Instalar el eje Gire una vuelta completa hasta que ambas ranuras estén orientadas de la misma manera.			4. Install Key Cylinder Install key ¾ of the way into the key cylinder and thread it clockwise onto trim plate.		
3. Ajuster et installer la broche Faites un tour complet jusqu'à ce que les deux emplacements fassent face au même sens.			4. Instalar Cilindro de la Llave Introducir la llave ¾ de su recorrido en el cilindro de la llave y atornillarlo a la derecha sobre la placa decorativa.			4. Installer le Cylindre Mortaise Installez la clé à ¾ du chemin dans le cylindre et visser vers la droite dans la plaque de garniture.		
no gap ningún espacio pas d'écart small gap pequeño espacio petit écart 			Outside Exterior Extérieur Both slots on spindle facing towards hinges. Las dos ranuras orientadas hacia las bisagras. Les deux fentes de la broche sont orientées vers les charnières.					
						Plates and lever/knob vary depending on style. Las placas y manija/pomo varían dependiendo del tipo de cerradura. Les plaques et béquille/bouton varient selon le style.		

5. Tighten Key Cylinder

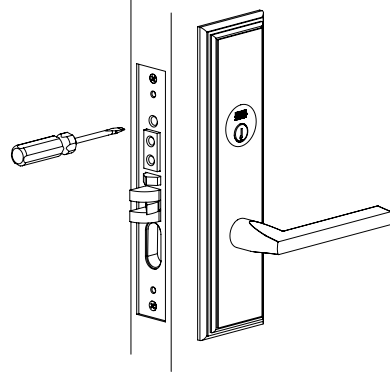
After key cylinder is installed, secure cylinder by tightening screw

5. Apretar Cilindro de la Llave

Una vez instalado el cilindro de la llave, fijar el cilindro apretando el tornillo

5. Fixer le Cylindre Mortaise

Après avoir installé le cylindre, fixer le cylindre en serrant la vis sur la mortaise



6. Mount Inside Trim to Door

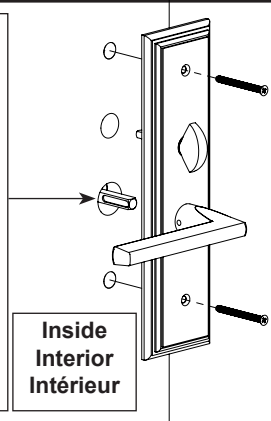
6. Montar Unidad Interior en la Puerta

6. Montage en Dedans de la Garniture de Porte

Confirm slot on spindle is facing towards hinges.

Confirme que la ranura en el eje está orientada hacia las bisagras.

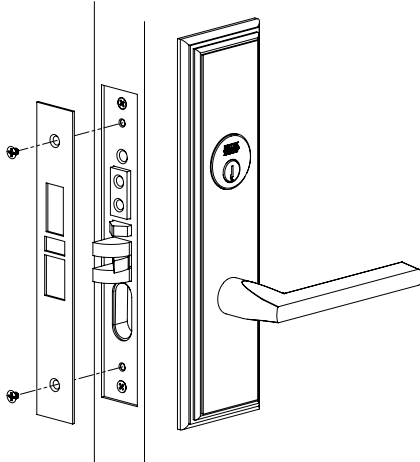
Vérifiez que la fente de la broche est tournée vers les charnières.



7. Install Trim Plate

7. Instalar Placa Decorativa

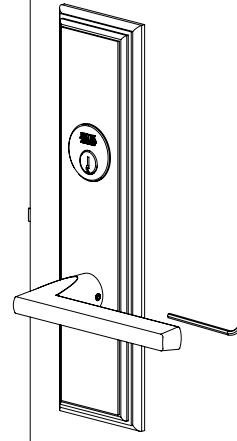
7. Installer la Têtière de la Mortaise



8. Tighten Inside Lever or Knob

8. Apretar Manija/Pomo Interior

8. Serrer la béquille ou bouton interne



Tighten both Levers with $\frac{3}{32}$ Hex wrench (provided).

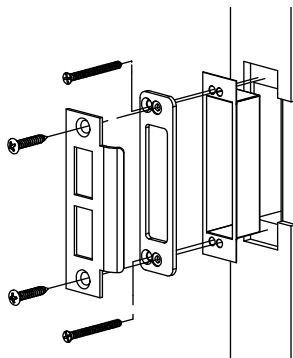
Apretar ambas palancas con una llave hexagonal de $\frac{3}{32}$ (incluida).

Serrer les deux leviers avec une clé hexagonale $\frac{3}{32}$ (fournie).

9. Install Door Jamb

9. Instalar la jamba de la puerta

9. Installer la gâche au cadre de porte



See template for door jamb prep specifications
Ver especificaciones de la preparación de la jamba de la puerta en plantilla
Voir le gabarit pour la préparation du cadre de porte

Instructions to reverse swing

Instrucciones para invertir el sentido de apertura

Instructions pour inverser le sens d'ouverture

1. Remove dowel screw. (Replace after reversing swing)

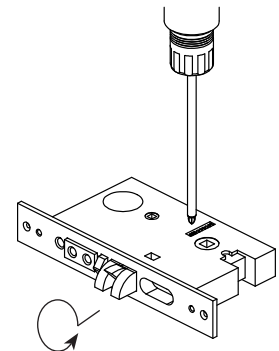
1. Retirar el tornillo de pasador. (Sustituir tras invertir el sentido)

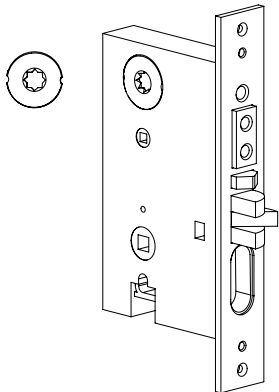
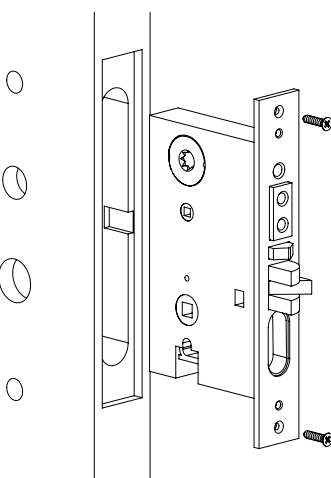
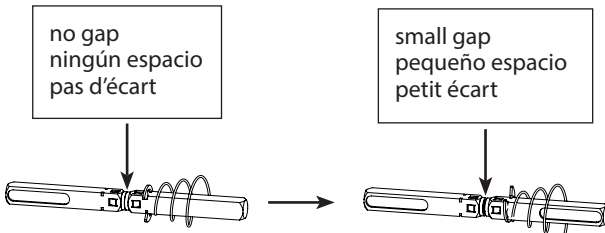
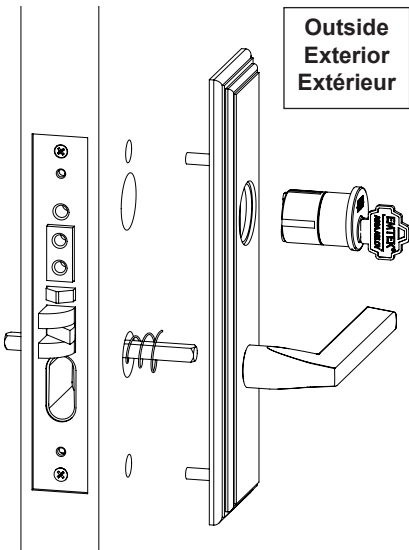
1. Retirer la vis de retenue. (Replacer après avoir inversé le sens d'ouverture)

2. Pull out and rotate latch bolt to reverse its direction.

2. Extraer y girar el cerrojo para invertir el sentido de apertura.

2. Sortir et tourner le pêne pour inverser son sens d'ouverture.



			1. Install Cylinder Plug Install cylinder plug by threading it clockwise onto lock body 1. Instalar Tapón del Cilindro Instalar el tapón en la caja de la cerradura girando hacia la derecha 1. Installer le Disque Installer le disque cylindrique en le vissant dans le sens des aiguilles d'une montre			2. Install Mortise Lock 2. Instalar Cerradura Embutida 2. Installer la serrure à mortaise 		
Note: Notch on cylinder plug must be in the 9 o' clock position when fully screwed onto lock body.			Nota: La hendidura del tapón del cilindro debe quedar en la posición de las nueve en punto una vez atornillado completamente en la caja de la cerradura.			Remarque : L'encoche du disque cylindrique doit être en position horizontale lorsqu'il est complètement vissé dans la mortaise.		
3. Adjust and Install Spindle Rotate one full turn until both slots are facing the same way.			3. Ajustar e Instalar el eje Gire una vuelta completa hasta que ambas ranuras estén orientadas de la misma manera.			4. Install Key Cylinder Install key ¾ of the way into the key cylinder and thread it clockwise onto trim plate.		
3. Ajuster et installer la broche Faites un tour complet jusqu'à ce que les deux emplacements fassent face au même sens.			4. Instalar Cilindro de la Llave Introducir la llave ¾ de su recorrido en el cilindro de la llave y atornillarlo a la derecha sobre la placa decorativa.			4. Installer le Cylindre Mortaise Installez la clé à ¾ du chemin dans le cylindre et visser vers la droite dans la plaque de garniture.		
no gap ningún espacio pas d'écart small gap pequeño espacio petit écart  Outside Exterior Extérieur Both slots on spindle facing towards hinges. Las dos ranuras orientadas hacia las bisagras. Les deux fentes de la broche sont orientées vers les charnières.			 Outside Exterior Extérieur Plates and lever/knob vary depending on style. Las placas y manija/pomo varían dependiendo del tipo de cerradura. Les plaques et béquille/bouton varient selon le style.					

5. Tighten Key Cylinder

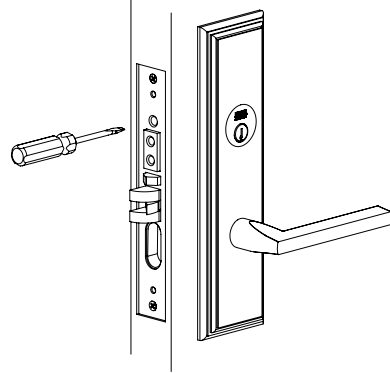
After key cylinder is installed, secure cylinder by tightening screw

5. Apretar Cilindro de la Llave

Una vez instalado el cilindro de la llave, fijar el cilindro apretando el tornillo

5. Fixer le Cylindre Mortaise

Après avoir installé le cylindre, fixer le cylindre en serrant la vis sur la mortaise



6. Mount Inside Trim to Door

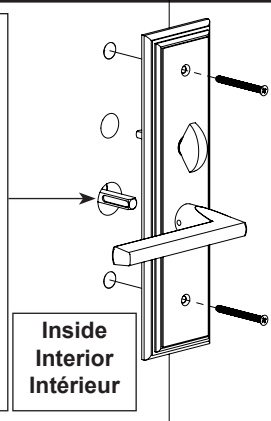
6. Montar Unidad Interior en la Puerta

6. Montage en Dedans de la Garniture de Porte

Confirm slot on spindle is facing towards hinges.

Confirme que la ranura en el eje está orientada hacia las bisagras.

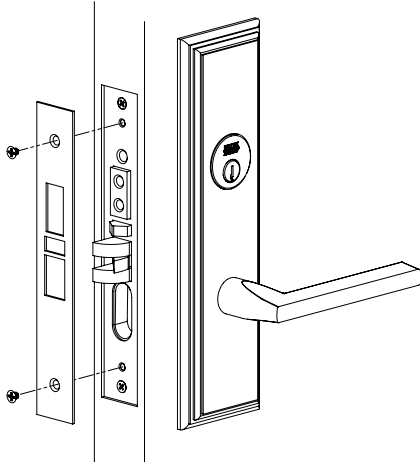
Vérifiez que la fente de la broche est tournée vers les charnières.



7. Install Trim Plate

7. Instalar Placa Decorativa

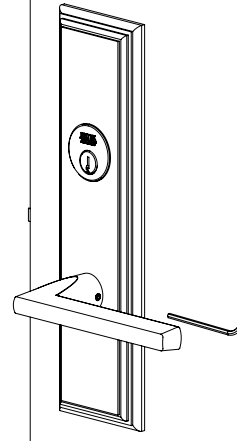
7. Installer la Têtière de la Mortaise



8. Tighten Inside Lever or Knob

8. Apretar Manija/Pomo Interior

8. Serrer la béquille ou bouton interne



Tighten both Levers with $\frac{3}{32}$ Hex wrench (provided).

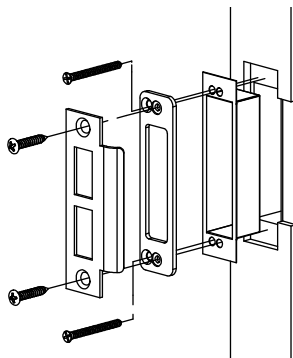
Apretar ambas palancas con una llave hexagonal de $\frac{3}{32}$ (incluida).

Serrer les deux leviers avec une clé hexagonale $\frac{3}{32}$ (fournie).

9. Install Door Jamb

9. Instalar la jamba de la puerta

9. Installer la gâche au cadre de porte



See template for door jamb prep specifications
Ver especificaciones de la preparación de la jamba de la puerta en plantilla
Voir le gabarit pour la préparation du cadre de porte

Instructions to reverse swing

Instrucciones para invertir el sentido de apertura

Instructions pour inverser le sens d'ouverture

1. Remove dowel screw. (Replace after reversing swing)

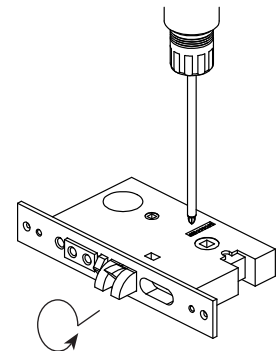
1. Retirar el tornillo de pasador. (Sustituir tras invertir el sentido)

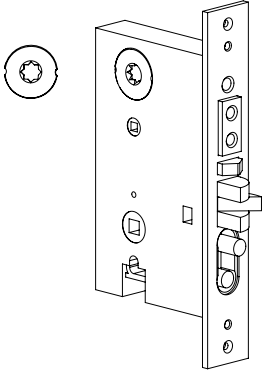
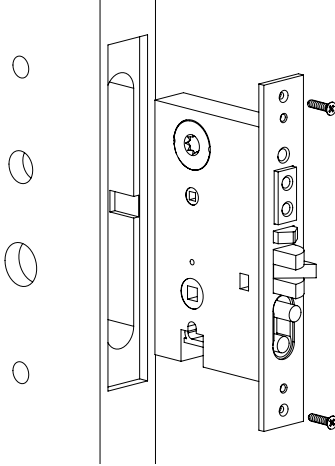
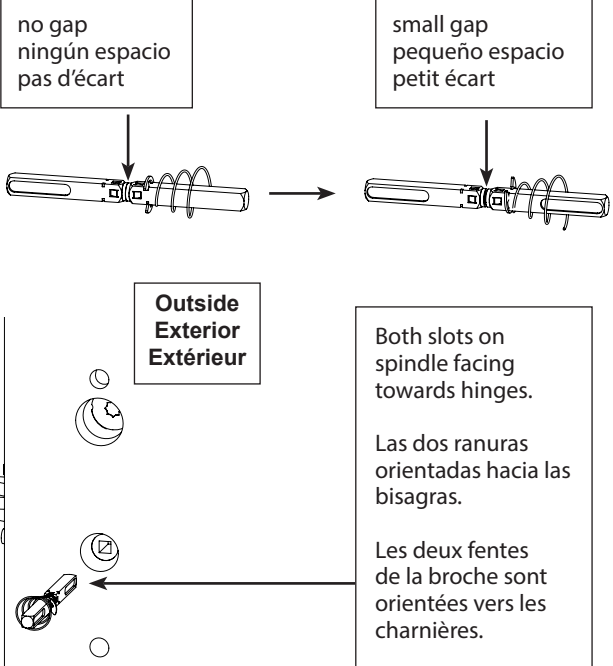
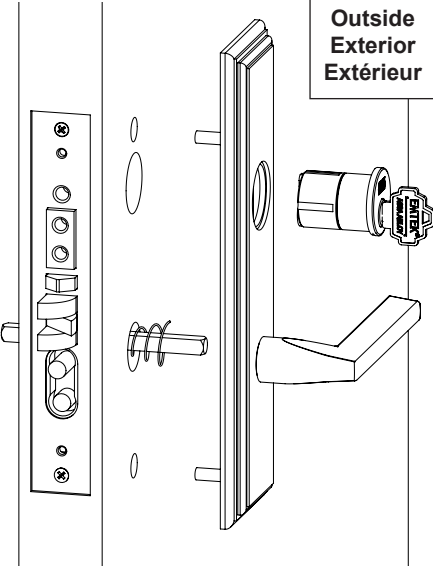
1. Retirer la vis de retenue. (Replacer après avoir inversé le sens d'ouverture)

2. Pull out and rotate latch bolt to reverse its direction.

2. Extraer y girar el cerrojo para invertir el sentido de apertura.

2. Sortir et tourner le pêne pour inverser son sens d'ouverture.



			1. Install Cylinder Plug Install cylinder plug by threading it clockwise onto lock body 1. Instalar Tapón del Cilindro Instalar el tapón en la caja de la cerradura girando hacia la derecha 1. Installer le Disque Installer le disque cylindrique en le vissant dans le sens des aiguilles d'une montre	2. Install Mortise Lock 2. Instalar Cerradura Embutida 2. Installer la serrure à mortaise  See template for door prep specifications Ver especificaciones de la preparación de la puerta en plantilla Voir le gabarit pour la préparation de la porte
Note: Notch on cylinder plug must be in the 9 o' clock position when fully screwed onto lock body.	Nota: La hendidura del tapón del cilindro debe quedar en la posición de las nueve en punto una vez atornillado completamente en la caja de la cerradura.	Remarque : L'encoche du disque cylindrique doit être en position horizontale lorsqu'il est complètement vissé dans la mortaise.	3. Adjust and Install Spindle Rotate one full turn until both slots are facing the same way. 3. Ajustar e Instalar el eje Gire una vuelta completa hasta que ambas ranuras estén orientadas de la misma manera. 3. Ajuster et installer la broche Faites un tour complet jusqu'à ce que les deux emplacements fassent face au même sens. no gap ningún espacio pas d'écart small gap pequeño espacio petit écart Outside Exterior Extérieur Both slots on spindle facing towards hinges. Las dos ranuras orientadas hacia las bisagras. Les deux fentes de la broche sont orientées vers les charnières. 	4. Install Key Cylinder Install key ¾ of the way into the key cylinder and thread it clockwise onto trim plate. 4. Instalar Cilindro de la Llave Introducir la llave ¾ de su recorrido en el cilindro de la llave y atornillarlo a la derecha sobre la placa decorativa. 4. Installer le Cylindre Mortaise Installez la clé à ¾ du chemin dans le cylindre et visser vers la droite dans la plaque de garniture.  Outside Exterior Extérieur Plates and lever/knob vary depending on style. Las placas y manija/pomo varían dependiendo del tipo de cerradura. Les plaques et béquille/bouton varient selon le style.

5. Tighten Key Cylinder

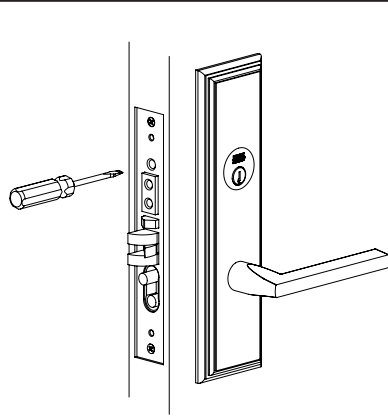
After key cylinder is installed, secure cylinder by tightening screw

5. Apretar Cilindro de la Llave

Una vez instalado el cilindro de la llave, fijar el cilindro apretando el tornillo

5. Fixer le Cylindre Mortaise

Après avoir installé le cylindre, fixer le cylindre en serrant la vis sur la mortaise



6. Mount Inside Trim to Door

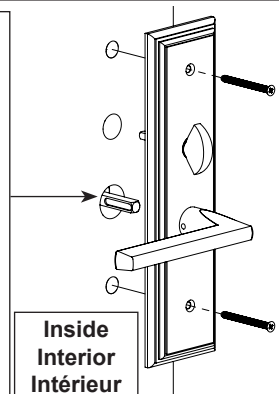
6. Montar Unidad Interior en la Puerta

6. Montage en Dedans de la Garniture de Porte

Confirm slot on spindle is facing towards hinges.

Confirme que la ranura en el eje está orientada hacia las bisagras.

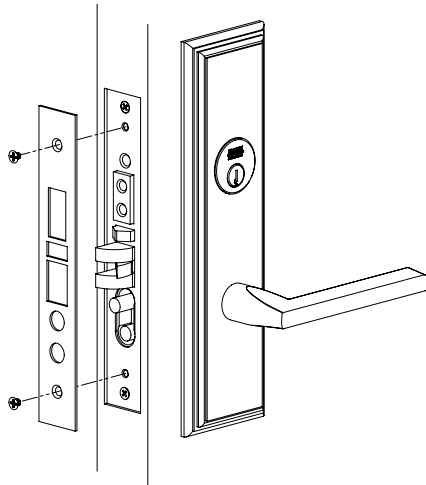
Vérifiez que la fente de la broche est tournée vers les charnières.



7. Install Trim Plate

7. Instalar Placa Decorativa

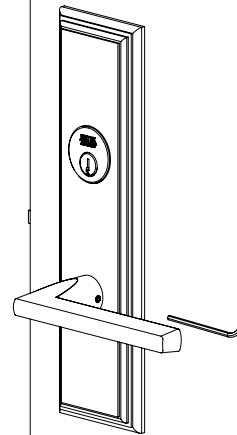
7. Installer la Têtière de la Mortaise



8. Tighten Inside Lever or Knob

8. Apretar Manija/Pomo Interior

8. Serrer la béquille ou bouton interne



Tighten both Levers with $\frac{3}{32}$ Hex wrench (provided).

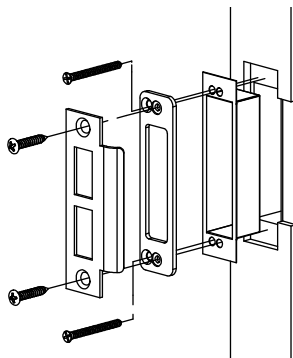
Apretar ambas palancas con una llave hexagonal de $\frac{3}{32}$ (incluida).

Serrer les deux leviers avec une clé hexagonale $\frac{3}{32}$ (fournie).

9. Install Door Jamb

9. Instalar la jamba de la puerta

9. Installer la gâche au cadre de porte



See template for door jamb prep specifications
Ver especificaciones de la preparación de la jamba de la puerta en plantilla
Voir le gabarit pour la préparation du cadre de porte

Instructions to reverse swing

Instrucciones para invertir el sentido de apertura

Instructions pour inverser le sens d'ouverture

1. Remove dowel screw. (Replace after reversing swing)

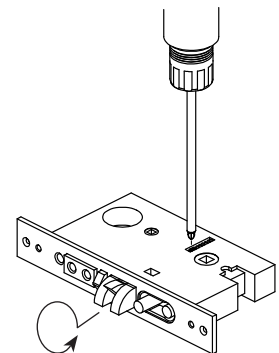
1. Retirar el tornillo de pasador. (Sustituir tras invertir el sentido)

1. Retirer la vis de retenue. (Replacer après avoir inversé le sens d'ouverture)

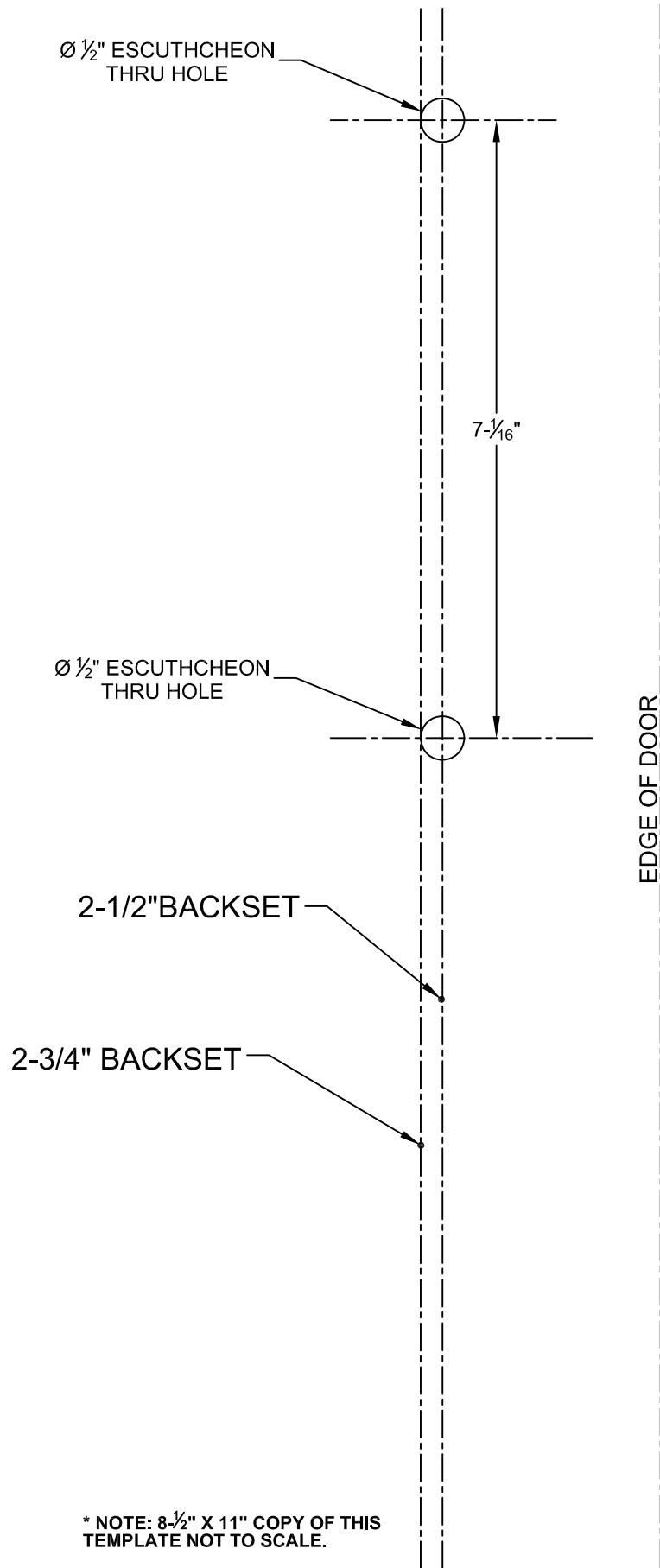
2. Pull out and rotate latch bolt to reverse its direction.

2. Extraer y girar el cerrojo para invertir el sentido de apertura.

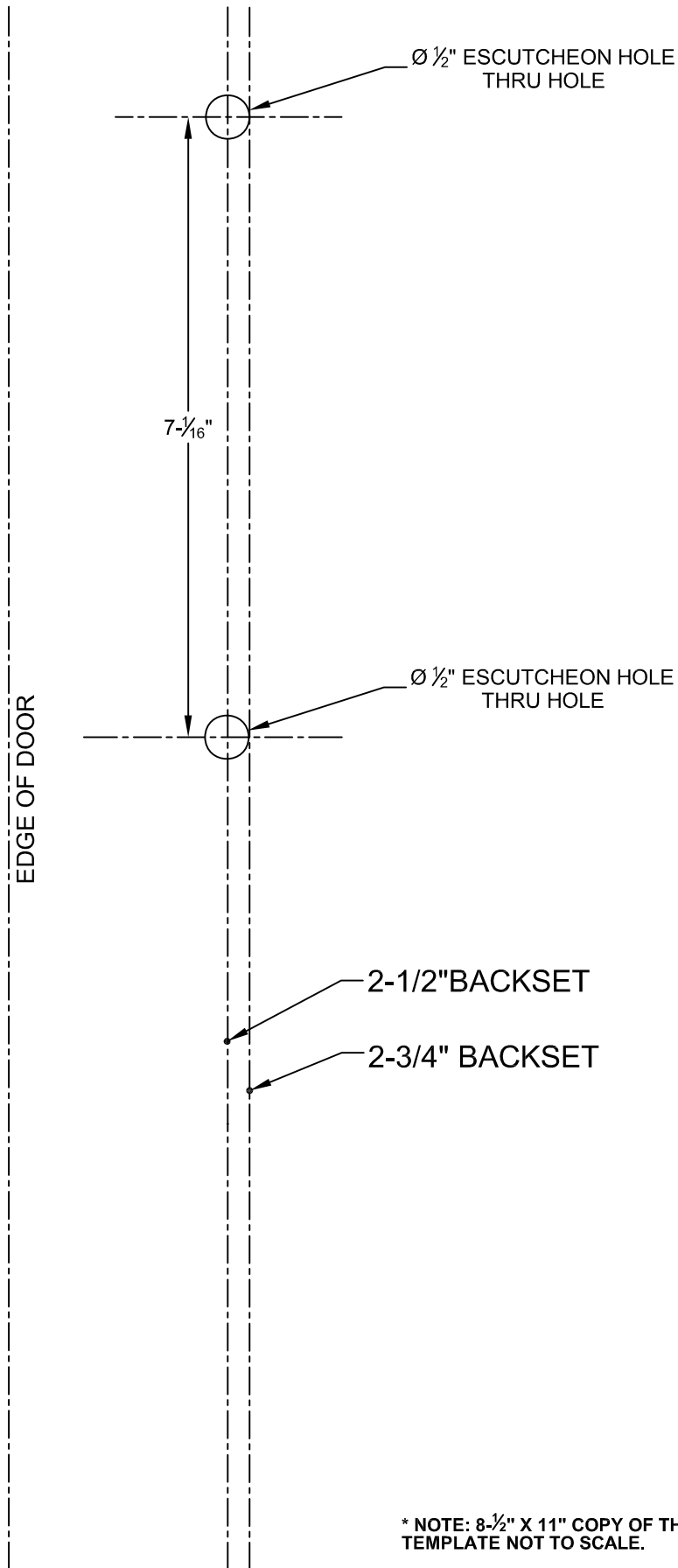
2. Sortir et tourner le pêne pour inverser son sens d'ouverture.



**DUMMY MORTISE LOCK
HOLE PREPARATION
FOR LEVER BY LEVER
AND KNOB BY KNOB
(LEFT HAND) ***



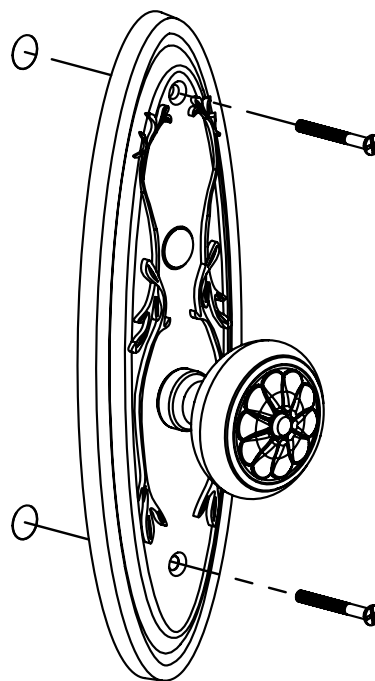
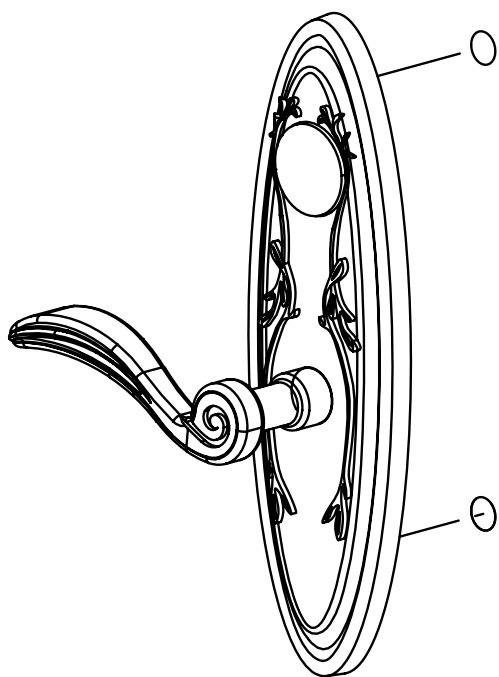
*** NOTE: 8-1/2" X 11" COPY OF THIS
TEMPLATE NOT TO SCALE.**



**DUMMY MORTISE LOCK
HOLE PREPARATION
FOR LEVER BY LEVER
AND KNOB BY KNOB
(RIGHT HAND) ***

*** NOTE: 8-1/2" X 11" COPY OF THIS
TEMPLATE NOT TO SCALE.**

Installation Guide - Dummy Mortise Lock Lever by Lever, Knob by Knob



See template for door prep specifications

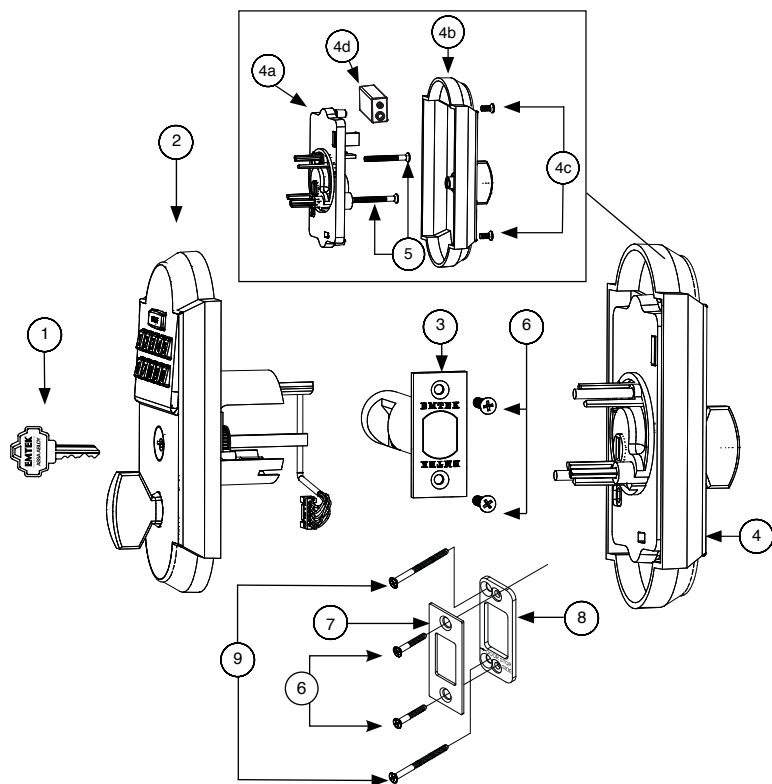
Plates and knobs/levers vary depending on style.

Installation & Programming Guide

Keypad Deadbolt Locksets



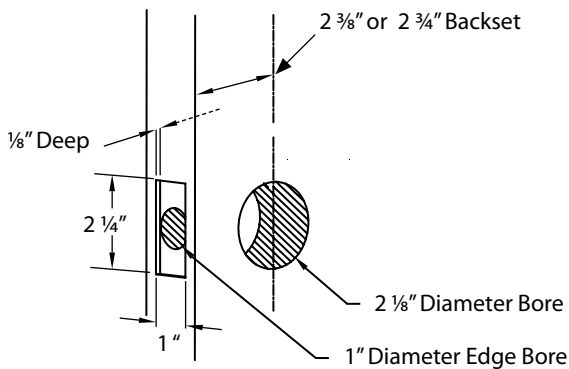
What's in the Box



ITEM NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY.
1	Key	2
2	Outside Trim Plate Assembly	1
3	Deadbolt Latch Assembly 2 3/8" or 2 1/4" Backset	1
4	Inside Trim Plate Assembly	1
4a	Inside Chassis	1
4b	Inside Trim Plate	1
4c	#8-32 x 1/4" Flat Head Machine Screw	2
4d	9V Alkaline Battery - Type 6LR61	1
5	#8-32 x 1 1/2" Flat Head Machine Screw	2
6	#8 x 3/4" Wood Screw	4
7	Strike Plate	1
8	Security Plate	1
9	#10 x 3" Wood Screw	2

Preparation

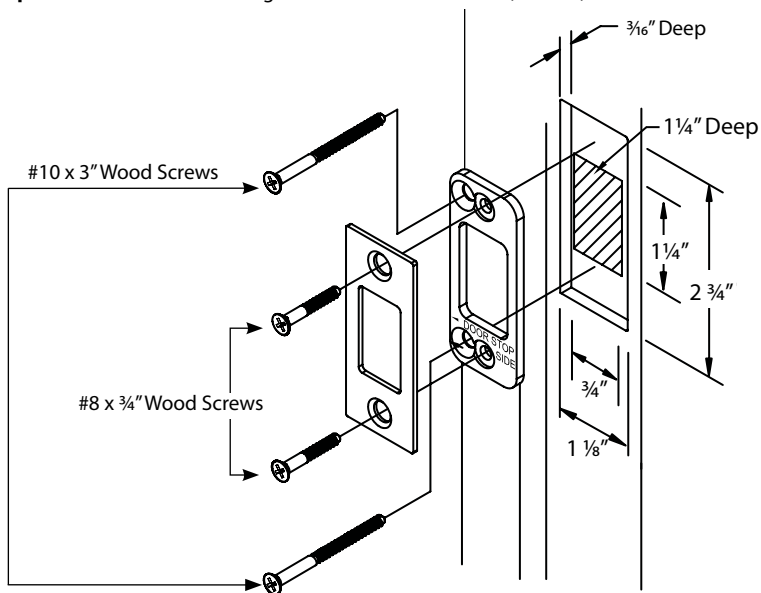
1. Door Prep



2. Door Jamb Prep

Step 1: Fasten Security Plate using two #10 x 3" Wood Screws (item #9).

Step 2: Fasten Strike Plate using two #8 x $\frac{3}{4}"$ Wood Screws (item #6).



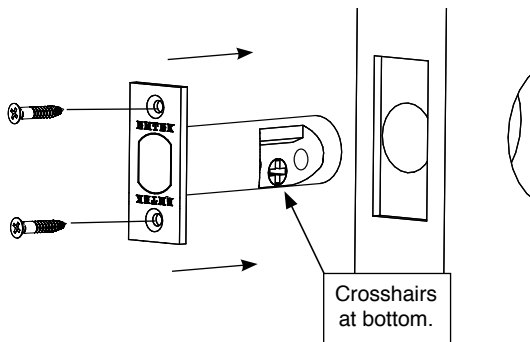
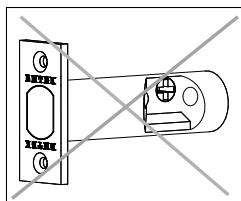
How to Install

1. Install Latch

Fasten Latch using two #8 x ¾" Wood Screws (item #6).



THE LATCH ASSEMBLY MUST BE ORIENTED AS SHOWN AND THE BOLT MUST BE IN THE RETRACTED POSITION FOR INSTALLATION.

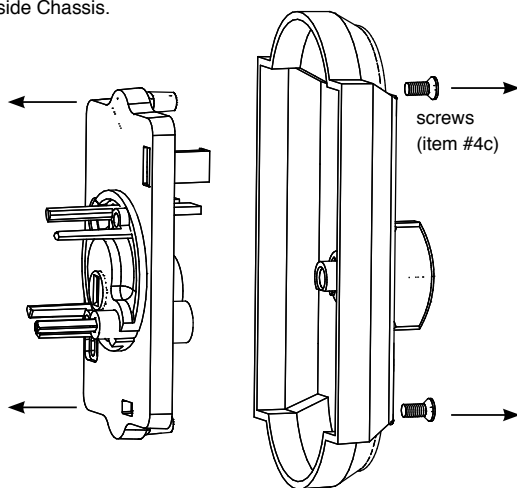
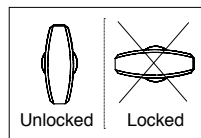


2. Remove Screws from Inside Trim Plate

Use a Phillips head screwdriver to remove screws (item #4c) shown below and detach Inside Trim Plate from the Inside Chassis.



REMOVE INSIDE CHASSIS FROM TRIM PLATE BEFORE INSTALLING THE OUTSIDE TRIM. THUMBTURN MUST BE IN UNLOCKED POSITION.

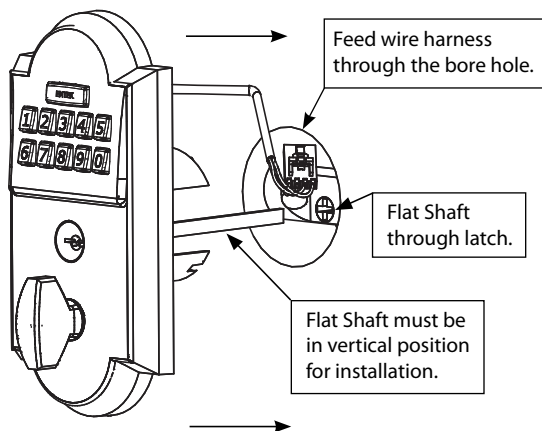


3. Install Outside Trim Plate Assembly

Position the Outside Trim Plate Assembly through the bore hole.



**ONCE POSITIONED,
OUTSIDE TRIM PLATE
ASSEMBLY REQUIRES
SUPPORT.**



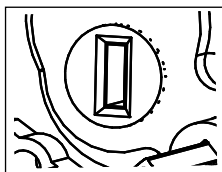
4. Install Inside Chassis

Step 1: Confirm the position of Flat Shaft.

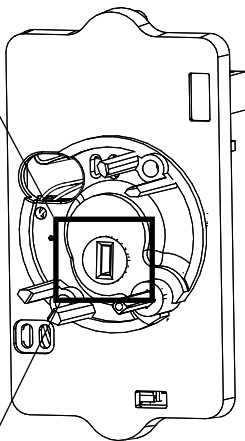
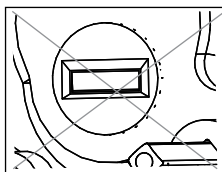


**HOLE FOR FLAT
SHAFT MUST BE IN
VERTICAL POSITION
FOR INSTALLATION.**

✓ Correct for Installation.

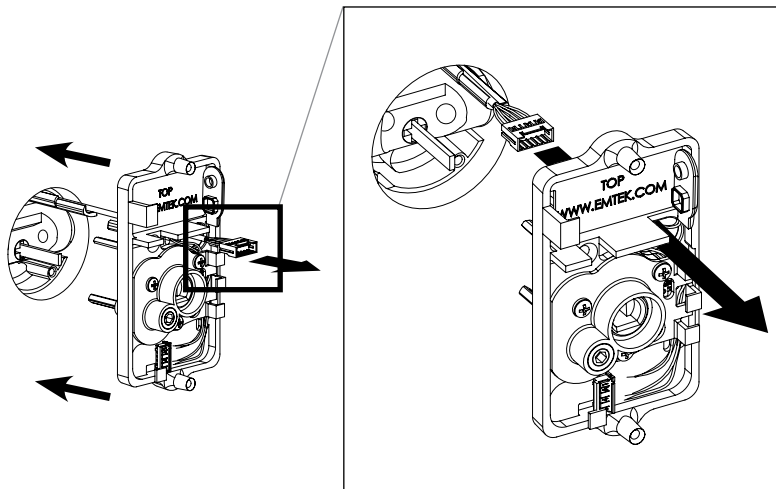


X Incorrect for Installation.



4. Install Inside Chassis

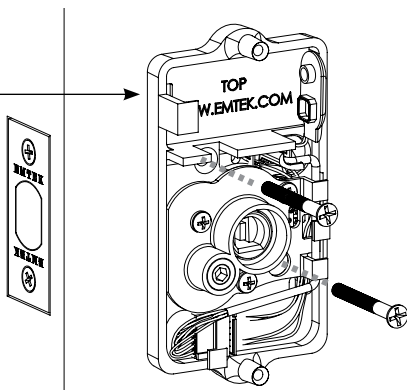
Step 2: Feed the Wire Harness through Inside Chassis.



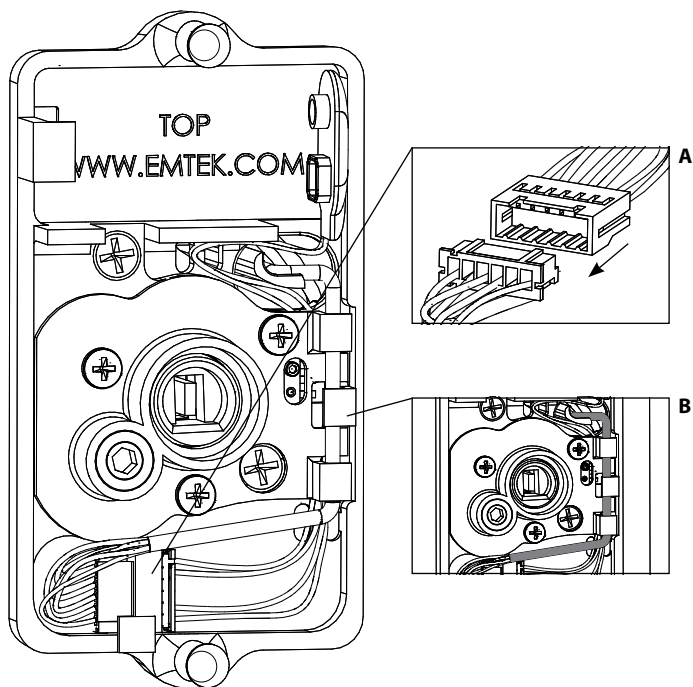
Step 3: Fasten Inside Chassis using two #8-32 x 1½" Flat Head Machine Screws (item #5).



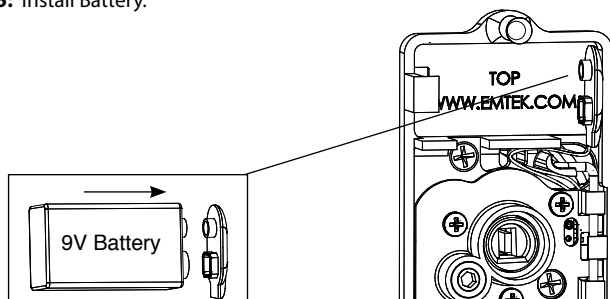
**CHECK ALIGNMENT BEFORE
FULLY TIGHTENING SCREWS.**



Step 4: Connect Wire Harness (A) and tuck Connectors as shown (B).



Step 5: Install Battery.



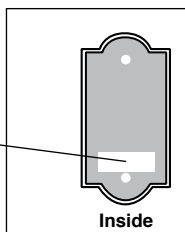
For optimal performance, always use a good quality battery.

5. Install Inside Trim Plate

Fasten Inside Trim Plate using two #8-32 x $\frac{3}{8}$ " Flat Head Machine Screws (item #4c).



**USER CODES
ARE LOCATED
ON THE INSIDE
TRIM PLATE &
ON PAGE 11.**

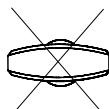


Correct for installation



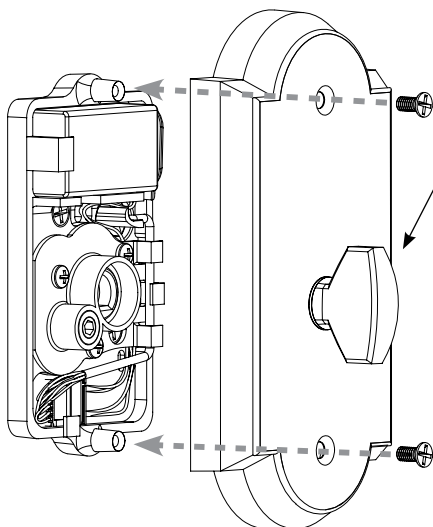
*Unlocked

Incorrect for installation



Locked

***Unlocked position** is required for installation and removal of the Inside Trim Plate Assembly.



**THUMBTURN MUST BE IN
UNLOCKED POSITION FOR
INSTALLATION.**

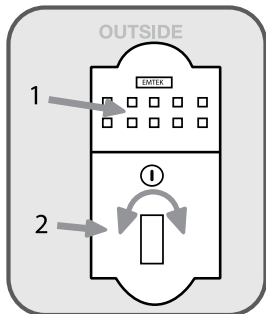
Screws (item #4c)

Your Lock is Ready to Use

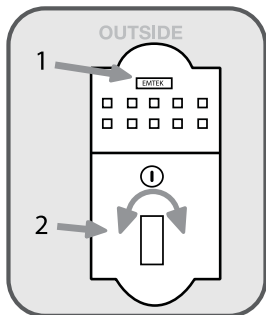
Your Emtek lock is shipped with two 4-digit user codes and one 6-digit programming code. These codes are randomly generated at the factory. *(Turn to next page for Programming Instructions.)*

To Unlock:

1. Enter 4-digit user codes.
(See sticker located on the inside trim plate or on page 11).
2. Rotate Thumbturn.

**To Lock:**

1. Press EMTEK key or enter a valid 4-digit user code.
2. Rotate Thumbturn.



Programming Your Lock

In order to perform each of the following six functions, the lock must first be placed in Programming Mode:

1. Press and hold EMTEK button for 3 seconds
2. **Yellow** LED flashes, then remains solid*
3. Enter Programming Code
4. **Green** LED flashes, then 1 beep
5. **Yellow** LED remains solid (awaiting button press; see following Table)

IF YOU WISH TO	PRESS BUTTON	ACTIONS		INDICATORS
Change Programming Code (6 digits)	1	Enter New Programming Code (6 digits)	Re-Enter New Programming Code (6 digits)	• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
Add User Code 4 digits (Store up to 20 User Codes)	2	Enter New User Code (4 digits)	Re-Enter New User Code (4 digits)	• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
Delete User Code	3	Enter User Code to be Deleted	Re-Enter User Code to be Deleted	• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
**Enable/Disable All User Codes	4	Entering '4' disables all Users (enables all if disabled)		• 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
Delete All User Codes	5	Re-Enter Programming Code		• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
Turn Beeper On/Off	6	Entering '6' turns OFF (or ON)		• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps

*If no input within 10 seconds, **Yellow** LED goes out, **Red** LED flashes and lock exits Programming Mode.

**Also referred to as "vacation mode". This command temporarily disables all user codes (metal key override will still work).

Keypad Operation - Beeper & LED Indicators

Function	Indicators
Valid Code	• 1 short beep, EMTEK button flashes Green .
Invalid Code/Access Denied*	• 1 Red LED flash • 2 short beeps
Lock-Out Mode Error	• 2 short beeps • 1 short beep per second for duration
Access Accepted	• 1 short beep • 1 Green LED flash
Low Battery	• 4 Red LED flashes • 4 short beeps
Blackout Battery**	• 1 long Red LED flash • 4 long beeps
Button Press Accepted	• 1 Yellow LED flash • 1 Short Beep
Outside Thumb Turn Enabled	• 2 Green LED flashes

* If 3 consecutive incorrect codes are entered, the lock emits 4 short beeps and a flashing **Red** EMTEK button. The lock will not accept additional input for 20 seconds (20 beeps).

** Battery voltage has dropped too low; keypad will be disabled but metal key override will still work.

Restoring the Lock to Factory Default Setting

This procedure clears the lock of all users and restores the Programming Code and 2 User Codes shipped with the lock.

- Remove power (disconnect 9V battery) from Lock
- Press and Hold EMTEK button
- While continuing to hold EMTEK button, restore power (reconnect 9V battery)
- Continue to hold EMTEK button for 3 seconds
- 1 **Green** LED Flash and 2 short beeps followed by 1 **Green** LED Flash and 2 short beeps indicates the lock has been successfully restored





Scan for how to
install videos.



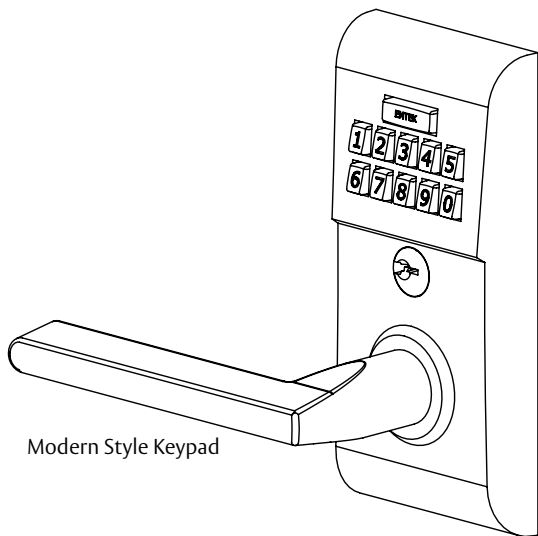
ASSA ABLOY is the global leader in door opening solutions, dedicated to satisfying end-user needs for security, safety and convenience.

Copyright © 2011, Emtek Products, Inc. an ASSA ABLOY Group company. All rights reserved. Reproduction in whole or in part without the express written permission of Emtek Products, Inc. is prohibited.

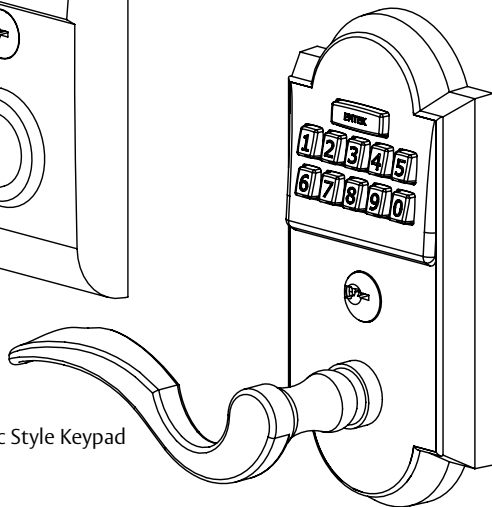
Installation & Programming Guide

Modern Style & Classic Style
Electronic Keypad Lever Locksets

EMTEK®
ASSA ABLOY

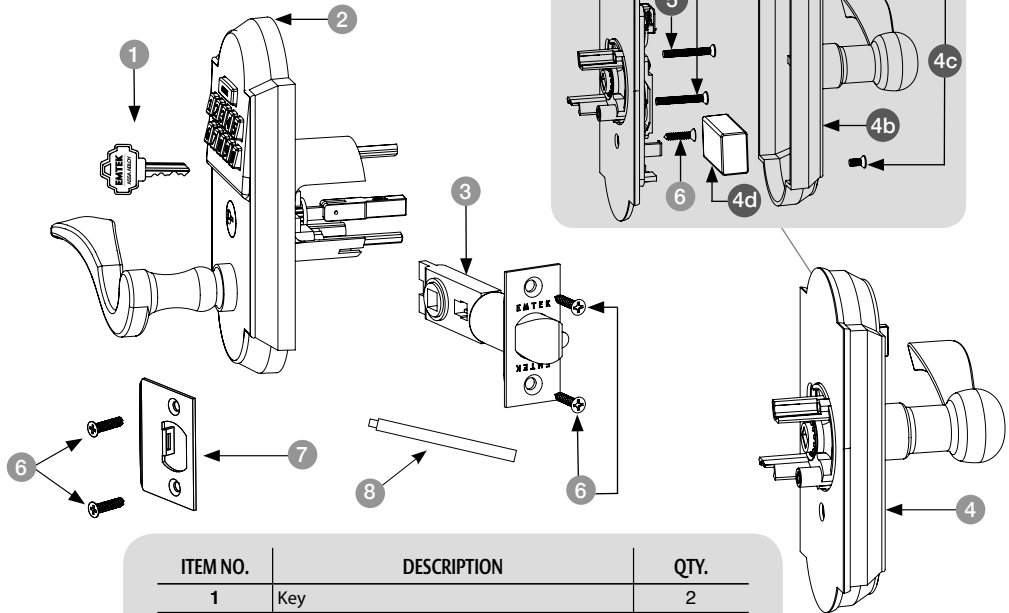


Modern Style Keypad



Classic Style Keypad

What's in the Box



ITEM NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY.
1	Key	2
2	Outside Trim Plate Assembly	1
3	Latch for 2 $\frac{3}{8}$ " or 2 $\frac{3}{4}$ " Backset	1
4	Inside Trim Plate Assembly	1
4a	Inside Chassis	1
4b	Inside Trim Plate	1
4c	#8-32 x $\frac{3}{8}$ " Flat Head Machine Screw	2
4d	9V Alkaline Battery	1
5	#8-32 x 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ " Flat Head Machine Screw	2
6	#8 x $\frac{3}{4}$ " Wood Screw	5
7	Strike Plate	1
8	Plastic Extender	1

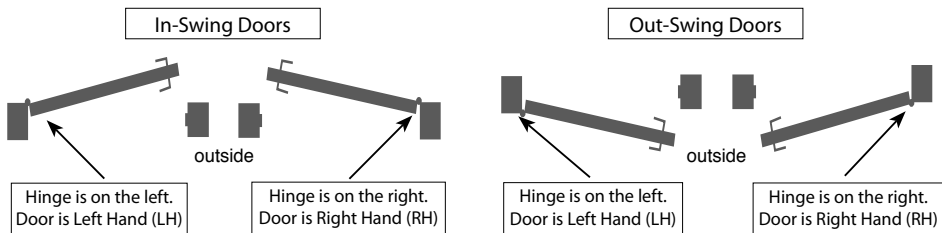
Preparation

Confirm Handing

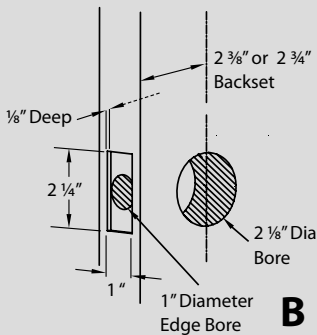
A

EN

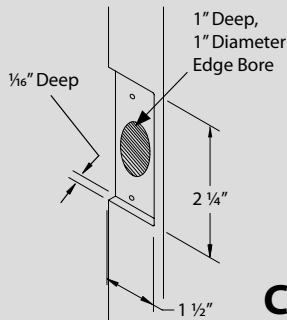
HANDING OF DOOR IS ALWAYS DETERMINED FROM THE OUTSIDE



Door Prep

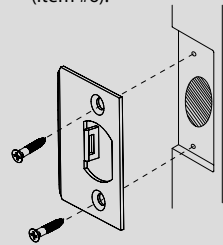


Door Jamb Prep



Install Strike Plate

Fasten Strike Plate using two #8 x 3/4" Wood Screws (item #6).

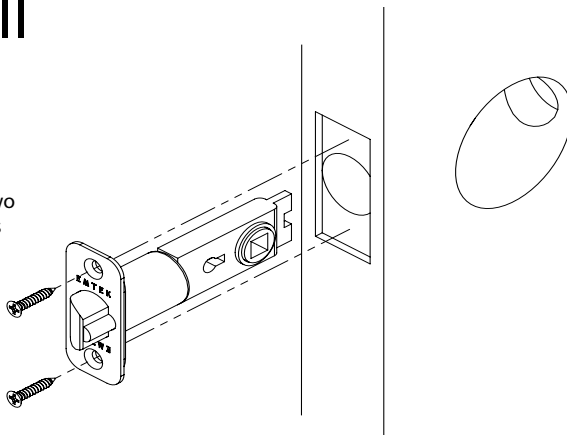


How to Install

1

Install Latch

Fasten Latch using two #8 x 3/4" Wood Screws (item #6).

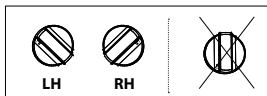


Remove Screws from Inside Trim Plate

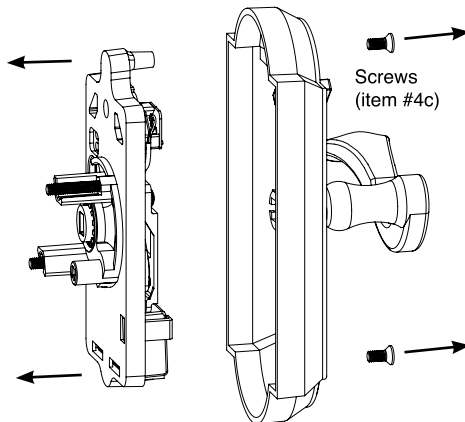
Use a Phillips head screwdriver to remove screws (item #4c) shown below and detach Inside Trim Plate from the Inside Chassis.



Remove inside chassis from trim plate before installing the outside trim. Thumbturn must be in neutral position.



See Page 3 for Handling Information.

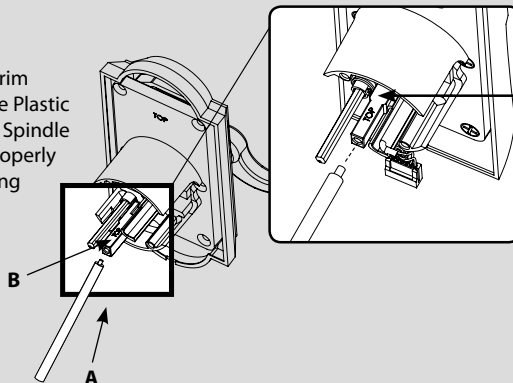


2

Install Outside Trim Plate Assembly

STEP 1

While holding Outside Trim Plate Assembly, Press the Plastic Extender (A) into end of Spindle Shaft (B). The Shaft is properly aligned when the marking 'TOP' can be seen from an overhead view.



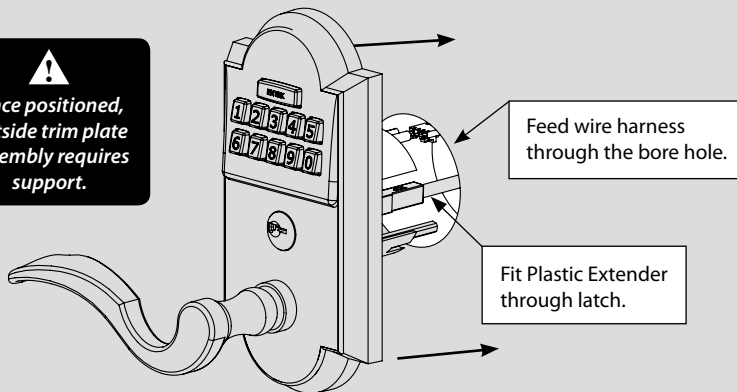
*This side
on top.*

STEP 2

Position the Outside Trim Plate Assembly through the bore hole.



*Once positioned,
outside trim plate
assembly requires
support.*



STEP 3

With the Outside Trim Plate Assembly flush to the door, **REMOVE** the Plastic Extender.

EN

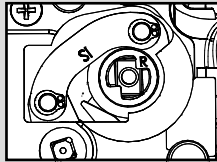
3

Install Inside Chassis

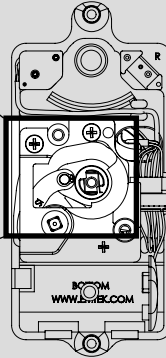
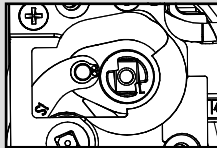
STEP 1

Confirm the position of Cam Link.

For Right Hand Locks:
Turn to right position.



For Left Hand Locks:
Turn to left position.

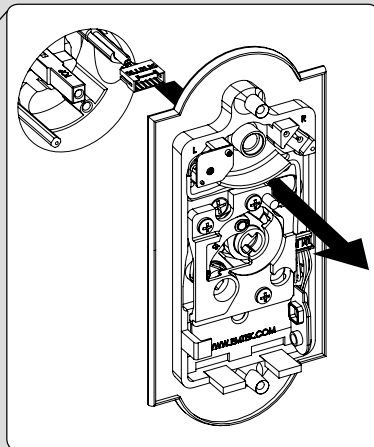
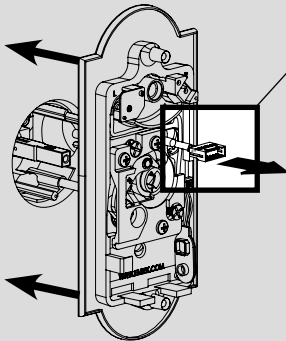


*Cam link must remain
in the correct position
during installation.*

4

STEP 2

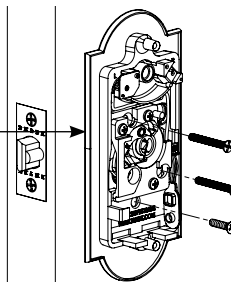
Feed the Wire Harness through Inside Chassis.



STEP 3

Fasten Inside Chassis using two #8-32 x 1½" Flat Head Machine Screw (item #5).

Check alignment before fully tightening screws.

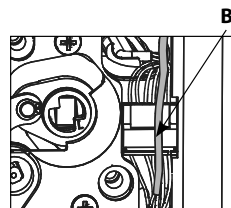
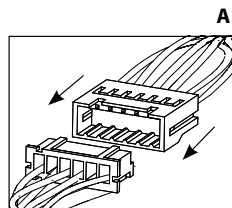
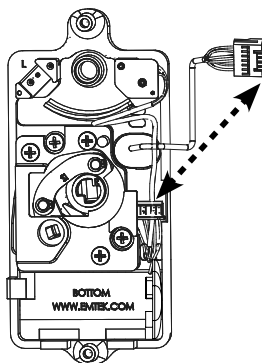


Optional - An additional #8 wood screw (provided) can be installed to prevent the interior trim from rotating

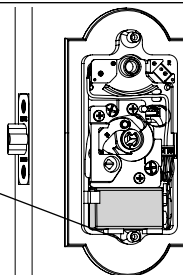
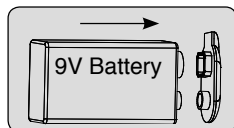
EN

STEP 4

Connect Wire Harness (A) and tuck Connectors as shown (B).

**STEP 5**

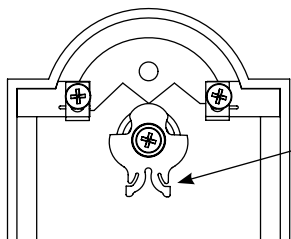
Install Battery.



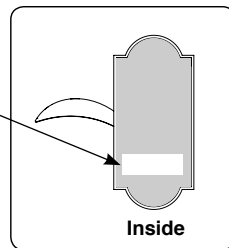
For optimal performance, always use a good quality battery.

5 Install Inside Trim Plate

Fasten Inside Trim Plate using two #8-32 x 3/8" Flat Head Machine Screws (item #4c).

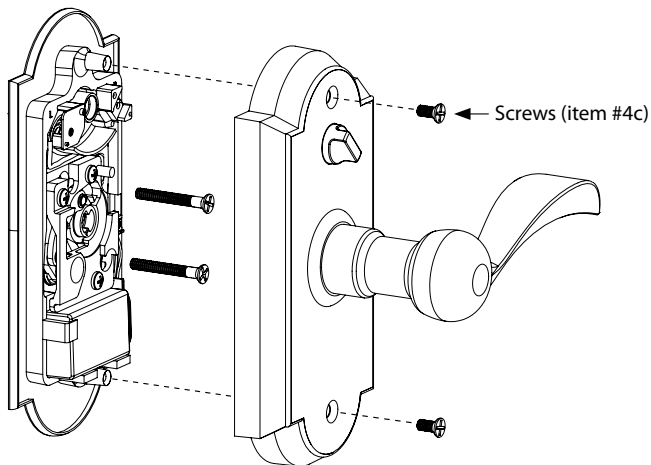



User codes are located on the inside trim plate & back cover page.




*Correct position for installation. Thumbcam must be positioned as shown (Neutral Position)**

***Neutral position** is required for installation and removal of the Inside Trim Plate Assembly.



How to Use

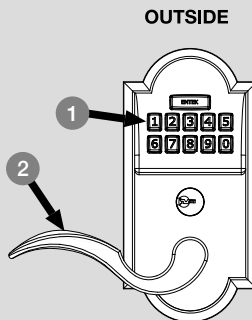
Your Lock is Ready to Use

EN

Your Emttek lock is shipped with two 4-digit user codes and a 6-digit programming code.
These codes are randomly generated at the factory.
(Turn to next page for Programming Instructions.)

To Unlock

1. Enter 4-digit user codes.
(See sticker located on the inside trim plate or back cover page).
2. Turn Handle.



Passage Feature

(Does not apply to Keypad Storeroom/Gate product)

Activate by turning the inside thumbturn to the unlocked position. This will engage the outside lever so a code is not required to enter.

To Lock

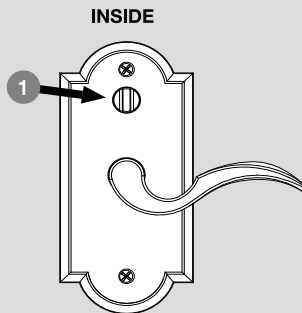
1. Rotate Thumbturn from inside.



Locked



Unlocked



How to Program

Programming Your Lock

In order to perform each of the following six functions, the lock must first be placed in Programming Mode:

1. Press and hold EMTEK button for 3 seconds

2. **Yellow** LED flashes, then remains solid*

3. Enter Programming Code
4. **Green** LED flashes, then 2 beeps

5. **Yellow** LED remains solid
(awaiting button press; see following table)

If You Wish To	Press Button	Actions		Indicators
Change Programming Code (6 digits)	1	Enter New Programming Code (6 digits)	Re-Enter New Programming Code (6 digits)	• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
Add User Code (4 digits) (Store up to 20 User Codes)	2	Enter New User Code (4 digits)	Re-Enter New User Code (4 digits)	• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
Delete User Code	3	Enter User Code to be Deleted	Re-Enter User Code to be Deleted	• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
**Enable/Disable All User Codes	4	Entering '4' disables all Users (enables all if disabled)		• 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
Delete All User Codes	5	Re-Enter Programming Code		• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
Turn Beeper On/Off	6	Entering '6' turns OFF (or ON)		• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps

*If no input within 10 seconds, **Yellow** LED goes out, **Red** LED flashes and lock exits Programming Mode.

**Also referred to as "vacation mode". This command temporarily disables all user codes (metal key override will still work).

Keypad Operation - Beeper & LED Indicators

Function	Indicators
Valid Code	• 1 short beep, EMTEK button flashes Green .
Invalid Code/Access Denied*	• 1 Red LED flash • 2 short beeps
Lock-Out Mode Error	• 2 short beeps • 1 short beep per second for duration
Access Accepted	• 1 short beep • 1 Green LED flash
Low Battery	• 4 Red LED flashes • 4 short beeps
Blackout Battery**	• 1 long Red LED flash • 4 long beeps
Button Press Accepted	• 1 Yellow LED flash • 1 Short Beep
Outside Thumb Turn Enabled	• 2 Green LED flashes

* If 3 consecutive incorrect codes are entered, the lock emits 4 short beeps and a flashing **Red** EMTEK button. The lock will not accept additional input for 20 seconds (20 beeps). When the next valid code is entered the lock will beep quickly 3 times to alert of the incorrect codes.

** Battery voltage has dropped too low; keypad will be disabled but metal key override will still work.

Restoring the Lock to Factory Default Setting

This procedure clears the lock of all users and restores the Programming Code and 2 User Codes shipped with the lock.

- Remove power (disconnect 9V battery) from Lock.
- Press and hold EMTEK button.
- While continuing to hold EMTEK button, restore power (reconnect 9V battery).
- Continue to hold EMTEK button for 3 seconds.
- 1 **Green** LED flash and 2 short beeps followed by 1 **Green** LED Flash and 2 short beeps indicates the lock has been successfully restored

U.S. patents:
8,176,761
8,141,400

Canadian patents:
2,698,041
2,789,278
2,789,280

Guide d'installation et de programmation

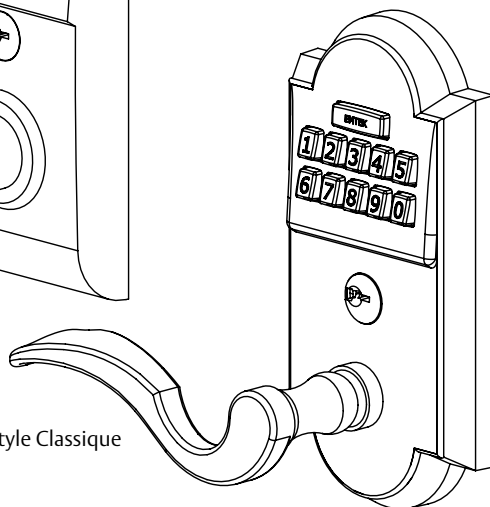
Levier et clavier électroniques pour jeu de serrures
Style Moderne et Style Classique

EMTEK®
ASSA ABLOY

FR

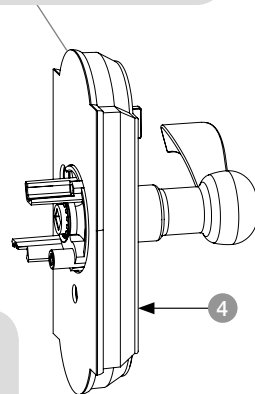
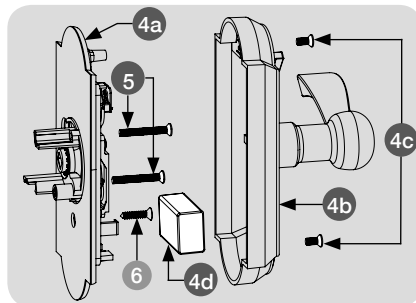
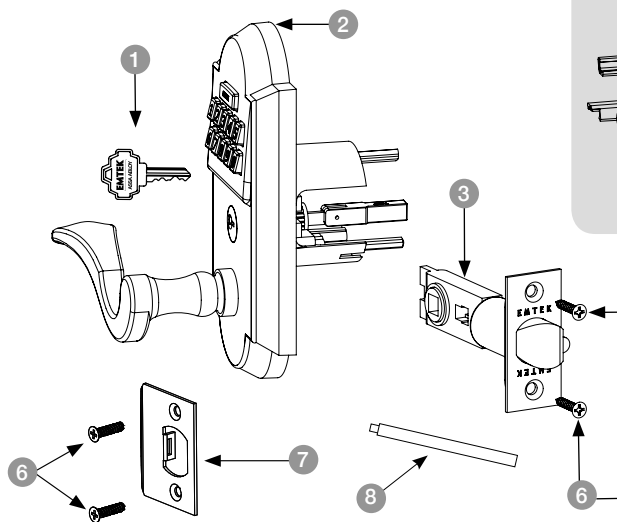


Clavier Style Moderne



Clavier Style Classique

Que contient la boîte



ARTICLE N°	DESCRIPTION	QTÉ
1	Clé	2
2	Assemblage de la plaque de garniture extérieure	1
3	Loquet pour 2 ¾ po ou 2 ¾ po appuie-tête	1
4	Assemblage de la plaque de garniture intérieure	1
4a	Bâti intérieur	1
4b	Plaque de garniture intérieure	1
4c	Vis à métal à tête plate #8-32 x ¾ po	2
4d	Pile alcaline de 9 V	1
5	Vis à métal à tête plate #8-32 x 1 ½ po	2
6	Vis à bois #8 x ¾ po	5
7	Plaque de gâche	1
8	Rallonge en plastique	1

Préparation

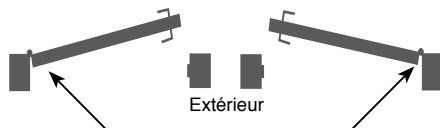
Confirmation du sens d'ouverture

A

LE SENS DE LA PORTE EST TOUJOURS DÉTERMINÉ DE L'EXTÉRIEUR

FR

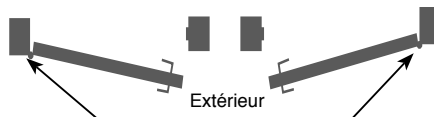
Portes avec ouverture vers l'intérieur.



Charnière sur la gauche –
porte avec ouverture vers
la gauche (MG)

Charnière sur la droite – Porte
avec ouverture vers la droite
(MD)

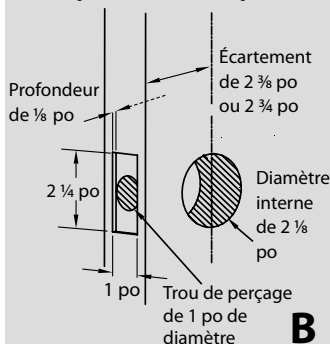
Portes avec ouverture vers l'extérieur



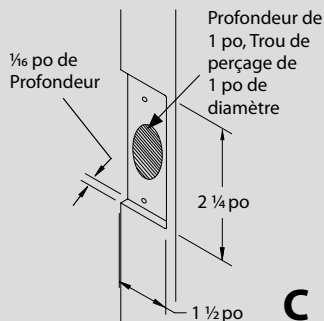
Charnière sur la gauche –
porte avec ouverture vers
la gauche (MG)

Charnière sur la droite – Porte
avec ouverture vers la droite
(MD)

Préparation de la porte

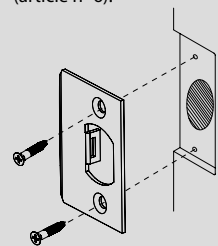


Préparation de l'embrasure de porte



Installation de la plaque de gâche

Fixez la plaque de gâche à l'aide des deux vis à bois n° 8 x 3/4 po (article n° 6).

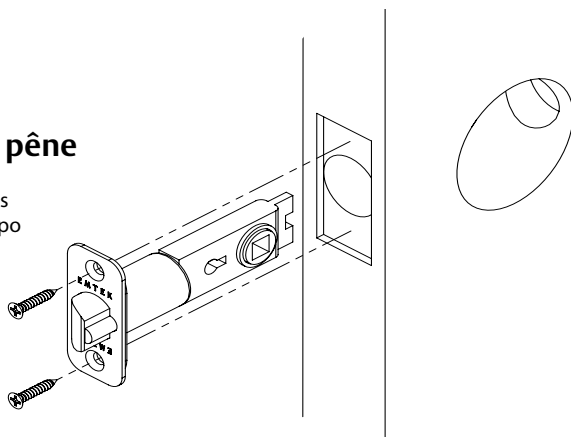


Pour installer

1

Installation du pêne

Fixez le pêne à l'aide des deux vis à bois n° 8 x ¾ po (article n° 6).

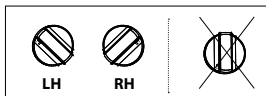


Retirez les vis de la plaque de garniture intérieure

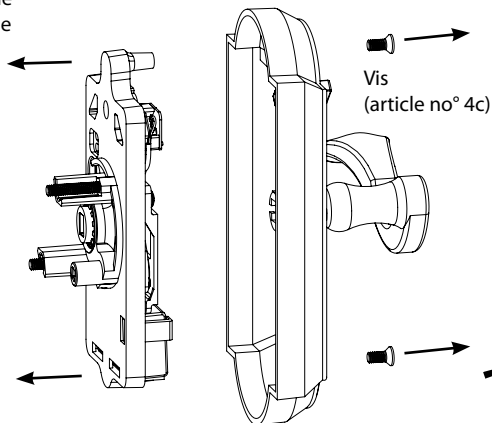
À l'aide d'un tournevis Phillips, retirez les vis (article n° 4c) illustrées ci-dessous et détachez la plaque de garniture intérieure de l'intérieur du bâti.



Avant d'installer la garniture extérieure, retirez le bâti intérieur de la plaque de garniture. La barette tournante doit être dans la position neutre.



Voir page 15 pour du sens d'informations.

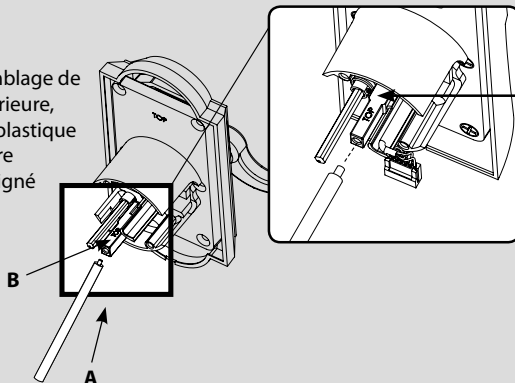


2

Installation de l'assemblage de la plaque de garniture extérieure

ÉTAPE 1

Tout en maintenant l'assemblage de la plaque de garniture extérieure, appuyer sur la rallonge en plastique (A) pour l'insérer dans l'arbre de broche (B). L'arbre est aligné correctement lorsque la marque "TOP" peut être vue du dessus.



Ce côté vers le haut.

FR

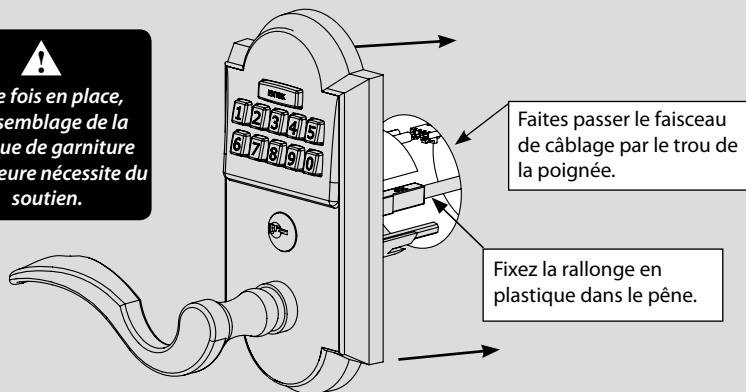
3

ÉTAPE 2

Positionnez l'assemblage de la plaque de garniture extérieure dans le trou de la poignée.



Une fois en place, l'assemblage de la plaque de garniture extérieure nécessite du soutien.



Faites passer le faisceau de câblage par le trou de la poignée.

Fixez la rallonge en plastique dans le pêne.

ÉTAPE 3

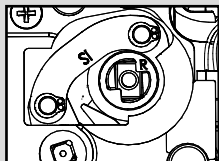
Alors que l'assemblage de la plaque de garniture est aligné sur la porte, **RETIREZ** la rallonge en plastique.

Installation du bâti intérieur

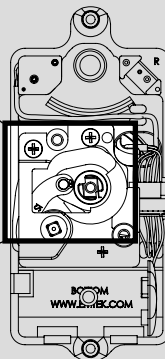
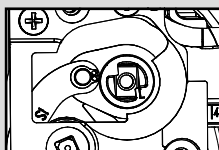
ÉTAPE 1

Confirmation du lien de la came.

Pour les serrures avec ouverture à droite :
Tournez vers la position de droite.



Pour les serrures avec ouverture à gauche :
Tournez vers la position de gauche.

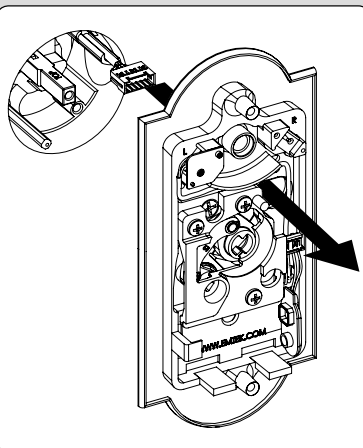
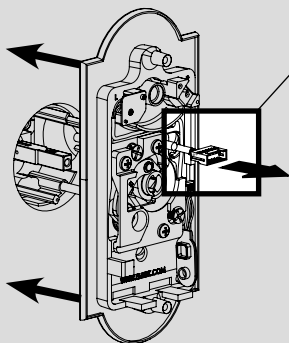


Le lien de la came doit demeurer dans la position adéquate durant l'installation.

4

ÉTAPE 2

Faites passer le faisceau de câblage dans le bâti intérieur.

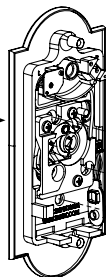


ÉTAPE 3

Fixez le bâti intérieur à l'aide de deux vis à métal n° 8-32 x 1½ po à tête plate (article n° 5).



Avant de fixer fermement les vis, vérifiez l'alignement.

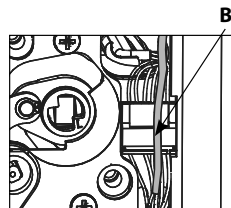
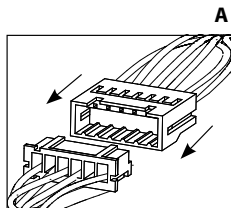
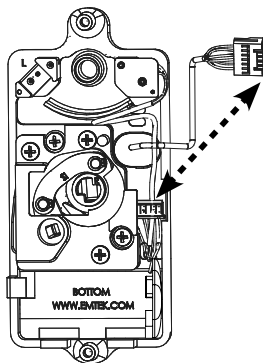


En option - Une vis à bois # 8 supplémentaire (fournie) peut être installée pour empêcher la garniture intérieure de tourner

FR

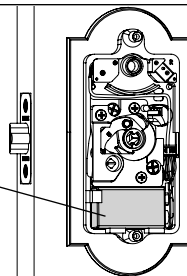
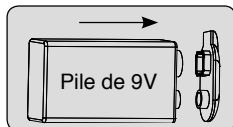
ÉTAPE 4

Branchez le faisceau de câblage (A) dans les connecteurs horizontaux tel qu'illustré (B).



ÉTAPE 5

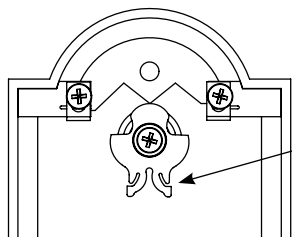
Installez la pile.



Pour une performance optimale, utilisez toujours une pile de bonne qualité.

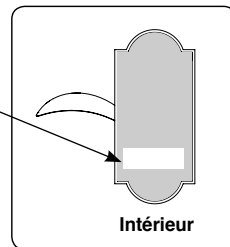
5 Installation de la plaque de garniture intérieure

Fixez la plaque de garniture intérieure à l'aide de deux vis à métal n° 8-32 x $\frac{3}{8}$ po à tête plate (article n° 4c).

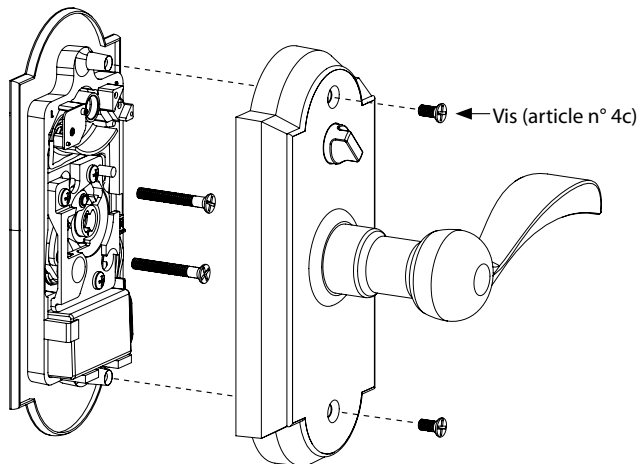



Les codes d'utilisateurs se trouvent sur la plaque de garniture intérieure et reportez-vous à la couverture arrière.


*Position adéquate pour l'installation. La came de blocage à oreilles doit être placée tel que illustré (position neutre)**



***Position neutre** verrouillée est requise pour l'installation et pour retirer l'assemblage de la plaque de garniture intérieure.



Comment utiliser la serrure

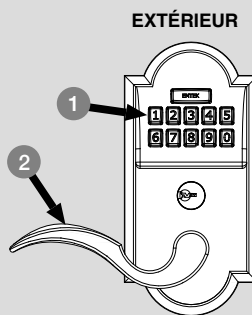
Votre serrure est prête à être utilisée

Lors de la livraison, votre serrure Emtex est configurée avec deux codes d'utilisateur à 4 chiffres et un code de programmation à 6 chiffres. Ces codes sont générés au hasard à l'usine.

(Pour obtenir les instructions de programmation, reportez-vous à la page suivante.)

Pour déverrouiller

1. Entrez les codes d'utilisateurs à 4 chiffres.
(Voir l'étiquette située sur la plaque de garniture intérieure ou reportez-vous à la couverture arrière).
2. Tournez la poignée.



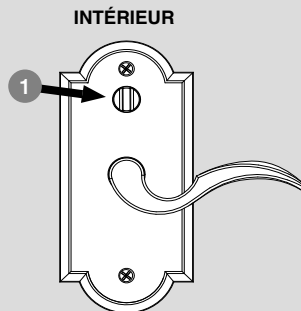
Fonction pour passage

Ceci ne s'applique pas dans le cas d'un clavier d'entreposage/produits pour barrière de sécurité (gate)

Activez la fonction en tournant la poignée à barrette tournante à la position déverrouillée. Ceci va engager le levier extérieur de façon à ce qu'aucun code ne soit requis pour entrer.

Pour verrouiller

1. Tournez la poignée à barrette tournante par l'intérieur.



FR

Pour faire la programmation

Programmation de votre serrure

De façon à pouvoir effectuer chacune des six fonctions ci-dessous, la serrure doit d'abord être mise en mode de programmation :

1. Maintenez la touche EMTEK enfoncée durant 3 secondes
2. La DEL **Jaune** clignote et demeure ensuite allumée*
3. Entrez le code de programmation
4. La DEL **Verte** clignote et ensuite 2 bips se font entendre
5. Le DEL **Jaune** demeure allumée (attendant qu'une touche soit enfoncée: voir le tableau ci-dessous)

Si vous désirez	Appuyez sur la touche	Actions		Voyants
Modifier le code de programmation (6 chiffres)	1	Entrez le nouveau code de programmation (6 chiffres)	Entrez une deuxième fois le nouveau code de programmation (6 chiffres)	• 1 clignotement de la DEL Verte • 1 bip • 1 clignotement de la DEL Verte • 1 bip • 2 clignotements de la DEL Verte • 2 bips
Ajouter un code d'utilisateur (4 chiffres) (Jusqu'à 20 codes d'utilisateur peuvent être stockés)	2	Entrez le nouveau code d'utilisateur (4 chiffres)	Entrez une deuxième fois le nouveau code d'utilisateur (4 chiffres)	• 1 clignotement de la DEL Verte • 1 bip • 1 clignotement de la DEL Verte • 1 bip • 2 clignotements de la DEL Verte • 2 bips
Supprimer un code d'utilisateur	3	Entrez le code d'utilisateur que vous désirez supprimer	Entrez une deuxième fois le code d'utilisateur que vous désirez supprimer	• 1 clignotement de la DEL Verte • 1 bip • 1 clignotement de la DEL Verte • 1 bip • 2 clignotements de la DEL Verte • 2 bips
**Activer/Désactiver tous les codes d'utilisateurs	4	Entrer "4" désactive tous les utilisateurs (les active tous s'ils étaient désactivés)		• 2 clignotements de la DEL Verte • 2 bips
Supprimer tous les codes d'utilisateur	5	Entrez de nouveau le code de programmation		• 1 clignotement de la DEL Verte • 1 bip • 2 clignotements de la DEL Verte • 2 bips
Mettre EN ou HORS service l'avertisseur sonore	6	L'entrée de "6" le met HORS fonction (EN fonction)		• 1 clignotement de la DEL Verte • 1 bip • 2 clignotements de la DEL Verte • 2 bips

*Si aucune entrée n'est effectuée durant 10 secondes, la DEL **Jaune** s'éteint, la DEL **Rouge** clignote et la serrure quitte le mode de programmation

**Veuillez également vous reporter au "mode Vacances". Cette commande désactive temporairement tous les codes d'utilisateur (mais la clé métallique fonctionne toujours).

Fonctionnement du clavier - Avertisseur sonore et voyants à DEL

FR

Fonction	Voyants
Code valide	• 1 bip court. La touche EMTEK clignote en <i>Verte</i>
Code invalide/Accès refusé*	• 1 clignotement de la DEL <i>Rouge</i> • 2 bips courts
Erreur - Mode de verrouillage	• 2 bips courts • 1 bip court toute les secondes pour toute la durée de l'opération
Accès permis	• 1 bip court • 1 clignotement de la DEL <i>Verte</i>
Pile faible	• 4 clignotements de la DEL <i>Rouge</i> • 4 bips courts
Pile défectueuse**	• 1 long clignotement de la DEL <i>Rouge</i> • 4 bips longs
Touche enfoncée acceptée	• 1 clignotement de la DEL <i>Jaune</i> • 1 bip court
Poignée à barrette tournante extérieure activée	• 2 clignotement de la DEL <i>Verte</i>

* Si trois codes erronés consécutifs sont entrés, la serrure émet 4 bips courts et la touche EMTEK clignote enrouge. La serrure n'acceptera pas de code additionnel durant 20 secondes (20 bips). Lorsqu'un prochain code valide est entré, la serrure émet 3 bips rapides pour indiquer que des codes invalides ont été précédemment entrés.

** La tension de la pile a chuté trop bas: le clavier sera désactivé mais une clé métallique peut être utilisée pour déverrouiller la serrure.

Rétablissement de la serrure à ses réglages par défaut

Cette procédure efface tous les utilisateurs de la serrure et rétablit le code de programmation et les deux codes d'utilisateur à leur valeur par défaut configurée à l'usine.

- Enlevez l'alimentation (débranchez la pile de 9V) de la serrure
- Appuyez sur la touche EMTEK
- Tout en gardant la touche EMTEK enfoncée, rétablissez le courant (rebranchez la pile de 9V)
- Continuez de maintenir la touche EMTEK enfoncée durant 3 secondes
- La DEL *Verte* clignote 1 fois, deux bips se font ensuite entendre et la DEL *Verte* clignote deux fois rapidement; les bips indiquent que la serrure a été correctement rétablie

Le brevet américain:

8,176,761

8,141,400

Canadian Brevets:

2,698,041

2,789,278

2,789,280

© Emtek Products, inc., 2017. Une entreprise du groupe ASSA ABLOY. Tous droits réservés. La reproduction totale ou partielle sans l'autorisation expresse écrite par Emtek Products, inc. est interdite.

Guía de Instalación y Programación

EMTEK®
ASSA ABLOY

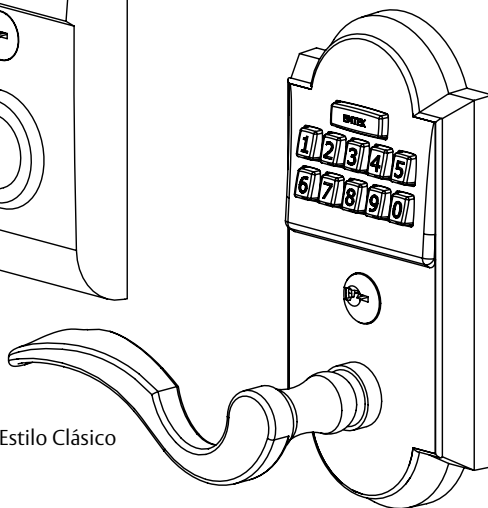
Estilo Moderno y Estilo Clásico

Palanca y Teclado Electrónico para Juego de
Cerraduras Teclado Estilo

ES

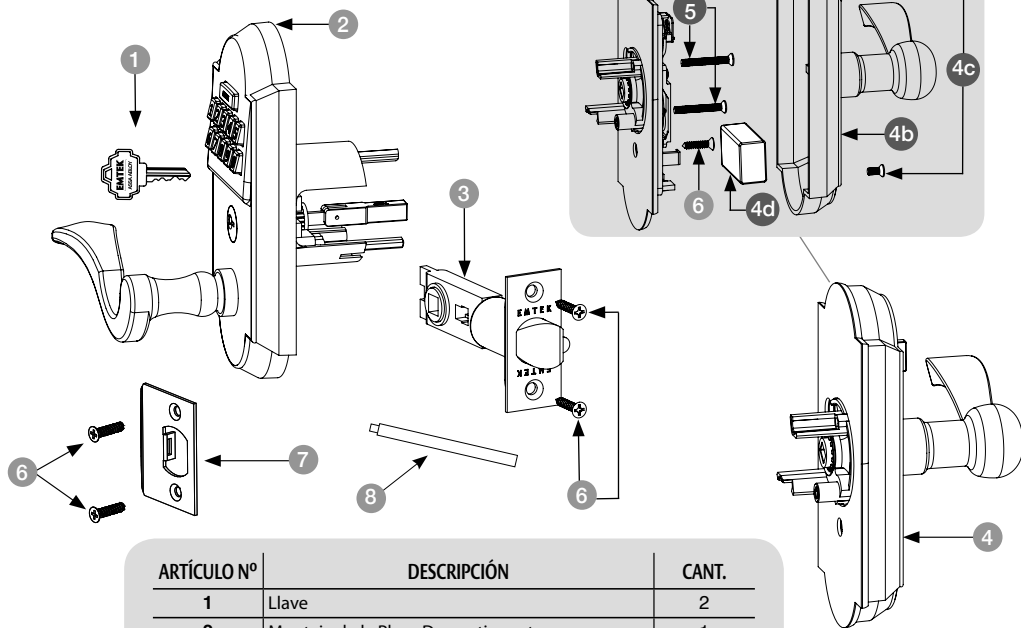


Teclado Estilo Moderno



Teclado Estilo Clásico

Qué Hay en la Caja



ARTÍCULO N°	DESCRIPCIÓN	CANT.
1	Llave	2
2	Montaje de la Placa Decorativa externa	1
3	Pestillo para 2 3/8" o 2 3/4" de Distancia	1
4	Montaje de la Placa Decorativa Interior	1
4a	Chasis Interno	1
4b	Placa Decorativa Interior	1
4c	Tornillo de Cabeza Plana de #8-32 x 3/8"	2
4d	Batería Alcalina de 9V	1
5	Tornillo de Cabeza Plana de #8-32 x 1 1/2"	2
6	Tornillo para Madera de #8 x 3/4"	5
7	Placa de Impacto	1
8	Extensor de Plástico	1

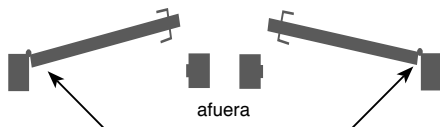
Preparación

Confirme el Manejo

A

LA OPERACIÓN DE LA PUERTA ESTÁ SIEMPRE DETERMINADA DESDE AFUERA

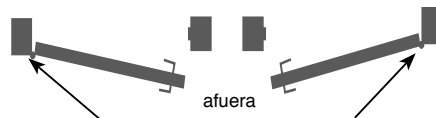
Puertas que abren hacia adentro



La bisagra está a la izquierda
La puerta es Izquierda (LH)

La bisagra está a la derecha
La puerta es Derecha (RH)

Puertas que abren hacia afuera

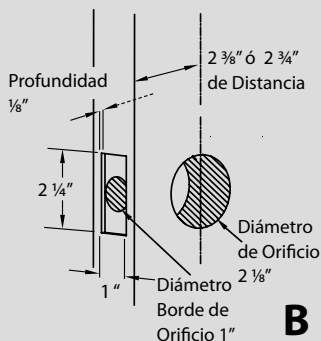


La bisagra está a la izquierda
La puerta es Izquierda (LH)

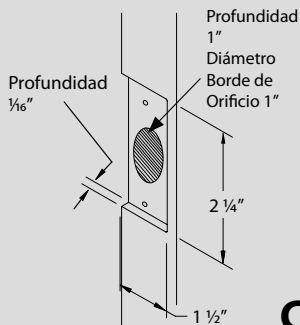
La bisagra está a la derecha
La puerta es Derecha (RH)

ES

Preparación de la Puerta

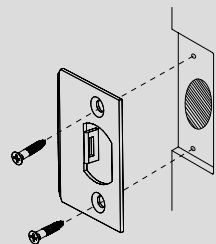


Preparación de la Jamba



Instale la Placa de Impacto

Asegure la Placa de Impacto usando dos Tornillos para Madera #8 x $\frac{3}{4}$ " (artículo #6).

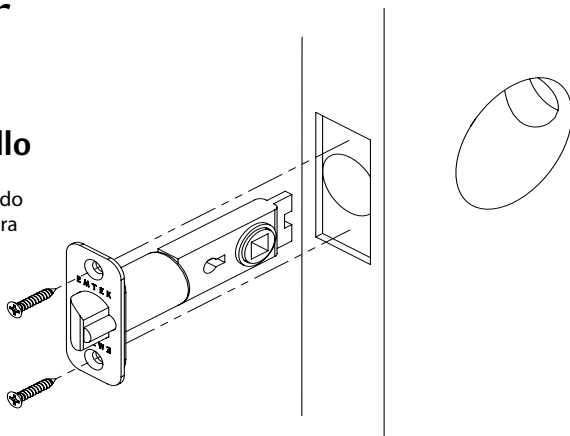


Cómo Instalar

1

Instale el Pestillo

Asegure el Pestillo usando dos Tornillos para Madera #8 x ¾" (artículo #6).

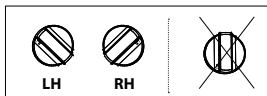


Retire los Tornillos de la Placa Decorativa Interior

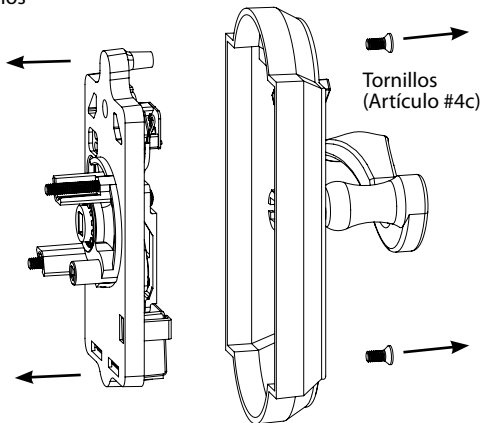
Use un destornillador Phillips para retirar los tornillos (artículo #4c) mostrados abajo y separe la Placa Decorativa Interior del Chasis Interno.



Retire el chasis interno de la placa decorativa antes de instalar la placa exterior. El Cerrojo manual debe estar en posición neutral.



Ver Hoja 27 para Información de manejo

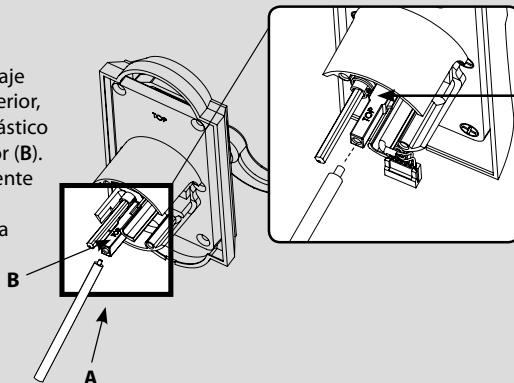


2

Instale el Montaje de la Placa Decorativa Exterior

PASO 1

Mientras sostiene el Montaje de la Placa Decorativa Exterior, Presione el Extensor de Plástico (A) dentro del Eje del Rotor (B). El Rotor está apropiadamente alineado cuando la marca 'TOP' puede ser visualizada desde arriba.



*Este lado
hacia arriba.*

ES

3

PASO 2

Posicione el Montaje de la Placa Decorativa Exterior a través del orificio.



*Una vez que está
posicionado, el
montaje de la placa
decorativa exterior
requiere soporte.*



Introduzca el arnés de
cables a través del orificio.

Introduzca el Extensor
de Plástico a través
del pestillo.

PASO 3

Con el Montaje de la Placa Decorativa Exterior alineado a la puerta, **RETIRE** Extensor de Plástico.

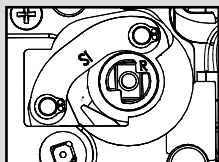
Instale el Chasis Interno

PASO 1

Confirme la posición de la Unión de Levas.

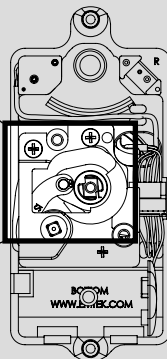
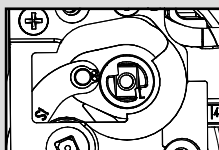
Para Cerraduras Derechas:

Gire a la posición derecha.



Para Cerraduras Izquierdas:

Gire a la posición izquierda.

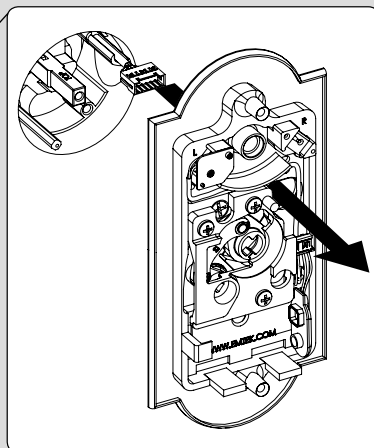
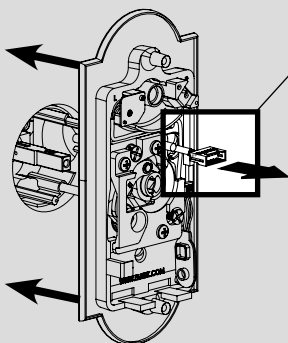


La unión de levas debe permanecer en la posición correcta durante la instalación.

4

PASO 2

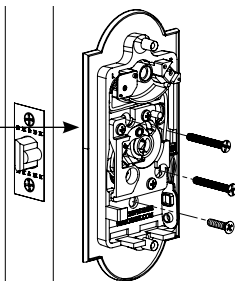
Introduzca el Arnés de Cables a través del Chasis Interno.



PASO 3

Asegure el Chasis Interno usando dos tornillos de Cabeza Plana #8-32 x 1½" (artículo #5).

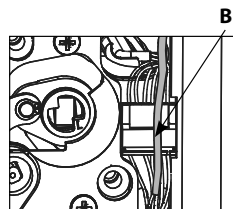
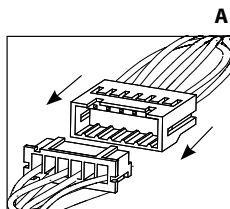
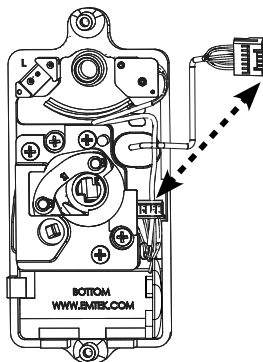

**Verifique la alineación
 antes de ajustar por
 completo los tornillos.**



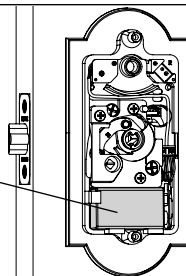
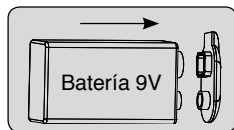
*Opcional - Se puede
 instalar un tornillo # 8 de
 madera adicional (propor-
 cionado) para evitar que
 el Chasis interior gire*

PASO 4

Conecte el Arnés de Cables (A) e inserte los Conectores como se muestra (B).

**PASO 5**

Instale la Batería.

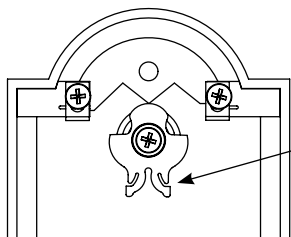


*Para un funcionamiento óp-
 timo, siempre use una batería
 de buena calidad*

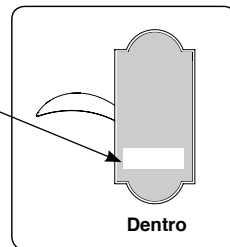
ES

5 Instale la Placa Decorativa Interior

Asegure la Placa Decorativa Interior usando dos Tornillos de Cabeza Plana #8-32 x $\frac{3}{8}$ " (artículo #4c).

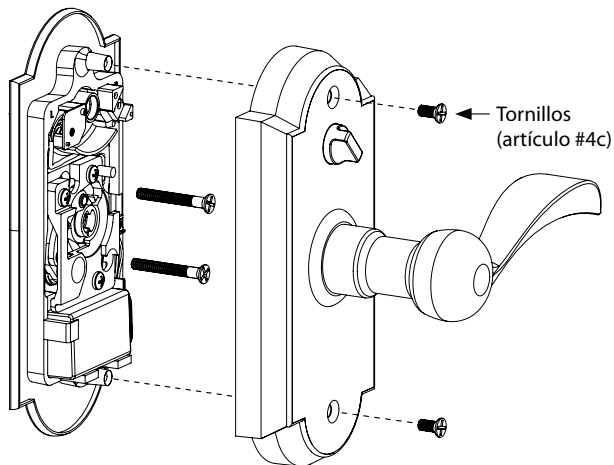



*Los códigos de usuario
están localizados en
la placa interior y la
última página.*




*Posición correcta para
instalación. La leva manual
debe estar posicionada como
se muestra (Posición Neutral)**

*La **posición neutral** es necesaria para la instalación y extracción del Montaje de la Placa Decorativa Interior.



Cómo Usar

Su Cerradura está Lista para Usar

Su cerradura Emtek es enviada con dos códigos de usuario de 4 dígitos y un código de programación de 6 dígitos. Estos códigos son generados al azar en la fábrica.

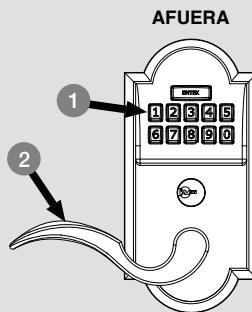
(Vaya a la próxima página para las Instrucciones de Programación.)

Para Desbloquear

1. Ingrese los códigos de usuario de 4 dígitos.

(Vea la etiqueta ubicada dentro de la placa decorativa interior o la última página).

2. Gire la Palanca.



Característica de paso

(No se aplica al producto: Keypad Storeroom/Gate)

Activar girando el cerrojo manual interior a la posición de desbloqueo. Esto engranará la palanca externa, de manera que no se requiera un código para ingresar.

Para Bloquear

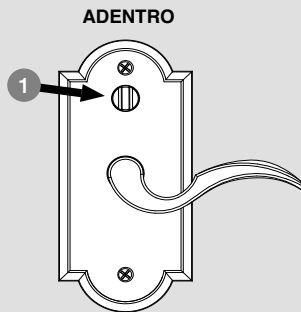
1. Gire el Cerrojo Manual desde adentro.



Bloqueado



Desbloqueado



ES

Cómo Programar

Programando su cerradura

Con el fin de realizar cada una de las seis siguientes funciones, la cerradura debe ser puesta en la opción de Modo de Programación:

1. Mantenga presionado el botón EMTEK durante 3 segundos
4. El LED **Verde** parpadea, y después 2 bips
2. El LED **Amarillo** parpadea y después se mantiene encendido*, las teclas numeradas también se iluminan
5. El LED **Amarillo** se mantiene encendido (esperando se presione el botón; vea la siguiente Tabla)
3. Introduzca el Código de Programación

Si Desea	Presione el Botón	Acciones		Indicadores
Cambiar el Código de Programación (6 dígitos)	1	Introducir el Nuevo Código de Programación (6 dígitos)	Reingresar el Nuevo Código de Programación (6 dígitos)	• 1 Destello del LED Verde • 1 bip • 1 Destello del LED Verde • 1 bip • 2 Destellos del LED Verde • 2 bips
Añadir el Código de Usuario (4 dígitos) (Almacena hasta 20 Códigos de Usuario)	2	Ingrese el Nuevo Código de Usuario (4 dígitos)	Reingresar el Nuevo Código de Usuario (4 dígitos)	• 1 Destello del LED Verde • 1 bip • 1 Destello del LED Verde • 1 bip • 2 Destellos del LED Verde • 2 bips
Borrar el Código de Usuario	3	Ingrese el Código de Usuario a ser Borrado	Reingrese el Código de Usuario a ser Borrado	• 1 Destello del LED Verde • 1 bip • 1 Destello del LED Verde • 1 bip • 2 Destellos del LED Verde • 2 bips
**Habilitar/Deshabilitar Todos los Códigos de Usuario	4	Ingresando '4' deshabilita a todos los Usuarios (habilita a todos si estaban deshabilitados)		• 2 Destellos del LED Verde • 2 bips
Borrar Todos los Códigos de Usuario	5	Reingresar el Código de Programación		• 1 Destello del LED Verde • 1 bip • 2 Destellos del LED Verde • 2 bips
Encender el Bíper ON/OFF	6	Ingresando '6' se apaga OFF (o prende ON)		• 1 Destello del LED Verde • 1 bip • 2 Destellos del LED Verde • 2 bips

*Si no se ingresa nada durante 10 segundos, el LED **Amarillo** se apaga, el LED **Rojo** parpadea y la cerradura sale del Modo de Programación.

**También referido como "modo vacación." Este comando inhabilita temporalmente todos los códigos de usuario (la anulación mediante la llave de metal seguirá funcionando).

Funcionamiento del Teclado – Indicadores de Bíper y LED

Función	Indicators
Código Válido	• 1 bip corto, el botón EMTEK parpadea Verde
Código inválido/Acceso Denegado*	• 1 parpadeo del LED Rojo • 2 bips cortos
Error del Modo de Bloqueo	• 2 bips cortos • 1 bip corto por segundo por duración
Acceso Aceptado	• 1 bip corto • 1 destello del LED Verde
Batería Baja	• 4 destellos del LED Rojo • 4 bips cortos
Batería Agotada**	• 1 destello del LED Rojo • 4 bips largos
Presión de Botón Aceptada	• 1 destello del LED Amarillo • 1 bip corto
Seguro Manual Externo Habilitado	• 2 destellos del LED Verde

* Si se introducen 3 códigos incorrectos consecutivamente, la cerradura emite 4 bips cortos y un botón EMTEK **Rojo**. La cerradura no aceptará otro ingreso por 20 segundos (20 bips). Cuando el siguiente código válido se ingresa, la cerradura emitirá 3 bips rápidos para alertar sobre los códigos incorrectos.

** El voltaje de la batería ha disminuido demasiado; el teclado estará inhabilitado, pero la anulación con llave de metal seguirá funcionando.

Restaurando la Cerradura a la Configuración de Fábrica

Este procedimiento elimina a todos los usuarios de la cerradura y restaura el Código de Programación y los 2 Códigos de Usuario enviados con la Cerradura.

- Corte la energía (desconecte la batería de 9V) de la Cerradura
- Presione y mantenga presionado el botón EMTEK
- Mientras continúa presionando el botón EMTEK, restaure la energía (reconecte la batería de 9V)
- Continúe presionando el botón EMTEK por 3 segundos
- 1 parpadeo del LED **Verde** y 2 bips cortos seguidos por 1 parpadeo del LED **Verde** y 2 bips cortos indica que el cerrojo fue restaurado satisfactoriamente.

Patente de EE.UU:

8,176,761

8,141,400

Patente Canadiense:

2,698,041

2,789,278

2,789,280

Copyright © 2017, Emtek Products, Inc. an ASSA ABLOY Group company. Todos los derechos reservados. Está prohibida la reproducción total o parcial sin la expresa autorización escrita de Emtek Products, Inc.

ASSA ABLOY is the global
leader in door opening solutions,
dedicated to satisfying
end-user needs for security,
safety and convenience.



EMTEK Products, Inc.
15250 E. Stafford Street
City of Industry • CA 91744
Tel: 800-356-2741 • 626-961-0413
Fax: 800-577-5771 • 626-336-2812
emtek.com

Place Sticker Here



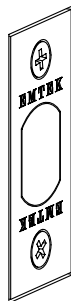
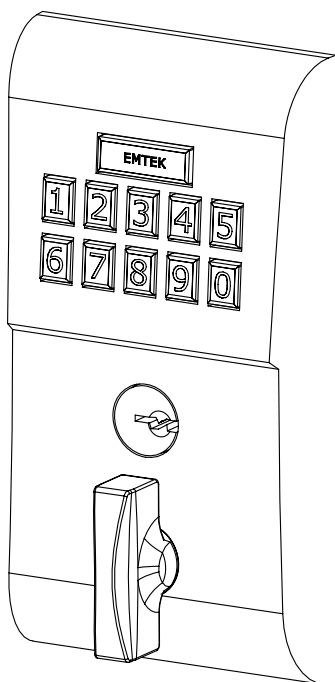
Copyright © 2017, Emtek Products, Inc. an ASSA ABLOY Group company. All rights reserved. Reproduction in whole or in part without the express written permission of Emtek Products, Inc. is prohibited.

IN8-KEYPADLL

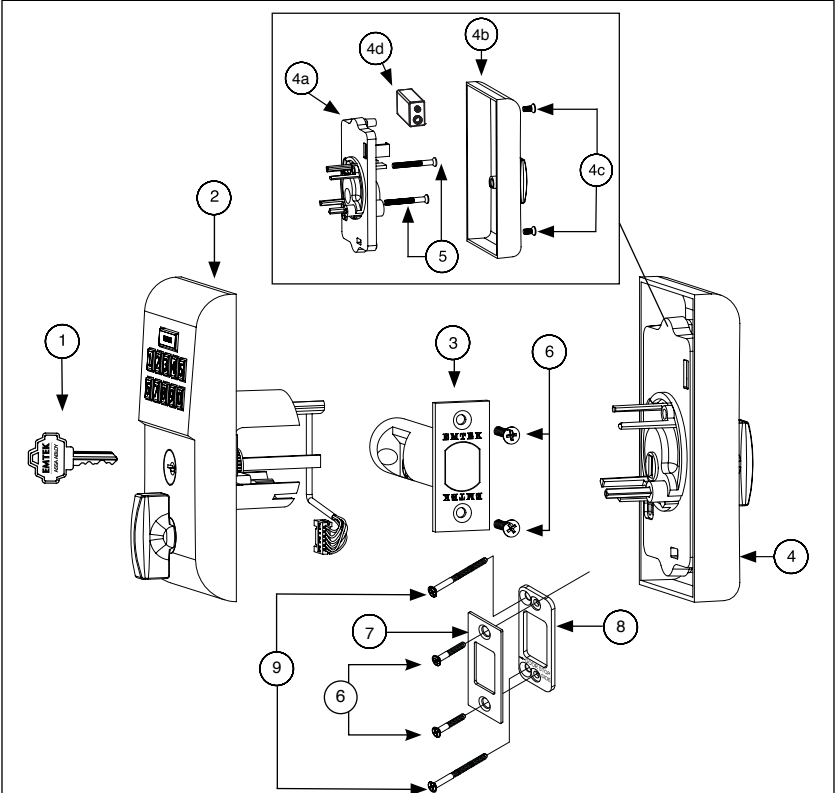
REV 17C 12/01/17

Installation & Programming Guide

Modern Keypad Deadbolt Locksets



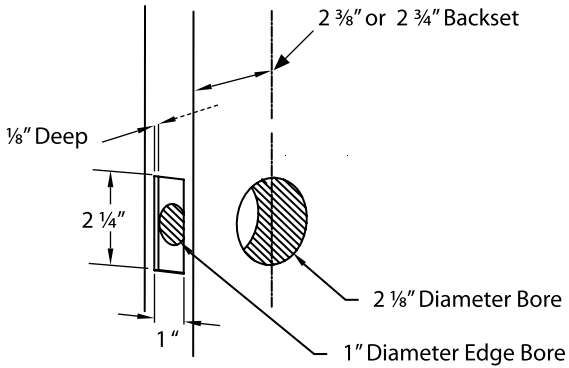
What's in the Box



ITEM NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY.
1	Key	2
2	Outside Trim Plate Assembly	1
3	Deadbolt Latch Assembly 2 3/4" or 2 3/4" Backset	1
4	Inside Trim Plate Assembly	1
4a	Inside Chassis	1
4b	Inside Trim Plate	1
4c	#8-32 x 3/8" Flat Head Machine Screw	2
4d	9V Alkaline Battery	1
5	#8-32 x 1 1/2" Flat Head Machine Screw	2
6	#8 x 3/4" Wood Screw	4
7	Strike Plate	1
8	Security Plate	1
9	#10 x 3" Wood Screw	2

Preparation

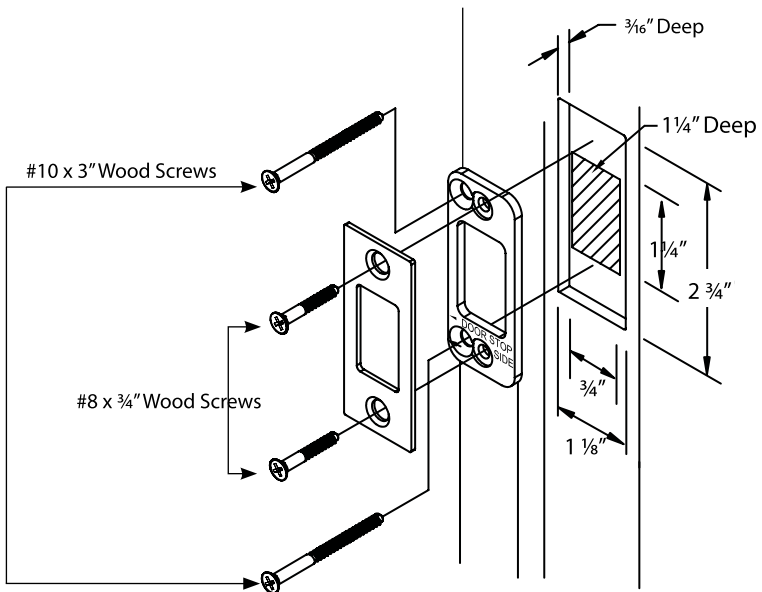
1. Door Prep



2. Door Jamb Prep

Step 1: Fasten Security Plate using two #10 x 3" Wood Screws (item #9).

Step 2: Fasten Strike Plate using two #8 x 3/4" Wood Screws (item #6).



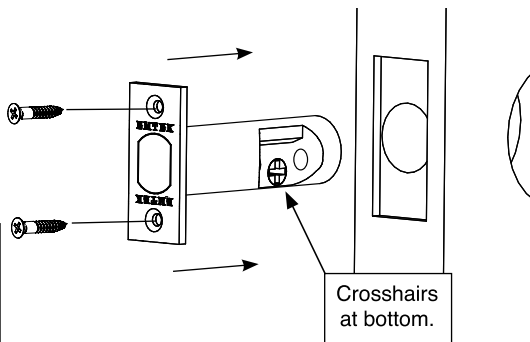
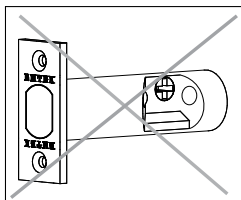
How to Install

1. Install Latch

Fasten Latch using two #8 x 3/4" Wood Screws (item #6).



THE LATCH ASSEMBLY MUST BE ORIENTED AS SHOWN AND THE BOLT MUST BE IN THE RETRACTED POSITION FOR INSTALLATION.

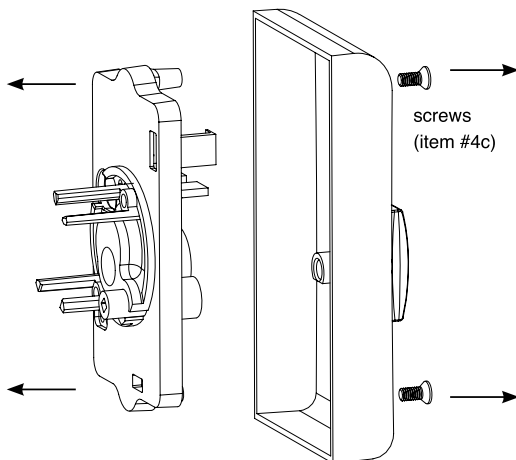
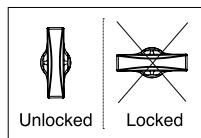


2. Remove Screws from Inside Trim Plate

Use a Phillips head screwdriver to remove screws (item #4c) shown below and detach Inside Trim Plate from the Inside Chassis.



REMOVE INSIDE CHASSIS FROM TRIM PLATE BEFORE INSTALLING THE OUTSIDE TRIM. THUMBTURN MUST BE IN UNLOCKED POSITION.

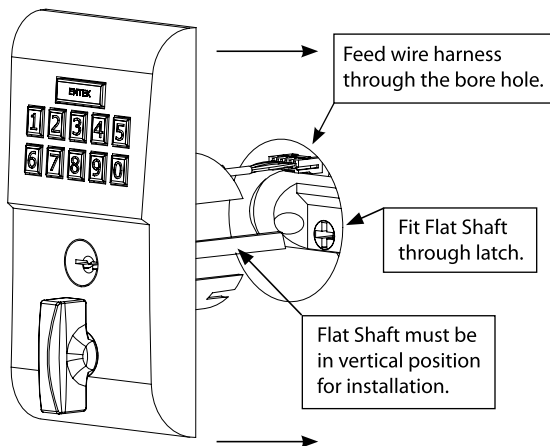


3. Install Outside Trim Plate Assembly

Position the Outside Trim Plate Assembly through the bore hole.



**ONCE POSITIONED,
OUTSIDE TRIM PLATE
ASSEMBLY REQUIRES
SUPPORT.**



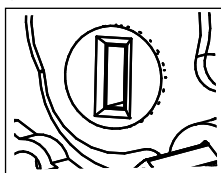
4. Install Inside Chassis

Step 1: Confirm the position of Flat Shaft.

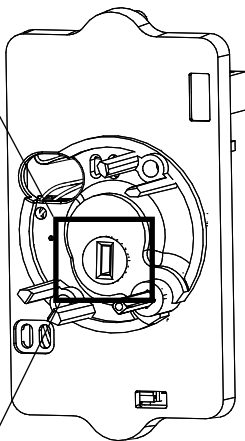
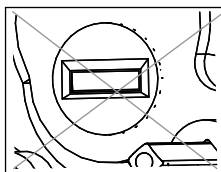


**HOLE FOR FLAT
SHAFT MUST BE IN
VERTICAL POSITION
FOR INSTALLATION.**

✓ Correct for Installation.

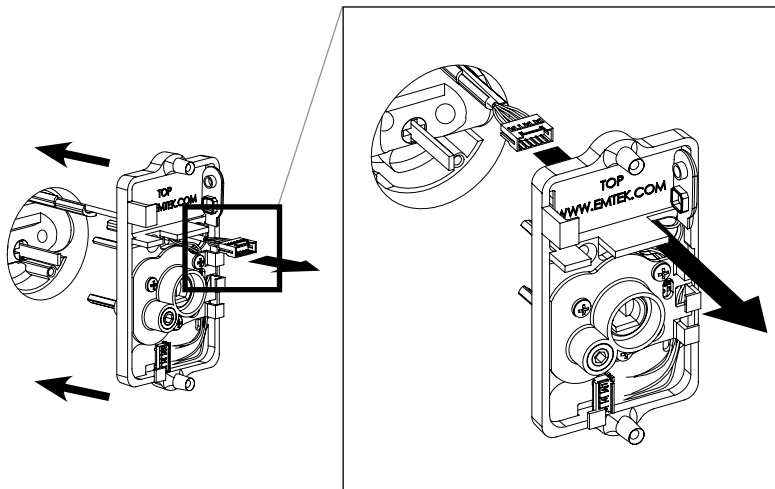


X Incorrect for Installation.



4. Install Inside Chassis

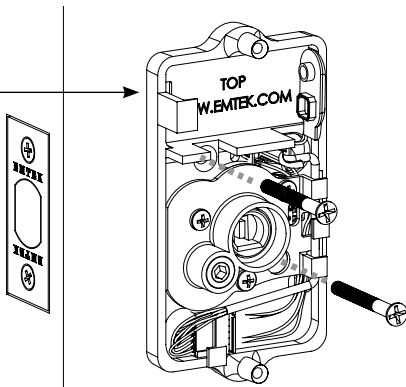
Step 2: Feed the Wire Harness through Inside Chassis.



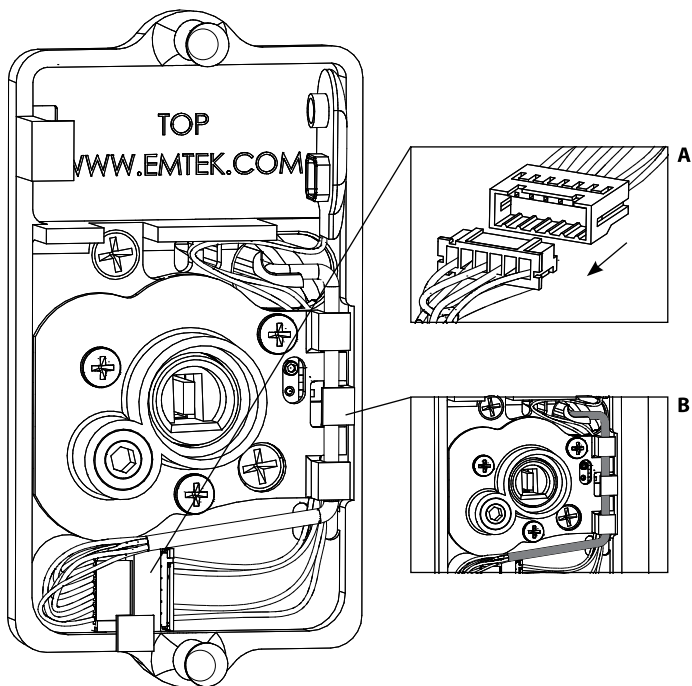
Step 3: Fasten Inside Chassis using two #8-32 x 1½" Flat Head Machine Screws (item #5).



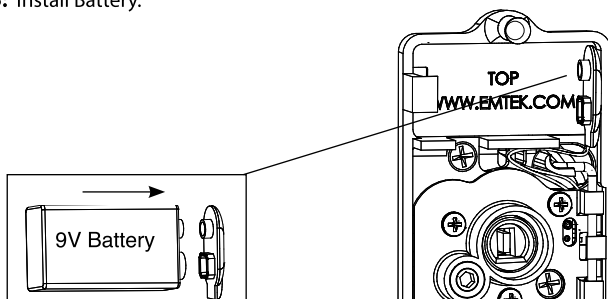
**CHECK ALIGNMENT BEFORE
FULLY TIGHTENING SCREWS.**



Step 4: Connect Wire Harness (A) and tuck Connectors as shown (B).



Step 5: Install Battery.



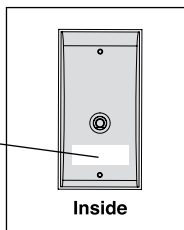
For optimal performance, always use a good quality battery.

5. Install Inside Trim Plate

Fasten Inside Trim Plate using two #8-32 x $\frac{3}{8}$ " Flat Head Machine Screws (item #4c).



**USER CODES
ARE LOCATED
ON THE INSIDE
TRIM PLATE &
ON PAGE 11.**

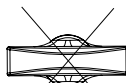


Correct for installation



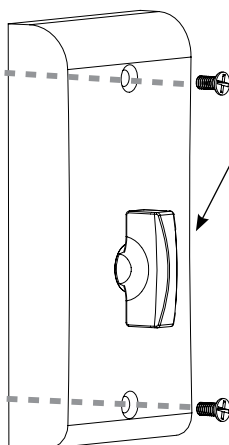
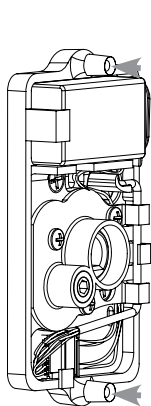
*Unlocked

Incorrect for installation



Locked

***Unlocked position** is required for installation and removal of the Inside Trim Plate Assembly.



**THUMBTURN MUST BE IN
UNLOCKED POSITION FOR
INSTALLATION.**

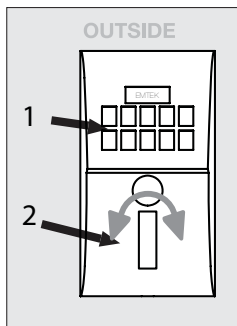
Screws (item #4c)

Your Lock is Ready to Use

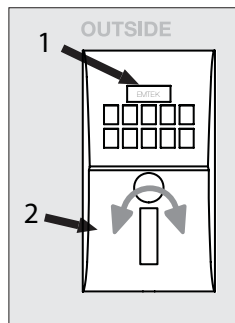
Your Emtek lock is shipped with two 4-digit user codes and a 6-digit programming code. These codes are randomly generated at the factory. *(Turn to next page for Programming Instructions.)*

To Unlock:

1. Enter 4-digit user codes.
(See sticker located on the inside trim plate or on page 11).
2. Rotate Thumbturn.

**To Lock:**

1. Press EMTEK key.
2. Rotate Thumbturn.



Programming Your Lock

In order to perform each of the following six functions, the lock must first be placed in Programming Mode:

1. Press and hold EMTEK button for 3 seconds
2. **Yellow** LED flashes, then remains solid*, number keys also illuminate
3. Enter Programming Code
4. **Green** LED flashes, then 1 beep
5. **Yellow** LED remains solid (awaiting button press; see following Table)

IF YOU WISH TO	PRESS BUTTON	ACTIONS		INDICATORS
Change Programming Code (6 digits)	1	Enter New Programming Code (6 digits)	Re-Enter New Programming Code (6 digits)	• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
Add User Code (4 digits) (Store up to 20 User Codes)	2	Enter New User Code (4 digits)	Re-Enter New User Code (4 digits)	• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
Delete User Code	3	Enter User Code to be Deleted	Re-Enter User Code to be Deleted	• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
**Enable/Disable All User Codes	4	Entering '4' disables all Users (enables all if disabled)		• 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
Delete All User Codes	5	Re-Enter Programming Code		• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
Turn Beeper On/ Off	6	Entering '6' turns OFF (or ON)		• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps

*If no input within 10 seconds, **Yellow** LED goes out, **Red** LED flashes and lock exits Programming Mode.

**Also referred to as "vacation mode". This command temporarily disables all user codes (metal key override will still work).

Keypad Operation - Beeper & LED Indicators

Function	Indicators
Valid Code	• 1 short beep, EMTEK button flashes Green .
Invalid Code/Access Denied*	• 1 Red LED flash • 2 short beeps
Lock-Out Mode Error	• 2 short beeps • 1 short beep per second for duration
Access Accepted	• 1 short beep • 1 Green LED flash
Low Battery	• 4 Red LED flashes • 4 short beeps
Blackout Battery**	• 1 long Red LED flash • 4 long beeps
Button Press Accepted	• 1 Yellow LED flash • 1 Short Beep
Outside Thumb Turn Enabled	• 2 Green LED flashes

* If 3 consecutive incorrect codes are entered, the lock emits 4 short beeps and a flashing **Red** EMTEK button. The lock will not accept additional input for 20 seconds (20 beeps). When the next valid code is entered the lock will beep quickly 10 times to alert of the incorrect codes.

** Battery voltage has dropped too low; keypad will be disabled but metal key override will still work.

Restoring the Lock to Factory Default Setting

This procedure clears the lock of all users and restores the Programming Code and 2 User Codes shipped with the lock.

- Remove power (disconnect 9V battery) from Lock
- Press and Hold EMTEK button
- While continuing to hold EMTEK button, restore power (reconnect 9V battery)
- Continue to hold EMTEK button for 3 seconds
- 1 **Green** LED Flash and 2 short beeps followed by 1 **Green** LED Flash and 2 short beeps indicates the lock has been successfully restored





Scan for how to
install videos.

EMTEK[®]

ASSA ABLOY

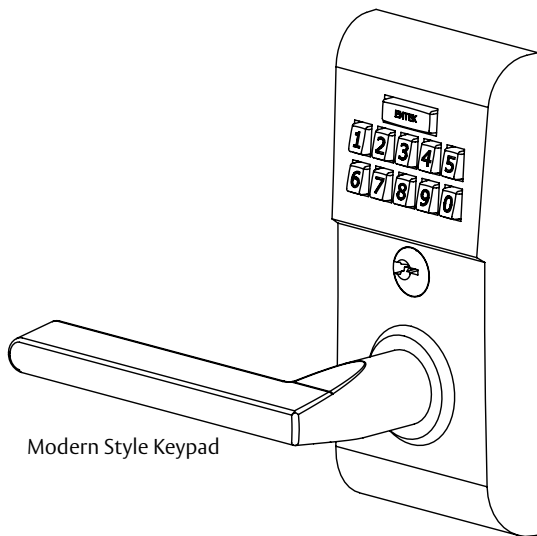
ASSA ABLOY is the global leader in door opening solutions, dedicated to satisfying end-user needs for security, safety and convenience.

Copyright © 2012, Emtek Products, Inc. an ASSA ABLOY Group company. All rights reserved. Reproduction in whole or in part without the express written permission of Emtek Products, Inc. is prohibited.

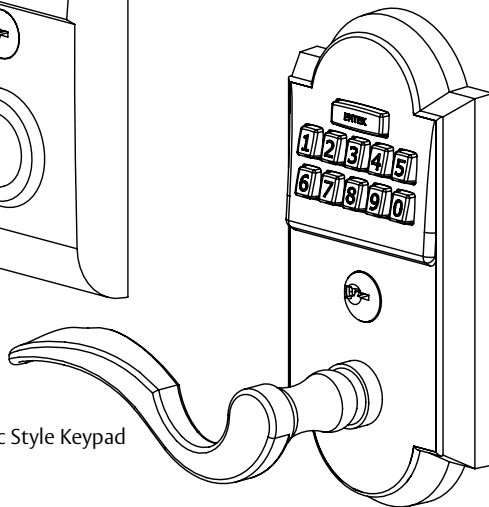
Installation & Programming Guide

Modern Style & Classic Style
Electronic Keypad Lever Locksets

EMTEK®
ASSA ABLOY

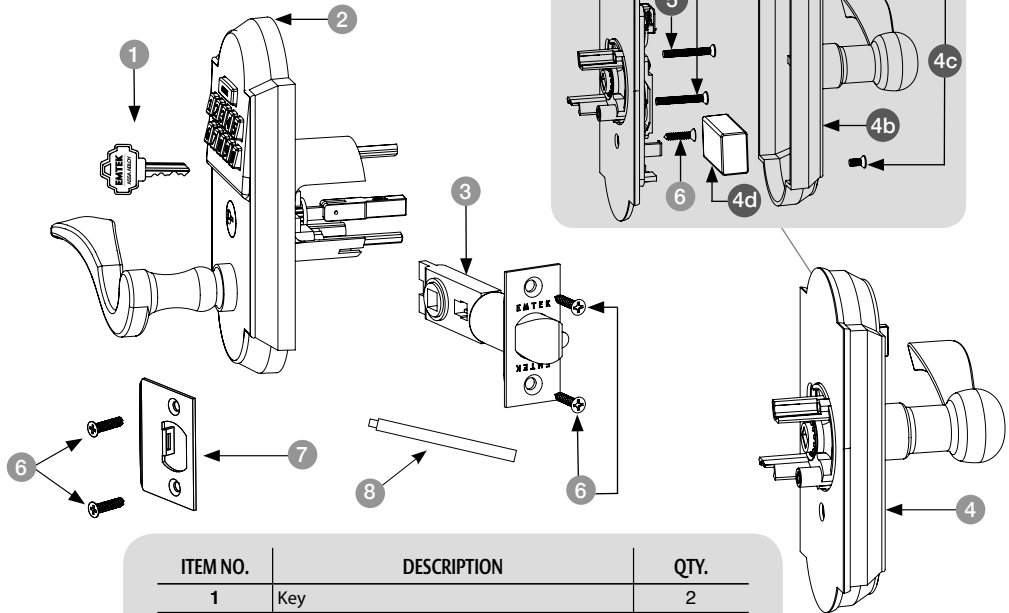


Modern Style Keypad



Classic Style Keypad

What's in the Box



ITEM NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY.
1	Key	2
2	Outside Trim Plate Assembly	1
3	Latch for 2 $\frac{3}{8}$ " or 2 $\frac{3}{4}$ " Backset	1
4	Inside Trim Plate Assembly	1
4a	Inside Chassis	1
4b	Inside Trim Plate	1
4c	#8-32 x $\frac{3}{8}$ " Flat Head Machine Screw	2
4d	9V Alkaline Battery	1
5	#8-32 x 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ " Flat Head Machine Screw	2
6	#8 x $\frac{3}{4}$ " Wood Screw	5
7	Strike Plate	1
8	Plastic Extender	1

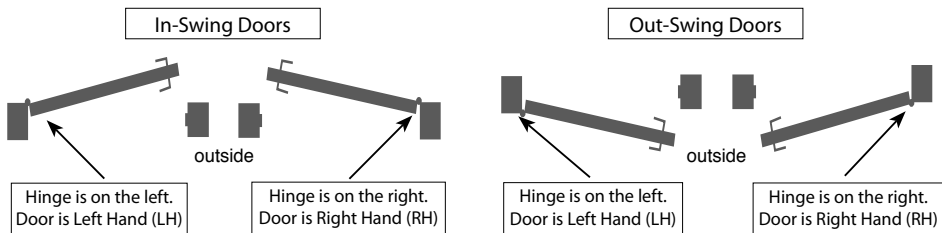
Preparation

Confirm Handing

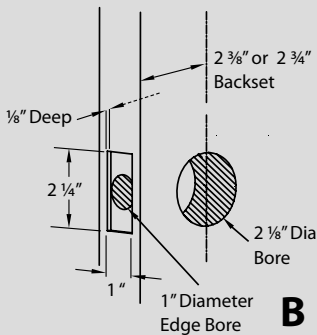
A

EN

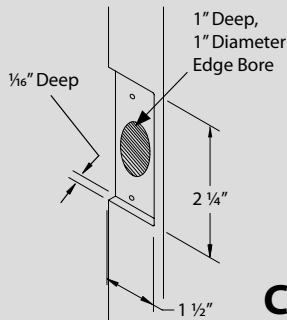
HANDING OF DOOR IS ALWAYS DETERMINED FROM THE OUTSIDE



Door Prep

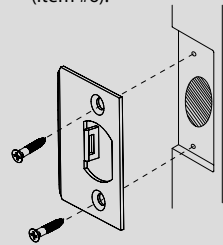


Door Jamb Prep



Install Strike Plate

Fasten Strike Plate using two #8 x 3/4" Wood Screws (item #6).

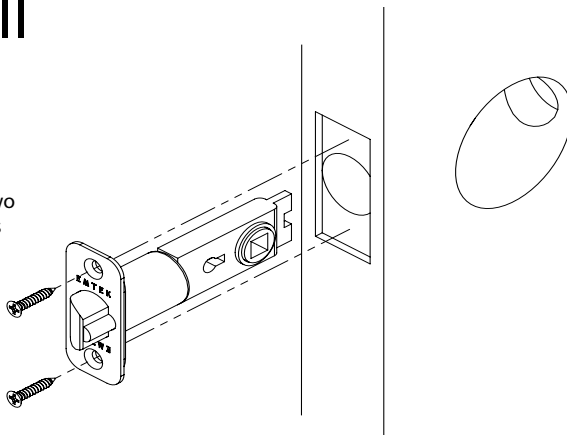


How to Install

1

Install Latch

Fasten Latch using two #8 x ¾" Wood Screws (item #6).

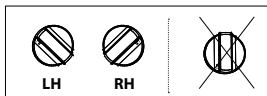


Remove Screws from Inside Trim Plate

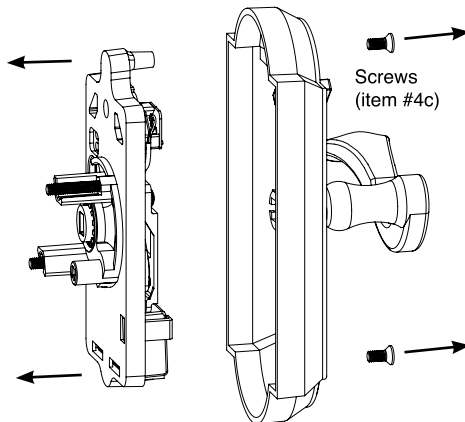
Use a Phillips head screwdriver to remove screws (item #4c) shown below and detach Inside Trim Plate from the Inside Chassis.



Remove inside chassis from trim plate before installing the outside trim. Thumbturn must be in neutral position.



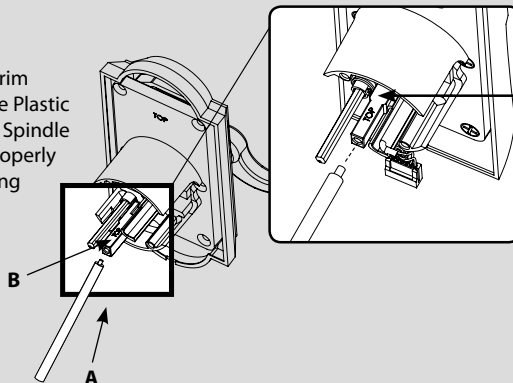
See Page 3 for Handling Information.



Install Outside Trim Plate Assembly

STEP 1

While holding Outside Trim Plate Assembly, Press the Plastic Extender (A) into end of Spindle Shaft (B). The Shaft is properly aligned when the marking 'TOP' can be seen from an overhead view.



*This side
on top.*

EN

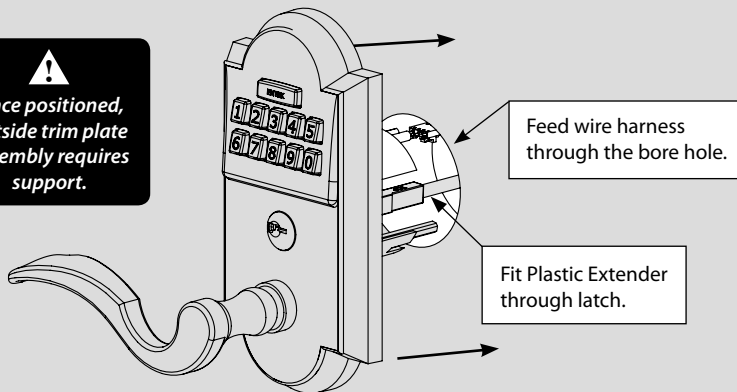
3

STEP 2

Position the Outside Trim Plate Assembly through the bore hole.



*Once positioned,
outside trim plate
assembly requires
support.*



STEP 3

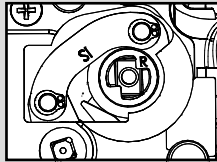
With the Outside Trim Plate Assembly flush to the door, **REMOVE** the Plastic Extender.

Install Inside Chassis

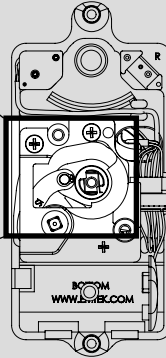
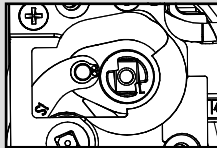
STEP 1

Confirm the position of Cam Link.

For Right Hand Locks:
Turn to right position.



For Left Hand Locks:
Turn to left position.

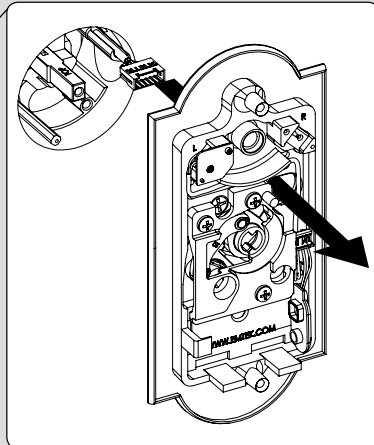
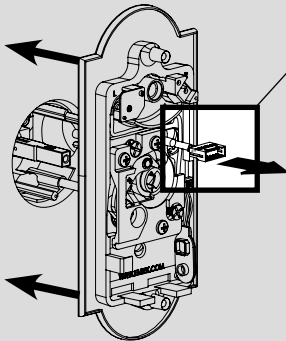


*Cam link must remain
in the correct position
during installation.*

4

STEP 2

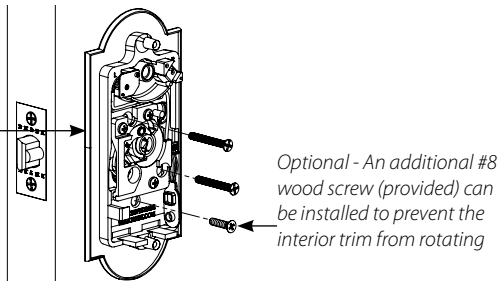
Feed the Wire Harness through Inside Chassis.



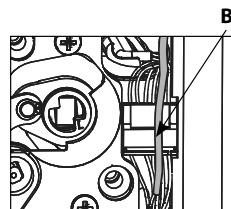
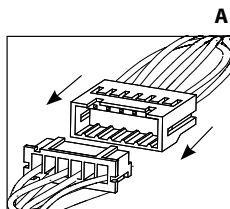
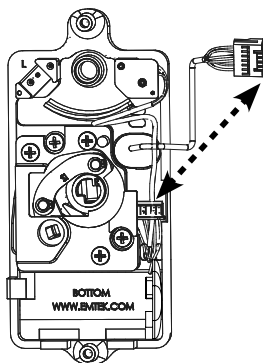
STEP 3

Fasten Inside Chassis using two #8-32 x 1½" Flat Head Machine Screw (item #5).

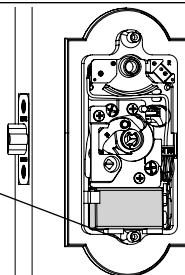
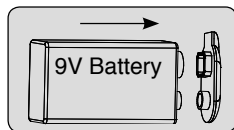

Check alignment before fully tightening screws.

**EN****STEP 4**

Connect Wire Harness (A) and tuck Connectors as shown (B).

**STEP 5**

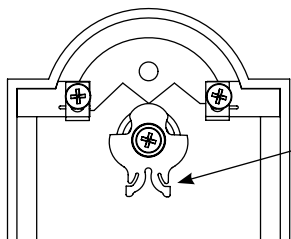
Install Battery.



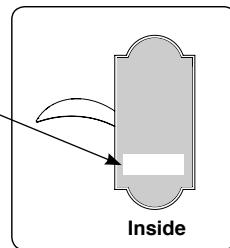
For optimal performance, always use a good quality battery.

5 Install Inside Trim Plate

Fasten Inside Trim Plate using two #8-32 x 3/8" Flat Head Machine Screws (item #4c).

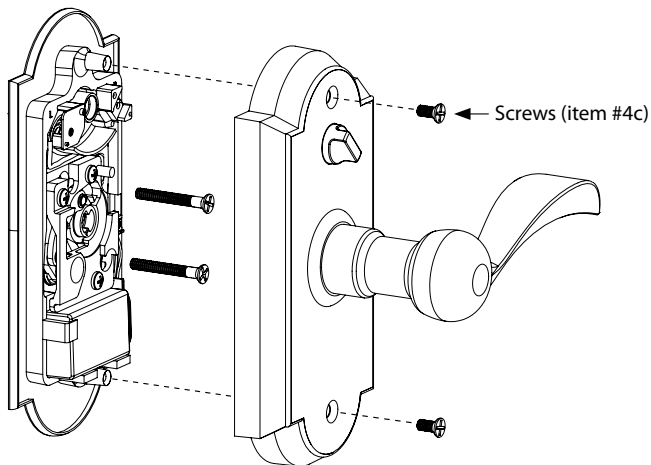



User codes are located on the inside trim plate & back cover page.




*Correct position for installation. Thumbcam must be positioned as shown (Neutral Position)**

***Neutral position** is required for installation and removal of the Inside Trim Plate Assembly.



How to Use

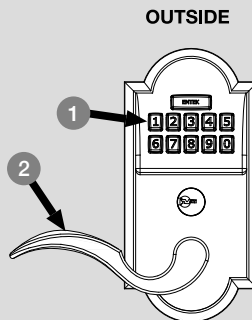
Your Lock is Ready to Use

EN

Your Emttek lock is shipped with two 4-digit user codes and a 6-digit programming code.
These codes are randomly generated at the factory.
(Turn to next page for Programming Instructions.)

To Unlock

1. Enter 4-digit user codes.
(See sticker located on the inside trim plate or back cover page).
2. Turn Handle.



Passage Feature

(Does not apply to Keypad Storeroom/Gate product)

Activate by turning the inside thumbturn to the unlocked position. This will engage the outside lever so a code is not required to enter.

To Lock

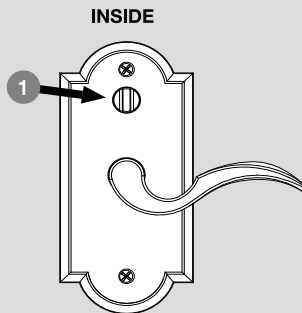
1. Rotate Thumbturn from inside.



Locked



Unlocked



How to Program

Programming Your Lock

In order to perform each of the following six functions, the lock must first be placed in Programming Mode:

1. Press and hold EMTEK button for 3 seconds

2. **Yellow** LED flashes, then remains solid*

3. Enter Programming Code
4. **Green** LED flashes, then 2 beeps

5. **Yellow** LED remains solid
(awaiting button press; see following table)

If You Wish To	Press Button	Actions		Indicators
Change Programming Code (6 digits)	1	Enter New Programming Code (6 digits)	Re-Enter New Programming Code (6 digits)	• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
Add User Code (4 digits) (Store up to 20 User Codes)	2	Enter New User Code (4 digits)	Re-Enter New User Code (4 digits)	• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
Delete User Code	3	Enter User Code to be Deleted	Re-Enter User Code to be Deleted	• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
**Enable/Disable All User Codes	4	Entering '4' disables all Users (enables all if disabled)		• 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
Delete All User Codes	5	Re-Enter Programming Code		• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
Turn Beeper On/Off	6	Entering '6' turns OFF (or ON)		• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps

*If no input within 10 seconds, **Yellow** LED goes out, **Red** LED flashes and lock exits Programming Mode.

**Also referred to as "vacation mode". This command temporarily disables all user codes (metal key override will still work).

Keypad Operation - Beeper & LED Indicators

Function	Indicators
Valid Code	• 1 short beep, EMTEK button flashes Green .
Invalid Code/Access Denied*	• 1 Red LED flash • 2 short beeps
Lock-Out Mode Error	• 2 short beeps • 1 short beep per second for duration
Access Accepted	• 1 short beep • 1 Green LED flash
Low Battery	• 4 Red LED flashes • 4 short beeps
Blackout Battery**	• 1 long Red LED flash • 4 long beeps
Button Press Accepted	• 1 Yellow LED flash • 1 Short Beep
Outside Thumb Turn Enabled	• 2 Green LED flashes

* If 3 consecutive incorrect codes are entered, the lock emits 4 short beeps and a flashing **Red** EMTEK button. The lock will not accept additional input for 20 seconds (20 beeps). When the next valid code is entered the lock will beep quickly 3 times to alert of the incorrect codes.

** Battery voltage has dropped too low; keypad will be disabled but metal key override will still work.

Restoring the Lock to Factory Default Setting

This procedure clears the lock of all users and restores the Programming Code and 2 User Codes shipped with the lock.

- Remove power (disconnect 9V battery) from Lock.
- Press and hold EMTEK button.
- While continuing to hold EMTEK button, restore power (reconnect 9V battery).
- Continue to hold EMTEK button for 3 seconds.
- 1 **Green** LED flash and 2 short beeps followed by 1 **Green** LED Flash and 2 short beeps indicates the lock has been successfully restored

U.S. patents:
8,176,761
8,141,400

Canadian patents:
2,698,041
2,789,278
2,789,280

Guide d'installation et de programmation

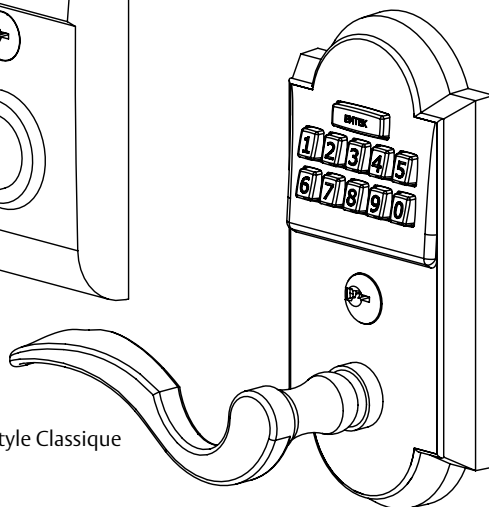
Levier et clavier électroniques pour jeu de serrures
Style Moderne et Style Classique

EMTEK®
ASSA ABLOY

FR

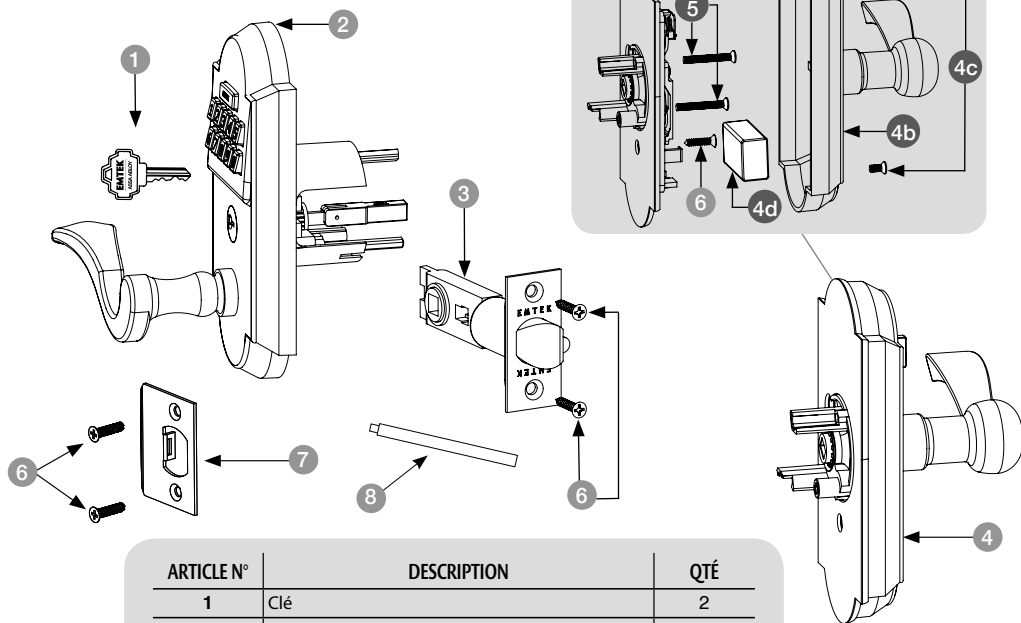


Clavier Style Moderne



Clavier Style Classique

Que contient la boîte



ARTICLE N°	DESCRIPTION	QTÉ
1	Clé	2
2	Assemblage de la plaque de garniture extérieure	1
3	Loquet pour 2 ¾ po ou 2 ¾ po appuie-tête	1
4	Assemblage de la plaque de garniture intérieure	1
4a	Bâti intérieur	1
4b	Plaque de garniture intérieure	1
4c	Vis à métal à tête plate #8-32 x ¾ po	2
4d	Pile alcaline de 9 V	1
5	Vis à métal à tête plate #8-32 x 1 ½ po	2
6	Vis à bois #8 x ¾ po	5
7	Plaque de gâche	1
8	Rallonge en plastique	1

Préparation

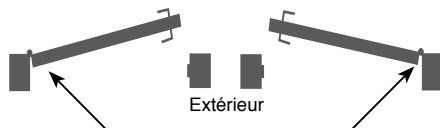
Confirmation du sens d'ouverture

A

LE SENS DE LA PORTE EST TOUJOURS DÉTERMINÉ DE L'EXTÉRIEUR

FR

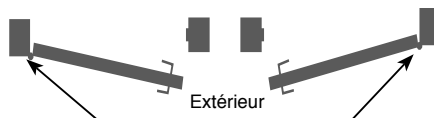
Portes avec ouverture vers l'intérieur.



Charnière sur la gauche -
porte avec ouverture vers
la gauche (MG)

Charnière sur la droite - Porte
avec ouverture vers la droite
(MD)

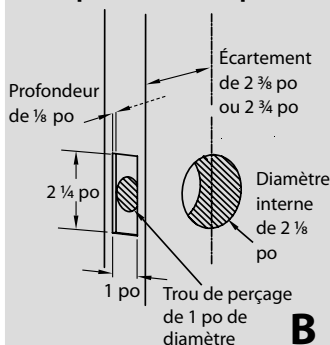
Portes avec ouverture vers l'extérieur



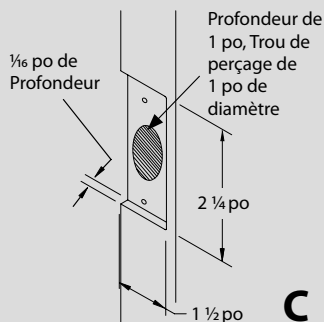
Charnière sur la gauche -
porte avec ouverture vers
la gauche (MG)

Charnière sur la droite - Porte
avec ouverture vers la droite
(MD)

Préparation de la porte

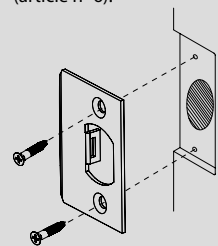


Préparation de l'embrasure de porte



Installation de la plaque de gâche

Fixez la plaque de gâche à l'aide des deux vis à bois n° 8 x 3/4 po (article n° 6).

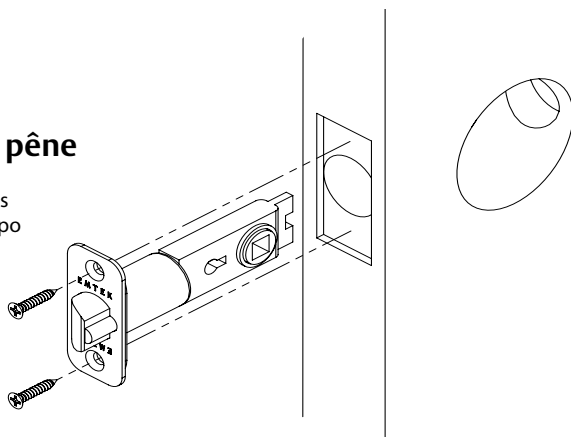


Pour installer

1

Installation du pêne

Fixez le pêne à l'aide des deux vis à bois n° 8 x ¾ po (article n° 6).

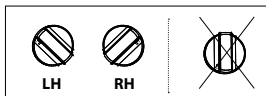


Retirez les vis de la plaque de garniture intérieure

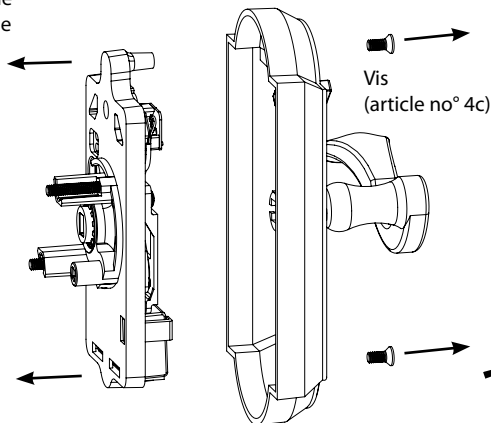
À l'aide d'un tournevis Phillips, retirez les vis (article n° 4c) illustrées ci-dessous et détachez la plaque de garniture intérieure de l'intérieur du bâti.



Avant d'installer la garniture extérieure, retirez le bâti intérieur de la plaque de garniture. La barette tournante doit être dans la position neutre.



Voir page 15 pour du sens d'informations.

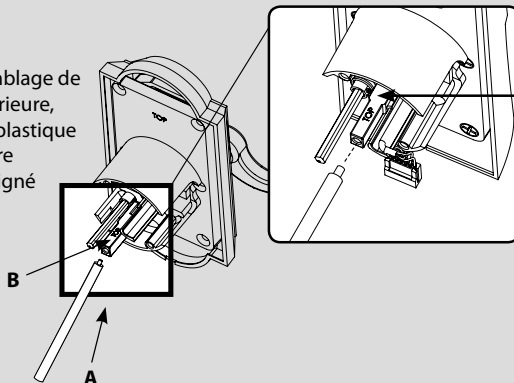


2

Installation de l'assemblage de la plaque de garniture extérieure

ÉTAPE 1

Tout en maintenant l'assemblage de la plaque de garniture extérieure, appuyer sur la rallonge en plastique (A) pour l'insérer dans l'arbre de broche (B). L'arbre est aligné correctement lorsque la marque "TOP" peut être vue du dessus.




Ce côté vers
le haut.

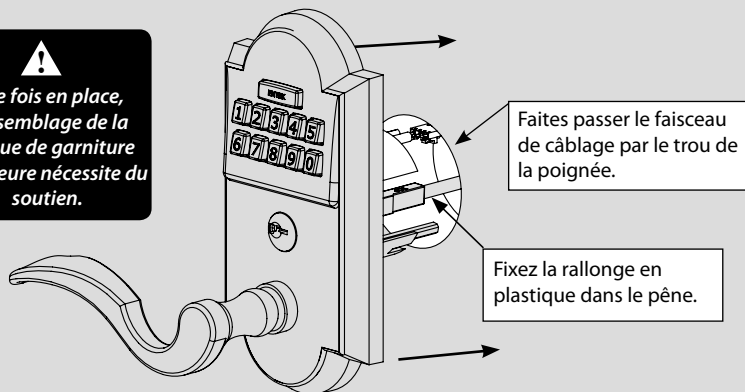
FR

3

ÉTAPE 2

Positionnez l'assemblage de la plaque de garniture extérieure dans le trou de la poignée.


Une fois en place,
l'assemblage de la
plaque de garniture
extérieure nécessite du
soutien.



Faites passer le faisceau
de câblage par le trou de
la poignée.

Fixez la rallonge en
plastique dans le pêne.

ÉTAPE 3

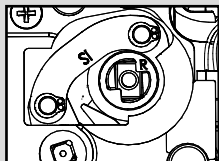
Alors que l'assemblage de la plaque de garniture est aligné sur la porte, **RETIREZ** la rallonge en plastique.

Installation du bâti intérieur

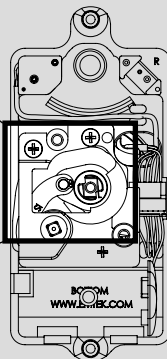
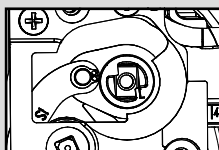
ÉTAPE 1

Confirmation du lien de la came.

Pour les serrures avec ouverture à droite :
Tournez vers la position de droite.



Pour les serrures avec ouverture à gauche :
Tournez vers la position de gauche.

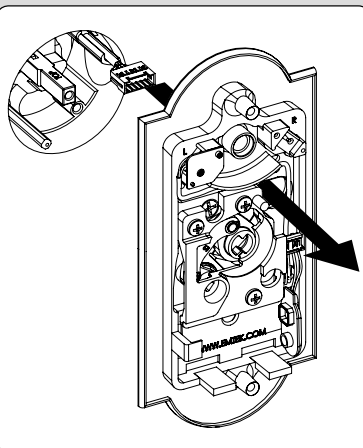
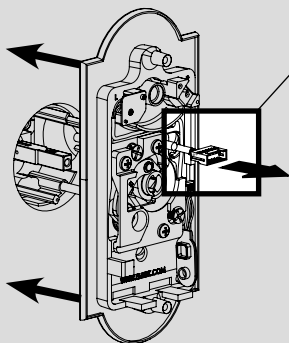


Le lien de la came doit demeurer dans la position adéquate durant l'installation.

4

ÉTAPE 2

Faites passer le faisceau de câblage dans le bâti intérieur.

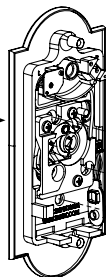


ÉTAPE 3

Fixez le bâti intérieur à l'aide de deux vis à métal n° 8-32 x 1½ po à tête plate (article n° 5).



Avant de fixer fermement les vis, vérifiez l'alignement.

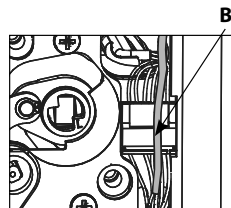
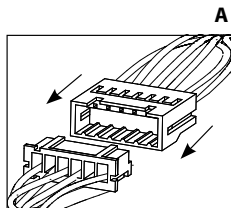
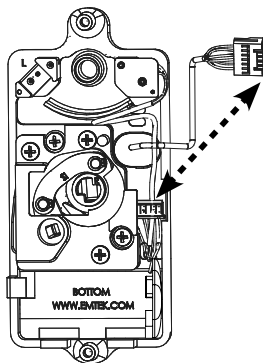


En option - Une vis à bois # 8 supplémentaire (fournie) peut être installée pour empêcher la garniture intérieure de tourner

FR

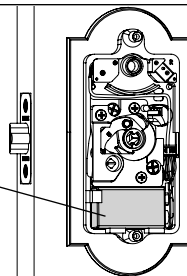
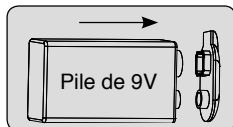
ÉTAPE 4

Branchez le faisceau de câblage (A) dans les connecteurs horizontaux tel qu'illustré (B).



ÉTAPE 5

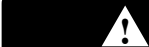
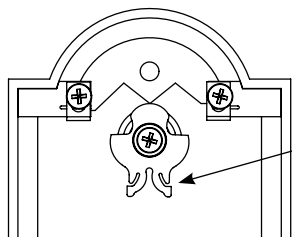
Installez la pile.



Pour une performance optimale, utilisez toujours une pile de bonne qualité.

5 Installation de la plaque de garniture intérieure

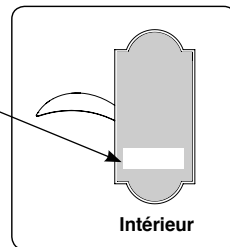
Fixez la plaque de garniture intérieure à l'aide de deux vis à métal n° 8-32 x $\frac{3}{8}$ po à tête plate (article n° 4c).



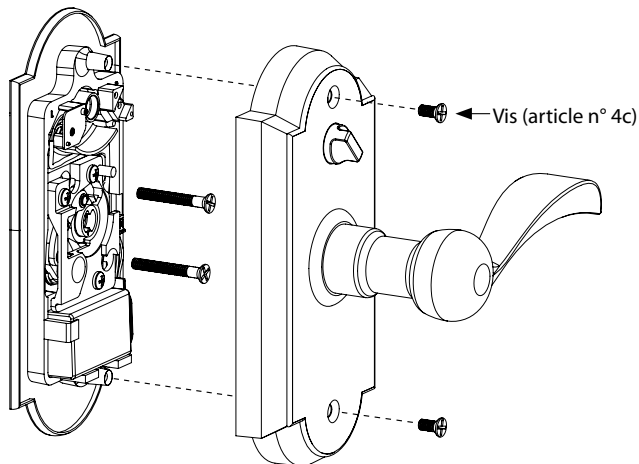
Les codes d'utilisateurs se trouvent sur la plaque de garniture intérieure et reportez-vous à la couverture arrière.



*Position adéquate pour l'installation. La came de blocage à oreilles doit être placée tel que illustré (position neutre)**



***Position neutre** verrouillée est requise pour l'installation et pour retirer l'assemblage de la plaque de garniture intérieure.



Comment utiliser la serrure

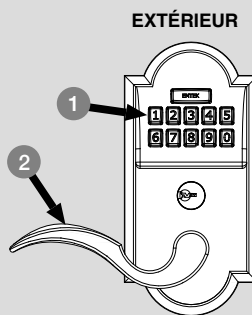
Votre serrure est prête à être utilisée

Lors de la livraison, votre serrure Emtex est configurée avec deux codes d'utilisateur à 4 chiffres et un code de programmation à 6 chiffres. Ces codes sont générés au hasard à l'usine.

(Pour obtenir les instructions de programmation, reportez-vous à la page suivante.)

Pour déverrouiller

1. Entrez les codes d'utilisateurs à 4 chiffres.
(Voir l'étiquette située sur la plaque de garniture intérieure ou reportez-vous à la couverture arrière).
2. Tournez la poignée.



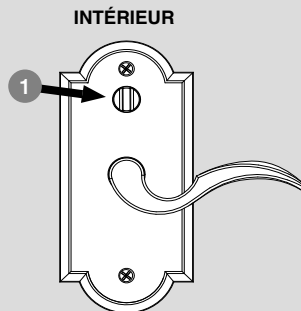
Fonction pour passage

Ceci ne s'applique pas dans le cas d'un clavier d'entreposage/produits pour barrière de sécurité (gate)

Activez la fonction en tournant la poignée à barrette tournante à la position déverrouillée. Ceci va engager le levier extérieur de façon à ce qu'aucun code ne soit requis pour entrer.

Pour verrouiller

1. Tournez la poignée à barrette tournante par l'intérieur.



FR

Pour faire la programmation

Programmation de votre serrure

De façon à pouvoir effectuer chacune des six fonctions ci-dessous, la serrure doit d'abord être mise en mode de programmation :

1. Maintenez la touche EMTEK enfoncée durant 3 secondes
2. La DEL **Jaune** clignote et demeure ensuite allumée*
3. Entrez le code de programmation
4. La DEL **Verte** clignote et ensuite 2 bips se font entendre
5. Le DEL **Jaune** demeure allumée (attendant qu'une touche soit enfoncée: voir le tableau ci-dessous)

Si vous désirez	Appuyez sur la touche	Actions		Voyants
Modifier le code de programmation (6 chiffres)	1	Entrez le nouveau code de programmation (6 chiffres)	Entrez une deuxième fois le nouveau code de programmation (6 chiffres)	• 1 clignotement de la DEL Verte • 1 bip • 1 clignotement de la DEL Verte • 1 bip • 2 clignotements de la DEL Verte • 2 bips
Ajouter un code d'utilisateur (4 chiffres) (Jusqu'à 20 codes d'utilisateur peuvent être stockés)	2	Entrez le nouveau code d'utilisateur (4 chiffres)	Entrez une deuxième fois le nouveau code d'utilisateur (4 chiffres)	• 1 clignotement de la DEL Verte • 1 bip • 1 clignotement de la DEL Verte • 1 bip • 2 clignotements de la DEL Verte • 2 bips
Supprimer un code d'utilisateur	3	Entrez le code d'utilisateur que vous désirez supprimer	Entrez une deuxième fois le code d'utilisateur que vous désirez supprimer	• 1 clignotement de la DEL Verte • 1 bip • 1 clignotement de la DEL Verte • 1 bip • 2 clignotements de la DEL Verte • 2 bips
**Activer/Désactiver tous les codes d'utilisateurs	4	Entrer "4" désactive tous les utilisateurs (les active tous s'ils étaient désactivés)		• 2 clignotements de la DEL Verte • 2 bips
Supprimer tous les codes d'utilisateur	5	Entrez de nouveau le code de programmation		• 1 clignotement de la DEL Verte • 1 bip • 2 clignotements de la DEL Verte • 2 bips
Mettre EN ou HORS service l'avertisseur sonore	6	L'entrée de "6" le met HORS fonction (EN fonction)		• 1 clignotement de la DEL Verte • 1 bip • 2 clignotements de la DEL Verte • 2 bips

*Si aucune entrée n'est effectuée durant 10 secondes, la DEL **Jaune** s'éteint, la DEL **Rouge** clignote et la serrure quitte le mode de programmation

**Veuillez également vous reporter au "mode Vacances". Cette commande désactive temporairement tous les codes d'utilisateur (mais la clé métallique fonctionne toujours).

Fonctionnement du clavier - Avertisseur sonore et voyants à DEL

FR

Fonction	Voyants
Code valide	• 1 bip court. La touche EMTEK clignote en <i>Verte</i>
Code invalide/Accès refusé*	• 1 clignotement de la DEL <i>Rouge</i> • 2 bips courts
Erreur - Mode de verrouillage	• 2 bips courts • 1 bip court toute les secondes pour toute la durée de l'opération
Accès permis	• 1 bip court • 1 clignotement de la DEL <i>Verte</i>
Pile faible	• 4 clignotements de la DEL <i>Rouge</i> • 4 bips courts
Pile défectueuse**	• 1 long clignotement de la DEL <i>Rouge</i> • 4 bips longs
Touche enfoncée acceptée	• 1 clignotement de la DEL <i>Jaune</i> • 1 bip court
Poignée à barrette tournante extérieure activée	• 2 clignotement de la DEL <i>Verte</i>

* Si trois codes erronés consécutifs sont entrés, la serrure émet 4 bips courts et la touche EMTEK clignote enrouge. La serrure n'acceptera pas de code additionnel durant 20 secondes (20 bips). Lorsqu'un prochain code valide est entré, la serrure émet 3 bips rapides pour indiquer que des codes invalides ont été précédemment entrés.

** La tension de la pile a chuté trop bas: le clavier sera désactivé mais une clé métallique peut être utilisée pour déverrouiller la serrure.

Rétablissement de la serrure à ses réglages par défaut

Cette procédure efface tous les utilisateurs de la serrure et rétablit le code de programmation et les deux codes d'utilisateur à leur valeur par défaut configurée à l'usine.

- Enlevez l'alimentation (débranchez la pile de 9V) de la serrure
- Appuyez sur la touche EMTEK
- Tout en gardant la touche EMTEK enfoncée, rétablissez le courant (rebranchez la pile de 9V)
- Continuez de maintenir la touche EMTEK enfoncée durant 3 secondes
- La DEL *Verte* clignote 1 fois, deux bips se font ensuite entendre et la DEL *Verte* clignote deux fois rapidement; les bips indiquent que la serrure a été correctement rétablie

Le brevet américain:

8,176,761

8,141,400

Canadian Brevets:

2,698,041

2,789,278

2,789,280

© Emtek Products, inc., 2017. Une entreprise du groupe ASSA ABLOY. Tous droits réservés. La reproduction totale ou partielle sans l'autorisation expresse écrite par Emtek Products, inc. est interdite.

Guía de Instalación y Programación

EMTEK®
ASSA ABLOY

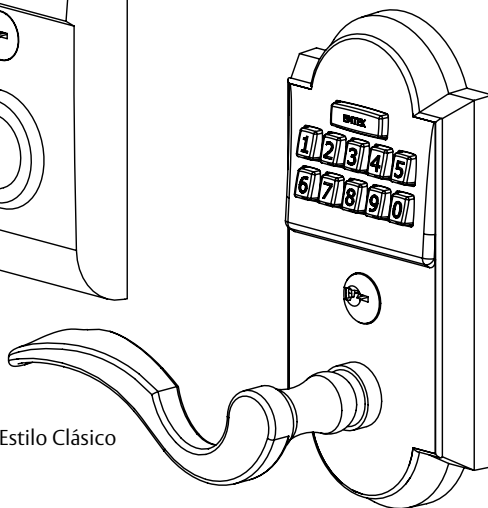
Estilo Moderno y Estilo Clásico

Palanca y Teclado Electrónico para Juego de
Cerraduras Teclado Estilo

ES

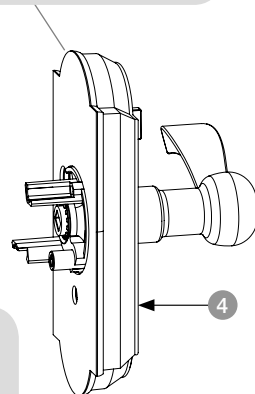
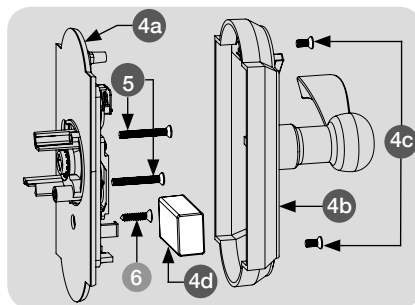
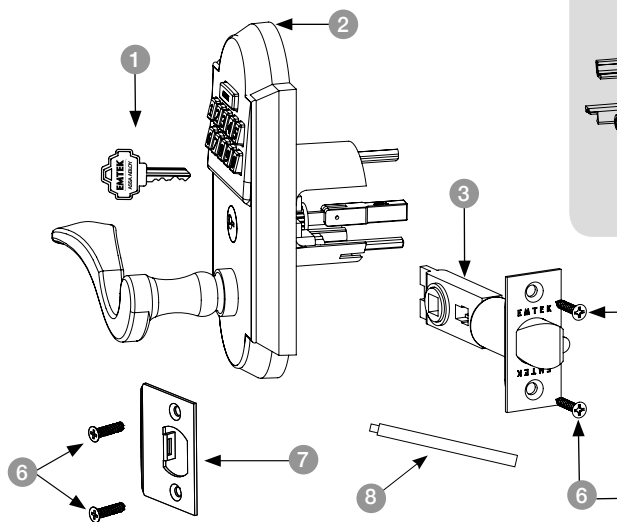


Teclado Estilo Moderno



Teclado Estilo Clásico

Qué Hay en la Caja



ARTÍCULO N°	DESCRIPCIÓN	CANT.
1	Llave	2
2	Montaje de la Placa Decorativa externa	1
3	Pestillo para 2 3/8" o 2 3/4" de Distancia	1
4	Montaje de la Placa Decorativa Interior	1
4a	Chasis Interno	1
4b	Placa Decorativa Interior	1
4c	Tornillo de Cabeza Plana de #8-32 x 3/8"	2
4d	Batería Alcalina de 9V	1
5	Tornillo de Cabeza Plana de #8-32 x 1 1/2"	2
6	Tornillo para Madera de #8 x 3/4"	5
7	Placa de Impacto	1
8	Extensor de Plástico	1

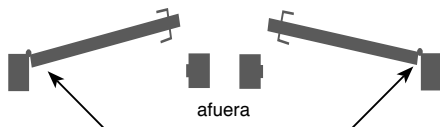
Preparación

Confirme el Manejo

A

LA OPERACIÓN DE LA PUERTA ESTÁ SIEMPRE DETERMINADA DESDE AFUERA

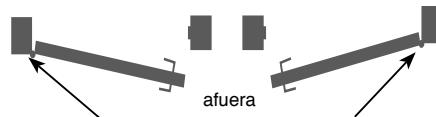
Puertas que abren hacia adentro



La bisagra está a la izquierda
La puerta es Izquierda (LH)

La bisagra está a la derecha
La puerta es Derecha (RH)

Puertas que abren hacia afuera

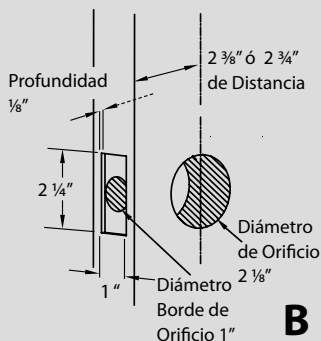


La bisagra está a la izquierda
La puerta es Izquierda (LH)

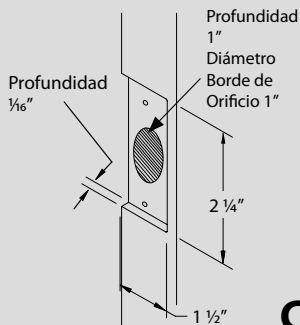
La bisagra está a la derecha
La puerta es Derecha (RH)

ES

Preparación de la Puerta

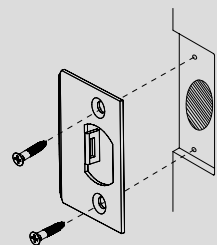


Preparación de la Jamba



Instale la Placa de Impacto

Asegure la Placa de Impacto usando dos Tornillos para Madera #8 x 3/4" (artículo #6).

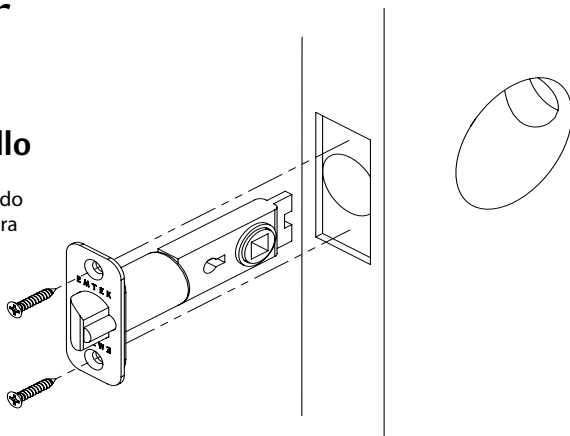


Cómo Instalar

1

Instale el Pestillo

Asegure el Pestillo usando dos Tornillos para Madera #8 x ¾" (artículo #6).

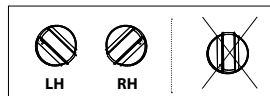


Retire los Tornillos de la Placa Decorativa Interior

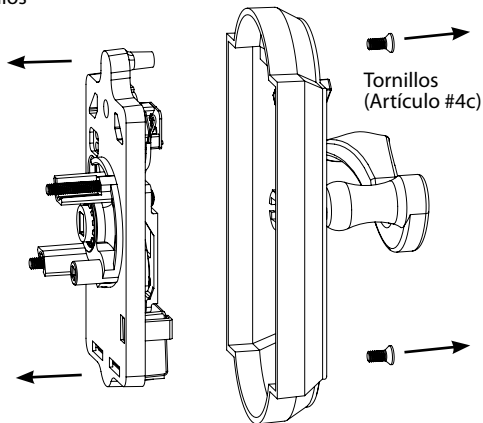
Use un destornillador Phillips para retirar los tornillos (artículo #4c) mostrados abajo y separe la Placa Decorativa Interior del Chasis Interno.



Retire el chasis interno de la placa decorativa antes de instalar la placa exterior. El Cerrojo manual debe estar en posición neutral.



Ver Hoja 27 para Información de manejo

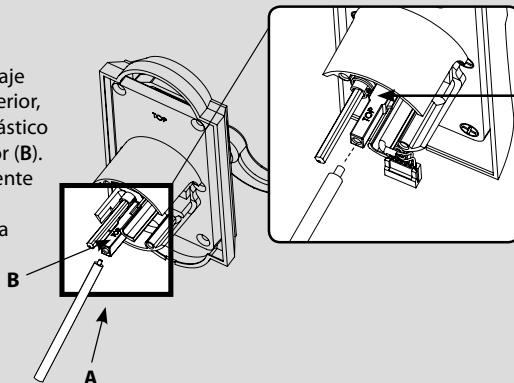


2

Instale el Montaje de la Placa Decorativa Exterior

PASO 1

Mientras sostiene el Montaje de la Placa Decorativa Exterior, Presione el Extensor de Plástico (A) dentro del Eje del Rotor (B). El Rotor está apropiadamente alineado cuando la marca 'TOP' puede ser visualizada desde arriba.



*Este lado
hacia arriba.*

ES

3

PASO 2

Posicione el Montaje de la Placa Decorativa Exterior a través del orificio.



*Una vez que está
posicionado, el
montaje de la placa
decorativa exterior
requiere soporte.*



Introduzca el arnés de
cables a través del orificio.

Introduzca el Extensor
de Plástico a través
del pestillo.

PASO 3

Con el Montaje de la Placa Decorativa Exterior alineado a la puerta, **RETIRE** Extensor de Plástico.

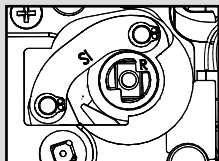
Instale el Chasis Interno

PASO 1

Confirme la posición de la Unión de Levas.

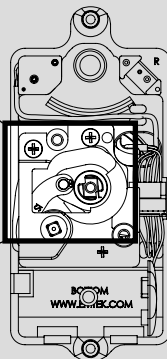
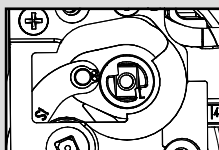
Para Cerraduras Derechas:

Gire a la posición derecha.



Para Cerraduras Izquierdas:

Gire a la posición izquierda.

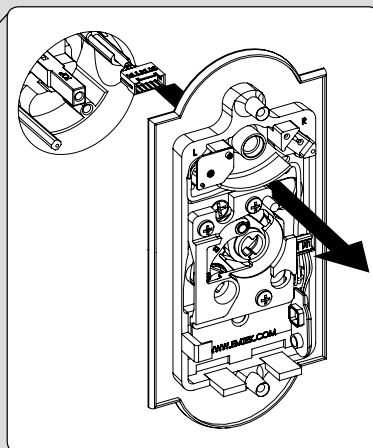
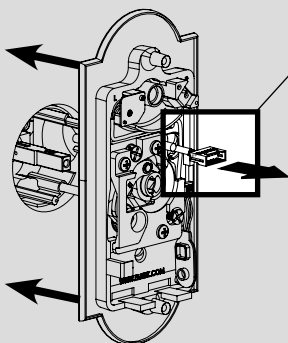


La unión de levas debe permanecer en la posición correcta durante la instalación.

4

PASO 2

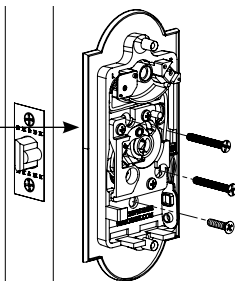
Introduzca el Arnés de Cables a través del Chasis Interno.



PASO 3

Asegure el Chasis Interno usando dos tornillos de Cabeza Plana #8-32 x 1½" (artículo #5).

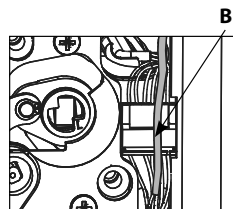
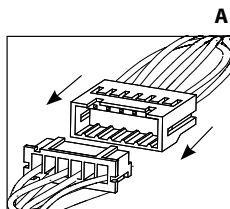
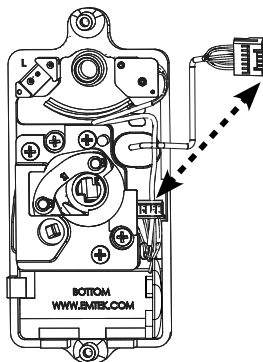

**Verifique la alineación
 antes de ajustar por
 completo los tornillos.**



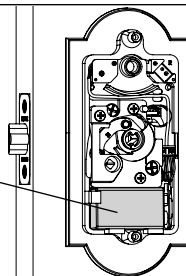
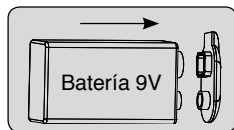
*Opcional - Se puede
 instalar un tornillo # 8 de
 madera adicional (propor-
 cionado) para evitar que
 el Chasis interior gire*

PASO 4

Conecte el Arnés de Cables (A) e inserte los Conectores como se muestra (B).

**PASO 5**

Instale la Batería.

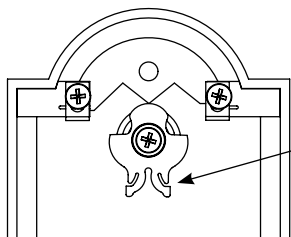


*Para un funcionamiento óp-
 timo, siempre use una batería
 de buena calidad*

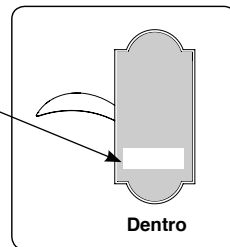
ES

5 Instale la Placa Decorativa Interior

Asegure la Placa Decorativa Interior usando dos Tornillos de Cabeza Plana #8-32 x $\frac{3}{8}$ " (artículo #4c).

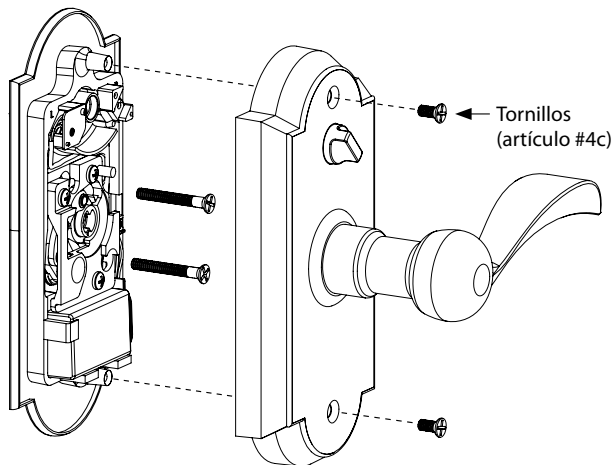


Los códigos de usuario están localizados en la placa interior y la última página.



Posición correcta para instalación. La leva manual debe estar posicionada como se muestra (Posición Neutral)*

*La **posición neutral** es necesaria para la instalación y extracción del Montaje de la Placa Decorativa Interior.



Cómo Usar

Su Cerradura está Lista para Usar

Su cerradura Emtek es enviada con dos códigos de usuario de 4 dígitos y un código de programación de 6 dígitos. Estos códigos son generados al azar en la fábrica.

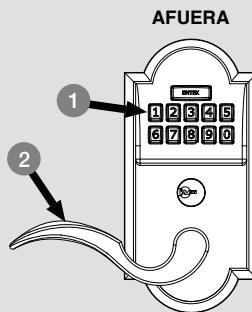
(Vaya a la próxima página para las Instrucciones de Programación.)

Para Desbloquear

1. Ingrese los códigos de usuario de 4 dígitos.

(Vea la etiqueta ubicada dentro de la placa decorativa interior o la última página).

2. Gire la Palanca.



Característica de paso

(No se aplica al producto: Keypad Storeroom/Gate)

Activar girando el cerrojo manual interior a la posición de desbloqueo. Esto engranará la palanca externa, de manera que no se requiera un código para ingresar.

Para Bloquear

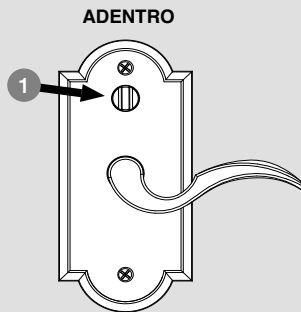
1. Gire el Cerrojo Manual desde adentro.



Bloqueado



Desbloqueado



ES

Cómo Programar

Programando su cerradura

Con el fin de realizar cada una de las seis siguientes funciones, la cerradura debe ser puesta en la opción de Modo de Programación:

1. Mantenga presionado el botón EMTEK durante 3 segundos
4. El LED **Verde** parpadea, y después 2 bips
2. El LED **Amarillo** parpadea y después se mantiene encendido*, las teclas numeradas también se iluminan
5. El LED **Amarillo** se mantiene encendido (esperando se presione el botón; vea la siguiente Tabla)
3. Introduzca el Código de Programación

Si Desea	Presione el Botón	Acciones		Indicadores
Cambiar el Código de Programación (6 dígitos)	1	Introducir el Nuevo Código de Programación (6 dígitos)	Reingresar el Nuevo Código de Programación (6 dígitos)	• 1 Destello del LED Verde • 1 bip • 1 Destello del LED Verde • 1 bip • 2 Destellos del LED Verde • 2 bips
Añadir el Código de Usuario (4 dígitos) (Almacena hasta 20 Códigos de Usuario)	2	Ingrese el Nuevo Código de Usuario (4 dígitos)	Reingresar el Nuevo Código de Usuario (4 dígitos)	• 1 Destello del LED Verde • 1 bip • 1 Destello del LED Verde • 1 bip • 2 Destellos del LED Verde • 2 bips
Borrar el Código de Usuario	3	Ingrese el Código de Usuario a ser Borrado	Reingrese el Código de Usuario a ser Borrado	• 1 Destello del LED Verde • 1 bip • 1 Destello del LED Verde • 1 bip • 2 Destellos del LED Verde • 2 bips
**Habilitar/Deshabilitar Todos los Códigos de Usuario	4	Ingresando '4' deshabilita a todos los Usuarios (habilita a todos si estaban deshabilitados)		• 2 Destellos del LED Verde • 2 bips
Borrar Todos los Códigos de Usuario	5	Reingresar el Código de Programación		• 1 Destello del LED Verde • 1 bip • 2 Destellos del LED Verde • 2 bips
Encender el Bíper ON/OFF	6	Ingresando '6' se apaga OFF (o prende ON)		• 1 Destello del LED Verde • 1 bip • 2 Destellos del LED Verde • 2 bips

*Si no se ingresa nada durante 10 segundos, el LED **Amarillo** se apaga, el LED **Rojo** parpadea y la cerradura sale del Modo de Programación.

**También referido como "modo vacación." Este comando inhabilita temporalmente todos los códigos de usuario (la anulación mediante la llave de metal seguirá funcionando).

Funcionamiento del Teclado – Indicadores de Bíper y LED

Función	Indicators
Código Válido	• 1 bip corto, el botón EMTEK parpadea Verde
Código inválido/Acceso Denegado*	• 1 parpadeo del LED Rojo • 2 bips cortos
Error del Modo de Bloqueo	• 2 bips cortos • 1 bip corto por segundo por duración
Acceso Aceptado	• 1 bip corto • 1 destello del LED Verde
Batería Baja	• 4 destellos del LED Rojo • 4 bips cortos
Batería Agotada**	• 1 destello del LED Rojo • 4 bips largos
Presión de Botón Aceptada	• 1 destello del LED Amarillo • 1 bip corto
Seguro Manual Externo Habilitado	• 2 destellos del LED Verde

* Si se introducen 3 códigos incorrectos consecutivamente, la cerradura emite 4 bips cortos y un botón EMTEK **Rojo**. La cerradura no aceptará otro ingreso por 20 segundos (20 bips). Cuando el siguiente código válido se ingresa, la cerradura emitirá 3 bips rápidos para alertar sobre los códigos incorrectos.

** El voltaje de la batería ha disminuido demasiado; el teclado estará inhabilitado, pero la anulación con llave de metal seguirá funcionando.

Restaurando la Cerradura a la Configuración de Fábrica

Este procedimiento elimina a todos los usuarios de la cerradura y restaura el Código de Programación y los 2 Códigos de Usuario enviados con la Cerradura.

- Corte la energía (desconecte la batería de 9V) de la Cerradura
- Presione y mantenga presionado el botón EMTEK
- Mientras continúa presionando el botón EMTEK, restaure la energía (reconecte la batería de 9V)
- Continúe presionando el botón EMTEK por 3 segundos
- 1 parpadeo del LED **Verde** y 2 bips cortos seguidos por 1 parpadeo del LED **Verde** y 2 bips cortos indica que el cerrojo fue restaurado satisfactoriamente.

Patente de EE.UU:

8,176,761

8,141,400

Patente Canadiense:

2,698,041

2,789,278

2,789,280

Copyright © 2017, Emtek Products, Inc. an ASSA ABLOY Group company. Todos los derechos reservados. Está prohibida la reproducción total o parcial sin la expresa autorización escrita de Emtek Products, Inc.

ASSA ABLOY is the global
leader in door opening solutions,
dedicated to satisfying
end-user needs for security,
safety and convenience.



EMTEK Products, Inc.
15250 E. Stafford Street
City of Industry • CA 91744
Tel: 800-356-2741 • 626-961-0413
Fax: 800-577-5771 • 626-336-2812
emtek.com

Place Sticker Here



Copyright © 2017, Emtek Products, Inc. an ASSA ABLOY Group company. All rights reserved. Reproduction in whole or in part without the express written permission of Emtek Products, Inc. is prohibited.

IN8-KEYPADLL

REV 17C 12/01/17

EMPowered™ Motorized *Smart* Lock Upgrade
- Connected by August
Sectional Entry Set

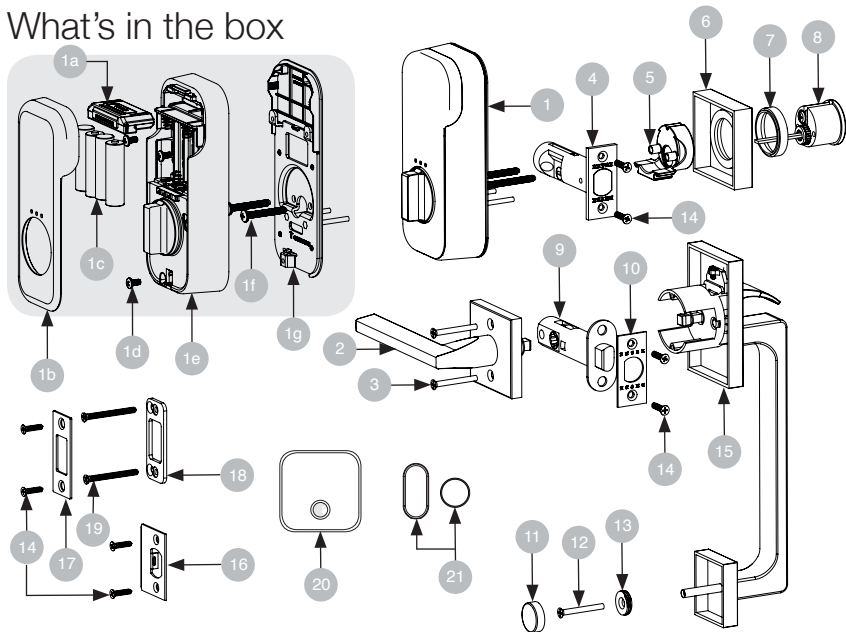


Experience a safer
and more open world

Download and install
eugust Home app



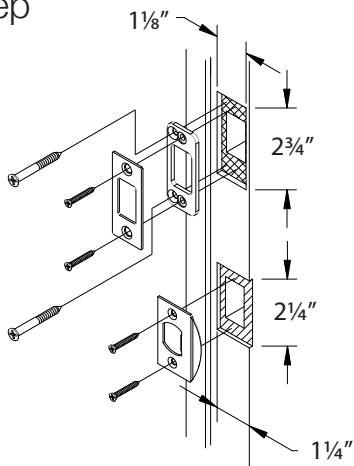
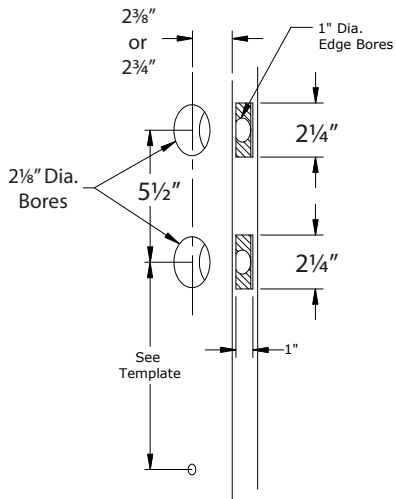
What's in the box



ITEM NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY.
1	EMPower Unit	1
1a	August Module	1
1b	Battery Cover	1
1c	AA Batteries	4
1d	M4-0.7 x 8mm Machine Screws	3
1e	Interior Escutcheon	1
1f	#10-32 x 2-1/8" Machine Screws	2
1g	Mounting Plate	1
2	Interior Knob/Lever Assembly	1
3	#8-32 x 1-1/2" Machine Screws	2
4	Deadbolt Latch 2-3/4" Backset	1
4	Deadbolt Latch 2-3/8" Backset	1
5	Deadbolt Screw Guide	1
6	Deadbolt Trim	1

ITEM NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY.
7	Deadbolt Extension Collar	1
8	Deadbolt Cylinder	1
9	Passage Latch	1
10	Latch Face Plate	1
11	Decorative Cap	1
12	#8-32 Flat head Machine Screw	1
13	Threaded Washer	1
14	#8 x 3/4" Wood Screws	8
15	Sectional Entry Set Assembly	1
16	Latch Strike Plate	1
17	Deadbolt Strike Plate	1
18	Deadbolt Security Plate	1
19	#10 x 3" Wood Screws	2
20	August Connect	1
21	August DoorSense™	1

Door Jamb Prep

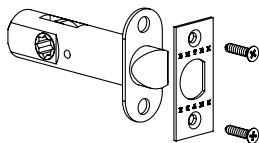
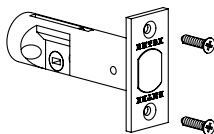


1

Install Latches

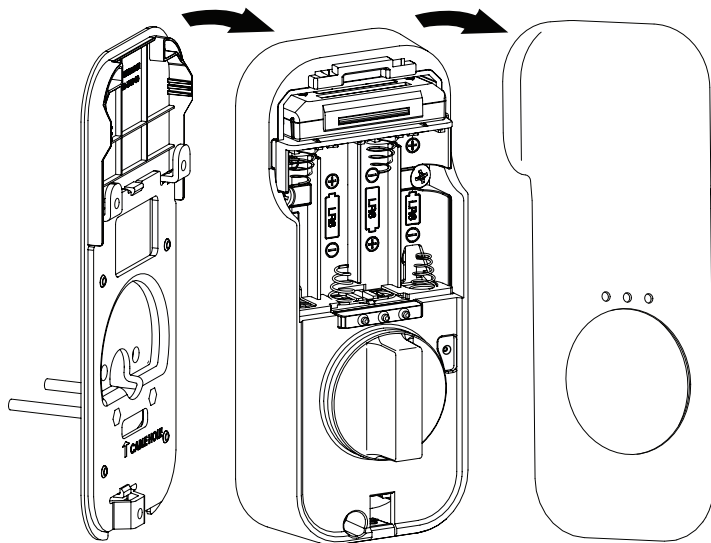


Note: Use only the supplied latch for proper functionality.



3

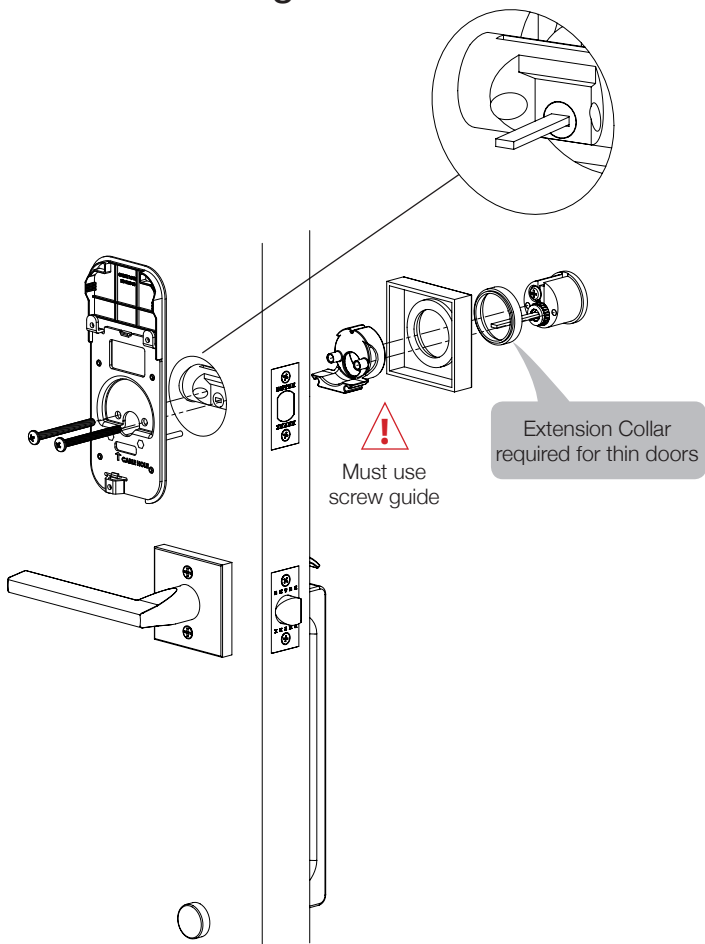
Remove Battery Cover



Loosen screw
on bottom to
remove cover.

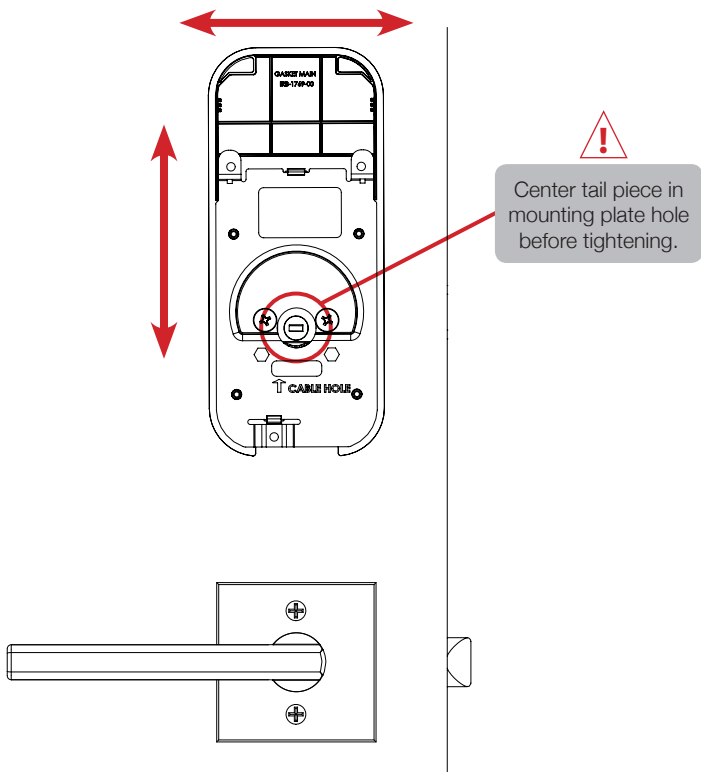
4

Install Lock Cylinder & Interior Mounting Plate



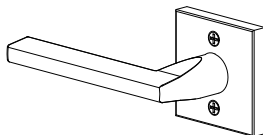
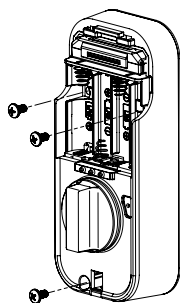
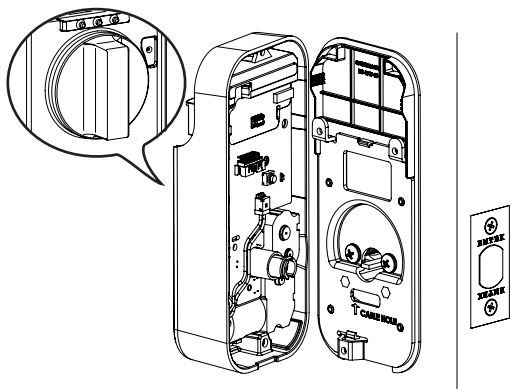
5

Check Interior Mounting Plate Alignment



6

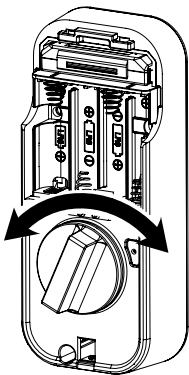
Install Interior Escutcheon



Bolt must be in retracted
(unlocked) position

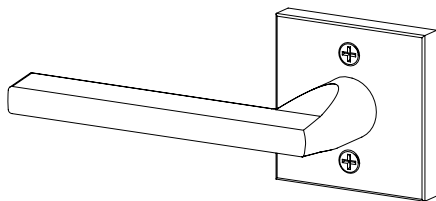
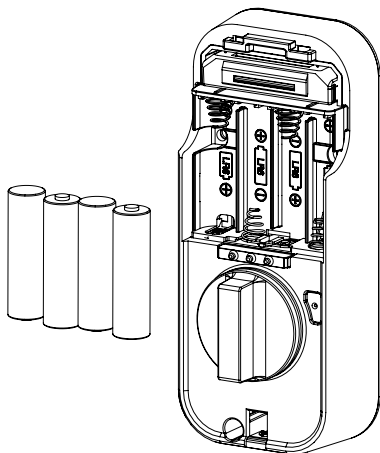


Testing Operation





Install Batteries

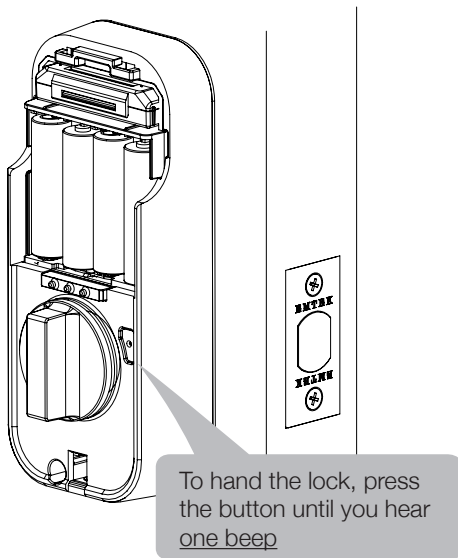


Bolt must be in retracted (unlocked) position before installing batteries.



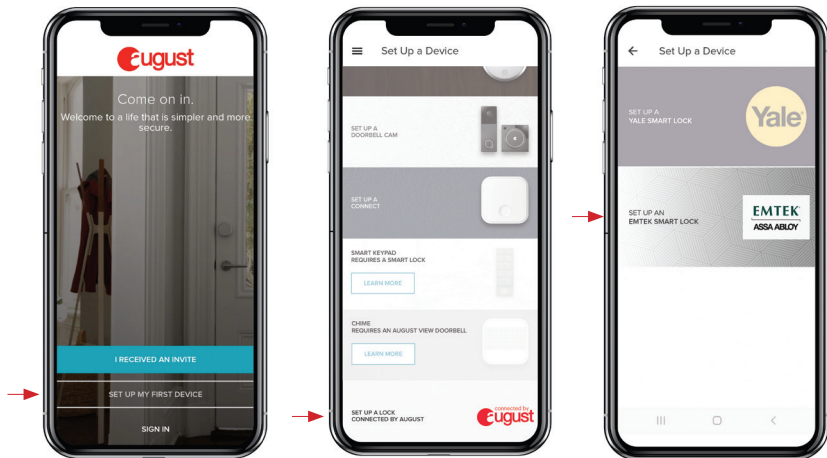
9

Handing the Lock



Go to the August App to Complete Installation

Set Up a Device - EMTEK SMART LOCK

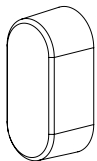


SET UP MY FIRST DEVICE

SET UP A LOCK
CONNECTED BY AUGUST

SET UP AN EMTEK
SMART LOCK

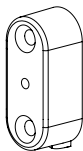
Installing DoorSense™ with Connected by August Locks - Surface Mount Option



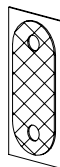
DoorSense™
Cover



Mounting
Screws

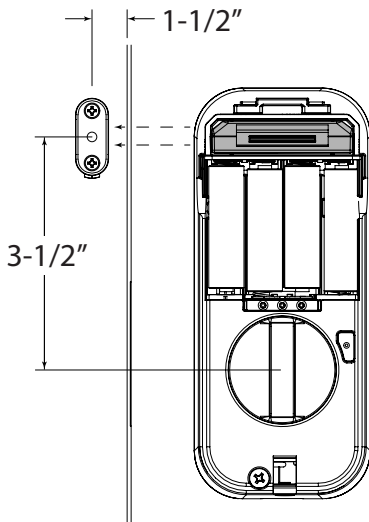


DoorSense™
Housing



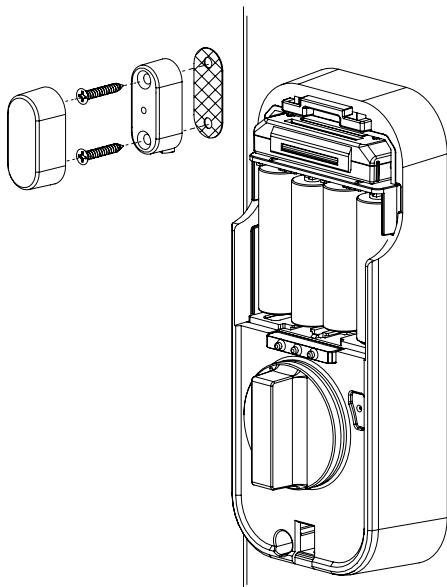
Mounting
Tape

1. Determine mounting location



Installing DoorSense™ with Connected by August Locks - Surface Mount Option

2. Attach mounting tape then screw into frame

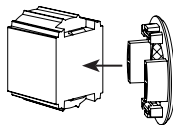
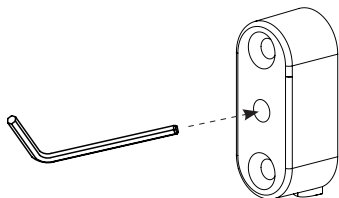


3. Go to the August app to calibrate your Lock

Installing DoorSense™ with Connected by August Locks - Flush Mount Option

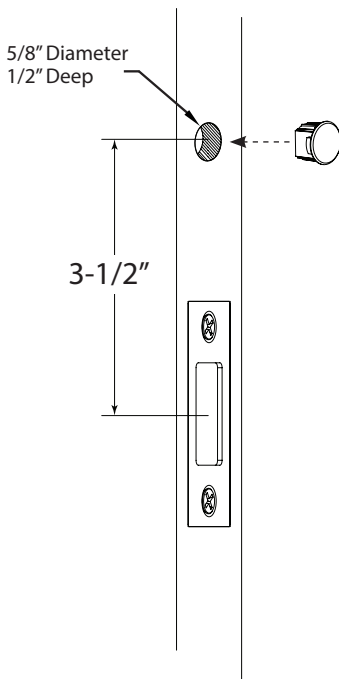


- 1. Remove magnet from housing and place DoorSense™ Cap onto the magnet**



Installing DoorSense™ with Connected by August Locks - Flush Mount Option

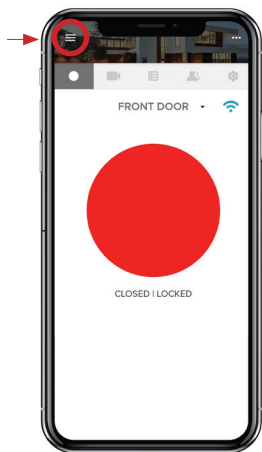
2. Drill hole and Insert DoorSense™



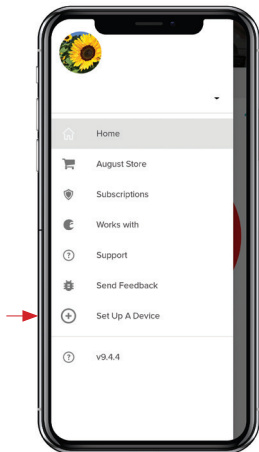
3. Go to the August app to calibrate your Lock

Go to the August App to Complete Installation

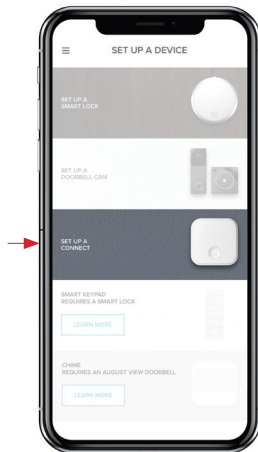
Set Up a Connect Hub



GO TO MENU



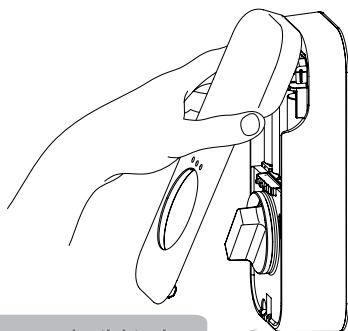
SET UP A DEVICE



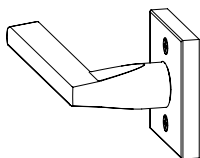
SET UP A CONNECT



Install Cover



Secure cover by tightening screw on bottom.



Hardware Troubleshooting

Cycle lock in both the locked and unlocked positions. If problems are found:

Symptom	Suggested Action
Door is binding	• Check that door and frame are properly aligned and door is free swinging. • Check hinges: They should not be loose or have excessive wear on knuckles.
Bolt will not deadlock	• Check for sufficient clearance of the bolt within the strike-side jamb. Correct this by increasing the depth of the pocket for the bolt. • Check for misalignment of bolt and/or strike which may be preventing bolt from properly entering the strike. With the door open, extend and retract the bolt; if it is smooth, check the strike alignment.
Bolt does not extend or retract smoothly	• Bolt and strike are misaligned, see above. • Check the backset of door relative to adjustments already made to bolt. • Verify proper door preparation and re-bore holes that are too small or misaligned. • Verify bolt is installed with correct side up (Step 1)

Definitions

Automatic Re-lock Time: After a successful code entry and the unit unlocks, it will automatically re-lock after thirty (30) seconds.

Inside Indicator Light: Located on the interior escutcheon. Shows active status (Locked) of lock and can be enabled or disabled in the August Home App.

Low Battery: Battery state is shown on smartphone app.

Privacy Mode: Privacy mode is disabled by default. Privacy mode is enabled/disabled in the August Home App.

Shutdown Time: If the wrong code is entered five (5) times, the keypad will flash for 60 seconds. The lock will not allow operation for 60 seconds.

Volume Setting Mode: The volume setting is set to Low by default; otherwise it can be set to High or Silent in the August Home App.

Programming Troubleshooting

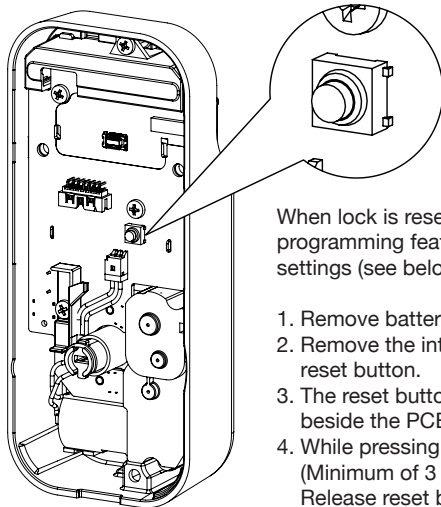
Symptom	Suggested Action
Lock does not respond - door is open and accessible.	• Check batteries are installed and oriented correctly (polarity) in the battery case. • Check batteries are in good condition; replace batteries* if discharged.
Lock does not respond - door is locked and inaccessible.	• Batteries may be completely discharged. • Use your physical key to unlock the door.
Unit is on for a while then shows no reaction.	• Batteries do not have enough power. Replace batteries*.
Unit Chimes when unlocking with smartphone app, but the door will not open.	• Check door gaps for any foreign objects between door and frame.
Unit operates to allow access, but will not automatically re-lock	• Check to see if Auto Re-lock Mode is enabled. • Disable Auto Re-lock Mode to lock the door (automatically). • If low battery indicator is indicated in the August Home App (see below), change batteries*.

* When batteries are replaced. Network Module locks have a real time clock that will be set through the User Interface (UI); it is recommended to verify correct date and time particularly those locks operation under Daylight Saving Time (DST).

NOTE TO INSTALLER AND CONSUMER

While EMTEK has included several features to prevent lockout (low battery warnings), it is still possible for a lockout situation to occur. Because this product has a mechanical override (a key), EMTEK recommends you carry your keys with you to prevent lockout.

Resetting Lock to Factory Default



When lock is reset to factory defaults, all programming features are reset to original default settings (see below).

1. Remove battery cover and batteries.
2. Remove the interior escutcheon to access the reset button.
3. The reset button (see image) is located beside the PCB cable connector.
4. While pressing the reset button (Minimum of 3 seconds) reinstall batteries. Release reset button.
5. Replace battery cover.

Factory Settings

Settings	Factory Settings
Automatic Re-lock	Disabled
Inside Indicator Light	Disabled (Off)
Volume Setting	Enabled (Low)
Lockout Mode	Disabled
Automatic Re-lock Time	30 Seconds

Compliance

FCC INTERFERENCE STATEMENT

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions. (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation.

This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.

However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one of the following

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

FCC Caution: Any changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Radiation Exposure Statement:

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance 20cm between the radiator & your body.

INDUSTRY CANADA COMPLIANT

This device complies with RSS-210 of the Industry Canada Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Radiation Exposure Statement:

This equipment complies with IC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance 20cm between the radiator & your body.

INDUSTRIE CANADA CONFORME

Ce dispositif est conforme à la norme CNR-210 d'industrie Canada applicable aux appareils radio exempts de licence. Son fonctionnement est sujet aux deux conditions suivantes: (1) le dispositif ne doit pas produire de brouillage préjudiciable, et (2) ce dispositif doit accepter tout brouillage reçu. y compris un brouillage susceptible de provoquer un fonctionnement indésirable.

Déclaration d'exposition aux radiations:

Cet équipement est conforme aux limites d'exposition aux rayonnements IC établies pour un environnement non contrôlé. Cet équipement doit être installé et utilisé avec un minimum de 20 cm de distance entre la source de rayonnement et votre corps.

The ASSA ABLOY Group is the global leader in access solutions. Every day we help people feel safe, secure and experience a more open world.



IN8-EMPCYLSECT

REV 19A 11-05-19

Copyright © 2019, EMTEK Products, Inc. an ASSA ABLOY Group company. All rights reserved. Reproduction in whole or in part without the express written permission of EMTEK Products, Inc. is prohibited.

 **WARNING:** This product can expose you to chemicals including lead, which is known to the state of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov.

EMPowered™ Motorized *Smart* Lock Upgrade
- Connected by August
Monolithic/Full Length Entry Set

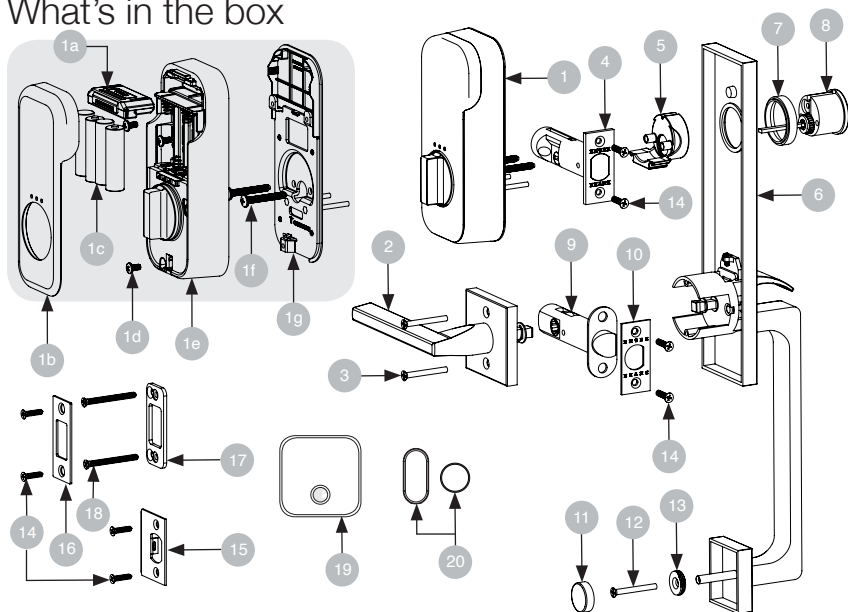


Experience a safer
and more open world

Download and install
August Home app



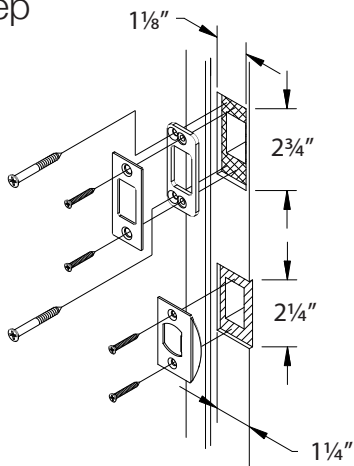
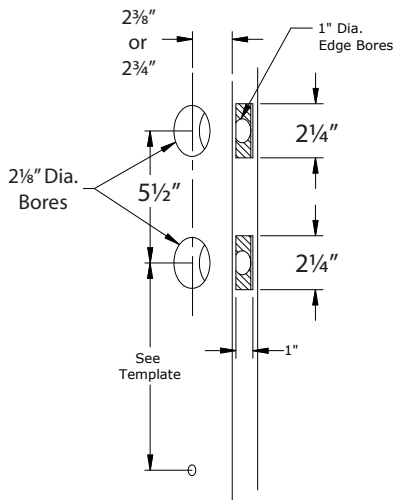
What's in the box



ITEM NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY.
1	EMPowered™ Unit	1
1a	August Module	1
1b	Battery Cover	1
1c	AA Batteries	4
1d	M4-0.7 x 8mm Machine Screws	3
1e	Interior Escutcheon	1
1f	#10-32 x 2-1/8" Machine Screws	2
1g	Mounting Plate	1
2	Interior Knob/Lever Assembly	1
3	#8-32 x 1-1/2" Machine Screws	2
4	Deadbolt Latch 2-3/4" Backset	1
4	Deadbolt Latch 2-3/8" Backset	1
5	Deadbolt Screw Guide	1
6	Entry Set Exterior Assembly	1

ITEM NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY.
7	Deadbolt Extension Collar	1
8	Deadbolt Cylinder	1
9	Passage Latch	1
10	Latch Face Plate	1
11	Decorative Cap	1
12	#8-32 Flat Head Machine Screw	1
13	Threaded Washer	1
14	#8 x 3/4" Wood Screws	8
15	Latch Strike Plate	1
16	Deadbolt Strike Plate	1
17	Deadbolt Security Plate	1
18	#10 x 3" Wood Screws	2
19	August Connect	1
20	August DoorSense™	1

Door Jamb Prep

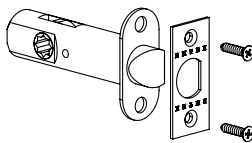
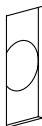
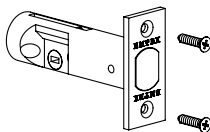
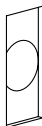


1

Install Latches

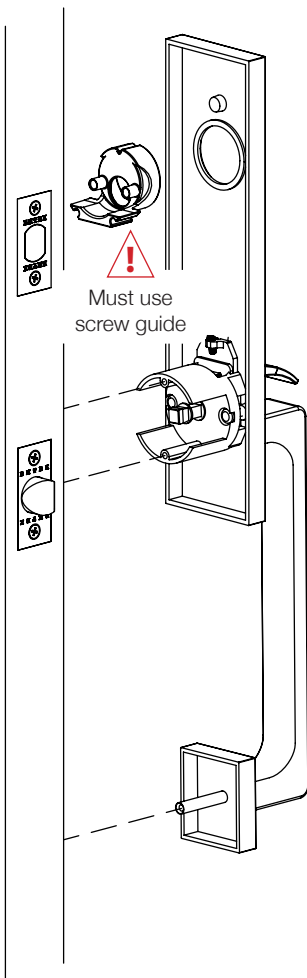
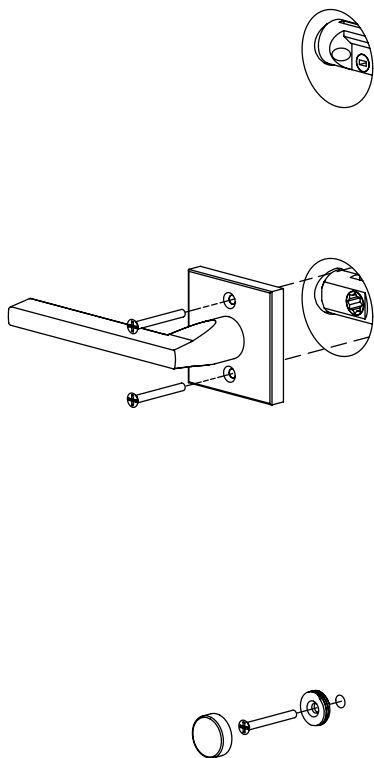


Note: Use only the supplied latch for proper functionality.



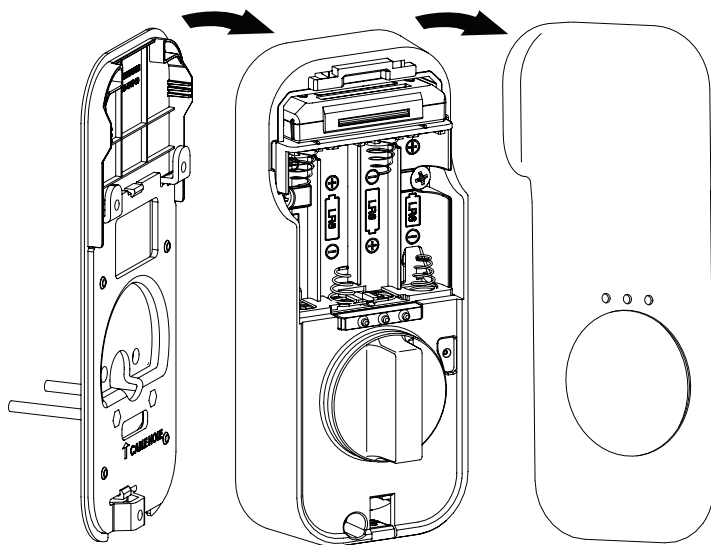
2

Install Grip and Interior Lever/Knob



3

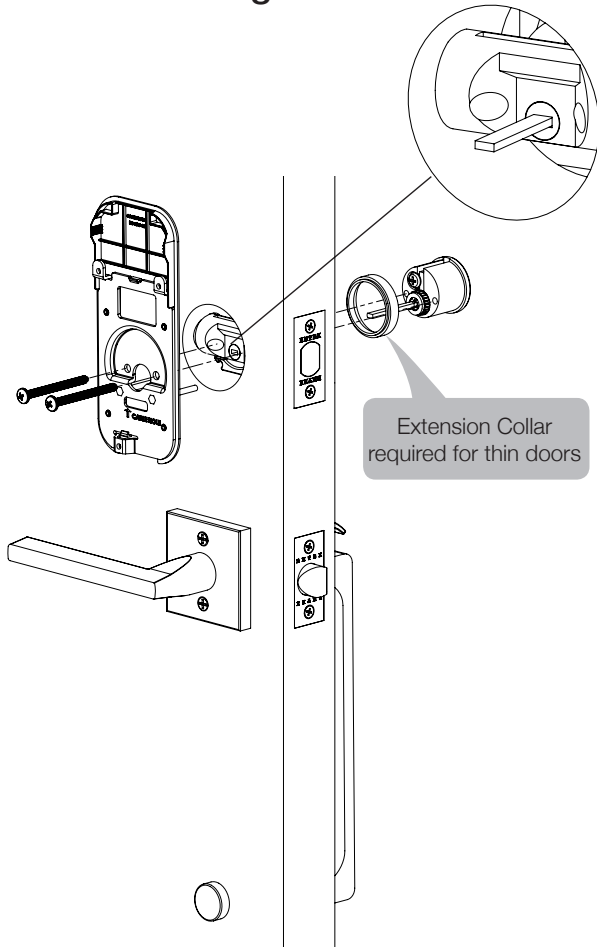
Remove Battery Cover



Loosen screw
on bottom to
remove cover.

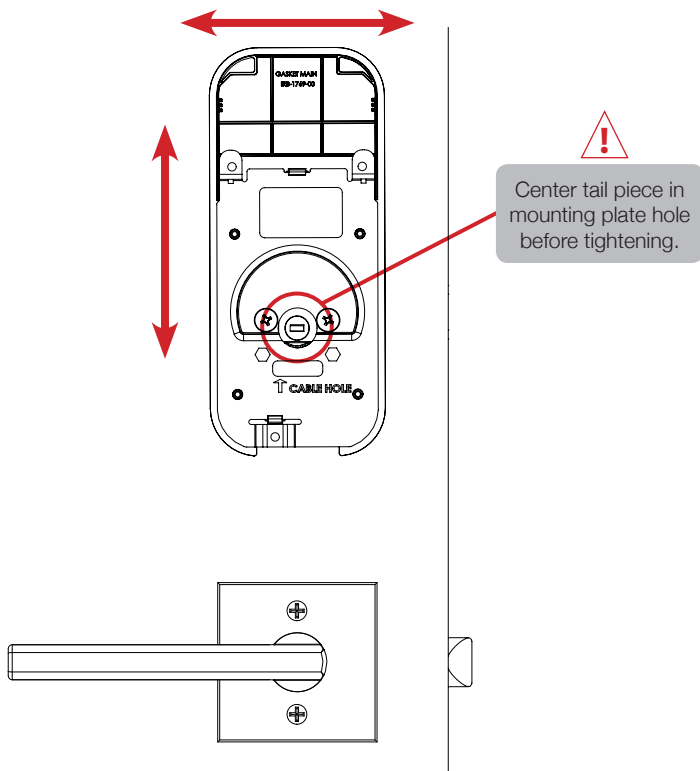
4

Install Lock Cylinder & Interior Mounting Plate



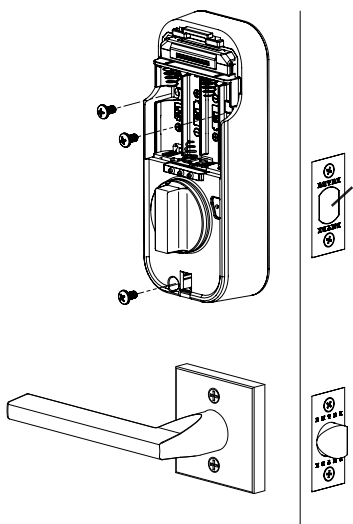
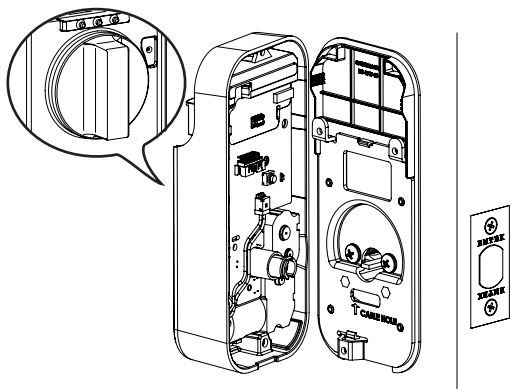
5

Check Interior Mounting Plate Alignment



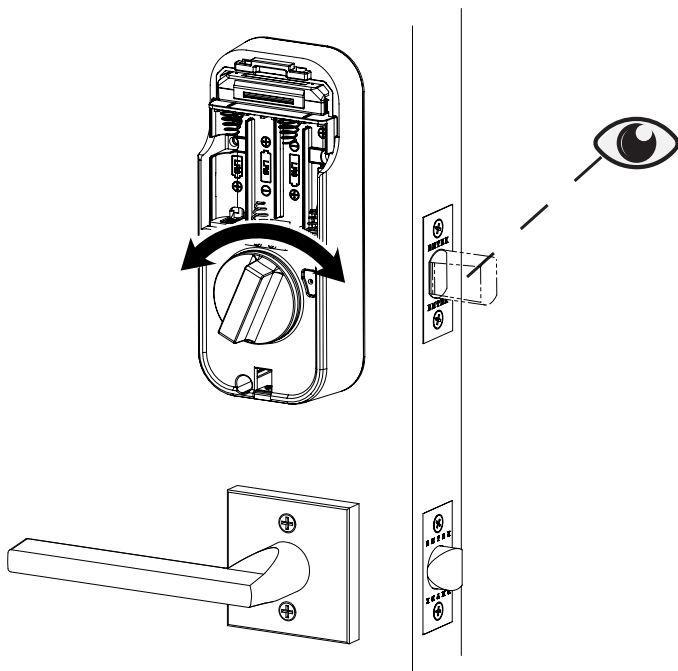
6

Install Interior Escutcheon



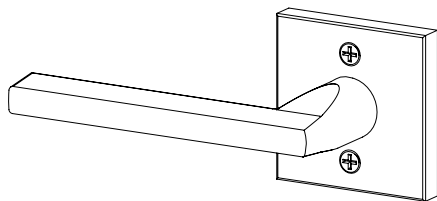
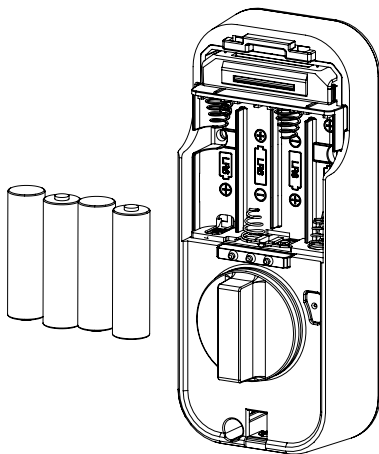
Bolt must be in retracted (unlocked) position

7 Testing Operation



8

Install Batteries

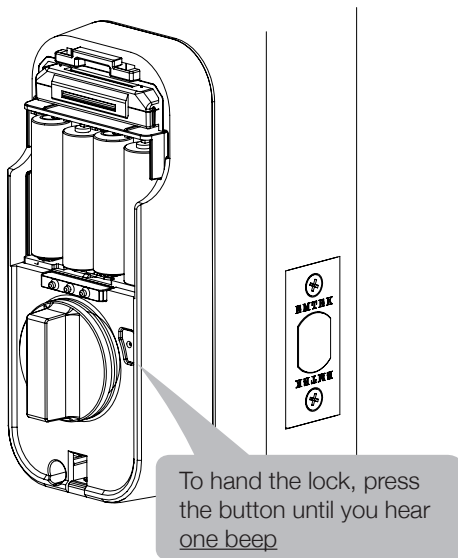


Bolt must be in retracted (unlocked) position before installing batteries.



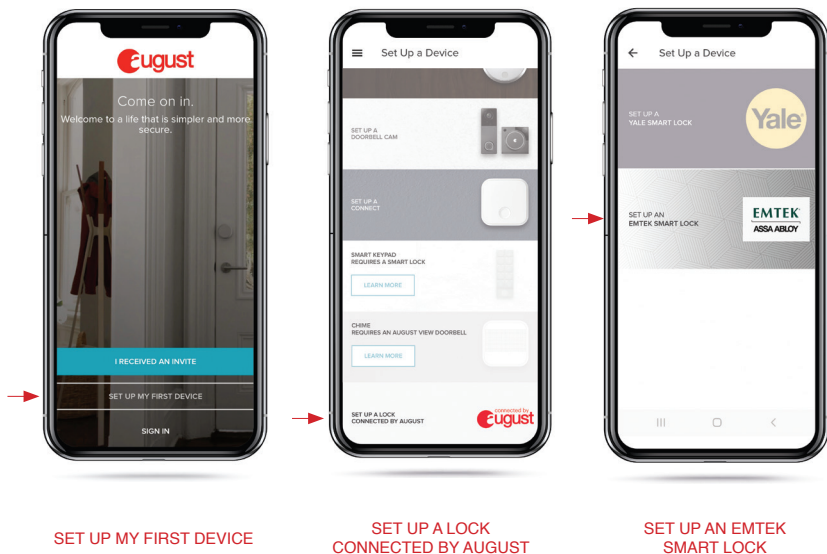
9

Handing the Lock

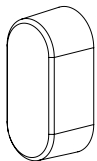


Go to the August App to Complete Installation

Set Up a Device - EMTEK SMART LOCK



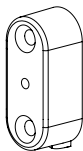
Installing DoorSense™ with Connected by August Locks - Surface Mount Option



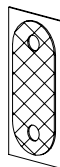
DoorSense™
Cover



Mounting
Screws

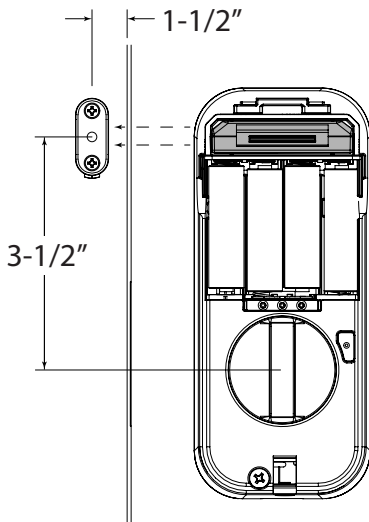


DoorSense™
Housing



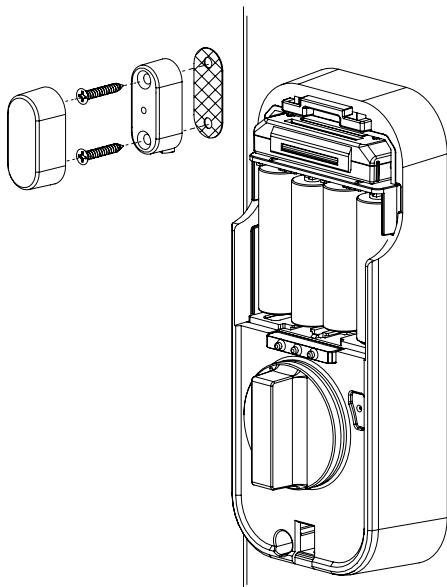
Mounting
Tape

1. Determine mounting location



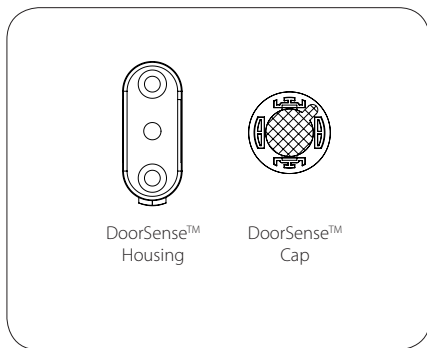
Installing DoorSense™ with Connected by August Locks - Surface Mount Option

2. Attach mounting tape then screw into frame

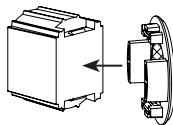
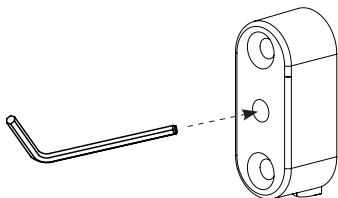


3. Go to the August app to calibrate your Lock

Installing DoorSense™ with Connected by August Locks - Flush Mount Option

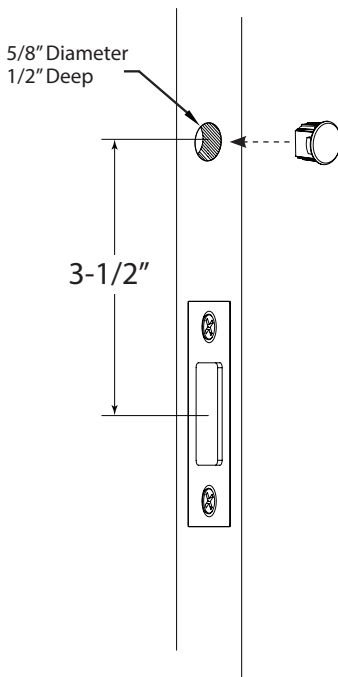


- 1. Remove magnet from housing and place DoorSense™ Cap onto the magnet**



Installing DoorSense™ with Connected by August Locks - Flush Mount Option

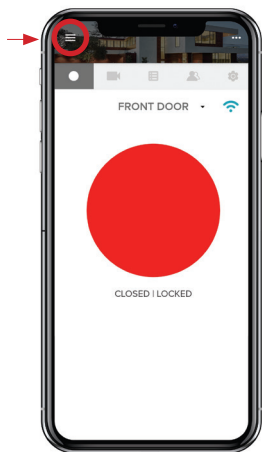
2. Drill hole and Insert DoorSense™



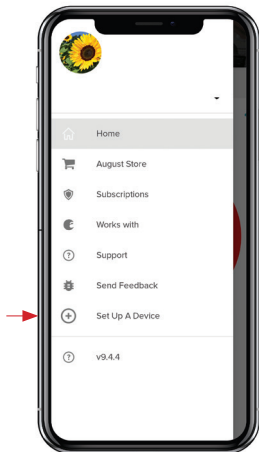
3. Go to the August app to calibrate your Lock

Go to the August App to Complete Installation

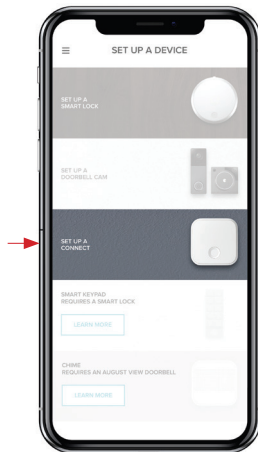
Set Up a Connect Hub



GO TO MENU



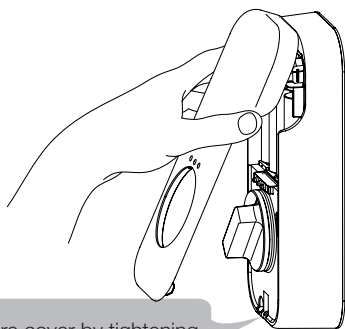
SET UP A DEVICE



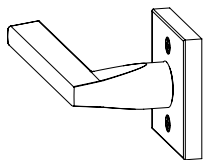
SET UP A CONNECT



Install Cover



Secure cover by tightening screw on bottom.



Hardware Troubleshooting

Cycle lock in both the locked and unlocked positions. If problems are found:

Symptom	Suggested Action
Door is binding	• Check that door and frame are properly aligned and door is free swinging. • Check hinges: They should not be loose or have excessive wear on knuckles.
Bolt will not deadlock	• Check for sufficient clearance of the bolt within the strike-side jamb. Correct this by increasing the depth of the pocket for the bolt. • Check for misalignment of bolt and/or strike which may be preventing bolt from properly entering the strike. With the door open, extend and retract the bolt; if it is smooth, check the strike alignment.
Bolt does not extend or retract smoothly	• Bolt and strike are misaligned, see above. • Check the backset of door relative to adjustments already made to bolt. • Verify proper door preparation and re-bore holes that are too small or misaligned. • Verify bolt is installed with correct side up (Step 1)

Definitions

Automatic Re-lock Time: After a successful code entry and the unit unlocks, it will automatically re-lock after thirty (30) seconds.

Inside Indicator Light: Located on the interior escutcheon. Shows active status (Locked) of lock and can be enabled or disabled in the August Home App.

Low Battery: Battery state is shown on smartphone app.

Privacy Mode: Privacy mode is disabled by default. Privacy mode is enabled/disabled in the August Home App.

Shutdown Time: If the wrong code is entered five (5) times, the keypad will flash for 60 seconds. The lock will not allow operation for 60 seconds.

Volume Setting Mode: The volume setting is set to Low by default; otherwise it can be set to High or Silent in the August Home App.

Programming Troubleshooting

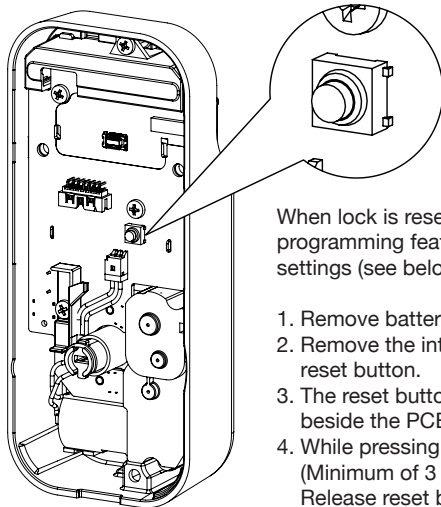
Symptom	Suggested Action
Lock does not respond - door is open and accessible.	• Check batteries are installed and oriented correctly (polarity) in the battery case. • Check batteries are in good condition; replace batteries* if discharged.
Lock does not respond - door is locked and inaccessible.	• Batteries may be completely discharged. • Use your physical key to unlock the door.
Unit is on for a while then shows no reaction.	• Batteries do not have enough power. Replace batteries*.
Unit Chimes when unlocking with smartphone app, but the door will not open.	• Check door gaps for any foreign objects between door and frame.
Unit operates to allow access, but will not automatically re-lock	• Check to see if Auto Re-lock Mode is enabled. • Disable Auto Re-lock Mode to lock the door (automatically). • If low battery indicator is indicated in the August Home App (see below), change batteries*.

* When batteries are replaced, Network Module locks have a real time clock that will be set through the User Interface (UI); it is recommended to verify correct date and time particularly those locks operation under Daylight Saving Time (DST).

NOTE TO INSTALLER AND CONSUMER

While EMTEK has included several features to prevent lockout (low battery warnings), it is still possible for a lockout situation to occur. Because this product has a mechanical override (a key), EMTEK recommends you carry your keys with you to prevent lockout.

Resetting Lock to Factory Default



When lock is reset to factory defaults, all programming features are reset to original default settings (see below).

1. Remove battery cover and batteries.
2. Remove the interior escutcheon to access the reset button.
3. The reset button (see image) is located beside the PCB cable connector.
4. While pressing the reset button (Minimum of 3 seconds) reinstall batteries. Release reset button.
5. Replace battery cover.

Factory Settings

Settings	Factory Settings
Automatic Re-lock	Disabled
Inside Indicator Light	Disabled (Off)
Volume Setting	Enabled (Low)
Lockout Mode	Disabled
Automatic Re-lock Time	30 Seconds

Compliance

FCC INTERFERENCE STATEMENT

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions. (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation.

This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.

However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one of the following

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

FCC Caution: Any changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Radiation Exposure Statement:

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance 20cm between the radiator & your body.

INDUSTRY CANADA COMPLIANT

This device complies with RSS-210 of the Industry Canada Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Radiation Exposure Statement:

This equipment complies with IC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance 20cm between the radiator & your body.

INDUSTRIE CANADA CONFORME

Ce dispositif est conforme à la norme CNR-210 d'industrie Canada applicable aux appareils radio exempts de licence. Son fonctionnement est sujet aux deux conditions suivantes: (1) le dispositif ne doit pas produire de brouillage préjudiciable, et (2) ce dispositif doit accepter tout brouillage reçu. y compris un brouillage susceptible de provoquer un fonctionnement indésirable.

Déclaration d'exposition aux radiations:

Cet équipement est conforme aux limites d'exposition aux rayonnements IC établies pour un environnement non contrôlé. Cet équipement doit être installé et utilisé avec un minimum de 20 cm de distance entre la source de rayonnement et votre corps.

The ASSA ABLOY Group is the global leader in access solutions. Every day we help people feel safe, secure and experience a more open world.



IN8-EMPCYLMONFUL

REV 19A 11-05-19

Copyright © 2019, EMTEK Products, Inc. an ASSA ABLOY Group company. All rights reserved. Reproduction in whole or in part without the express written permission of EMTEK Products, Inc. is prohibited.

 **WARNING:** This product can expose you to chemicals including lead, which is known to the state of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov.

EMPowered™ Motorized *Smart* Lock Upgrade
- Connected by August
Sectional Entry Set

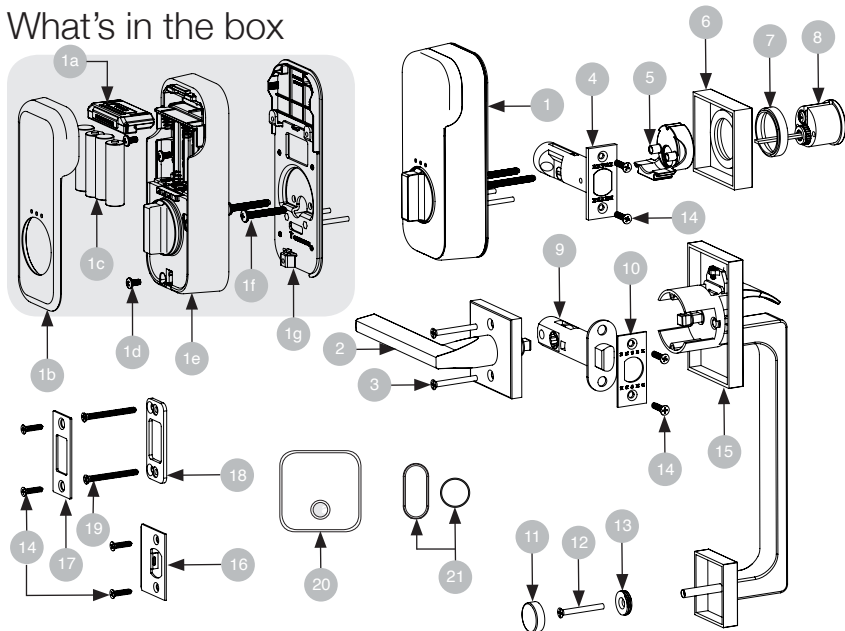


Experience a safer
and more open world

Download and install
eugust Home app



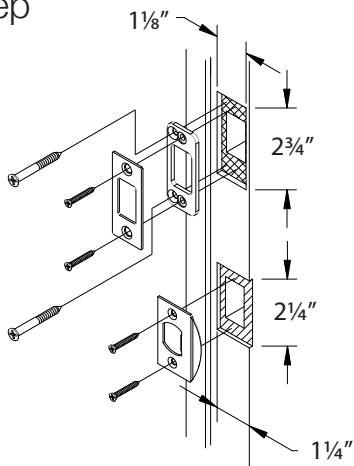
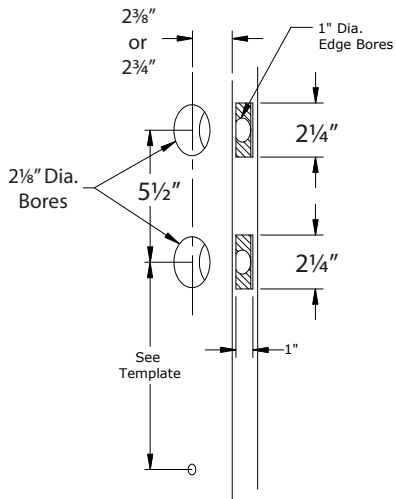
What's in the box



ITEM NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY.
1	EMPower Unit	1
1a	August Module	1
1b	Battery Cover	1
1c	AA Batteries	4
1d	M4-0.7 x 8mm Machine Screws	3
1e	Interior Escutcheon	1
1f	#10-32 x 2-1/8" Machine Screws	2
1g	Mounting Plate	1
2	Interior Knob/Lever Assembly	1
3	#8-32 x 1-1/2" Machine Screws	2
4	Deadbolt Latch 2-3/4" Backset	1
4	Deadbolt Latch 2-3/8" Backset	1
5	Deadbolt Screw Guide	1
6	Deadbolt Trim	1

ITEM NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY.
7	Deadbolt Extension Collar	1
8	Deadbolt Cylinder	1
9	Passage Latch	1
10	Latch Face Plate	1
11	Decorative Cap	1
12	#8-32 Flat head Machine Screw	1
13	Threaded Washer	1
14	#8 x 3/4" Wood Screws	8
15	Sectional Entry Set Assembly	1
16	Latch Strike Plate	1
17	Deadbolt Strike Plate	1
18	Deadbolt Security Plate	1
19	#10 x 3" Wood Screws	2
20	August Connect	1
21	August DoorSense™	1

Door Jamb Prep

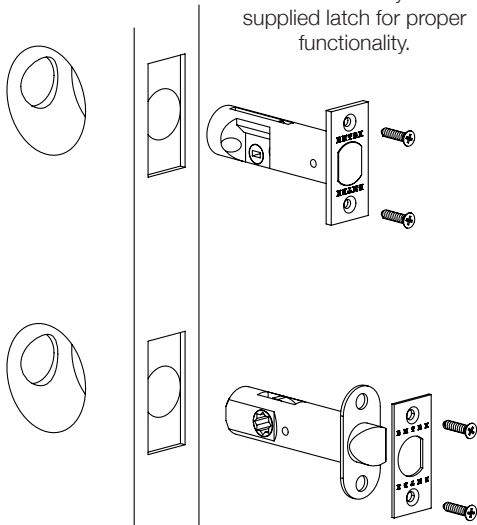


1

Install Latches

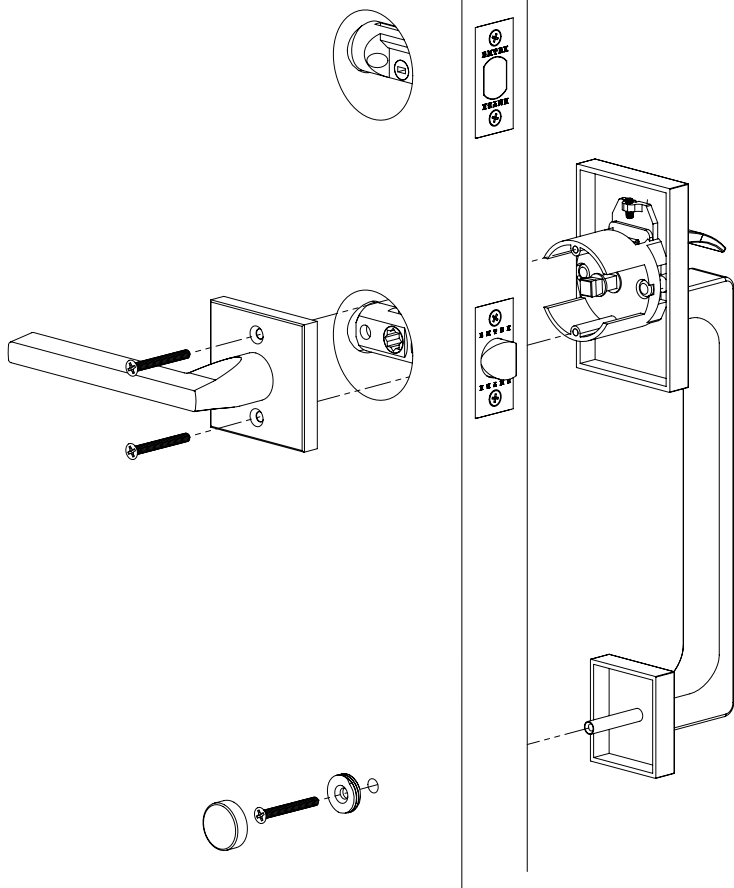


Note: Use only the supplied latch for proper functionality.



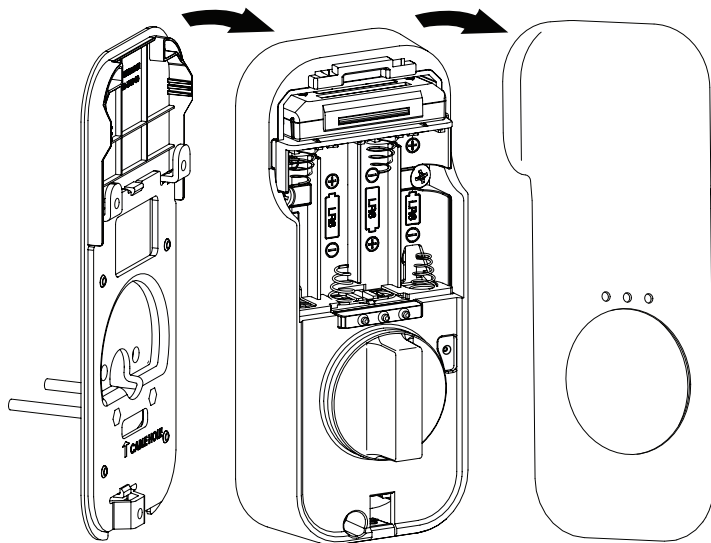
2

Install Grip and Interior Lever/Knob



3

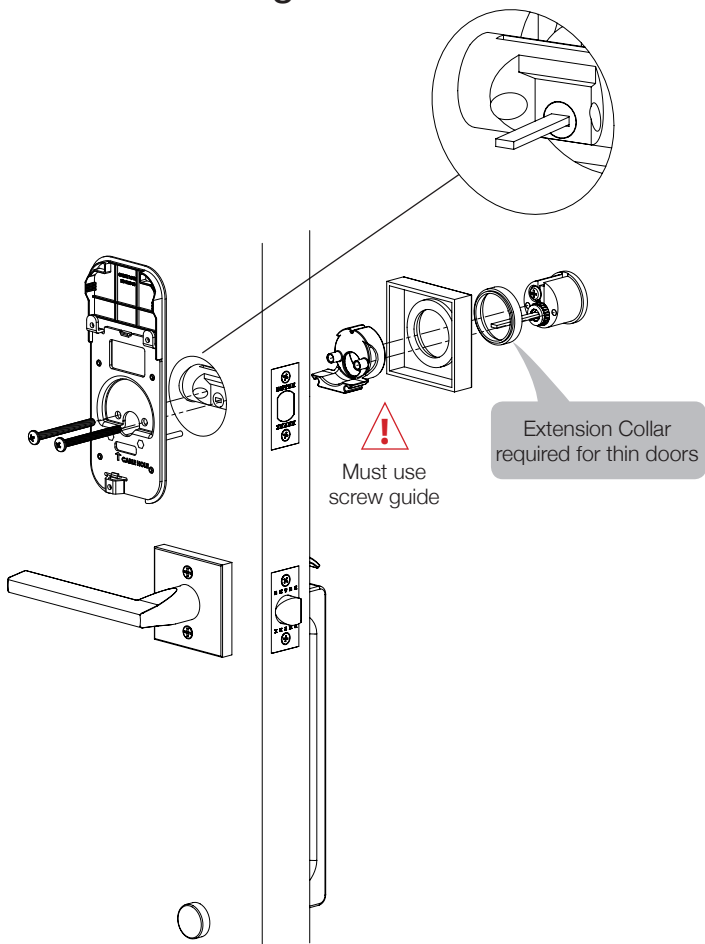
Remove Battery Cover



Loosen screw
on bottom to
remove cover.

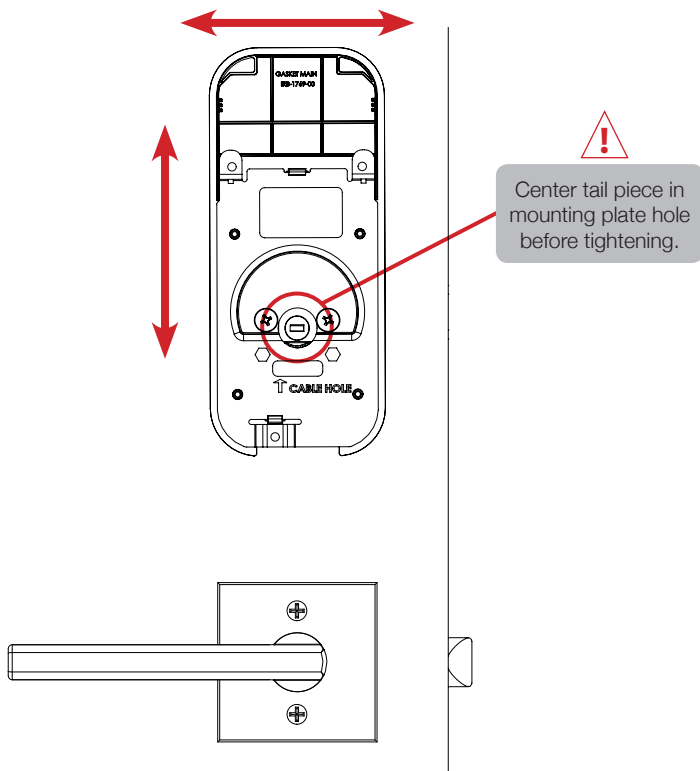
4

Install Lock Cylinder & Interior Mounting Plate



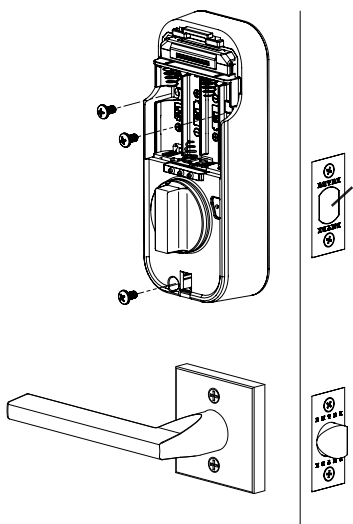
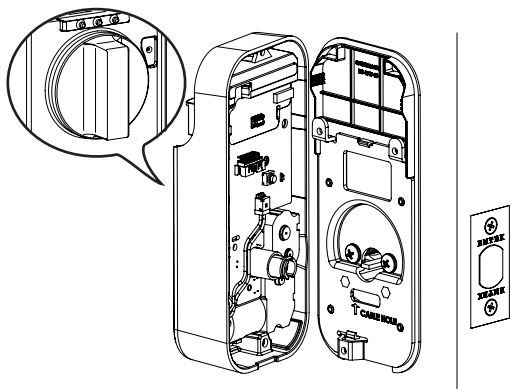
5

Check Interior Mounting Plate Alignment



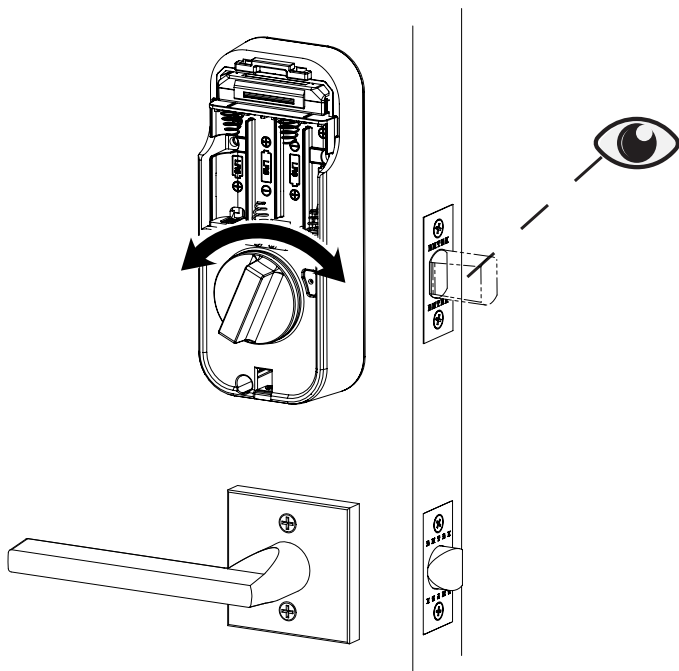
6

Install Interior Escutcheon



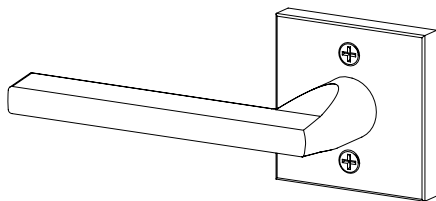
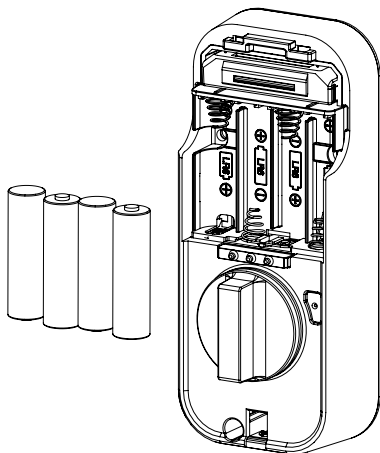
Bolt must be in retracted
(unlocked) position

7 Testing Operation





Install Batteries

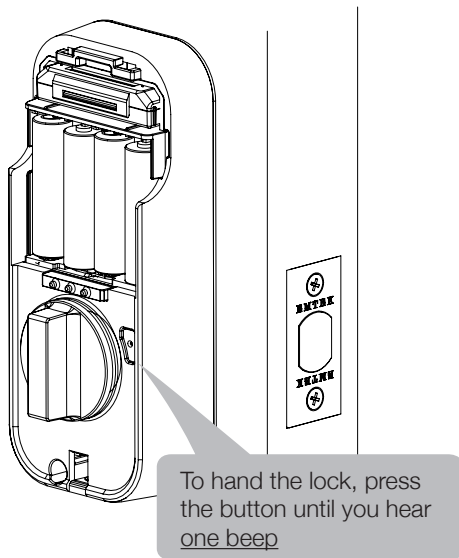


Bolt must be in retracted (unlocked) position before installing batteries.



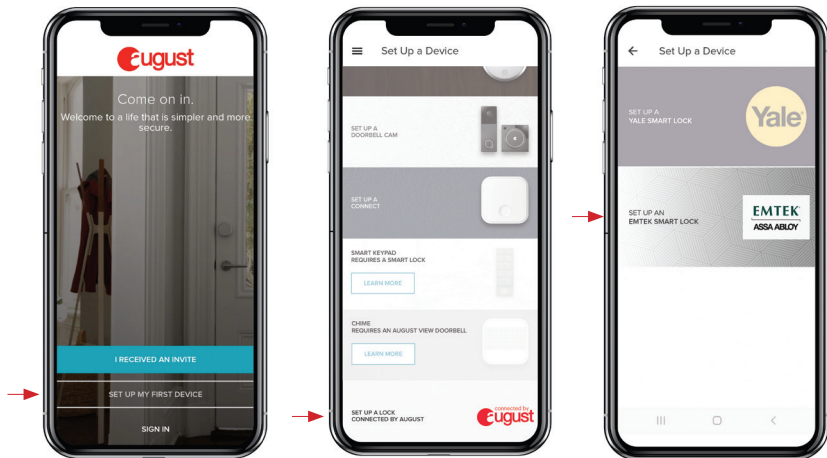
9

Handing the Lock



Go to the August App to Complete Installation

Set Up a Device - EMTEK SMART LOCK

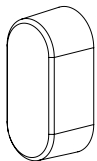


SET UP MY FIRST DEVICE

SET UP A LOCK
CONNECTED BY AUGUST

SET UP AN EMTEK
SMART LOCK

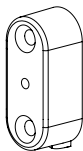
Installing DoorSense™ with Connected by August Locks - Surface Mount Option



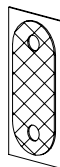
DoorSense™
Cover



Mounting
Screws

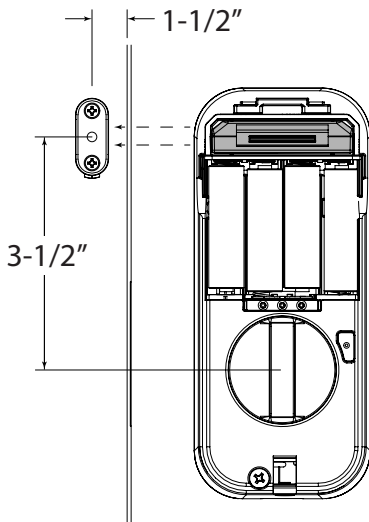


DoorSense™
Housing



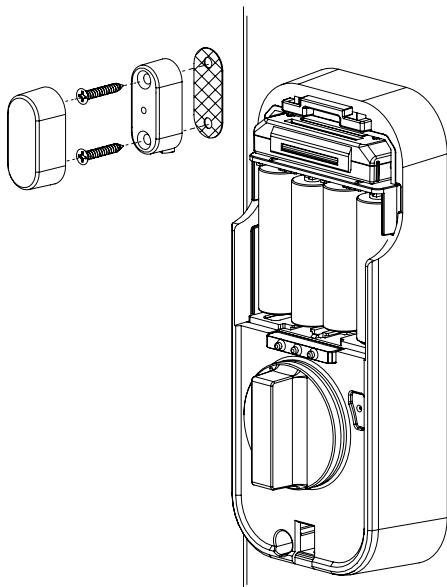
Mounting
Tape

1. Determine mounting location



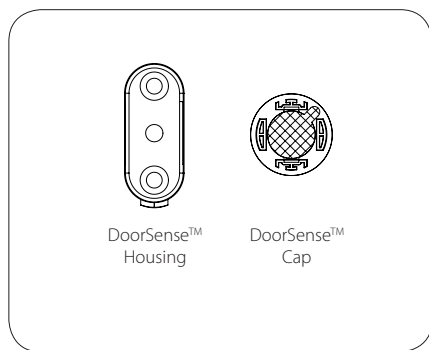
Installing DoorSense™ with Connected by August Locks - Surface Mount Option

2. Attach mounting tape then screw into frame

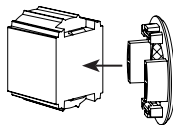
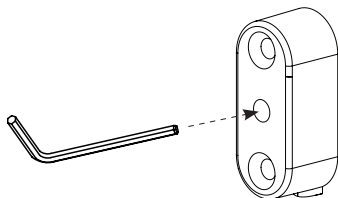


3. Go to the August app to calibrate your Lock

Installing DoorSense™ with Connected by August Locks - Flush Mount Option

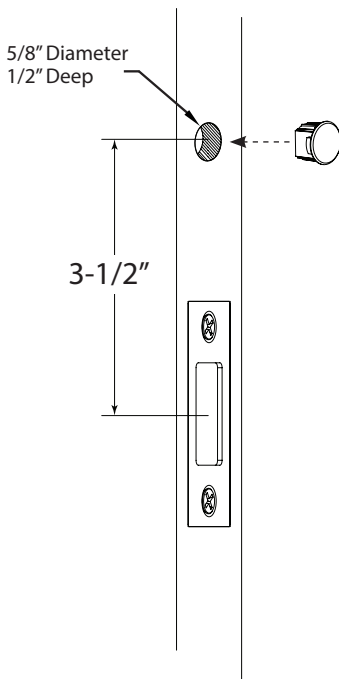


- 1. Remove magnet from housing and place DoorSense™ Cap onto the magnet**



Installing DoorSense™ with Connected by August Locks - Flush Mount Option

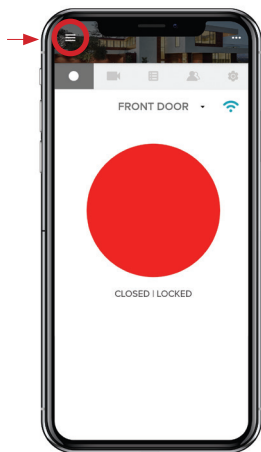
2. Drill hole and Insert DoorSense™



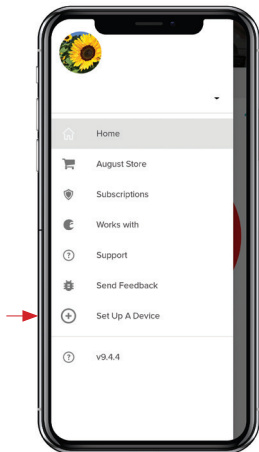
3. Go to the August app to calibrate your Lock

Go to the August App to Complete Installation

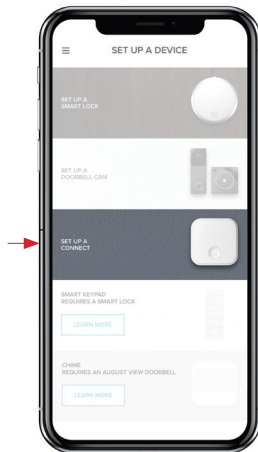
Set Up a Connect Hub



GO TO MENU



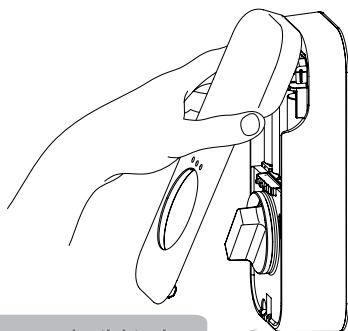
SET UP A DEVICE



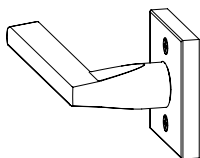
SET UP A CONNECT



Install Cover



Secure cover by tightening screw on bottom.



Hardware Troubleshooting

Cycle lock in both the locked and unlocked positions. If problems are found:

Symptom	Suggested Action
Door is binding	• Check that door and frame are properly aligned and door is free swinging. • Check hinges: They should not be loose or have excessive wear on knuckles.
Bolt will not deadlock	• Check for sufficient clearance of the bolt within the strike-side jamb. Correct this by increasing the depth of the pocket for the bolt. • Check for misalignment of bolt and/or strike which may be preventing bolt from properly entering the strike. With the door open, extend and retract the bolt; if it is smooth, check the strike alignment.
Bolt does not extend or retract smoothly	• Bolt and strike are misaligned, see above. • Check the backset of door relative to adjustments already made to bolt. • Verify proper door preparation and re-bore holes that are too small or misaligned. • Verify bolt is installed with correct side up (Step 1)

Definitions

Automatic Re-lock Time: After a successful code entry and the unit unlocks, it will automatically re-lock after thirty (30) seconds.

Inside Indicator Light: Located on the interior escutcheon. Shows active status (Locked) of lock and can be enabled or disabled in the August Home App.

Low Battery: Battery state is shown on smartphone app.

Privacy Mode: Privacy mode is disabled by default. Privacy mode is enabled/disabled in the August Home App.

Shutdown Time: If the wrong code is entered five (5) times, the keypad will flash for 60 seconds. The lock will not allow operation for 60 seconds.

Volume Setting Mode: The volume setting is set to Low by default; otherwise it can be set to High or Silent in the August Home App.

Programming Troubleshooting

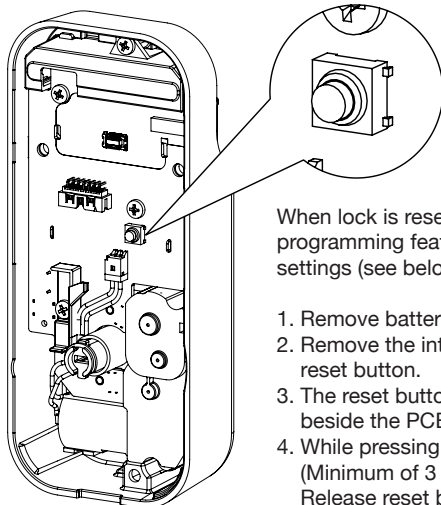
Symptom	Suggested Action
Lock does not respond - door is open and accessible.	• Check batteries are installed and oriented correctly (polarity) in the battery case. • Check batteries are in good condition; replace batteries* if discharged.
Lock does not respond - door is locked and inaccessible.	• Batteries may be completely discharged. • Use your physical key to unlock the door.
Unit is on for a while then shows no reaction.	• Batteries do not have enough power. Replace batteries*.
Unit Chimes when unlocking with smartphone app, but the door will not open.	• Check door gaps for any foreign objects between door and frame.
Unit operates to allow access, but will not automatically re-lock	• Check to see if Auto Re-lock Mode is enabled. • Disable Auto Re-lock Mode to lock the door (automatically). • If low battery indicator is indicated in the August Home App (see below), change batteries*.

* When batteries are replaced. Network Module locks have a real time clock that will be set through the User Interface (UI); it is recommended to verify correct date and time particularly those locks operation under Daylight Saving Time (DST).

NOTE TO INSTALLER AND CONSUMER

While EMTEK has included several features to prevent lockout (low battery warnings), it is still possible for a lockout situation to occur. Because this product has a mechanical override (a key), EMTEK recommends you carry your keys with you to prevent lockout.

Resetting Lock to Factory Default



When lock is reset to factory defaults, all programming features are reset to original default settings (see below).

1. Remove battery cover and batteries.
2. Remove the interior escutcheon to access the reset button.
3. The reset button (see image) is located beside the PCB cable connector.
4. While pressing the reset button (Minimum of 3 seconds) reinstall batteries. Release reset button.
5. Replace battery cover.

Factory Settings

Settings	Factory Settings
Automatic Re-lock	Disabled
Inside Indicator Light	Disabled (Off)
Volume Setting	Enabled (Low)
Lockout Mode	Disabled
Automatic Re-lock Time	30 Seconds

Compliance

FCC INTERFERENCE STATEMENT

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions. (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation.

This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.

However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one of the following

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

FCC Caution: Any changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Radiation Exposure Statement:

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance 20cm between the radiator & your body.

INDUSTRY CANADA COMPLIANT

This device complies with RSS-210 of the Industry Canada Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Radiation Exposure Statement:

This equipment complies with IC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance 20cm between the radiator & your body.

INDUSTRIE CANADA CONFORME

Ce dispositif est conforme à la norme CNR-210 d'industrie Canada applicable aux appareils radio exempts de licence. Son fonctionnement est sujet aux deux conditions suivantes: (1) le dispositif ne doit pas produire de brouillage préjudiciable, et (2) ce dispositif doit accepter tout brouillage reçu. y compris un brouillage susceptible de provoquer un fonctionnement indésirable.

Déclaration d'exposition aux radiations:

Cet équipement est conforme aux limites d'exposition aux rayonnements IC établies pour un environnement non contrôlé. Cet équipement doit être installé et utilisé avec un minimum de 20 cm de distance entre la source de rayonnement et votre corps.

The ASSA ABLOY Group is the global leader in access solutions. Every day we help people feel safe, secure and experience a more open world.



IN8-EMPCYLSECT

REV 19A 11-05-19

Copyright © 2019, EMTEK Products, Inc. an ASSA ABLOY Group company. All rights reserved. Reproduction in whole or in part without the express written permission of EMTEK Products, Inc. is prohibited.

 **WARNING:** This product can expose you to chemicals including lead, which is known to the state of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov.



EMTEK®
ASSA ABLOY

EMPowered™ Motorized *Smart* Lock Upgrade - Connected by August Deadbolt

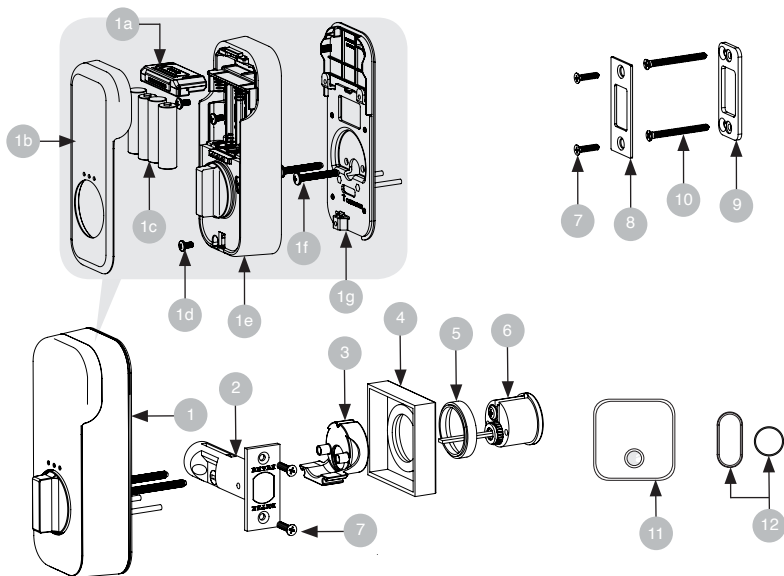


Experience a safer
and more open world

Download and install
August Home app



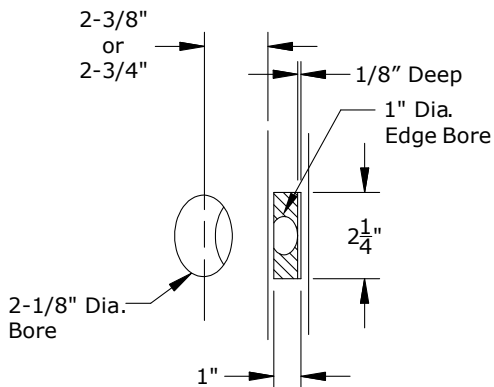
What's in the box



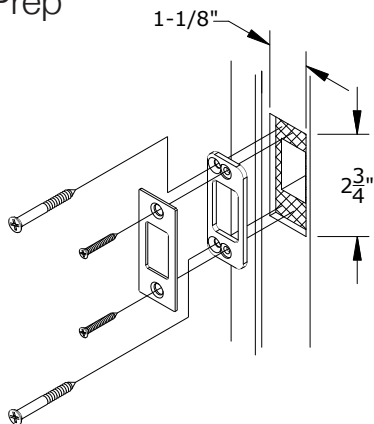
ITEM NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY.
1	EMPower Unit	1
1a	August Module	1
1b	Battery Cover	1
1c	AA Batteries	4
1d	M4-0.7 x 8mm Machine Screws	3
1e	Interior Escutcheon	1
1f	#10-32 x 2-1/8" Machine Screws	2
1g	Mounting Plate	1
2	Deadbolt Latch 2-3/4" Backset	1
2	Deadbolt Latch 2-3/8" Backset	1

ITEM NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY.
3	Deadbolt Screw Guide	1
4	Deadbolt Trim	1
5	Deadbolt Extension Collar	1
6	Deadbolt Cylinder	1
7	#8 x 3/4" Wood Screws	4
8	Deadbolt Strike Plate	1
9	Deadbolt Security Plate	1
10	#10 x 3" Wood Screws	2
11	August Connect	1
12	August DoorSense™	1

Door Prep

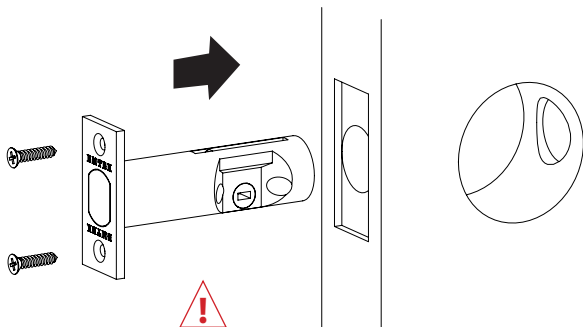


Door Jamb Prep



1

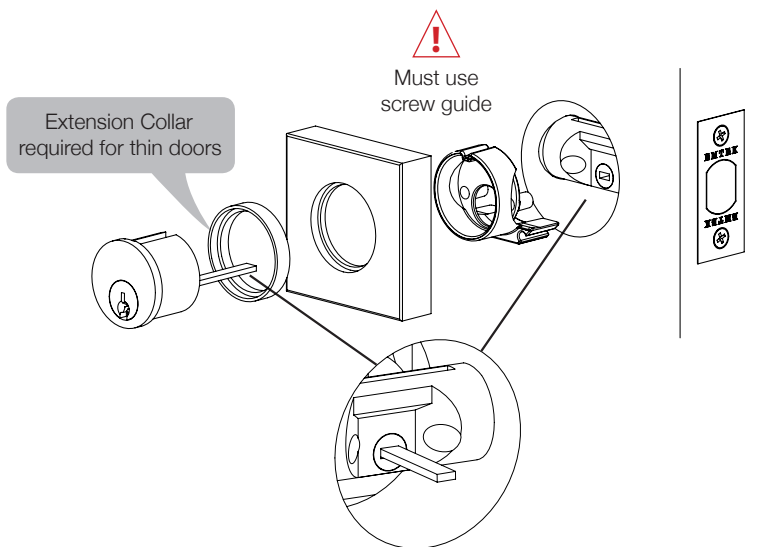
Install Latch



Note: Use only the supplied latch for proper functionality.

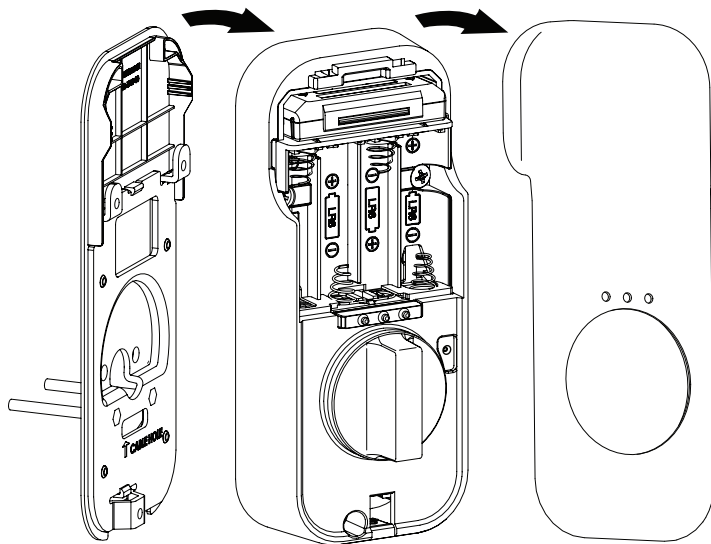
2

Install Lock Cylinder



3

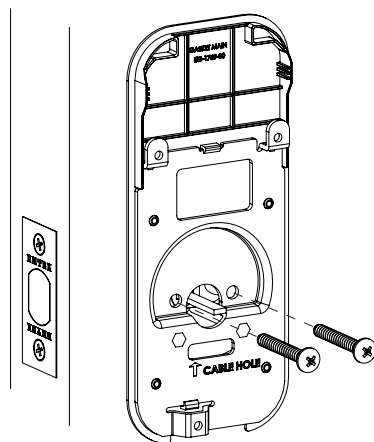
Remove Battery Cover



Loosen screw
on bottom to
remove cover.

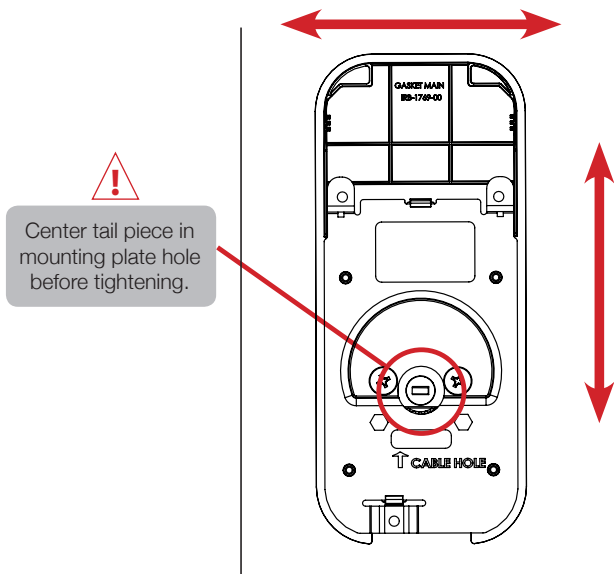
4

Install Interior Mounting Plate



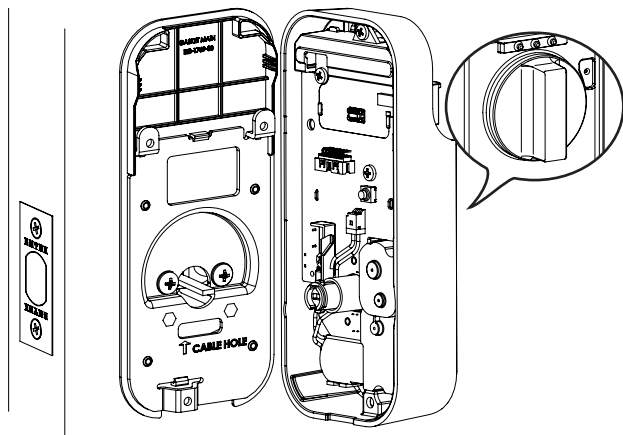
5

Check Interior Mounting Plate Alignment

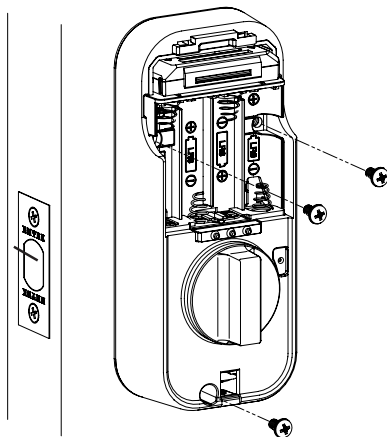


6

Install Interior Escutcheon

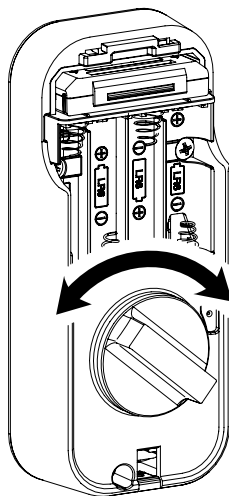
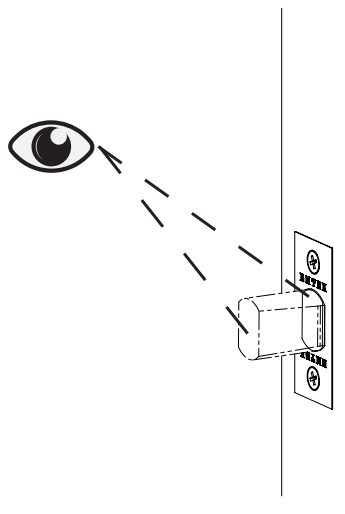


Bolt must be in retracted (unlocked) position



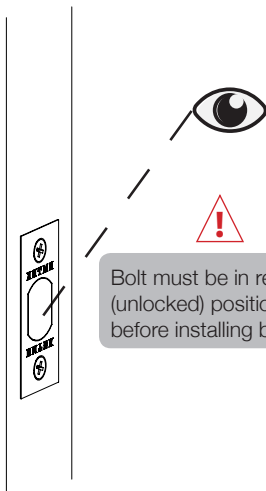
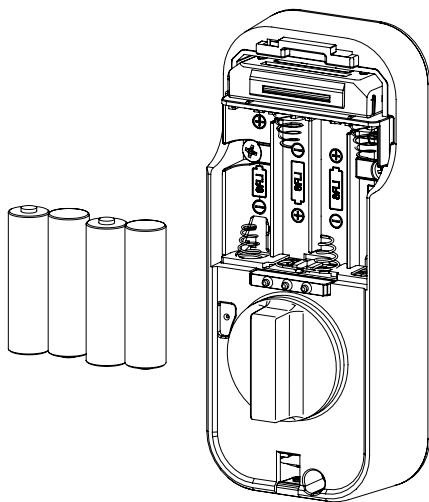
7

Testing Operation





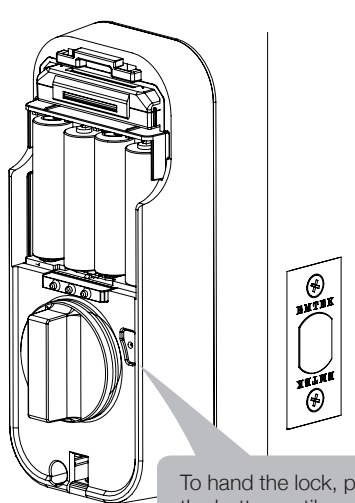
Install Batteries



Bolt must be in retracted (unlocked) position before installing batteries.

9

Handing the Lock

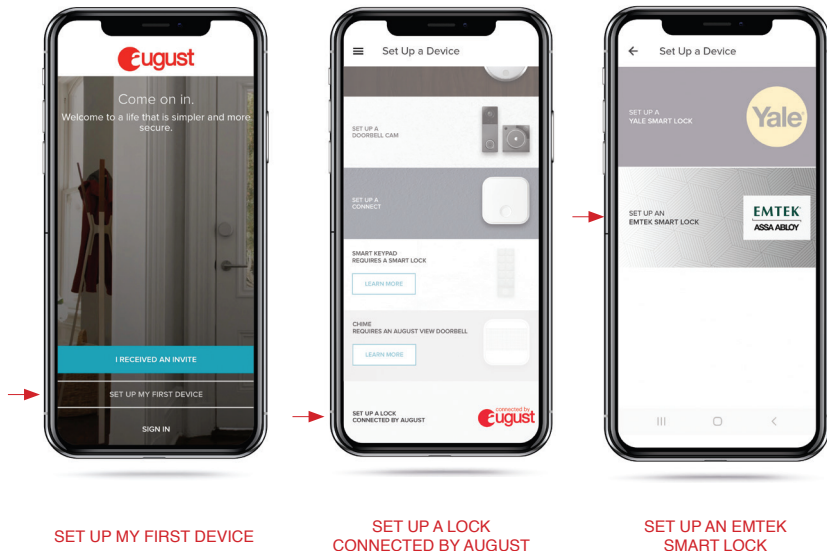


To hand the lock, press the button until you hear one beep

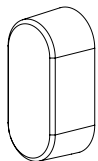
10

Go to the August App to Complete Installation

Set Up a Device - EMTEK SMART LOCK



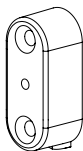
Installing DoorSense™ with Connected by August Locks - Surface Mount Option



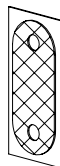
DoorSense™
Cover



Mounting
Screws

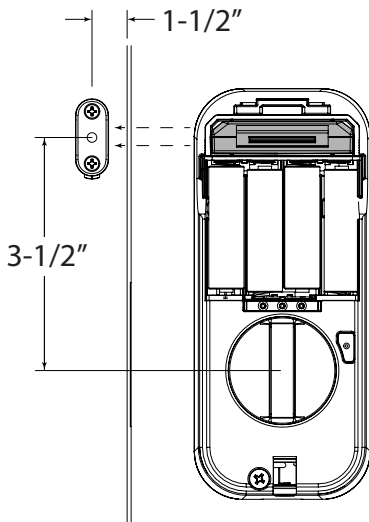


DoorSense™
Housing



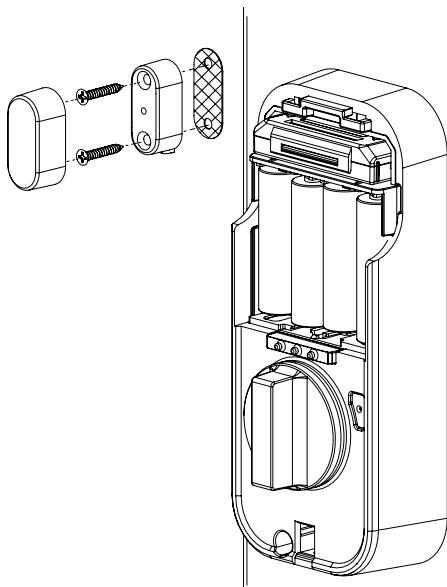
Mounting
Tape

1. Determine mounting location



Installing DoorSense™ with Connected by August Locks - Surface Mount Option

2. Attach mounting tape then screw into frame

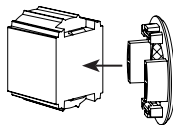
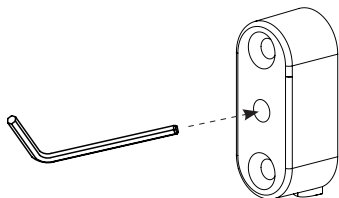


3. Go to the August app to calibrate your Lock

Installing DoorSense™ with Connected by August Locks - Flush Mount Option

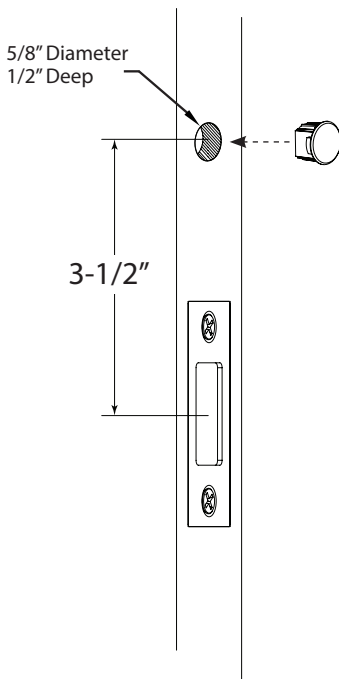


- 1. Remove magnet from housing and place DoorSense™ Cap onto the magnet**



Installing DoorSense™ with Connected by August Locks - Flush Mount Option

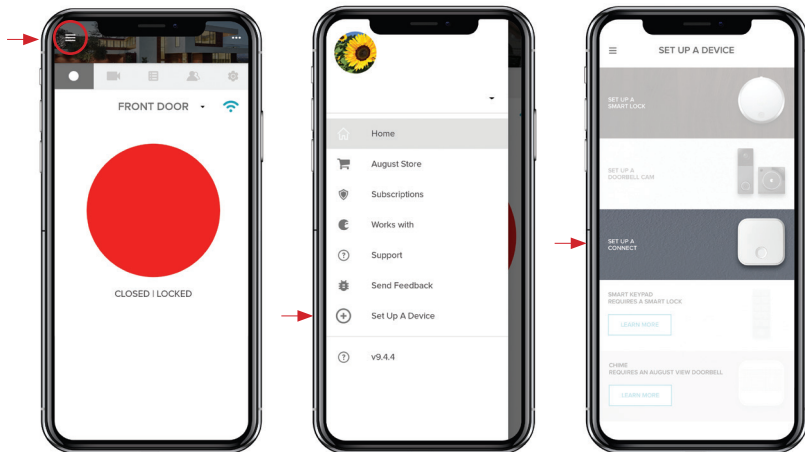
2. Drill hole and Insert DoorSense™



3. Go to the August app to calibrate your Lock

Go to the August App to Complete Installation

Set Up a Connect Hub



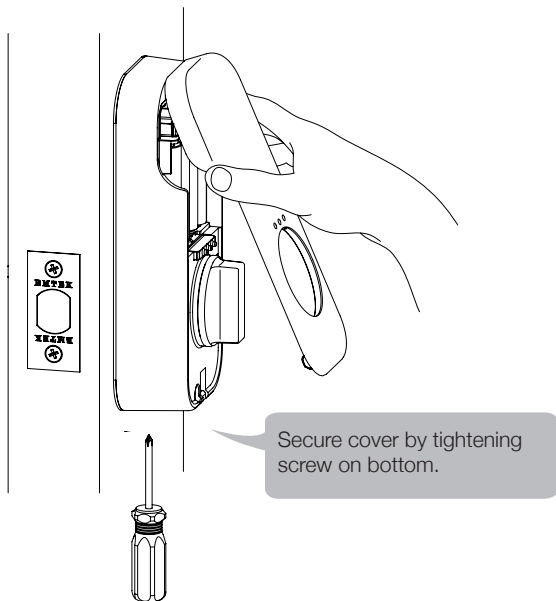
GO TO MENU

SET UP A DEVICE

SET UP A CONNECT



Install Cover



Hardware Troubleshooting

Cycle lock in both the locked and unlocked positions. If problems are found:

Symptom	Suggested Action
Door is binding	• Check that door and frame are properly aligned and door is free swinging. • Check hinges: They should not be loose or have excessive wear on knuckles.
Bolt will not deadlock	• Check for sufficient clearance of the bolt within the strike-side jamb. Correct this by increasing the depth of the pocket for the bolt. • Check for misalignment of bolt and/or strike which may be preventing bolt from properly entering the strike. With the door open, extend and retract the bolt; if it is smooth, check the strike alignment.
Bolt does not extend or retract smoothly	• Bolt and strike are misaligned, see above. • Check the backset of door relative to adjustments already made to bolt. • Verify proper door preparation and re-bore holes that are too small or misaligned. • Verify bolt is installed with correct side up (Step 1)

Definitions

Automatic Re-lock Time: After a successful code entry and the unit unlocks, it will automatically re-lock after thirty (30) seconds.

Inside Indicator Light: Located on the interior escutcheon. Shows active status (Locked) of lock and can be enabled or disabled in the August Home App.

Low Battery: Battery state is shown on smartphone app.

Privacy Mode: Privacy mode is disabled by default. Privacy mode is enabled/disabled in the August Home App.

Shutdown Time: If the wrong code is entered five (5) times, the keypad will flash for 60 seconds. The lock will not allow operation for 60 seconds.

Volume Setting Mode: The volume setting is set to Low by default; otherwise it can be set to High or Silent in the August Home App.

Programming Troubleshooting

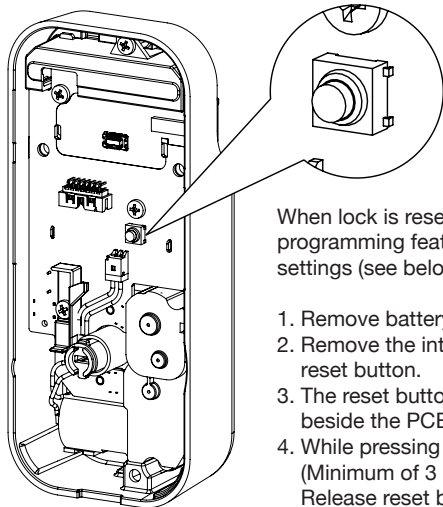
Symptom	Suggested Action
Lock does not respond - door is open and accessible.	• Check batteries are installed and oriented correctly (polarity) in the battery case. • Check batteries are in good condition; replace batteries* if discharged.
Lock does not respond - door is locked and inaccessible.	• Batteries may be completely discharged. • Use your physical key to unlock the door.
Unit is on for a while then shows no reaction.	• Batteries do not have enough power. Replace batteries*.
Unit Chimes when unlocking with smartphone app, but the door will not open.	• Check door gaps for any foreign objects between door and frame.
Unit operates to allow access, but will not automatically re-lock	• Check to see if Auto Re-lock Mode is enabled. • Disable Auto Re-lock Mode to lock the door (automatically). • If low battery indicator is indicated in the August Home App (see below), change batteries*.

* When batteries are replaced. Network Module locks have a real time clock that will be set through the User Interface (UI); it is recommended to verify correct date and time particularly those locks operation under Daylight Saving Time (DST).

NOTE TO INSTALLER AND CONSUMER

While EMTEK has included several features to prevent lockout (low battery warnings), it is still possible for a lockout situation to occur. Because this product has a mechanical override (a key), EMTEK recommends you carry your keys with you to prevent lockout.

Resetting Lock to Factory Default



When lock is reset to factory defaults, all programming features are reset to original default settings (see below).

1. Remove battery cover and batteries.
2. Remove the interior escutcheon to access the reset button.
3. The reset button (see image) is located beside the PCB cable connector.
4. While pressing the reset button (Minimum of 3 seconds) reinstall batteries. Release reset button.
5. Replace battery cover.

Factory Settings

Settings	Factory Settings
Automatic Re-lock	Disabled
Inside Indicator Light	Disabled (Off)
Volume Setting	Enabled (Low)
Lockout Mode	Disabled
Automatic Re-lock Time	30 Seconds

Compliance

FCC INTERFERENCE STATEMENT

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions. (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation.

This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.

However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one of the following:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

FCC Caution: Any changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Radiation Exposure Statement:

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance 20cm between the radiator & your body.

INDUSTRY CANADA COMPLIANT

This device complies with RSS-210 of the Industry Canada Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Radiation Exposure Statement:

This equipment complies with IC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance 20cm between the radiator & your body.

INDUSTRIE CANADA CONFORME

Ce dispositif est conforme à la norme CNR-210 d'industrie Canada applicable aux appareils radio exempts de licence. Son fonctionnement est sujet aux deux conditions suivantes: (1) le dispositif ne doit pas produire de brouillage préjudiciable, et (2) ce dispositif doit accepter tout brouillage reçu. y compris un brouillage susceptible de provoquer un fonctionnement indésirable.

Déclaration d'exposition aux radiations:

Cet équipement est conforme aux limites d'exposition aux rayonnements IC établies pour un environnement non contrôlé. Cet équipement doit être installé et utilisé avec un minimum de 20 cm de distance entre la source de rayonnement et votre corps.

The ASSA ABLOY Group is the global leader in access solutions. Every day we help people feel safe, secure and experience a more open world.



IN4-EMPWRADPT

REV 19A 11-05-19

Copyright © 2019, EMTEK Products, Inc. an ASSA ABLOY Group company. All rights reserved. Reproduction in whole or in part without the express written permission of EMTEK Products, Inc. is prohibited.

 **WARNING:** This product can expose you to chemicals including lead, which is known to the state of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov.

EMPowered™ Motorized *Smart* Lock Upgrade
- Connected by August
Keyed Sideplate

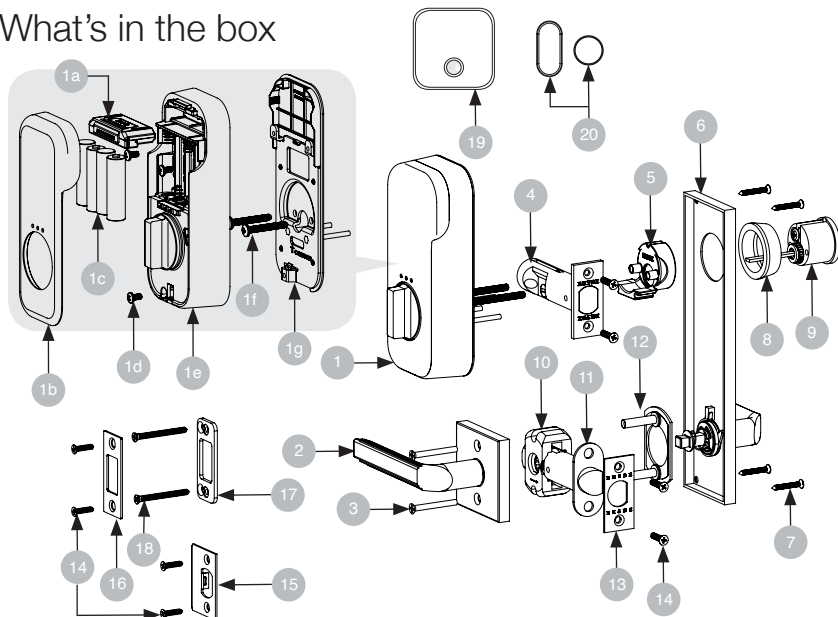


Experience a safer
and more open world

Download and install
August Home app



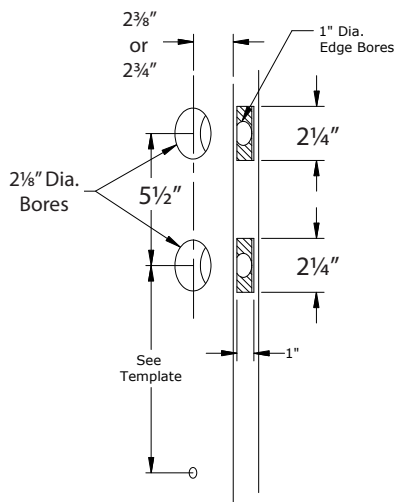
What's in the box



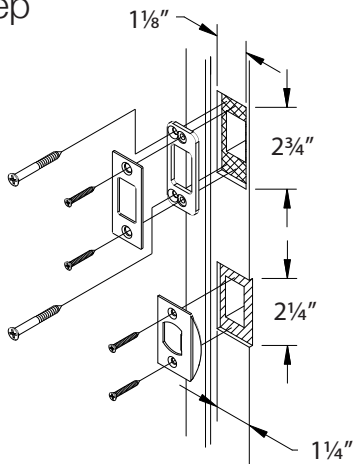
ITEM NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY.
1	EMPowered™ Unit	1
1a	August Module	1
1b	Battery Cover	1
1c	AA Batteries	4
1d	M4-0.7 x 8 mm Machine Screws	3
1e	Interior Escutcheon	1
1f	#10-32 x 2-1/8" Machine Screws	2
1g	Mounting Plate	1
2	Interior Knob/Lever Assembly	1
3	#8-32 x 1-1/2" Machine Screws	2
4	Deadbolt Latch 2-3/4" Backset	1
4	Deadbolt Latch 2-3/8" Backset	1
5	Deadbolt Screw Guide	1
6	Sideplate Exterior Assembly	1

ITEM NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY.
7	#6 x 1" Oval Head Wood Screw	2 or 4
8	Deadbolt Extension Collar	1
9	Deadbolt Cylinder	1
10	Alignment Tool	1
11	Passage Latch	1
12	Rosette Mounting Plate	1
13	Latch Face Plate	1
14	#8 x 3/4" Wood Screws	8
15	Latch Strike Plate	1
16	Deadbolt Strike Plate	1
17	Deadbolt Security Plate	1
18	#10 x 3" Wood Screws	2
19	August Connect	1
20	August DoorSense™	1

Door Prep



Door Jamb Prep

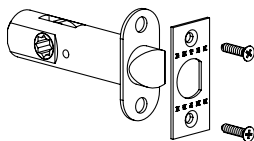
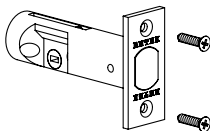


1

Install Latches

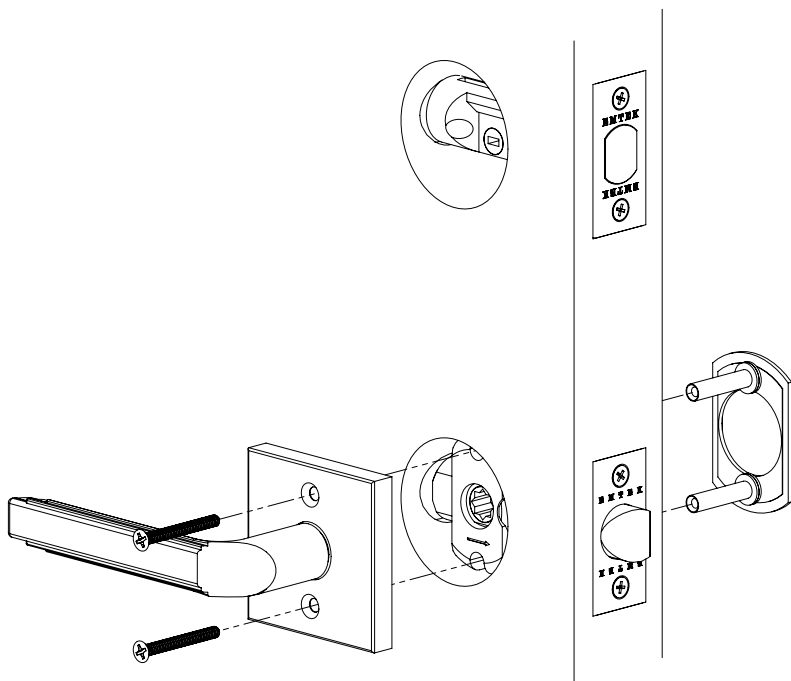


Note: Use only the supplied latch for proper functionality.



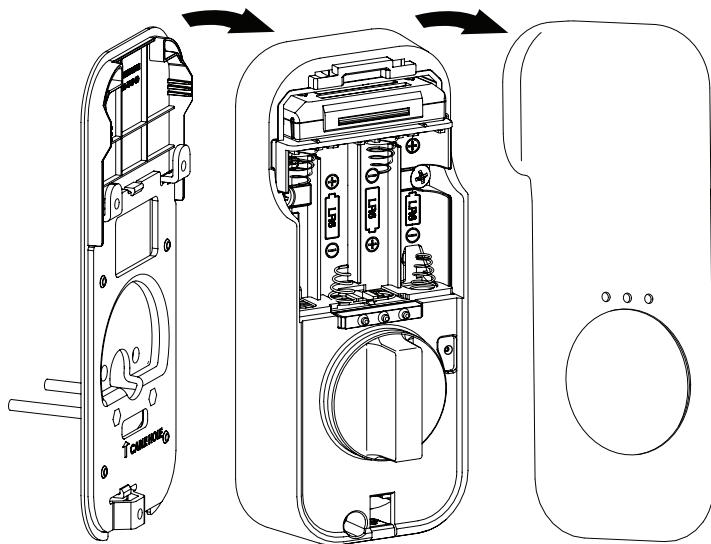
2

Install Interior Lever/Knob



3

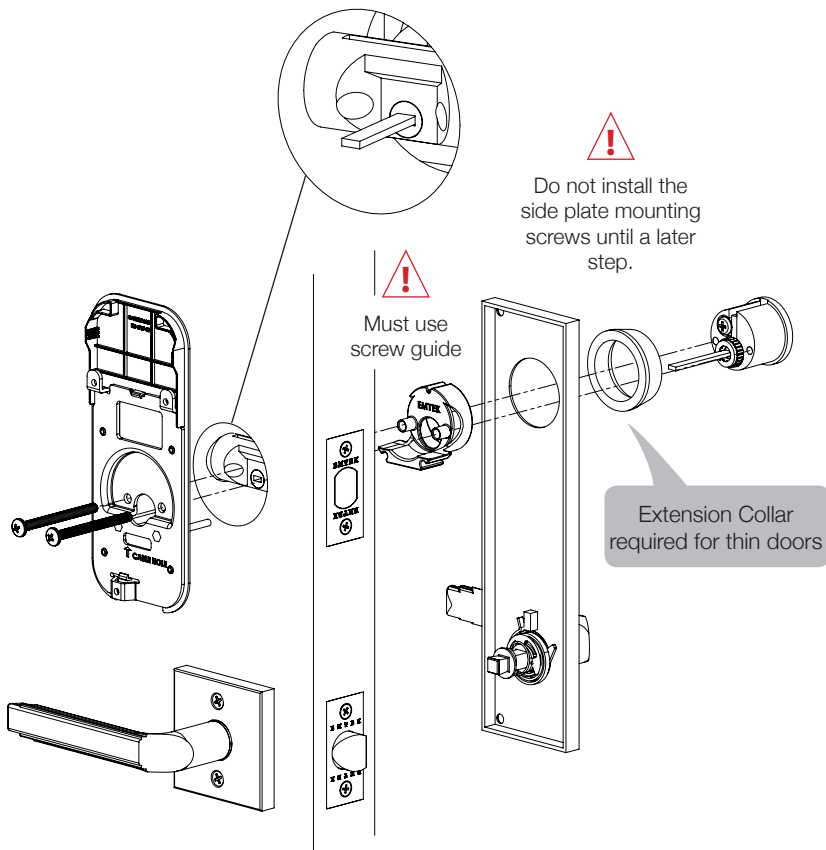
Remove Battery Cover



Loosen screw
on bottom to
remove cover.

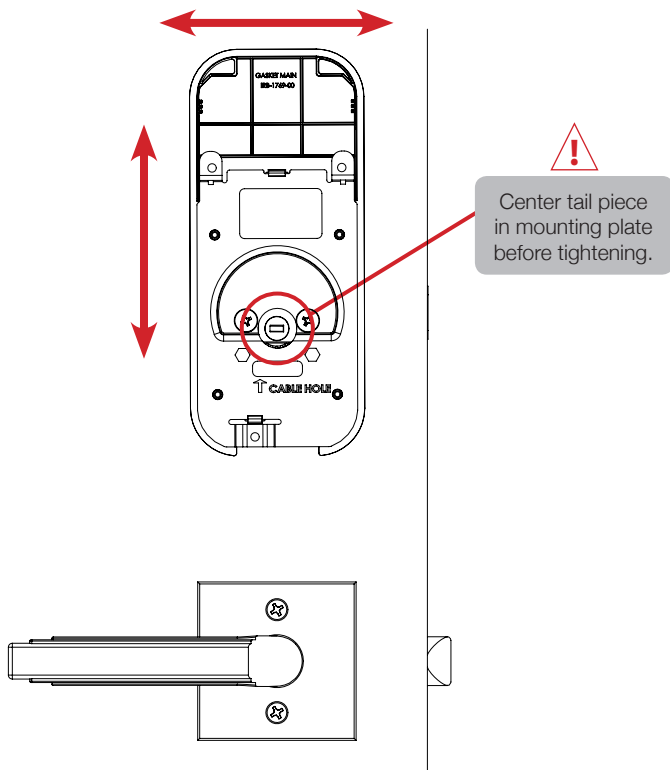
4

Install Lock Cylinder & Interior Mounting Plate



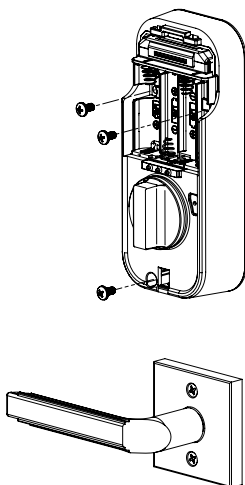
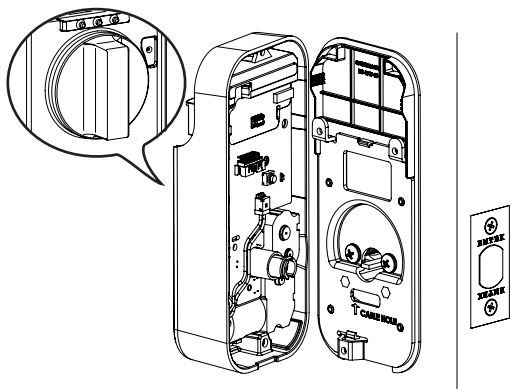
5

Check Interior Mounting Plate Alignment



6

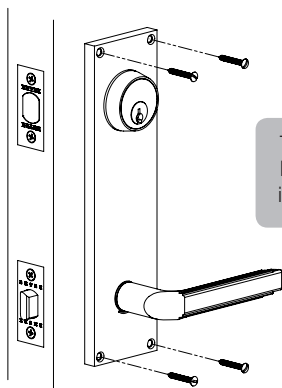
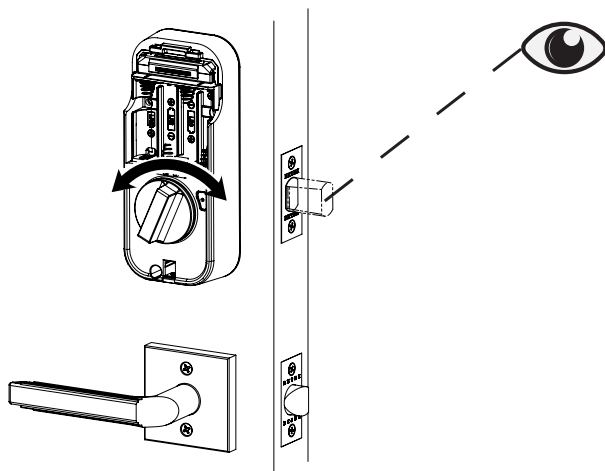
Install Interior Escutcheon



Bolt must be in retracted
(unlocked) position

7

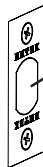
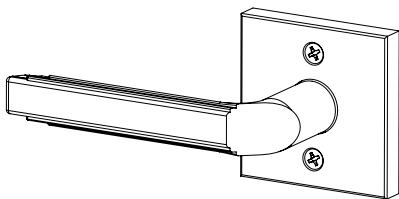
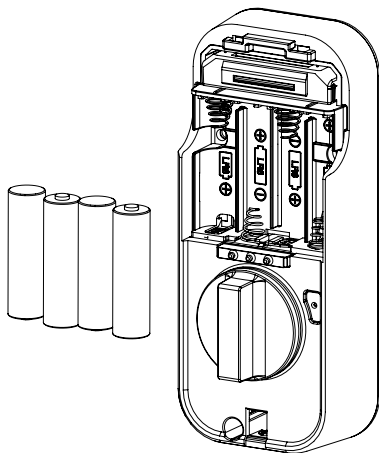
Testing Operation



Test thumb turn and lever function before installing the screws.

8

Install Batteries

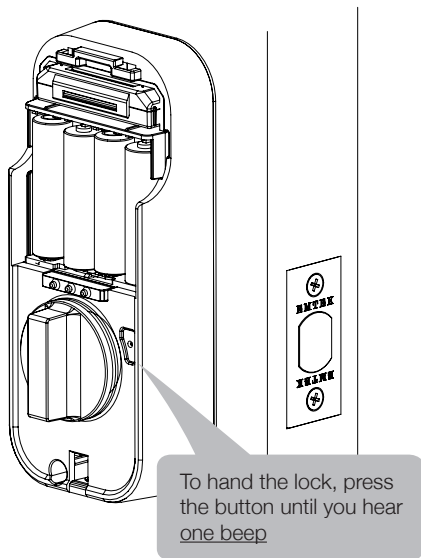


Bolt must be in retracted (unlocked) position before installing batteries.



9

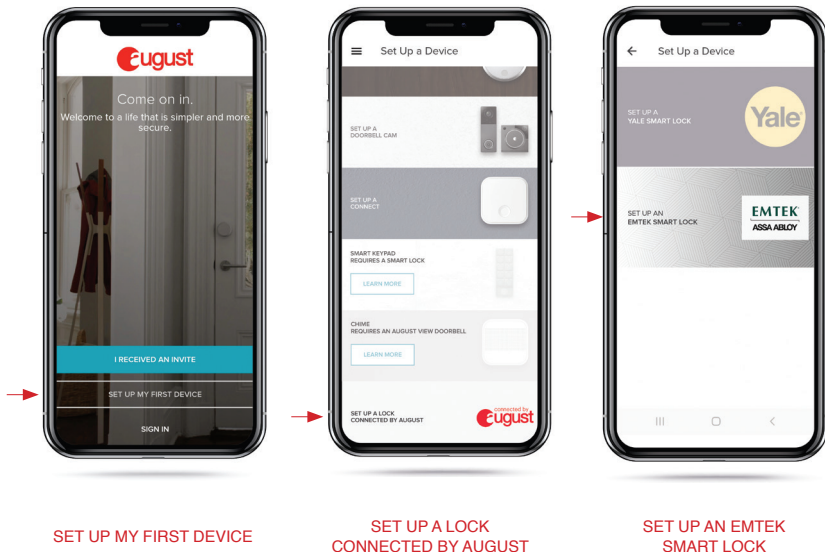
Handing the Lock



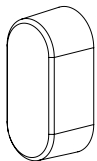
10

Go to the August App to Complete Installation

Set Up a Device - EMTEK SMART LOCK



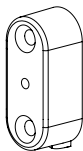
Installing DoorSense™ with Connected by August Locks - Surface Mount Option



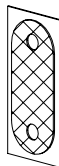
DoorSense™
Cover



Mounting
Screws

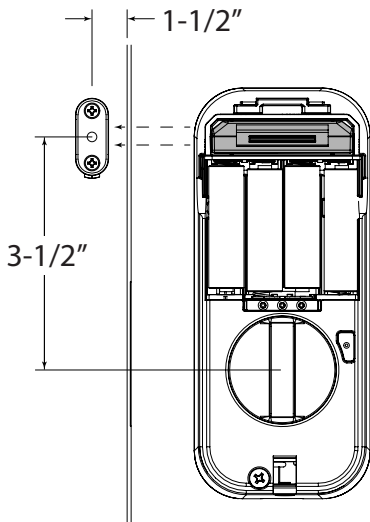


DoorSense™
Housing



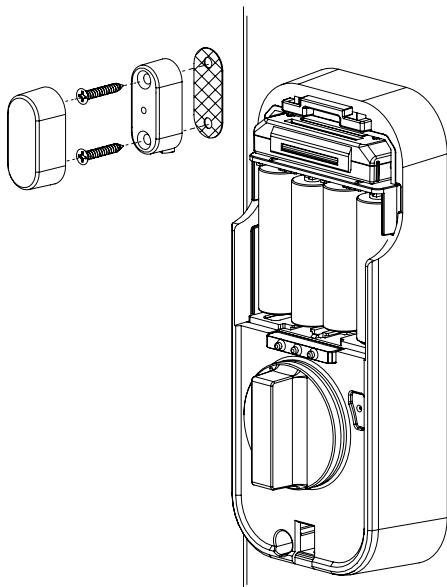
Mounting
Tape

1. Determine mounting location



Installing DoorSense™ with Connected by August Locks - Surface Mount Option

2. Attach mounting tape then screw into frame

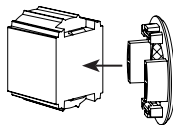
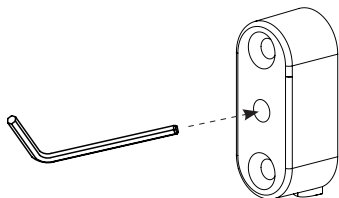


3. Go to the August app to calibrate your Lock

Installing DoorSense™ with Connected by August Locks - Flush Mount Option

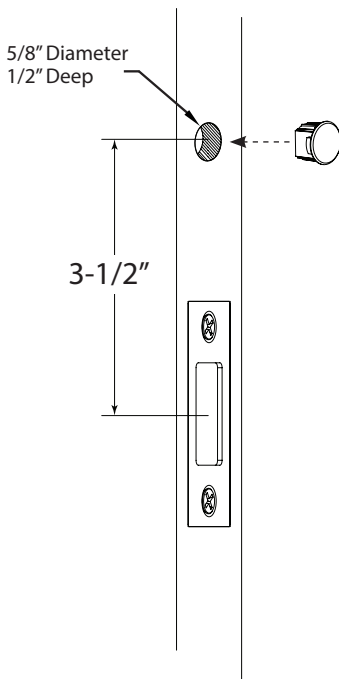


- 1. Remove magnet from housing and place DoorSense™ Cap onto the magnet**



Installing DoorSense™ with Connected by August Locks - Flush Mount Option

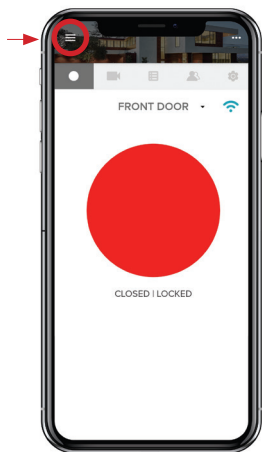
2. Drill hole and Insert DoorSense™



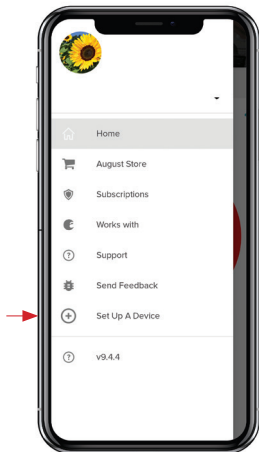
3. Go to the August app to calibrate your Lock

Go to the August App to Complete Installation

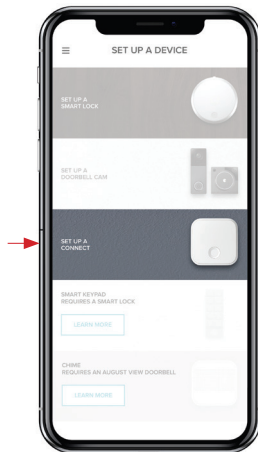
Set Up a Connect Hub



GO TO MENU

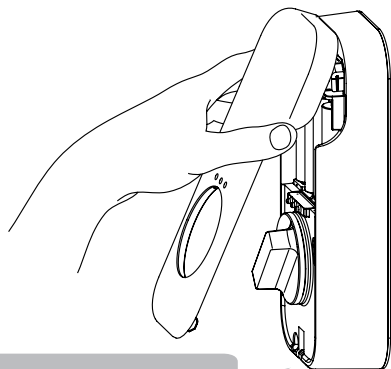


SET UP A DEVICE

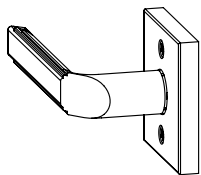


SET UP A CONNECT

Install Cover



Secure cover by tightening screw on bottom.



Hardware Troubleshooting

Cycle lock in both the locked and unlocked positions. If problems are found:

Symptom	Suggested Action
Door is binding	• Check that door and frame are properly aligned and door is free swinging. • Check hinges: They should not be loose or have excessive wear on knuckles.
Bolt will not deadlock	• Check for sufficient clearance of the bolt within the strike-side jamb. Correct this by increasing the depth of the pocket for the bolt. • Check for misalignment of bolt and/or strike which may be preventing bolt from properly entering the strike. With the door open, extend and retract the bolt; if it is smooth, check the strike alignment.
Bolt does not extend or retract smoothly	• Bolt and strike are misaligned, see above. • Check the backset of door relative to adjustments already made to bolt. • Verify proper door preparation and re-bore holes that are too small or misaligned. • Verify bolt is installed with correct side up (Step 1)

Definitions

Automatic Re-lock Time: After a successful code entry and the unit unlocks, it will automatically re-lock after thirty (30) seconds.

Inside Indicator Light: Located on the interior escutcheon. Shows active status (Locked) of lock and can be enabled or disabled in the August Home App.

Low Battery: Battery state is shown on smartphone app.

Privacy Mode: Privacy mode is disabled by default. Privacy mode is enabled/disabled in the August Home App.

Shutdown Time: If the wrong code is entered five (5) times, the keypad will flash for 60 seconds. The lock will not allow operation for 60 seconds.

Volume Setting Mode: The volume setting is set to Low by default; otherwise it can be set to High or Silent in the August Home App.

Programming Troubleshooting

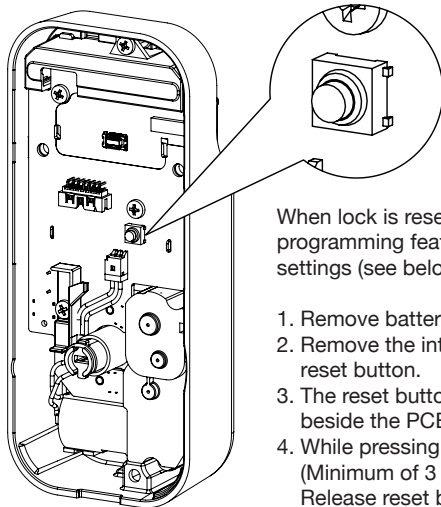
Symptom	Suggested Action
Lock does not respond - door is open and accessible.	• Check batteries are installed and oriented correctly (polarity) in the battery case. • Check batteries are in good condition; replace batteries* if discharged.
Lock does not respond - door is locked and inaccessible.	• Batteries may be completely discharged. • Use your physical key to unlock the door.
Unit is on for a while then shows no reaction.	• Batteries do not have enough power. Replace batteries*.
Unit Chimes when unlocking with smartphone app, but the door will not open.	• Check door gaps for any foreign objects between door and frame.
Unit operates to allow access, but will not automatically re-lock	• Check to see if Auto Re-lock Mode is enabled. • Disable Auto Re-lock Mode to lock the door (automatically). • If low battery indicator is indicated in the August Home App (see below), change batteries*.

* When batteries are replaced. Network Module locks have a real time clock that will be set through the User Interface (UI); it is recommended to verify correct date and time particularly those locks operation under Daylight Saving Time (DST).

NOTE TO INSTALLER AND CONSUMER

While EMTEK has included several features to prevent lockout (low battery warnings), it is still possible for a lockout situation to occur. Because this product has a mechanical override (a key), EMTEK recommends you carry your keys with you to prevent lockout.

Resetting Lock to Factory Default



When lock is reset to factory defaults, all programming features are reset to original default settings (see below).

1. Remove battery cover and batteries.
2. Remove the interior escutcheon to access the reset button.
3. The reset button (see image) is located beside the PCB cable connector.
4. While pressing the reset button (Minimum of 3 seconds) reinstall batteries. Release reset button.
5. Replace battery cover.

Factory Settings

Settings	Factory Settings
Automatic Re-lock	Disabled
Inside Indicator Light	Disabled (Off)
Volume Setting	Enabled (Low)
Lockout Mode	Disabled
Automatic Re-lock Time	30 Seconds

Compliance

FCC INTERFERENCE STATEMENT

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions. (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation.

This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.

However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one of the following

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

FCC Caution: Any changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Radiation Exposure Statement:

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance 20cm between the radiator & your body.

INDUSTRY CANADA COMPLIANT

This device complies with RSS-210 of the Industry Canada Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Radiation Exposure Statement:

This equipment complies with IC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance 20cm between the radiator & your body.

INDUSTRIE CANADA CONFORME

Ce dispositif est conforme à la norme CNR-210 d'industrie Canada applicable aux appareils radio exempts de licence. Son fonctionnement est sujet aux deux conditions suivantes: (1) le dispositif ne doit pas produire de brouillage préjudiciable, et (2) ce dispositif doit accepter tout brouillage reçu. y compris un brouillage susceptible de provoquer un fonctionnement indésirable.

Déclaration d'exposition aux radiations:

Cet équipement est conforme aux limites d'exposition aux rayonnements IC établies pour un environnement non contrôlé. Cet équipement doit être installé et utilisé avec un minimum de 20 cm de distance entre la source de rayonnement et votre corps.

The ASSA ABLOY Group is the global leader in access solutions. Every day we help people feel safe, secure and experience a more open world.



IN8-EMPCYLSIDE

REV 19A 11-05-19

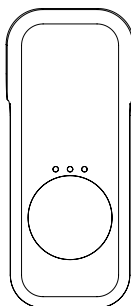
Copyright © 2019, EMTEK Products, Inc. an ASSA ABLOY Group company. All rights reserved. Reproduction in whole or in part without the express written permission of EMTEK Products, Inc. is prohibited.

 **WARNING:** This product can expose you to chemicals including lead, which is known to the state of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov.

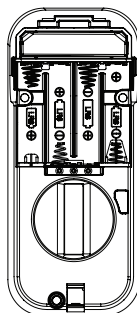
EMPowered Motorized Touchscreen Keypad Deadbolt



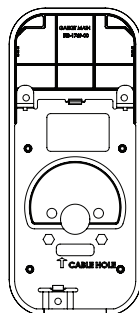
What's in the box



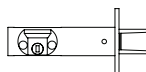
Battery
Cover



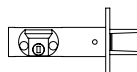
Interior
Escutcheon



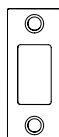
Mounting
Plate



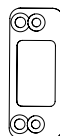
Deadbolt Latch
2-3/4"



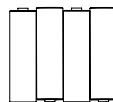
Deadbolt Latch
2-3/8"



Strike Plate



Security Plate



AA x4
Batteries



x3

#8-32 x 5/16"
Machine Screws



x4

#8 x 3/4"
Wood Screws



x2

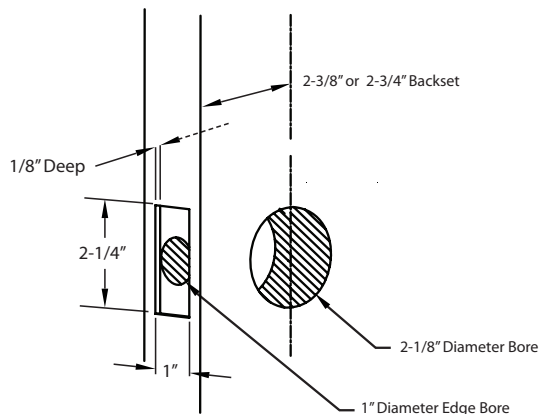
#10-32 x 1-3/8"
Machine Screws



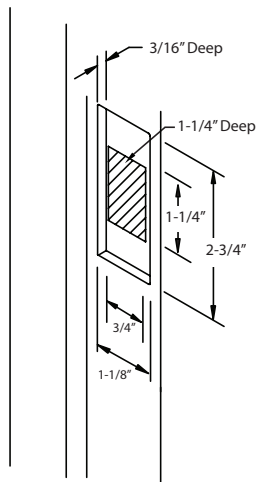
x2

#10 x 3"
Wood Screws

Door Prep

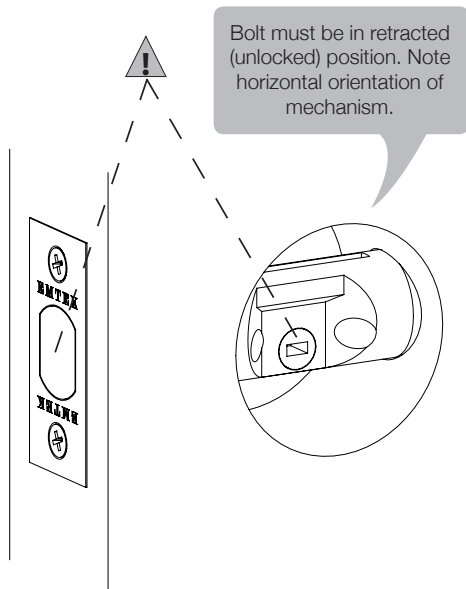
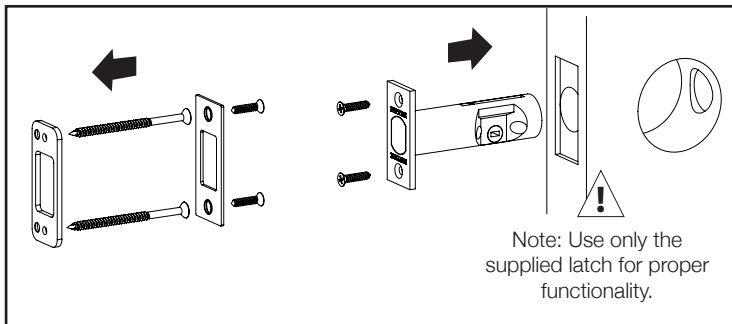


Door Jamb Prep



1

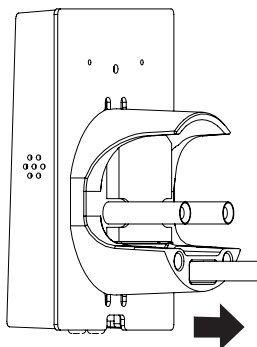
Install Latch & Strike Plate



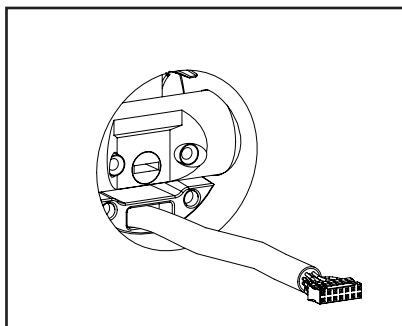
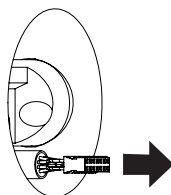
2

Install Touchscreen Escutcheon

Outside of the door

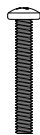


Inside of the door

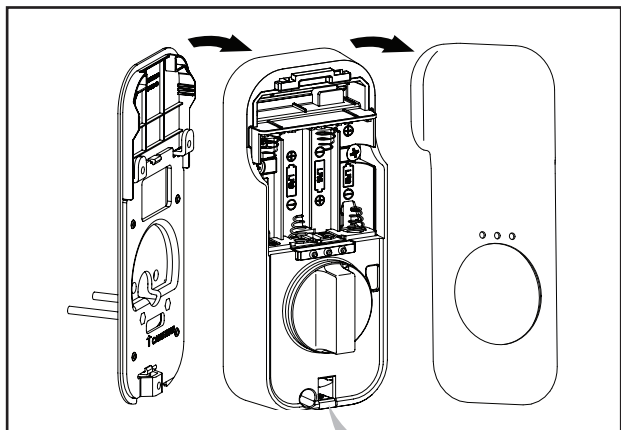


3

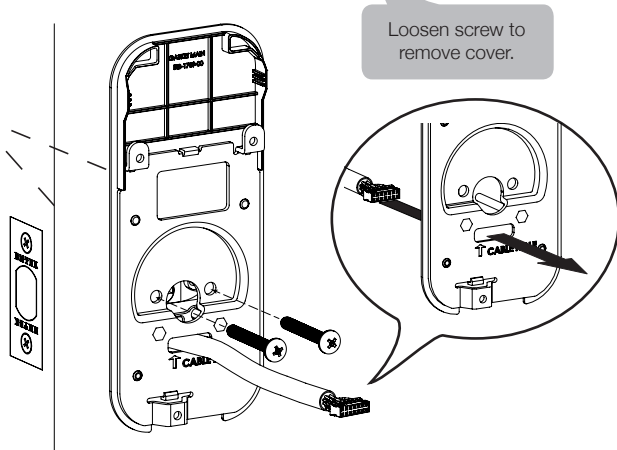
Install Interior Mounting Plate



x2

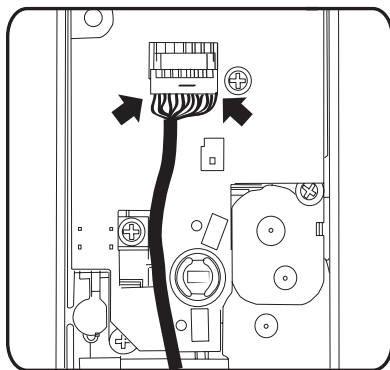
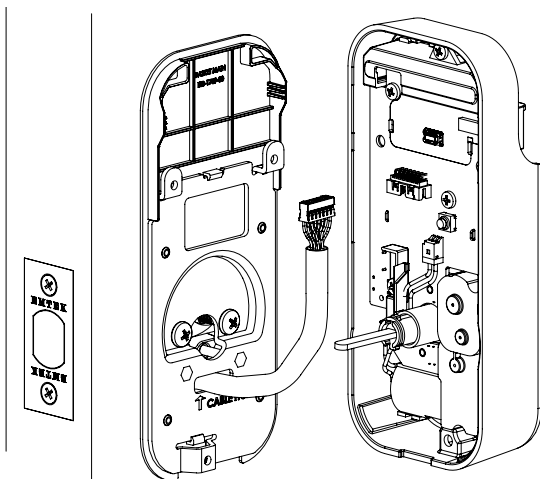


Loosen screw to
remove cover.



4

Connect the Cable Assembly

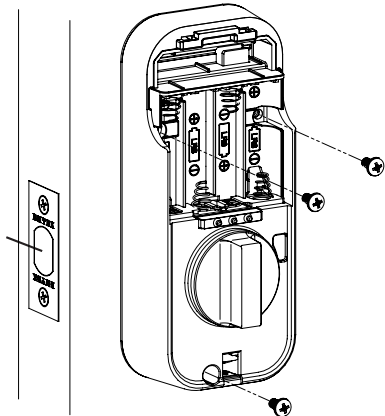
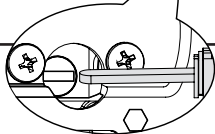
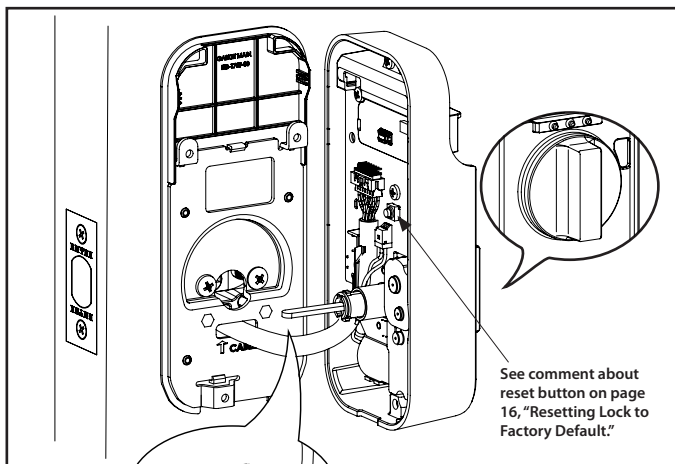


5

Install Interior Escutcheon

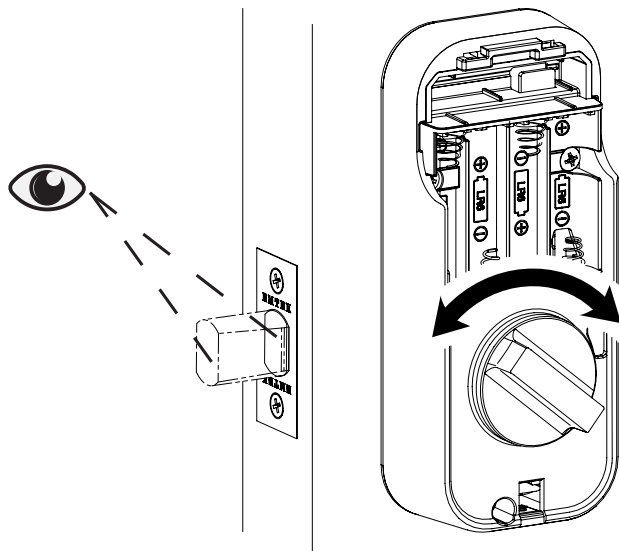


x3



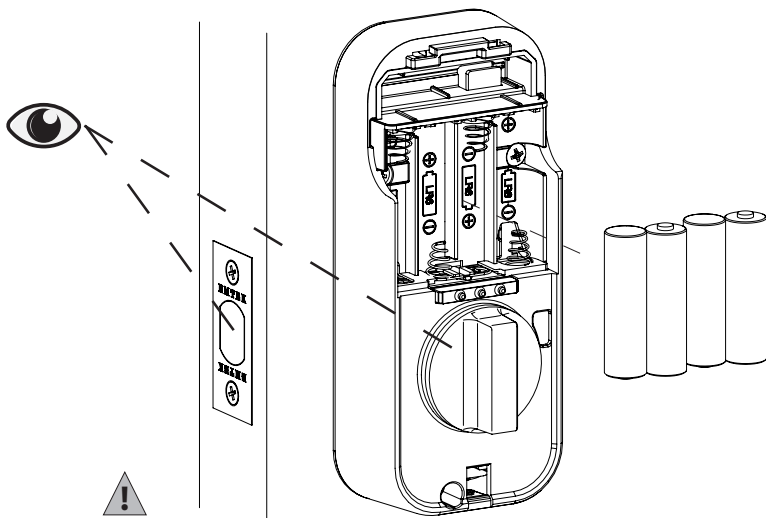
6

Testing Operation



7

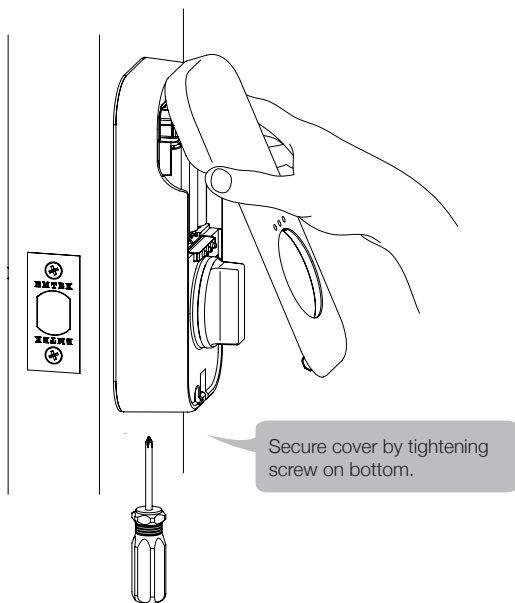
Install Batteries



Bolt must be in retracted
(unlocked) position
before installing batteries.

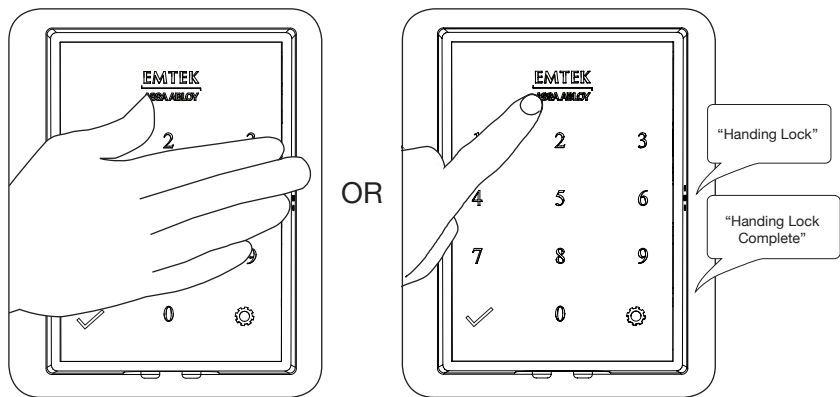
8

Install Cover



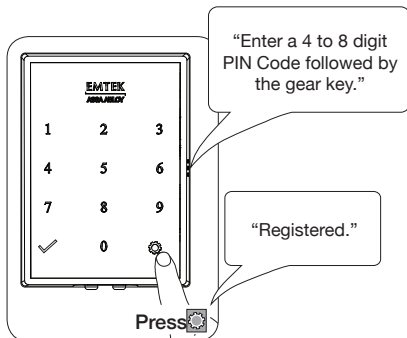
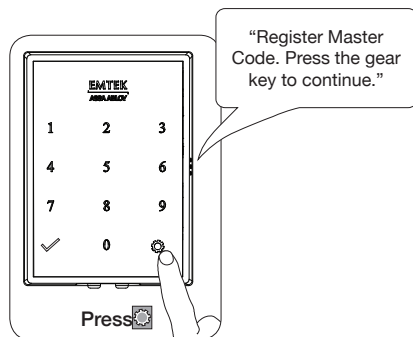
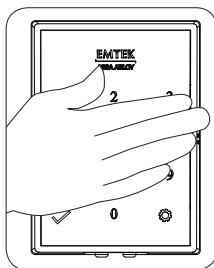
Handing the Lock

Activate the Lock



Creating Master PIN Code

Creating a Master PIN Code must be performed upon installation or after resetting the lock to factory default. Programming and use of lock is not possible until this step has been successfully completed.

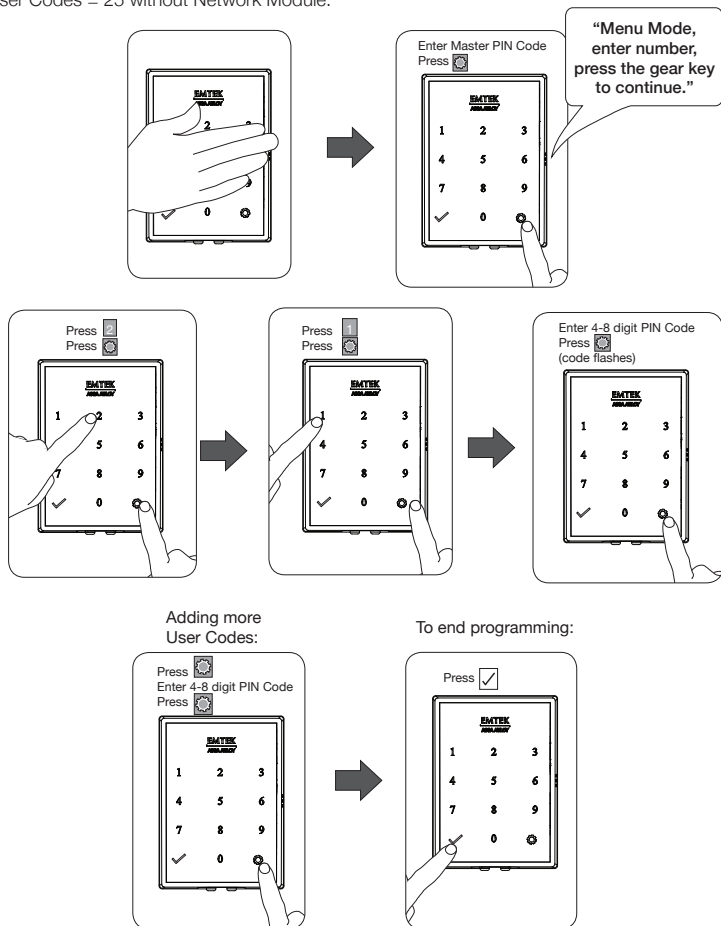


Creating User PIN Code

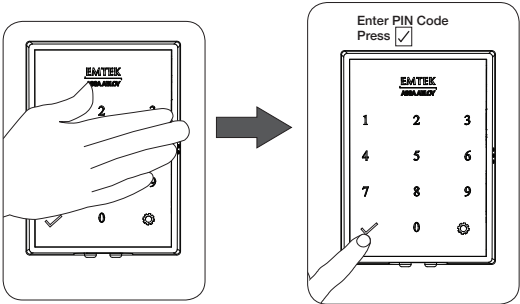
Master PIN Code must be created first.

*Max User Codes = 250 with Network Module.

*Max User Codes = 25 without Network Module.



Unlocking Door with PIN Code



Code Chart Duplicate if Necessary

PIN Code Management (With Network Module - Up to 250 Users)			
User Type	User Name	User #	PIN Code
Master			
User ____			
User ____			
User ____			
User ____			
User ____			
User ____			
User ____			
User ____			
User ____			
User ____			
User ____			
User ____			
User ____			
User ____			

Resetting Lock to Factory Default

When lock is reset to factory defaults, all User Codes (including the Master PIN Code*) are deleted and all programming features are reset to original default settings (see below).

1. Remove battery cover and batteries.
2. Remove the interior escutcheon to access the reset button.
3. The reset button (see page 8, Step 5) is located beside the PCB cable connector.
4. While pressing the reset button (Minimum of 3 seconds) reinstall batteries.
Release reset button.
5. Replace battery cover.

Upon reset, Master PIN Code creation is the only option available and must be performed prior to any other programming of the lock.

Factory Settings

Settings	Factory Settings
Master PIN Code	Registration required*
Automatic Re-lock	Disabled
Inside Indicator Light	Disabled (Off)
One Touch Locking	Enabled
Volume Setting	Enable (Low)
Language Setting	English
Lockout Mode	Disabled
Automatic Re-lock Time	30 Seconds
Wrong Code Entry Limit	5 Times
Shutdown Time	60 Seconds

*The Master PIN Code must be registered prior to any other programming of the lock.

Definitions

All Code Lockout Mode: This feature is enabled by the Master PIN Code. When enabled, it restricts all user (except Master) PIN Code access. When attempting to enter a code while the unit is in Lockout, the RED locked padlock will appear on the screen.

Automatic Re-lock Time: After a successful code entry and the unit unlocks, it will automatically re-lock after thirty (30) seconds.

Inside Indicator Light: Located on the interior escutcheon. Shows active status (Locked) of lock and can be enabled or disabled in the **Advanced Lock Settings** (Main Menu selection #3).

Language Setting Mode: Choosing English (1), Spanish (2) or French (3) becomes the (default) setting for the lock's voice prompts.

Low Battery: When battery power is low, the Low Battery Warning indicator flashes RED. If battery power is completely lost, use the 9 Volt battery override. To use the 9V battery override apply 9V battery, in either direction, to terminals below the touchscreen for backup power option. Wake up the lock and enter your PIN Code to unlock the door.

Master PIN Code: The Master PIN Code is used for programing and for feature settings. **It must be created prior to programming the lock.** The Master PIN Code will also operate (unlock/lock) the lock.

Network Module Settings: With the optional Network Module installed, this setting becomes available thru the Main menu (7) and allows the lock to connect with a network controller.

One Touch Locking: When the latch is retracted, activating the keypad will extend the latch (during Automatic Re-lock duration or when Automatic Re-lock is disabled). When One-Touch Re-lock is **not** in use (**disabled**), any valid PIN Code will re-lock the lock.

Previous: While in Menu Mode, pressing this icon cancels the current operation and returns the user to the previous step.

Privacy Mode: Privacy mode is disabled by default Privacy mode is enabled/disabled in the app.

Shutdown Time: The unit is shutdown (flashing RED) for sixty (60) seconds and does not allow operation after the wrong code entry limit (5 attempts) has been met.

Tamper Alert: Audible alarm sounds if attempting to forcibly remove outside lock from door.

User PIN Code: The User Code operates the lock. Maximum number of User Codes is 250 with Network Module; without Network Module maximum is 25 User Codes. Note: When deleting User Code(s), screen will display User Number (not code) being deleted.

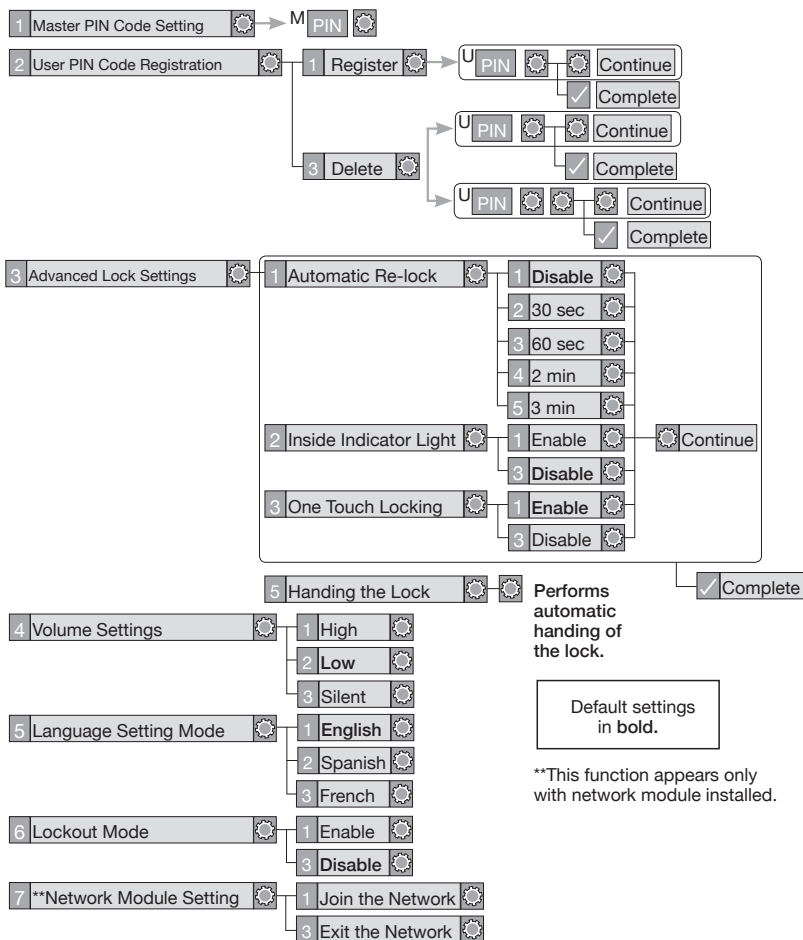
Volume Setting Mode: The volume setting for PIN Code verification is set to **Low (2)** by default; otherwise it can be set to **High (1)** or **Silent (3)** for quiet areas.

Wrong Code Entry Limit: After five (5) unsuccessful attempts at entering a valid PIN Code, the unit will shut down and not allow operation.

Feature Programming Trough Menu Mode Using Master PIN Code*

1. Touch screen with back of hand or palm to activate.
2. Enter 4-8 digit master PIN Code* followed by  key.
Lock Response: "Menu mode, enter number, press  key to continue."
3. Enter digit corresponding to the function to be performed followed by the  key.
Follow the voice commands.

***The Master PIN Code must be registered prior to any other programming of the lock.**



Programming Troubleshooting

Symptom	Suggested Action
Lock does not respond - door is open and accessible.	• Touchscreen becomes active when pressed with whole hand. Use larger area of the hand or fingers and verify contact with at least 3 numbers. • If touchscreen numbers are visible, check to see if they respond when pressed. • Check batteries are installed and oriented correctly (polarity) in the battery case. • Check batteries are in good condition; replace batteries* if discharged. • Check to see if touchscreen harness is fully connected and not pinched.
Lock does not respond - door is locked and inaccessible.	• Batteries may be completely discharged. • Apply 9V Battery to terminals below the touchscreen for backup power option.
Unit is on for a while then shows no reaction. Lights dim.	• Batteries do not have enough power. Replace Batteries*.
Unit Chimes to indicate code acceptance, but the door will not open.	• Check door gaps for any foreign objects between door and frame. • Check that the wire harness is firmly connected to the PCB.
Unit operates to allow access, but will not automatically re-lock	• Check to see if Auto Re-lock Mode is enabled. • Disable Auto Re-lock Mode to lock the door (automatically). • If low battery indicator is lit (see below), change batteries*.
PIN Codes will not register.	• PIN Codes must consist of 4 to 8 digits to register. • The same PIN Code cannot be used for multiple users. • Registration/management of PIN Codes is set by the authority of the Master PIN Code, which is set first. • Contact the Master user. • User Codes must be entered within 5 seconds (while touchscreen is active) or process will have to be restarted. • Check  or  gear cannot be used as part of the PIN Code.
Upon entering a PIN Code and pressing  key, the unit displays "invalid code" error or lock times out without responding.	• Lockout Mode is enabled. • Only the Master user can enable/disable Lockout Mode. • Contact the Master user.
Upon entering a PIN Code and pressing the  key, the red padlock icon appears and there are different tones.	• Check to see if the lock is set to Lockout Mode. • Setting/managing Lockout Mode is done through Master PIN Code only. • Contact the Master user.
The unit operates but it makes no sound.	• Check to see if Silent Mode is enabled (see Feature #4)
The unit responds "Low Battery"	• This is the alert to replace the batteries. Replace all four (4) batteries* with new AA Alkaline batteries.
Upon entering a PIN Code and pressing the  key, the unit responds "Wrong number of digits".	• The digits entered were incorrect or incomplete. Re-enter the correct code followed by the check  key.

*When batteries are replaced, Network Module locks have a real time clock that will be set through the User Interface (UI); it is recommended to verify correct date and time particularly those locks operating under Daylight Saving Time (DST).

Hardware Troubleshooting

Cycle lock in both the locked and unlocked positions. If problems are found:

Door is binding

- Check that door and frame are properly aligned and door is free swinging.
- Check hinges: They should not be loose or have excessive wear on knuckles.

Bolt will not deadlock

- Check for sufficient clearance of the bolt within the strike-side jamb. Correct this by increasing the depth of the pocket for the bolt.
- Check for misalignment of bolt and/or strike which may be preventing bolt from properly entering the strike. With the door open, extend and retract the bolt; if it is smooth, check the strike alignment.

Bolt does not extend or retract smoothly

- Bolt and strike are misaligned, see above.
- Check the backset of door relative to adjustments already made to bolt.
- Verify proper door preparation and re-bore holes that are too small or misaligned.
- Verify keypad wire harness is routed under the bolt (see Fig. A)
- Verify bolt is installed with correct side up (Fig. A)

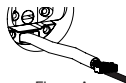


Figure A

Keypad numerics are scrolling

Remove interior escutcheon and check to ensure that the wire harness lies flat against the back recessed area and is properly routed along the side of the escutcheon and tucked under the plastic cable guide.

NOTE TO INSTALLER AND CONSUMER

While EMTEK has included several features to prevent lockout (9V battery jumper, low battery warnings), it is still possible for a lockout situation to occur. Because this product does not have a mechanical override (a key), EMTEK recommends to use this product in an environment where there are additional entry points into the dwelling.

Compliance

FCC INTERFERENCE STATEMENT

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions. (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful Interference in a residential installation.

This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.

However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one of the following

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

FCC Caution: Any changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Radiation Exposure Statement:

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance 20cm between the radiator & your body.

INDUSTRY CANADA COMPLIANT

This device complies with RSS-210 of the Industry Canada Rules Operation Is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Radiation Exposure Statement:

This equipment complies with IC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance 20cm between the radiator & your body.

INDUSTRIE CANADA CONFORME

Ce dispositif est conforme à la norme CNR-210 d'industrie Canada applicable aux appareils radio exempts de licence. Son fonctionnement est sujet aux deux conditions suivantes: (1) le dispositif ne doit pas produire de brouillage préjudiciable, et (2) ce dispositif doit accepter tout brouillage reçu. y compris un brouillage susceptible de provoquer un fonctionnement indésirable.

Déclaration d'exposition aux radiations:

Cet équipement est conforme aux limites d'exposition aux rayonnements IC établies pour un environnement non contrôlé. Cet équipement doit être installé et utilisé avec un minimum de 20 cm de distance entre la source de rayonnement et votre corps.

ASSA ABLOY is the global
leader in door opening solutions,
dedicated to satisfying
end-user needs for security,
safety and convenience



IN8-EMPWRS A

REV 19A 04-03-19

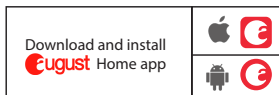
Copyright © 2019, EMTEK Products, Inc. an ASSA ABLOY Group company. All rights reserved. Reproduction in whole or in part without the express written permission of EMTEK Products, Inc. is prohibited.

 **WARNING:** This product can expose you to chemicals including lead, which is known to the state of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov.

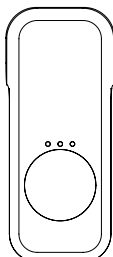
EMPowered™ Motorized Touchscreen
- Connected by August -
Keypad Smart Lock Deadbolt



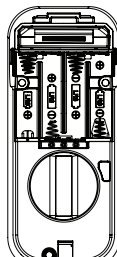
Experience a safer
and more open world



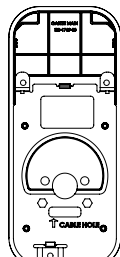
What's in the box



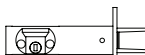
Battery
Cover



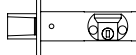
Interior
Escutcheon



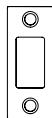
Mounting
Plate



Deadbolt Latch
2-3/4"



Deadbolt Latch
2-3/8"



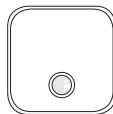
Strike Plate



Security Plate



AA x4
Batteries



August
Connect



August
Door Sense



x3
#8-32 x 5/16"
Machine Screws



x4
#8 x 3/4"
Wood Screws

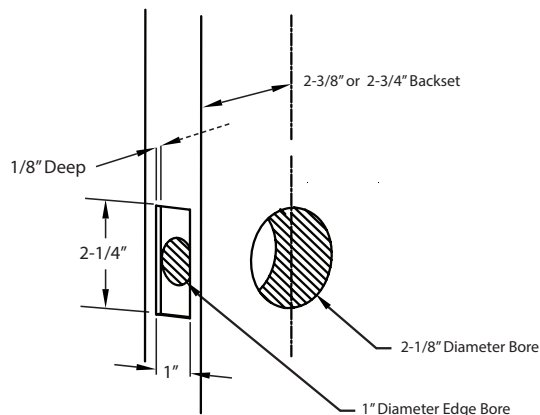


x2
#10-32 x 1-3/8"
Machine Screws

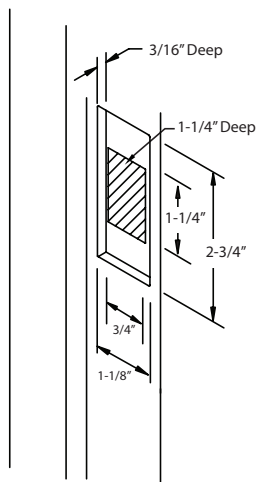


x2
#10 x 3"
Wood Screws

Door Prep

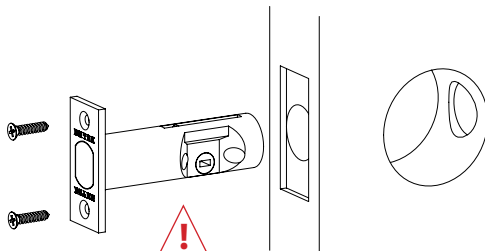


Door Jamb Prep

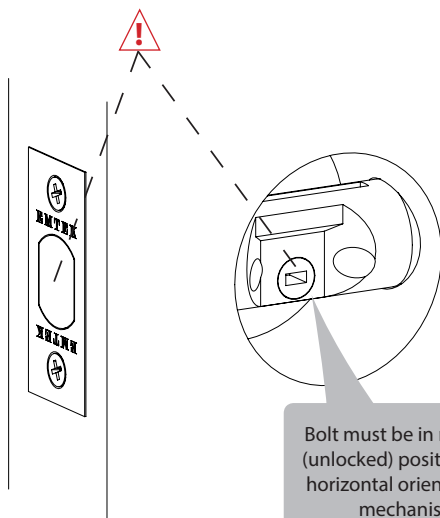


1

Install Latch & Strike Plate



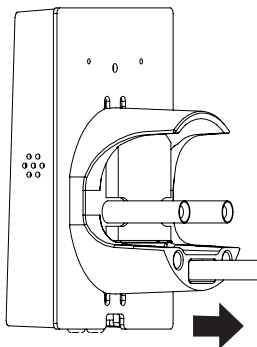
Note: Use only the supplied latch for proper functionality.



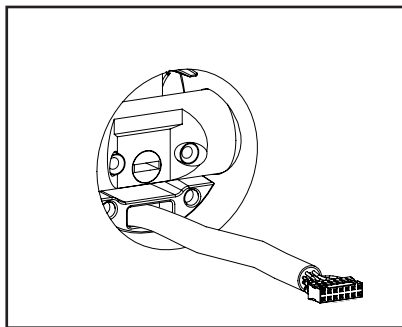
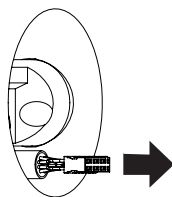


Install Touchscreen Escutcheon

Outside of the door

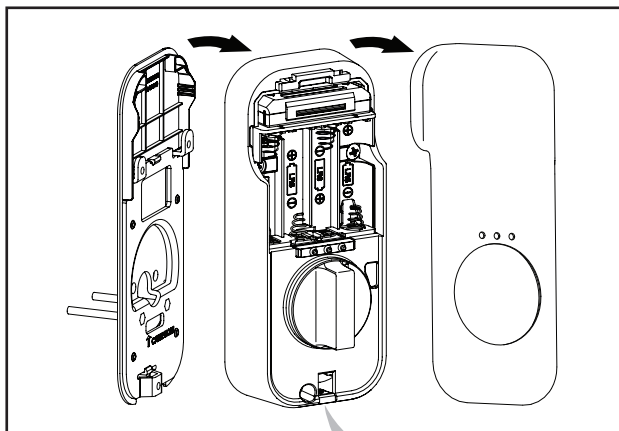


Inside of the door

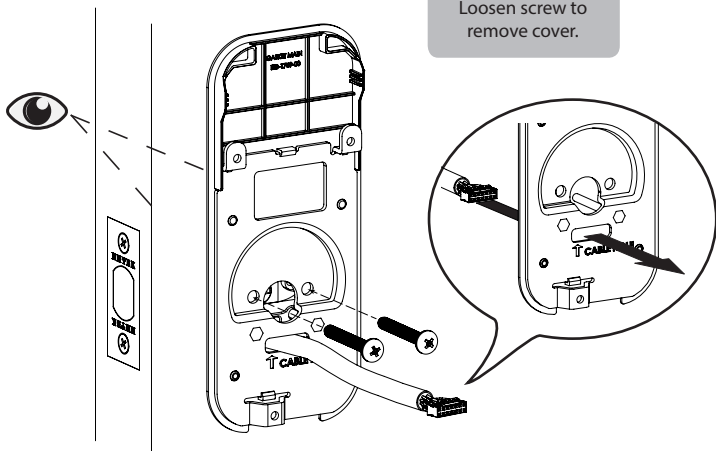


3

Install Interior Mounting Plate

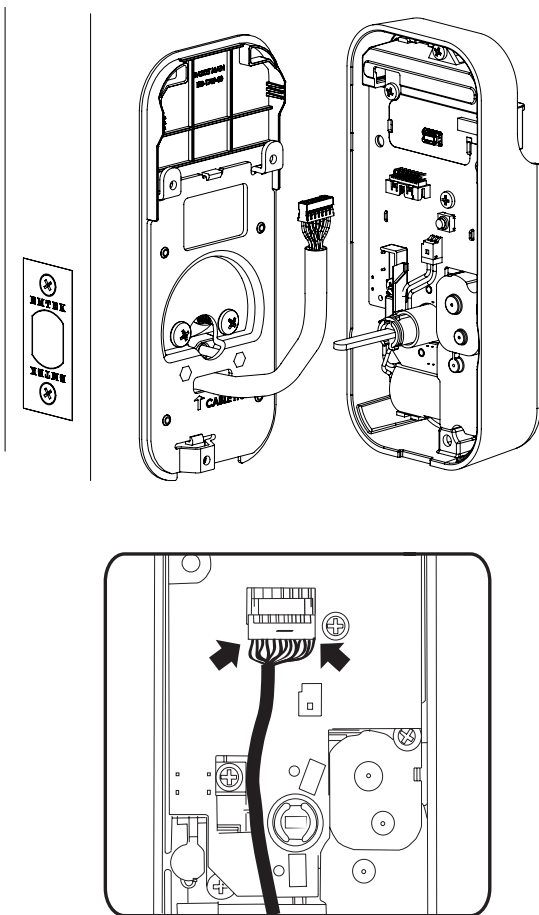


Loosen screw to
remove cover.

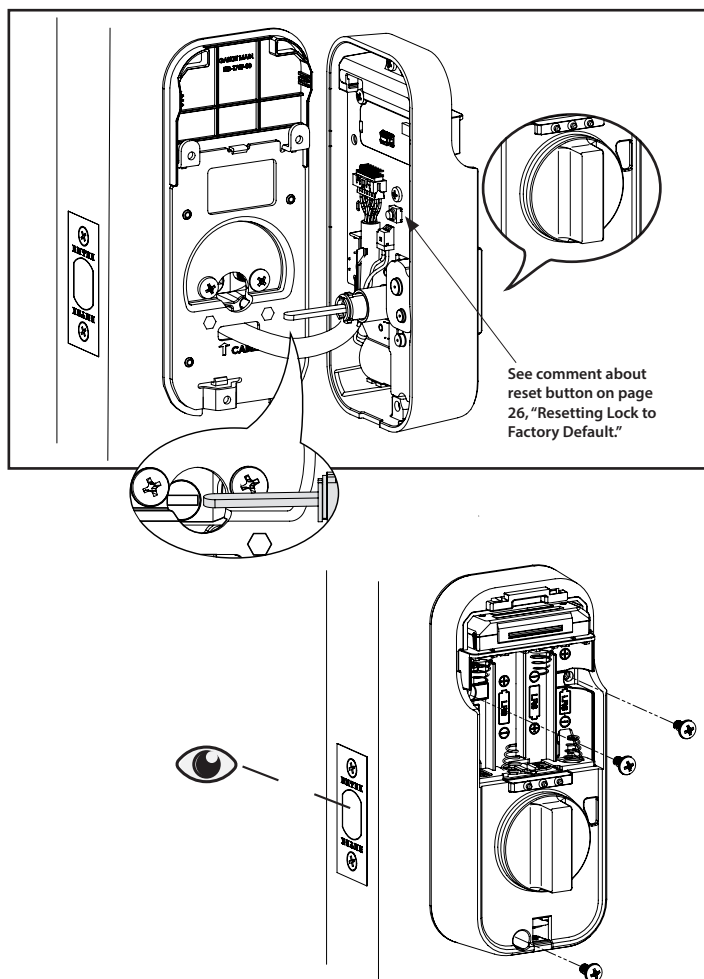


4

Connect the Cable Assembly

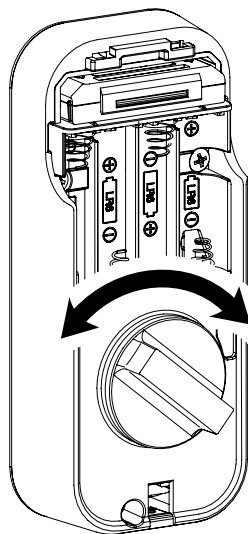
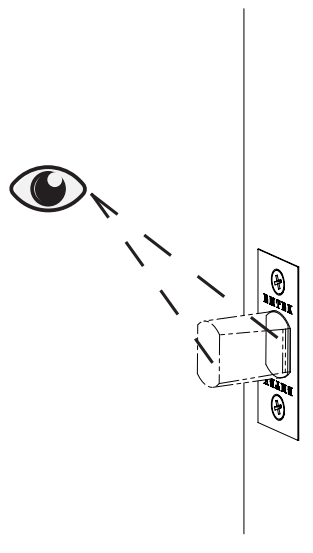


Install Interior Escutcheon



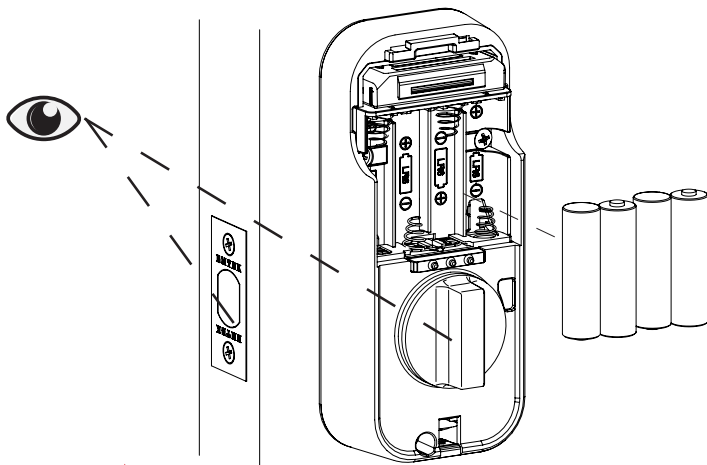
6

Testing Operation



7

Install Batteries

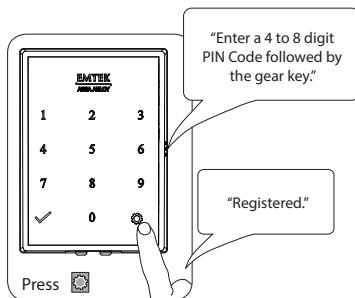
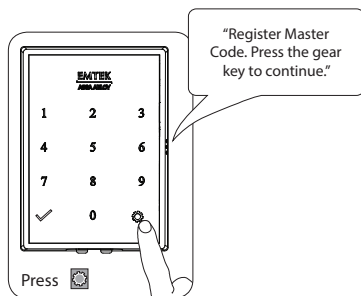
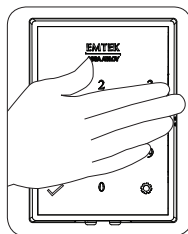


Bolt must be in retracted
(unlocked) position
before installing batteries.

8

Creating Master PIN Code

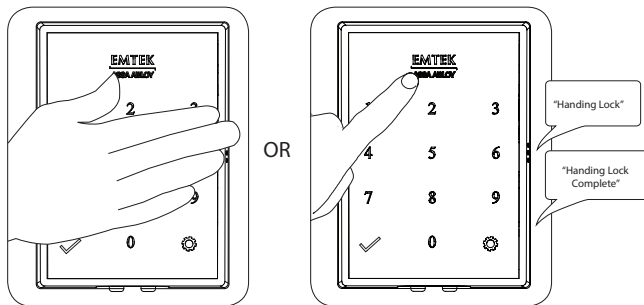
Creating a Master PIN Code must be performed upon installation or after resetting the lock to factory default. Programming and use of lock is not possible until this step has been successfully completed.



9

Handing the Lock

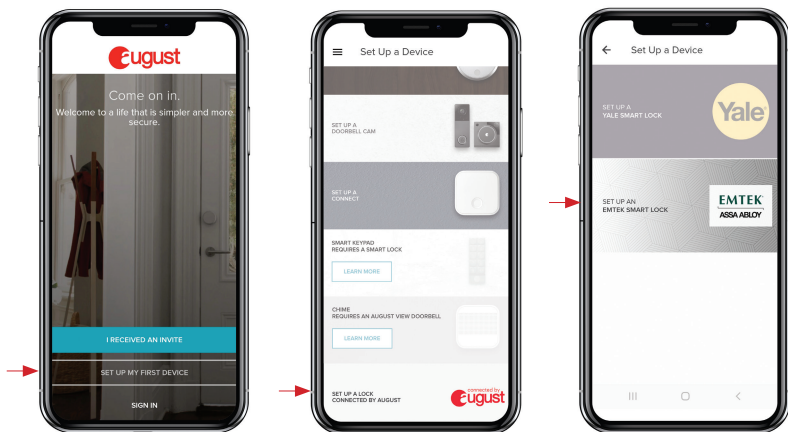
Activate the Lock



10

Go to the August App to Complete Installation

Set Up a Device - EMTEK SMART LOCK



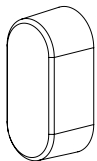
Scroll down

SET UP MY FIRST DEVICE

SET UP A LOCK
CONNECTED BY AUGUST

SET UP AN EMTEK
SMART LOCK

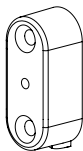
Installing DoorSense™ with Connected by August Locks - Surface Mount



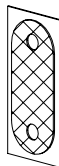
DoorSense™
Cover



Mounting
Screws

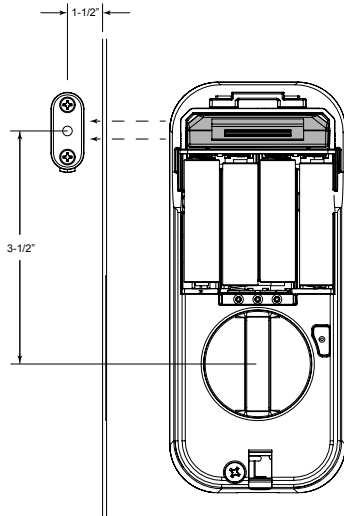


DoorSense™
Housing



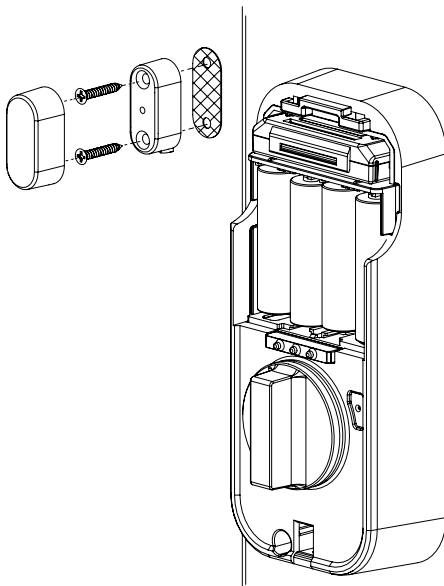
Mounting
Tape

1. Determine mounting location



Installing DoorSense™ with Connected by August Locks - Surface Mount

2. Attach mounting tape then screw into frame

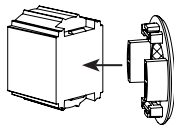
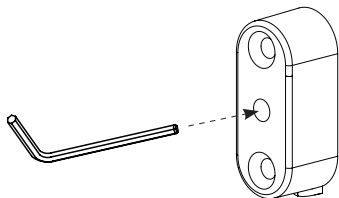


4. Go to the August app to calibrate your Lock

Installing DoorSense™ with Connected by August Locks - Flush Mount

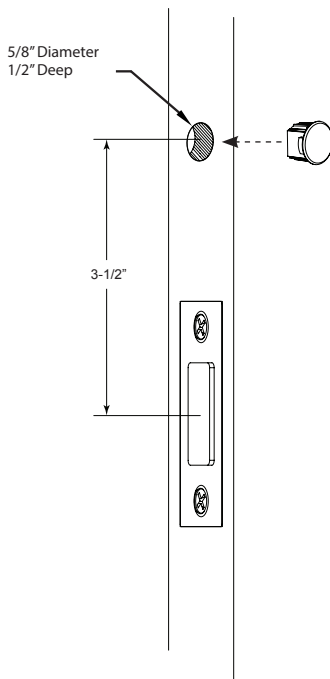


1. Remove magnet from housing and place DoorSense™ Cap onto the magnet



Installing DoorSense™ with Connected by August Locks - Flush Mount

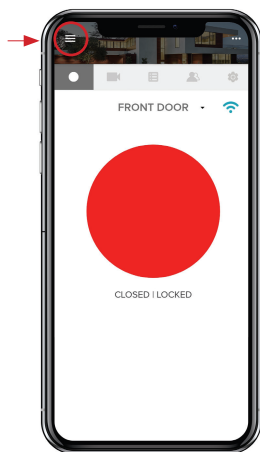
2. Drill hole and Insert DoorSense™



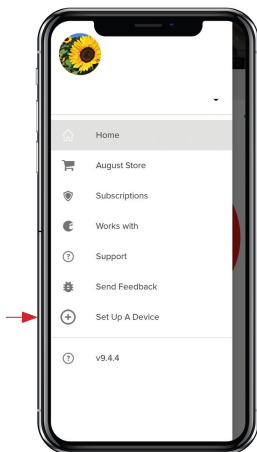
3. Go to the August app to calibrate your Lock

Go to the August App to Complete Installation

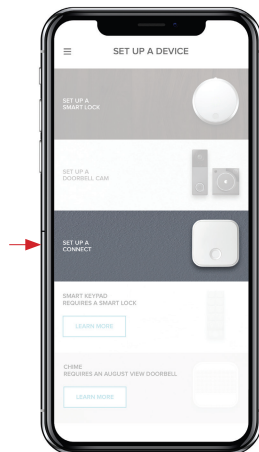
Set Up a Connect Hub



GO TO MENU

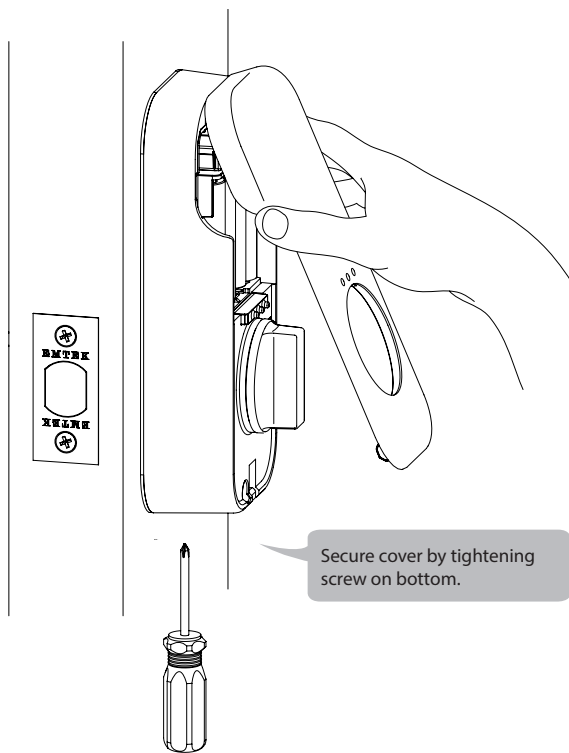


SET UP A DEVICE



SET UP A CONNECT

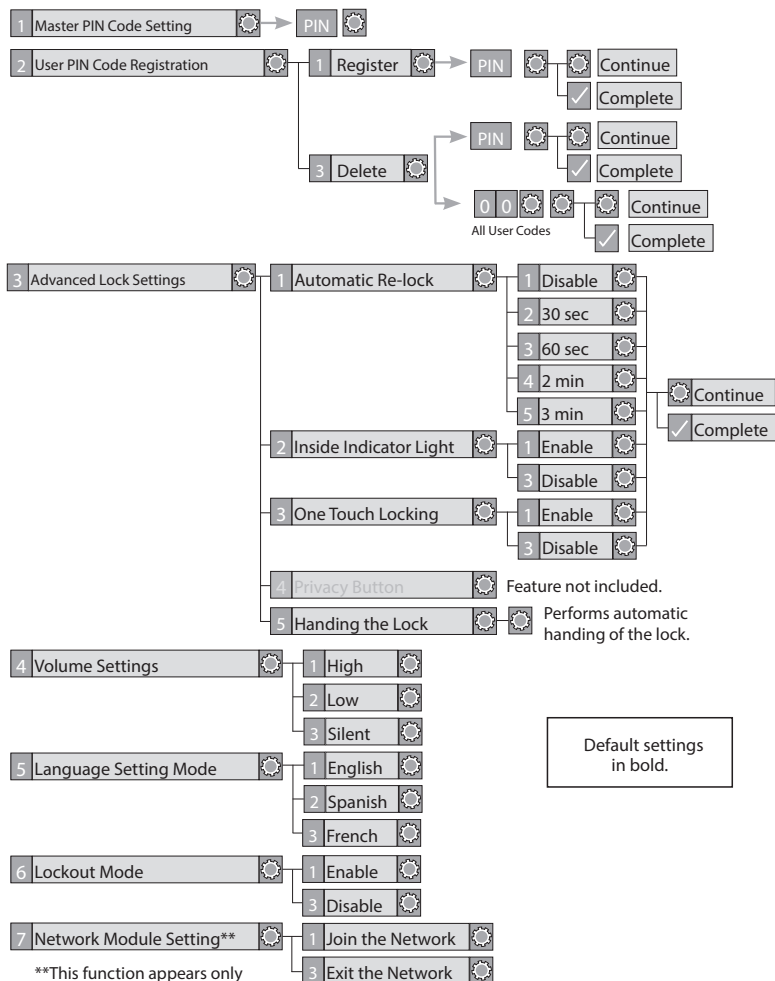
Install Cover



Feature Programming Through Menu Mode Using Master PIN Code*

1. Touch screen with back of hand or palm to activate.
2. Enter 4-8 digit master PIN Code* followed by  key.
Lock Response: "Menu mode, enter number, press  key to continue."
3. Enter digit corresponding to the function to be performed followed by the  key.
Follow the voice commands.

*The Master PIN Code must be registered prior to any other programming of the lock.



**This function appears only with network module installed.

Definitions

All Code Lockout Mode: This feature is enabled by the Master PIN Code. When enabled, it restricts all user (except Master) PIN Code access. When attempting to enter a code while the unit is in Lockout, the RED locked padlock will appear on the screen.

Automatic Re-lock Time: After a successful code entry and the unit unlocks, it will automatically re-lock after thirty (30) seconds.

Inside Indicator Light: Located on the interior escutcheon. Shows active status (Locked) of lock and can be enabled or disabled in the Advanced Lock Settings (Main Menu selection #3).

Language Setting Mode: Choosing English (1), Spanish (2) or French (3) becomes the (default) setting for the lock's voice prompts.

Low Battery: When battery power is low, the Low Battery Warning indicator flashes RED. If battery power is completely lost, use the 9 Volt battery override. To use the 9V battery override apply 9V battery, in either direction, to terminals below the touchscreen for backup power option. Wake up the lock and enter your PIN Code to unlock the door.

Master PIN Code: The Master PIN Code is used for programming and for feature settings. It must be created prior to programming the lock. The Master PIN Code will also operate (unlock/lock) the lock.

Network Module Settings: With the optional Network Module installed, this setting becomes available through the Main menu (7) and allows the lock to connect with a network controller.

One Touch Locking: When the latch is retracted, activating the keypad will extend the latch (during Automatic Re-lock duration or when Automatic Re-lock is disabled). When One-Touch Re-lock is not in use (disabled), any valid PIN Code will re-lock the lock.

Previous: While in Menu Mode, pressing this icon cancels the current operation and returns the user to the previous step.

Privacy Mode: Privacy mode is disabled by default Privacy mode is enabled/disabled in the app.

Shutdown Time: The unit is shutdown (flashing RED) for sixty (60) seconds and does not allow operation after the wrong code entry limit (5 attempts) has been met.

Tamper Alert: Audible alarm sounds if attempting to forcibly remove outside lock from door.

User PIN Code: The User Code operates the lock. Maximum number of User Codes is 250 with Network Module; without Network Module maximum is 25 User Codes. Note: When deleting User Code(s), screen will display User Number (not code) being deleted.

Volume Setting Mode: The volume setting for PIN Code verification is set to Low (2) by default; otherwise it can be set to High (1) or Silent (3) for quiet areas.

Wrong Code Entry Limit: After five (5) unsuccessful attempts at entering a valid PIN Code, the unit will shut down and not allow operation.

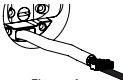
Programming Troubleshooting

Symptom	Suggested Action
Lock does not respond - door is open and accessible.	• Touchscreen becomes active when pressed with whole hand. Use larger area of the hand or fingers and verify contact with at least 3 numbers. • If touchscreen numbers are visible, check to see if they respond when pressed. • Check batteries are installed and oriented correctly (polarity) in the battery case. • Check batteries are in good condition; replace batteries* if discharged. • Check to see if touchscreen harness is fully connected and not pinched.
Lock does not respond - door is locked and inaccessible.	• Batteries may be completely discharged. • Apply 9V Battery to terminals below the touchscreen for backup power option.
Unit is on for a while then shows no reaction. Lights dim.	• Batteries do not have enough power. Replace Batteries*.
Unit Chimes to indicate code acceptance, but the door will not open.	• Check door gaps for any foreign objects between door and frame. • Check that the wire harness is firmly connected to the PCB.
Unit operates to allow access, but will not automatically re-lock	• Check to see if Auto Re-lock Mode is enabled. • Disable Auto Re-lock Mode to lock the door (automatically). • If low battery indicator is lit (see below), change batteries*.
PIN Codes will not register.	• PIN Codes must consist of 4 to 8 digits to register. • The same PIN Code cannot be used for multiple users. • Registration/management of PIN Codes is set by the authority of the Master Code, which is set first. • Contact the Master user. • User Codes must be entered within 5 seconds (while touchscreen is active) or process will have to be restarted. • Check  or  gear cannot be used as part of the PIN Code.
Upon entering a PIN Code and pressing  key, the unit displays "invalid code" error or lock times out without responding.	• Lockout Mode is enabled. • Only the Master user can enable/disable Lockout Mode. • Contact the Master user.
Upon entering a PIN Code and pressing the  key, the red padlock icon appears and there are different tones.	• Check to see if the lock is set to Lockout Mode. • Setting/managing Lockout Mode is done through Master Code only. • Contact the Master user.
The unit operates but it makes no sound.	• Check to see if Silent Mode is enabled (see Feature #4)
The unit responds "Low Battery"	• This is the alert to replace the batteries. Replace all four (4) batteries* with new AA Alkaline batteries.
Upon entering a PIN Code and pressing the  key, the unit responds "Wrong number of digits".	• The digits entered were incorrect or incomplete. Re-enter the correct code followed by the check  key.

*When batteries are replaced. Network Module locks have a real time clock that will be set through the User Interface (UI); it is recommended to verify correct date and time particularly those locks operating under Daylight Saving Time (DST).

Hardware Troubleshooting

Cycle lock in both the locked and unlocked positions. If problems are found:

Door is binding	
a. Check that door and frame are properly aligned and door is free swinging. b. Check hinges: They should not be loose or have excessive wear on knuckles.	
Bolt will not deadlock	
a. Check for sufficient clearance of the bolt within the strike-side jamb. Correct this by increasing the depth of the pocket for the bolt. b. Check for misalignment of bolt and/or strike which may be preventing bolt from properly entering the strike. With the door open, extend and retract the bolt; if it is smooth, check the strike alignment.	
Bolt does not extend or retract smoothly	
a. Bolt and strike are misaligned, see above. b. Check the backset of door relative to adjustments already made to bolt. c. Verify proper door preparation and re-bore holes that are too small or misaligned. d. Verify keypad wire harness is routed under the bolt (see Fig. A) e. Verify bolt is installed with correct side up (Fig. A)	
Keypad numerics are scrolling	
Remove interior escutcheon and check to ensure that the wire harness lies flat against the back recessed area and is properly routed along the side of the escutcheon and tucked under the plastic cable guide.	

NOTE TO INSTALLER AND CONSUMER

While EMTEK has included several features to prevent lockout (9V battery jumper, low battery warnings), it is still possible for a lockout situation to occur. Because this product does not have a mechanical override (a key), EMTEK recommends to use this product in an environment where there are additional entry points into the dwelling.

Resetting Lock to Factory Default

When lock is reset to factory defaults, all User Codes (including the Master PIN Code*) are deleted and all programming features are reset to original default settings (see below).

1. Remove battery cover and batteries.
2. Remove the interior escutcheon to access the reset button.
3. The reset button (see page 8, Step 5) is located beside the PCB cable connector.
4. While pressing the reset button (Minimum of 3 seconds) reinstall batteries.
Release reset button.
5. Replace battery cover.

Upon reset, Master PIN Code creation is the only option available and must be performed prior to any other programming of the lock.

Factory Settings

Settings	Factory Settings
Master PIN Code	Registration required*
Automatic Re-lock	Disabled
Inside Indicator Light	Disabled (Off)
One Touch Locking	Enabled
Volume Setting	Enable (Low)
Language Setting	English
Lockout Mode	Disabled
Automatic Re-lock Time	30 Seconds
Wrong Code Entry Limit	5 Times
Shutdown Time	60 Seconds

*The Master PIN Code must be registered prior to any other programming of the lock.

Compliance

FCC INTERFERENCE STATEMENT

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions. (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation.

This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.

However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one of the following

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

FCC Caution: Any changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Radiation Exposure Statement:

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance 20cm between the radiator & your body.

INDUSTRY CANADA COMPLIANT

This device complies with RSS-210 of the Industry Canada Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Radiation Exposure Statement:

This equipment complies with IC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance 20cm between the radiator & your body.

INDUSTRIE CANADA CONFORME

Ce dispositif est conforme à la norme CNR-210 d'industrie Canada applicable aux appareils radio exempts de licence. Son fonctionnement est sujet aux deux conditions suivantes: (1) le dispositif ne doit pas produire de brouillage préjudiciable, et (2) ce dispositif doit accepter tout brouillage reçu. y compris un brouillage susceptible de provoquer un fonctionnement indésirable.

Déclaration d'exposition aux radiations:

Cet équipement est conforme aux limites d'exposition aux rayonnements IC établies pour un environnement non contrôlé. Cet équipement doit être installé et utilisé avec un minimum de 20 cm de distance entre la source de rayonnement et votre corps.

The ASSA ABLOY Group is the global leader in access solutions. Every day we help people feel safe, secure and experience a more open world.



IN8-EMPWRUNTY

REV 19B 11-26-19

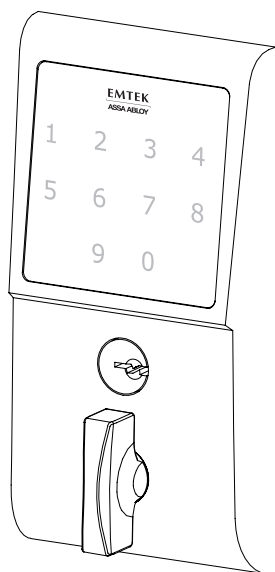
Copyright © 2019, EMTEK Products, Inc. an ASSA ABLOY Group company. All rights reserved. Reproduction in whole or in part without the express written permission of EMTEK Products, Inc. is prohibited.

 **WARNING:** This product can expose you to chemicals including lead, which is known to the state of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov.

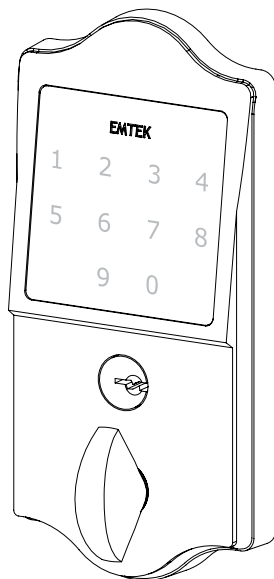
Installation & Programming Guide

EMTouch™ & EMTouch™ Classic Style

Electronic Deadbolt Locksets

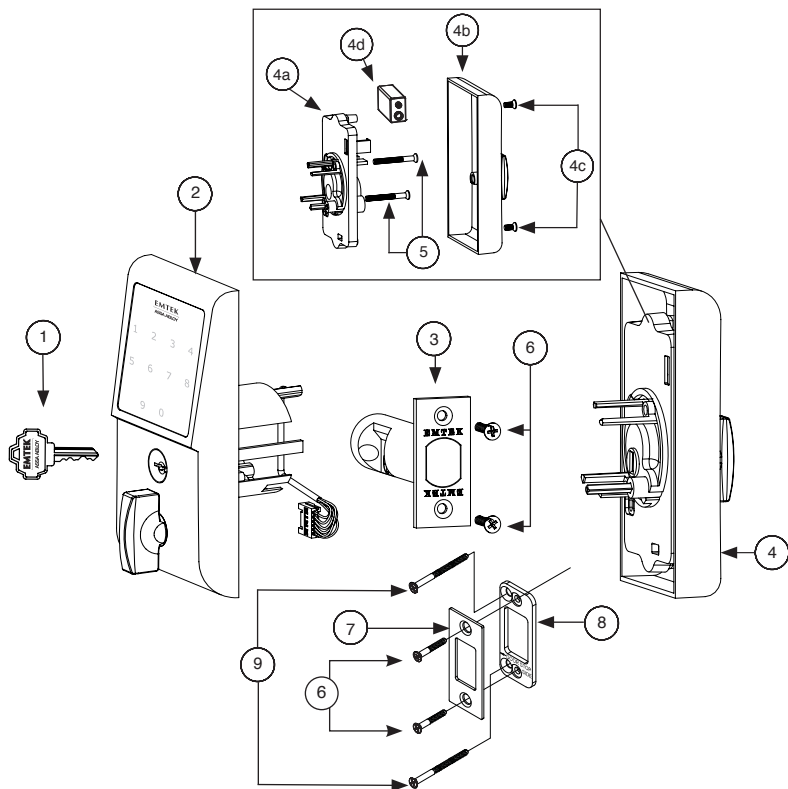


EMTouch™



EMTouch™ Classic Style

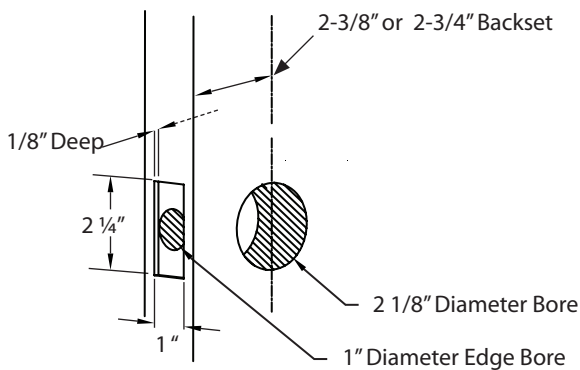
What's in the Box



ITEM NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY.
1	Key	2
2	Outside Trim Plate Assembly	1
3	Deadbolt Latch Assembly 2 3/8" or 2 1/4" Backset	1
4	Inside Trim Plate Assembly	1
4a	Inside Chassis	1
4b	Inside Trim Plate	1
4c	#8-32 x 3/8" Flat Head Machine Screw	2
4d	9V Alkaline Battery	1
5	#8-32 x 1 1/2" Flat Head Machine Screw	2
6	#8 x 3/4" Wood Screw	4
7	Strike Plate	1
8	Security Plate	1
9	#10 x 3" Wood Screw	2

Preparation

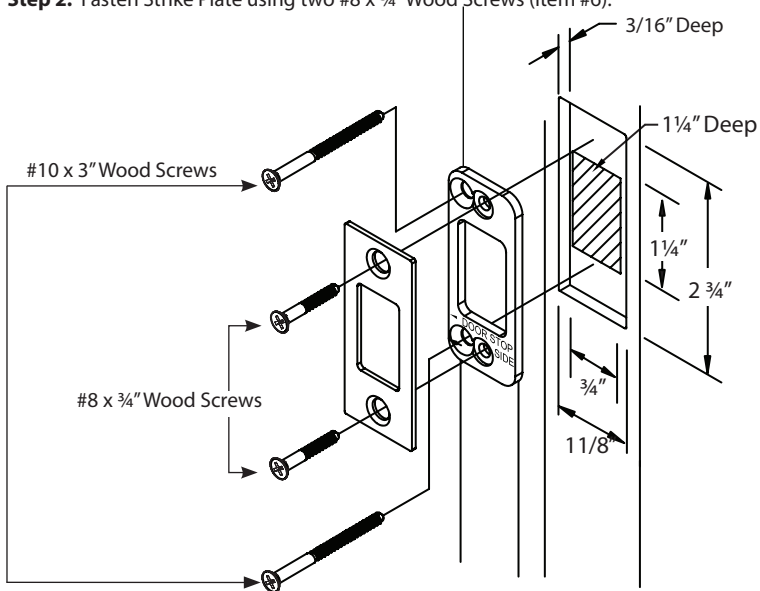
1. Door Prep



2. Door Jamb Prep

Step 1: Fasten Security Plate using two #10 x 3" Wood Screws (item #9).

Step 2: Fasten Strike Plate using two #8 x 3/4" Wood Screws (item #6).



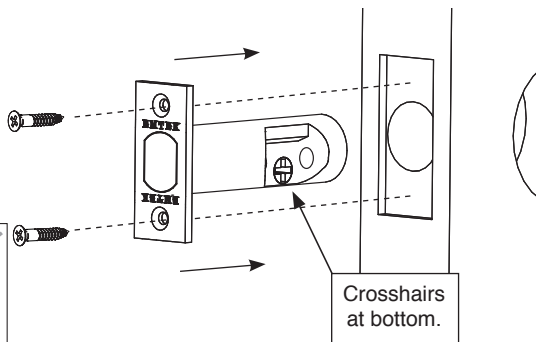
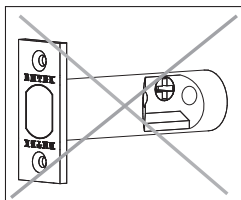
How to Install

1. Install Latch

Fasten Latch using two #8 x ¾" Wood Screws (item #6).



THE LATCH ASSEMBLY MUST BE ORIENTED AS SHOWN AND THE BOLT MUST BE IN THE RETRACTED POSITION FOR INSTALLATION.

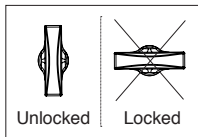


2. Remove Screws from Inside Trim Plate

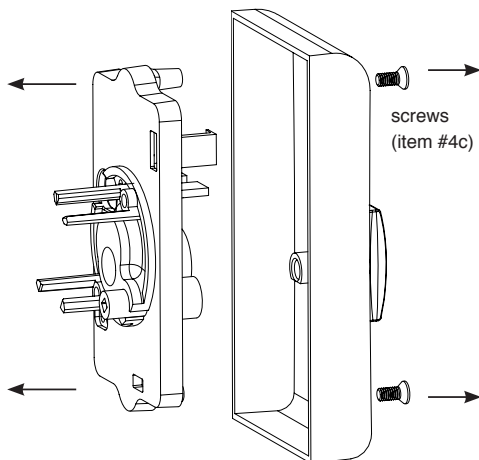
Use a Phillips head screwdriver to remove screws (item #4c) shown below and detach Inside Trim Plate from the Inside Chassis.



REMOVE INSIDE CHASSIS FROM TRIM PLATE BEFORE INSTALLING THE OUTSIDE TRIM. THUMBTURN MUST BE IN UNLOCKED POSITION.



Scan this QR code for details.



3. Install Outside Trim Plate Assembly

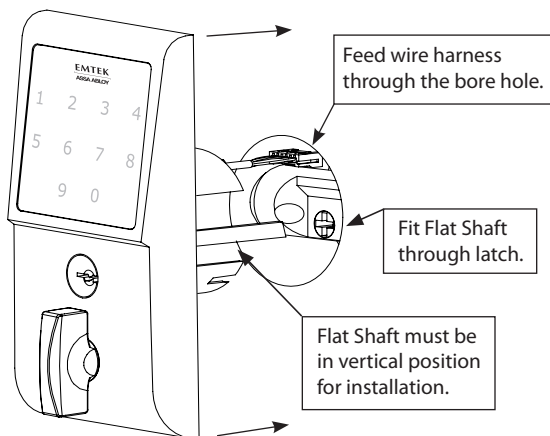
Position the Outside Trim Plate Assembly through the bore hole.



**ONCE POSITIONED,
OUTSIDE TRIM PLATE
ASSEMBLY REQUIRES
SUPPORT.**



Scan
this QR
code for
details.



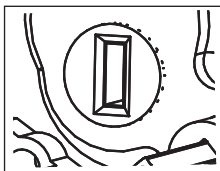
4. Install Inside Chassis

Step 1: Confirm the position of Flat Shaft.

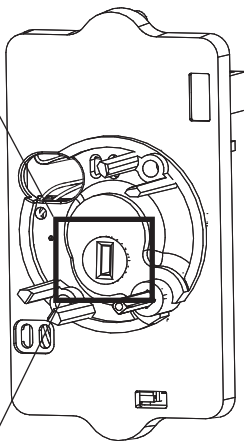
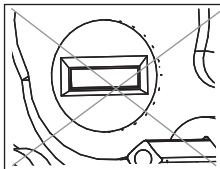


**HOLE FOR FLAT
SHAFT MUST BE IN
VERTICAL POSITION
FOR INSTALLATION.**

✓ Correct for Installation.

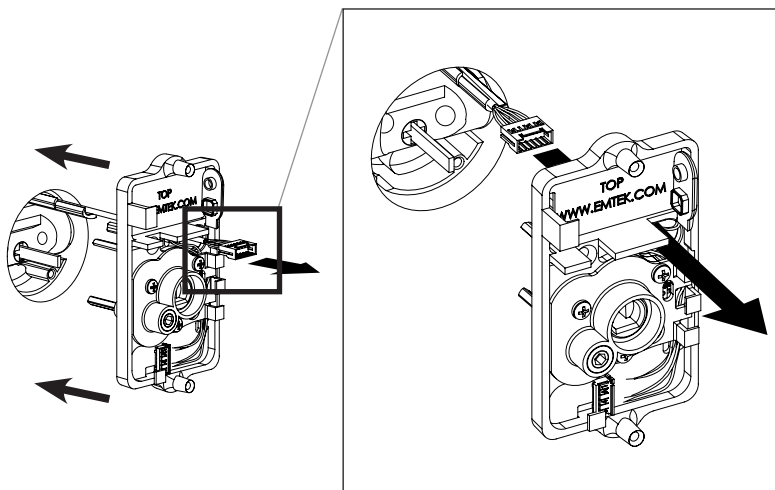


✗ Incorrect for Installation.



4. Install Inside Chassis

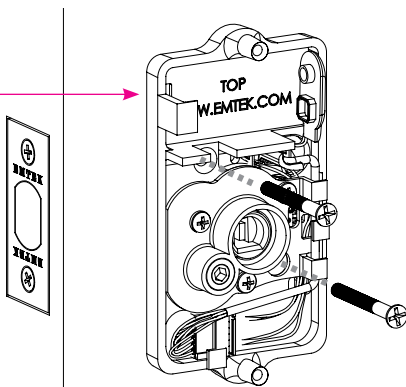
Step 2: Feed the Wire Harness through Inside Chassis.



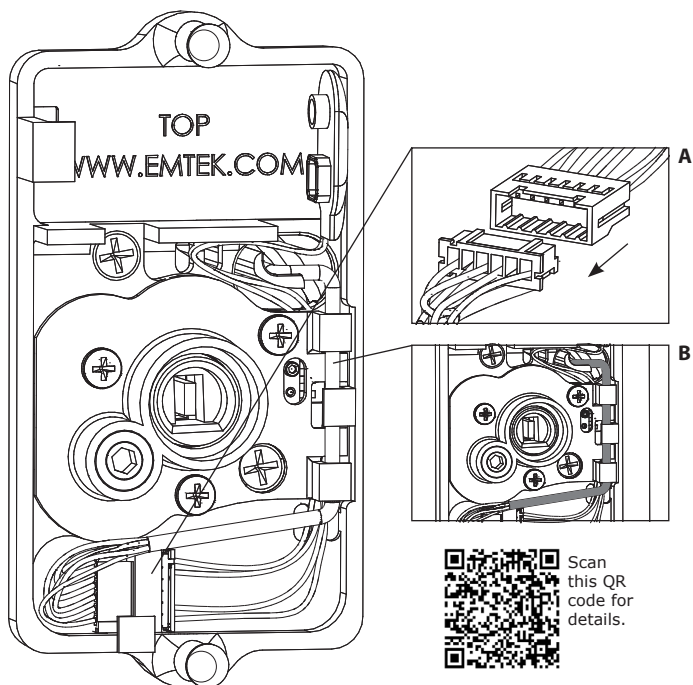
Step 3: Fasten Inside Chassis using two #8-32 x 1½" Flat Head Machine Screws (item #5).



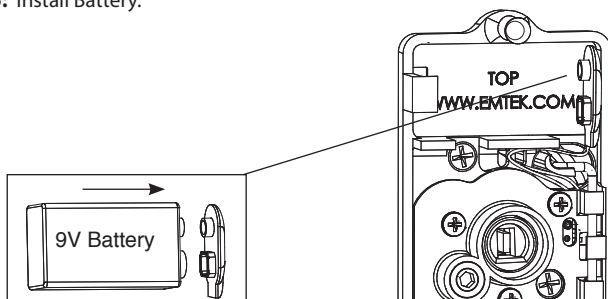
**CHECK ALIGNMENT BEFORE
FULLY TIGHTENING SCREWS.**



Step 4: Connect Wire Harness (A) and tuck Connectors as shown (B).



Step 5: Install Battery.



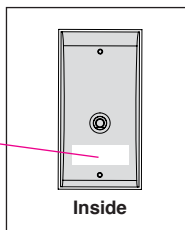
For optimal performance, always use a good quality battery.

5. Install Inside Trim Plate

Fasten Inside Trim Plate using two #8-32 x 3/8" Flat Head Machine Screws (item #4c).



**USER CODES
ARE LOCATED
ON THE INSIDE
TRIM PLATE &
ON PAGE 11.**

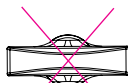


Correct for installation



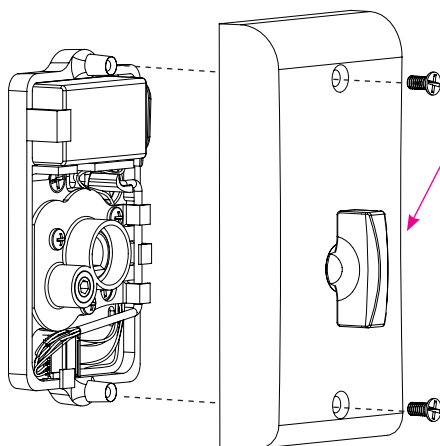
***Unlocked**

Incorrect for installation



Locked

***Unlocked position** is required for installation and removal of the Inside Trim Plate Assembly.



**THUMBTURN MUST BE IN
UNLOCKED POSITION FOR
INSTALLATION.**

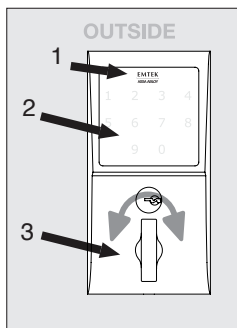
Screws (item #4c)

Your Lock is Ready to Use

Your Emtek lock is shipped with two 4-digit user codes and a 6-digit programming code. These codes are randomly generated at the factory. *(Turn to next page for Programming Instructions.)*

To Unlock:

1. Press EMTEK key or touch 3 fingers across screen.
2. Enter 4-digit user codes.
(See sticker located on the inside trim plate or on page 11).
3. Rotate Thumbturn.



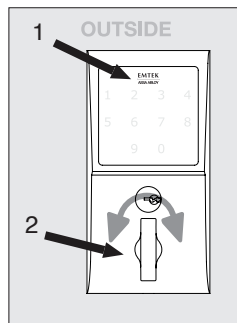
To Lock:

Option 1

1. Press EMTEK key.
2. Rotate Thumbturn.

Option 2

1. Touch 3 fingers across screen.
2. Enter 4-digit user codes.
(See sticker located on the inside trim plate or on page 11).
3. Rotate Thumbturn.



Programming Your Lock

In order to perform each of the following six functions, the lock must first be placed in Programming Mode:

1. Press and hold EMTEK button for 3 seconds
2. **Yellow** LED flashes, then remains solid*, number keys also illuminate
3. Enter Programming Code
4. **Yellow** LED flashes, then 1 beep
5. **Yellow** LED remains solid (awaiting button press; see following Table)

IF YOU WISH TO	PRESS BUTTON	ACTIONS		INDICATORS
Change Programming Code (6 digits)	1	Enter New Programming Code (6 digits)	Re-Enter New Programming Code (6 digits)	• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
Add User Code (4 digits) (Store up to 20 User Codes)	2	Enter New User Code (4 digits)	Re-Enter New User Code (4 digits)	• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
Delete User Code	3	Enter User Code to be Deleted	Re-Enter User Code to be Deleted	• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
**Enable/Disable All User Codes	4	Entering '4' disables all Users (enables all if disabled)		• 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
Delete All User Codes	5	Re-Enter Programming Code		• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
Turn Beeper On/Off	6	Entering '6' turns OFF (or ON)		• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps

*If no input within 20 seconds, **Yellow** LED goes out, **Red** LED flashes and lock exits Programming Mode.

**Also referred to as "vacation mode". This command temporarily disables all user codes (metal key override will still work).

Keypad Operation - Beeper & LED Indicators

Function	Indicators
Valid Code	• 1 short beep, EMTEK button flashes Green .
Invalid Code/Access Denied*	• 1 Red LED flash • 2 short beeps
Lock-Out Mode Error	• 2 short beeps • 1 short beep per second for duration
Access Accepted	• 1 short beep • 1 Green LED flash
Low Battery	• 4 Red LED flashes • 4 short beeps
Blackout Battery**	• 1 long Red LED flash • 4 long beeps
Button Press Accepted	• 1 Yellow LED flash • 1 Short Beep
Outside Thumb Turn Enabled	• 2 Green LED flashes

* If 3 consecutive incorrect codes are entered, the lock emits 4 short beeps and a flashing **Red** EMTEK button. The lock will not accept additional input for 20 seconds (20 beeps). When the next valid code is entered the lock will beep quickly 5 times to alert of the incorrect codes.

** Battery voltage has dropped too low; keypad will be disabled but metal key override will still work.

Restoring the Lock to Factory Default Setting

This procedure clears the lock of all users and restores the Programming Code and 2 User Codes shipped with the lock.

- Press and hold EMTEK button for 3 seconds.
- Enter "000000"
- After 2 beeps and 2 **Green** LED Flash, remove power (disconnect 9V battery) from Lock.
- After 5 seconds, restore power (reconnect 9V battery)
- Confirm by 2 beeps and 2 **Green** LED Flash.

U.S. patent: **8,141,400**

International patents pending.

Place Sticker Here



Scan this QR for
installation videos



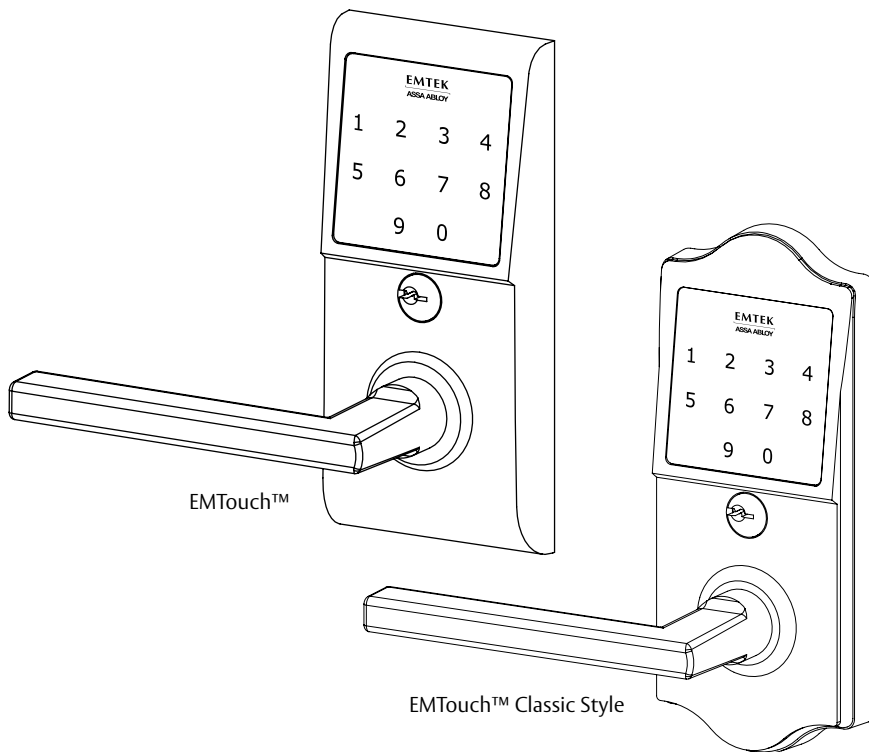
ASSA ABLOY is the global leader in door opening solutions, dedicated to satisfying end-user needs for security, safety and convenience.

Copyright © 2012, Emtek Products, Inc. an ASSA ABLOY Group company. All rights reserved. Reproduction in whole or in part without the express written permission of Emtek Products, Inc. is prohibited.

Installation & Programming Guide

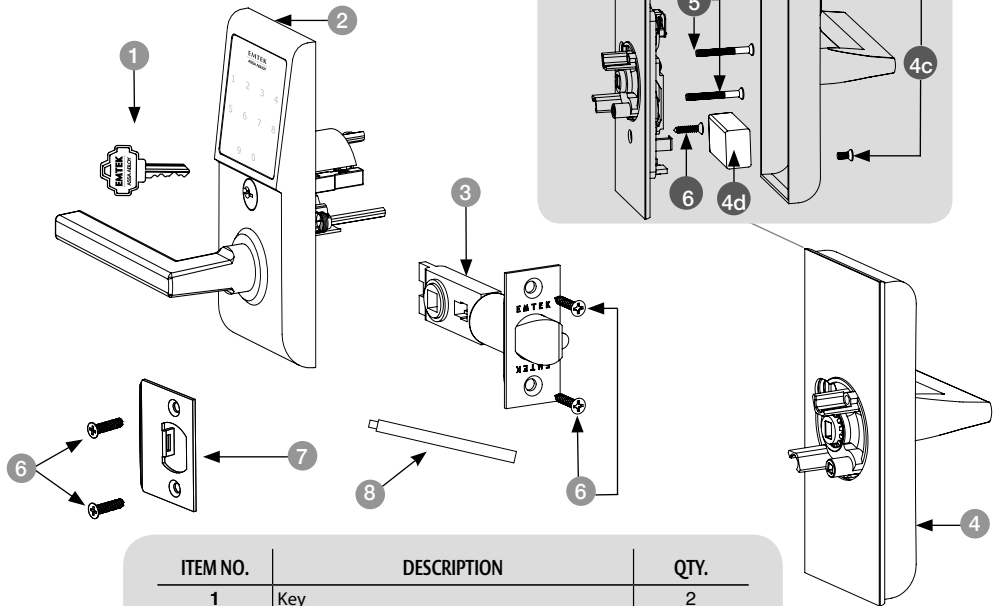
EMTEK®
ASSA ABLOY

EMTouch™ & EMTouch™ Classic Style Electronic Lever Locksets



ASSA ABLOY, the global leader in door opening solutions

What's in the Box



ITEM NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY.
1	Key	2
2	Outside Trim Plate Assembly	1
3	Latch for 2 3/8" or 2 3/4" Backset	1
4	Inside Trim Plate Assembly	1
4a	Inside Chassis	1
4b	Inside Trim Plate	1
4c	#8-32 x 3/8" Flat Head Machine Screw	2
4d	9V Alkaline Battery	1
5	#8-32 x 1 1/2" Flat Head Machine Screw	2
6	#8 x 3/4" Wood Screw	5
7	Strike Plate	1
8	Plastic Extender	1

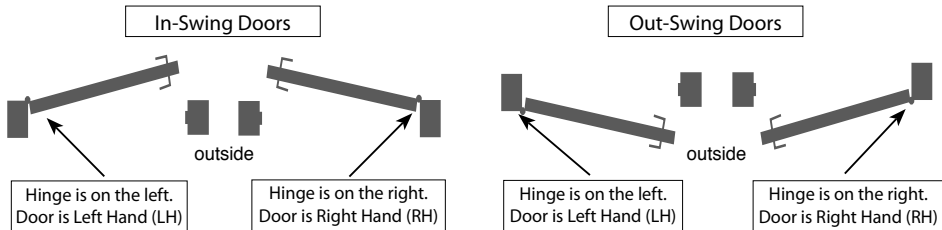
Preparation

Confirm Handing

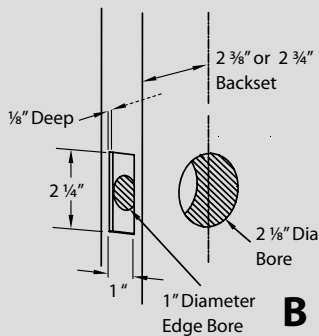
A

EN

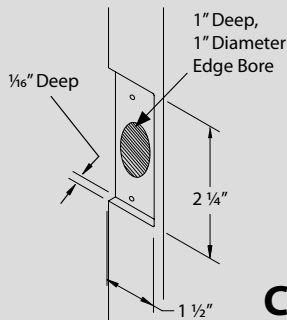
HANDING OF DOOR IS ALWAYS DETERMINED FROM THE OUTSIDE



Door Prep

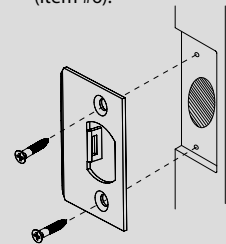


Door Jamb Prep



Install Strike Plate

Fasten Strike Plate using two #8 x 3/4" Wood Screws (item #6).

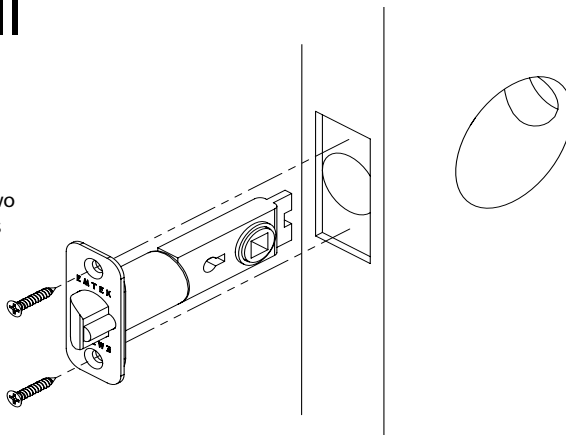


How to Install

1

Install Latch

Fasten Latch using two #8 x 3/4" Wood Screws (item #6).

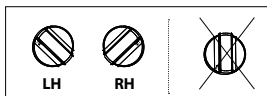


Remove Screws from Inside Trim Plate

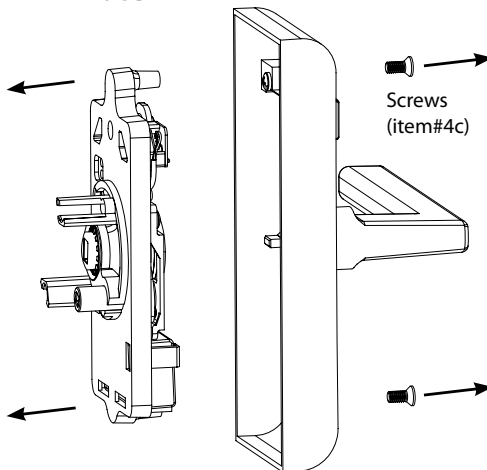
Use a Phillips head screwdriver to remove screws (item #4c) shown below and detach Inside Trim Plate from the Inside Chassis.



Remove inside chassis from trim plate before installing the outside trim. Thumbturn must be in neutral position.



See Page 3 for Handling Information.

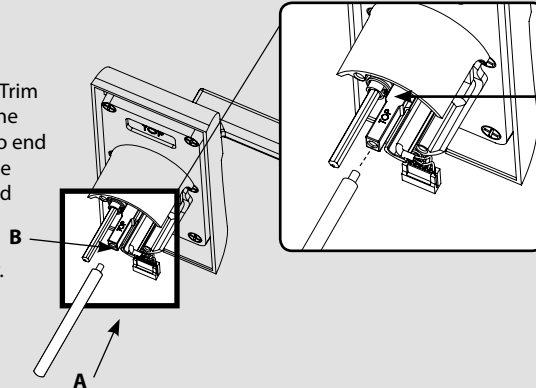


2

Install Outside Trim Plate Assembly

STEP 1

While holding Outside Trim Plate Assembly, Press the Plastic Extender (A) into end of Spindle Shaft (B). The Shaft is properly aligned when the marking 'TOP' can be seen from an overhead view.



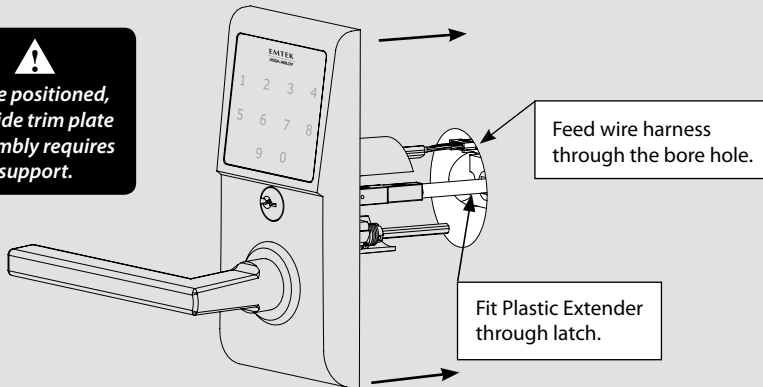
EN

3

STEP 2

Position the Outside Trim Plate Assembly through the bore hole.

!
Once positioned,
outside trim plate
assembly requires
support.



STEP 3

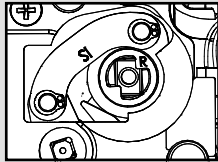
With the Outside Trim Plate Assembly flush to the door, **REMOVE** the Plastic Extender.

Install Inside Chassis

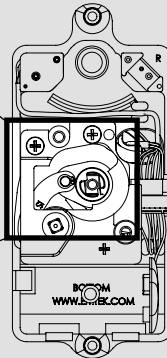
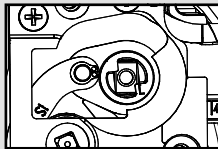
STEP 1

Confirm the position of Cam Link.

For Right Hand Locks:
Turn to right position.



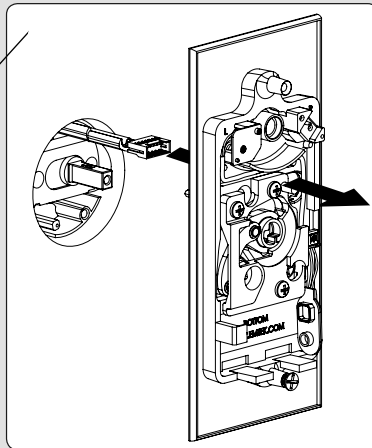
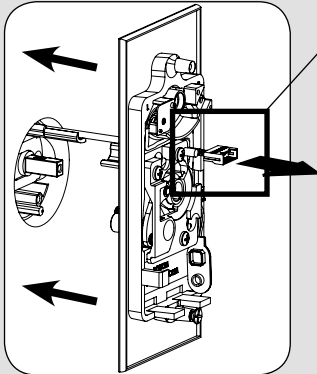
For Left Hand Locks:
Turn to left position.



*Cam link must remain
in the correct position
during installation.*

STEP 2

Feed the Wire Harness through Inside Chassis.



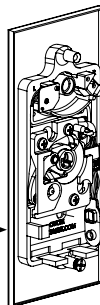
4

STEP 3

Fasten Inside Chassis using two #8-32 x 1½" Flat Head Machine Screw (item #5).



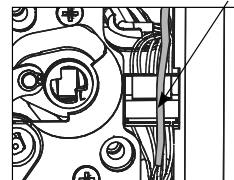
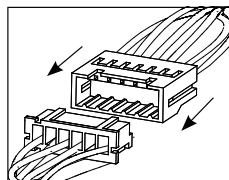
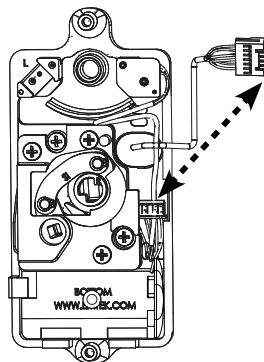
Check alignment before fully tightening screws.



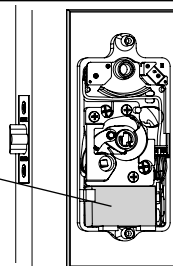
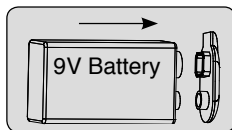
Optional - An additional #8 wood screw (provided) can be installed to prevent the interior trim from rotating

STEP 4

Connect Wire Harness (A) and tuck Connectors as shown (B).

**STEP 5**

Install Battery.

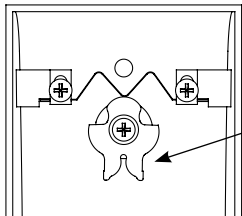


For optimal performance, always use a good quality battery.

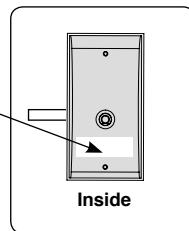
5

Install Inside Trim Plate

Fasten Inside Trim Plate using two #8-32 x 3/8" Flat Head Machine Screws (item #4c).

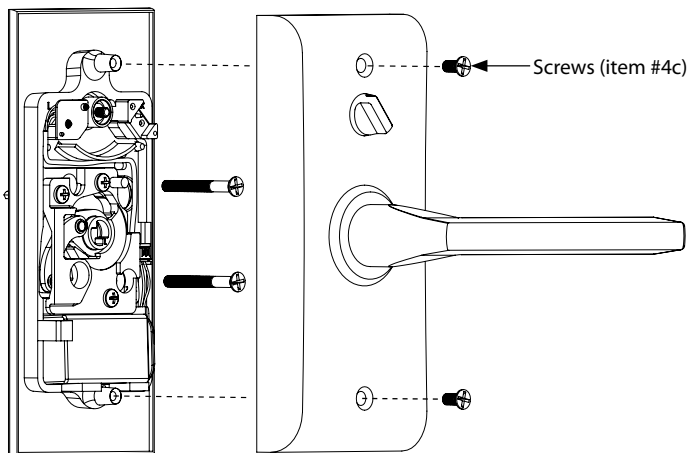


!
User codes are located on the inside trim plate & back cover page.



!
Correct position for installation. Thumbcam must be positioned as shown (Neutral Position)*

***Neutral position** is required for installation and removal of the Inside Trim Plate Assembly.



How to Use

Your Lock is Ready to Use

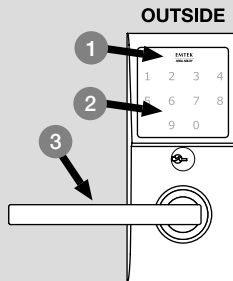
EN

Your Emtek lock is shipped with two 4-digit user codes and a 6-digit programming code. These codes are randomly generated at the factory.

(Turn to next page for Programming Instructions.)

To Unlock

1. Press EMTEK key or touch 3 fingers across screen.
2. Enter 4-digit user codes.
(See sticker located on the inside trim plate or back cover page).
3. Turn Handle.



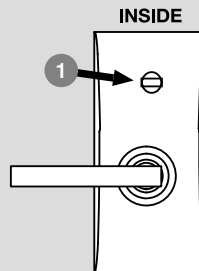
Passage Feature

(Does not apply to Keypad Storeroom/Gate product)

Activate by turning the inside thumbturn to the unlocked position. This will engage the outside lever so a code is not required to enter.

To Lock

1. Rotate Thumbturn from inside.



How to Program

Programming Your Lock

In order to perform each of the following six functions, the lock must first be placed in Programming Mode:

1. Press and hold EMTEK button for 3 seconds
2. **Yellow** LED flashes, then remains solid*, number keys also illuminate
3. Enter Programming Code
4. **Yellow** LED flashes, then 2 beeps
5. **Yellow** LED remains solid (awaiting button press; see following table)

If You Wish To	Press Button	Actions		Indicators
Change Programming Code (6 digits)	1	Enter New Programming Code (6 digits)	Re-Enter New Programming Code (6 digits)	• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
Add User Code (4 digits) (Store up to 20 User Codes)	2	Enter New User Code (4 digits)	Re-Enter New User Code (4 digits)	• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
Delete User Code	3	Enter User Code to be Deleted	Re-Enter User Code to be Deleted	• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
**Enable/Disable All User Codes	4	Entering '4' disables all Users (enables all if disabled)		• 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
Delete All User Codes	5	Re-Enter Programming Code		• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
Turn Beeper On/Off	6	Entering '6' turns OFF (or ON)		• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps

*If no input within 20 seconds, **Yellow** LED goes out, **Red** LED flashes and lock exits Programming Mode.

**Also referred to as "vacation mode". This command temporarily disables all user codes (metal key override will still work).

Keypad Operation - Beeper & LED Indicators

Function	Indicators
Valid Code	• 1 short beep, EMTEK button flashes Green .
Invalid Code/Access Denied*	• 1 Red LED flash • 2 short beeps
Lock-Out Mode Error	• 2 short beeps • 1 short beep per second for duration
Access Accepted	• 1 short beep • 1 Green LED flash
Low Battery	• 4 Red LED flashes • 4 short beeps
Blackout Battery**	• 1 long Red LED flash • 4 long beeps
Button Press Accepted	• 1 Yellow LED flash • 1 Short Beep
Outside Thumb Turn Enabled	• 2 Green LED flashes

* If 3 consecutive incorrect codes are entered, the lock emits 4 short beeps and a flashing **Red** EMTEK button. The lock will not accept additional input for 20 seconds (20 beeps). When the next valid code is entered the lock will beep quickly 3 times to alert of the incorrect codes.

** Battery voltage has dropped too low; keypad will be disabled but metal key override will still work.

Restoring the Lock to Factory Default Setting

This procedure clears the lock of all users and restores the Programming Code and 2 User Codes shipped with the lock.

- Press and hold EMTEK button for 3 seconds.
- Enter "000000"
- After 2 beeps and 2 **Green** LED Flash, remove power (disconnect 9V battery) from Lock.
- After 5 seconds, restore power (reconnect 9V battery).
- Confirm by 2 beeps and 2 **Green** LED Flash.

U.S. patents:

8,176,761

8,141,400

Canadian patents:

2,698,041

2,789,278

2,789,280

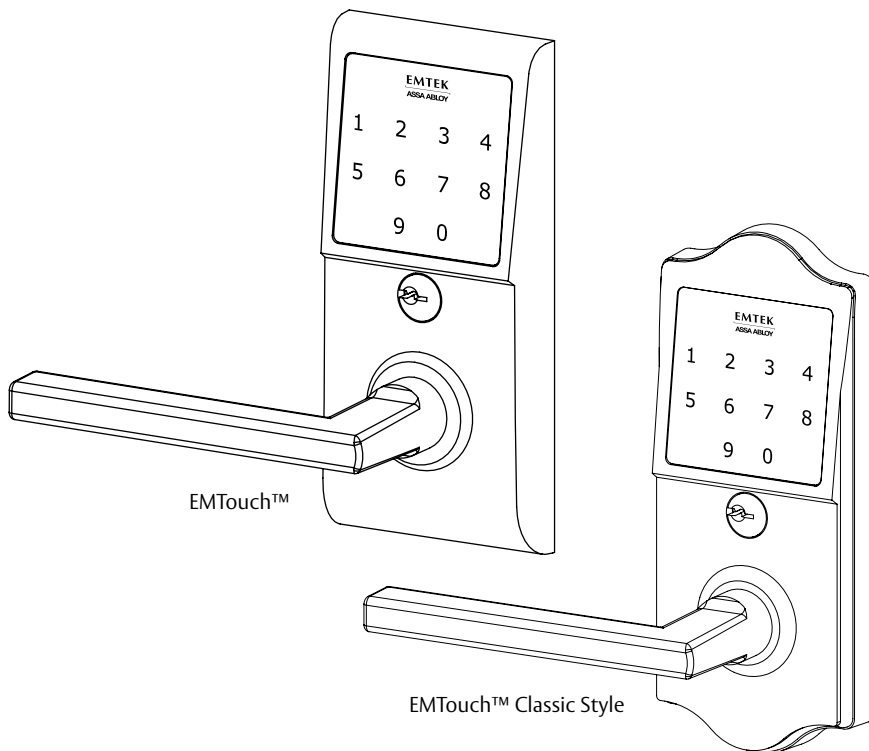
Guide d'installation et de programmation

EMTEK®
ASSA ABLOY

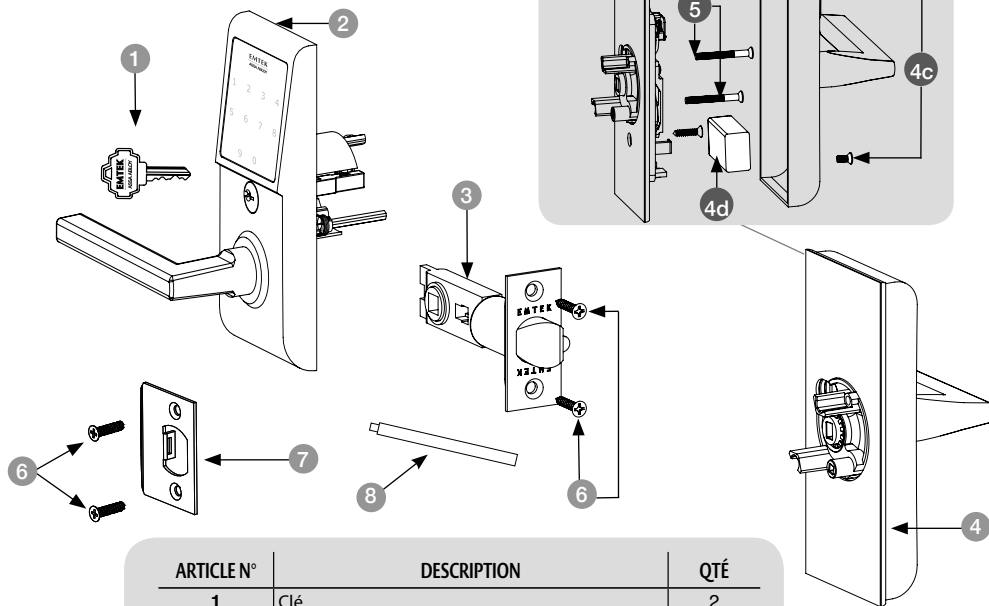
Serrures à levier électronique

EMTouch™ & EMTouch™ Classic Style

FR



Que contient la boîte



ARTICLE N°	DESCRIPTION	QTÉ
1	Clé	2
2	Assemblage de la plaque de garniture extérieure	1
3	Loquet pour 2 ¾ po ou 2 ¼ po appuie-tête	1
4	Assemblage de la plaque de garniture intérieure	1
4a	Bâti intérieur	1
4b	Plaque de garniture intérieure	1
4c	Vis à métal à tête plate #8-32 x ¾ po	2
4d	Pile alcaline de 9 V	1
5	Vis à métal à tête plate #8-32 x 1 ½ po	2
6	Vis à bois #8 x ¾ po	5
7	Plaque de gâche	1
8	Rallonge en plastique	1

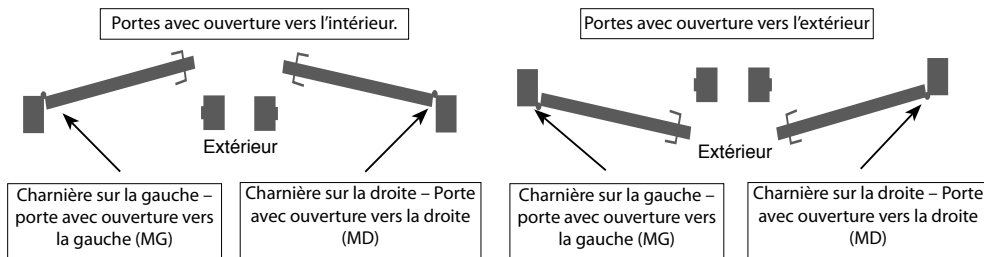
Préparation

Confirmation du sens d'ouverture

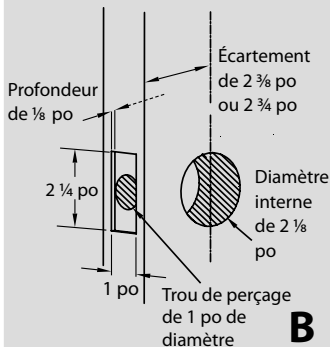
A

LE SENS DE LA PORTE EST TOUJOURS DÉTERMINÉ DE L'EXTÉRIEUR

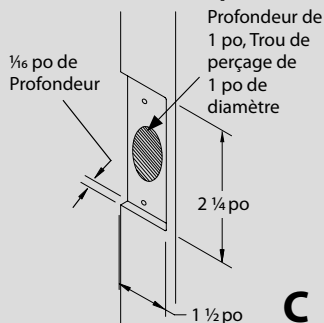
FR



Préparation de la porte

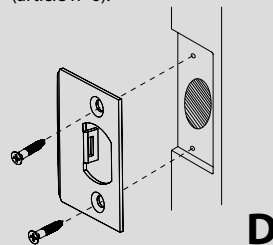


Préparation de l'embrasure de porte



Installation de la plaque de gâche

Fixez la plaque de gâche à l'aide des deux vis à bois n° 8 x $\frac{3}{4}$ po (article n° 6).

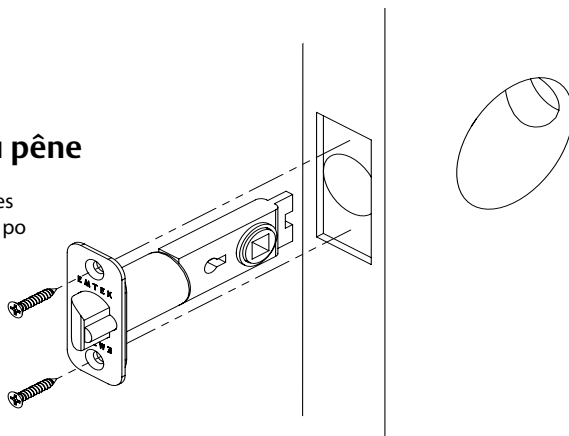


Pour installer

1

Installation du pêne

Fixez le pêne à l'aide des deux vis à bois n° 8 x ¾ po (article n° 6).

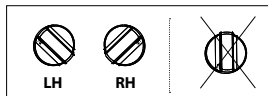


Retirez les vis de la plaque de garniture intérieure

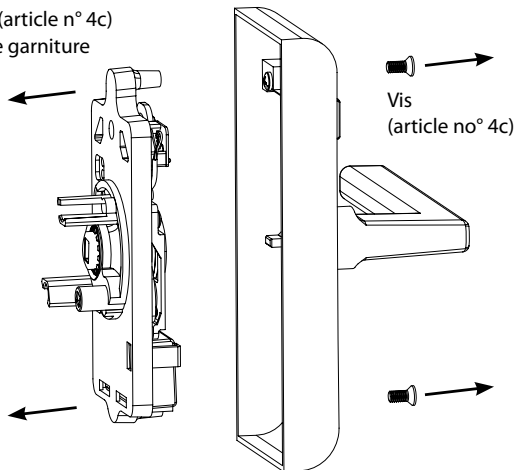
À l'aide d'un tournevis Phillips, retirez les vis (article n° 4c) illustrées ci-dessous et détachez la plaque de garniture intérieure de l'intérieur du bâti.



Avant d'installer la garniture extérieure, retirez le bâti intérieur de la plaque de garniture. La barette tournante doit être dans la position neutre.



Voir page 15 pour du sens d'informations.

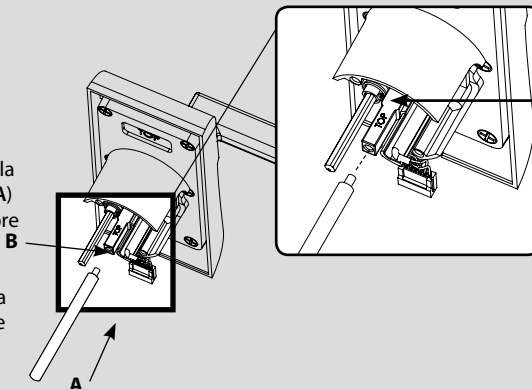


2

Installation de l'assemblage de la plaque de garniture extérieure

ÉTAPE 1

Tout en maintenant l'assemblage de la plaque de garniture extérieure, appuyer sur la rallonge en plastique (A) pour l'insérer dans l'arbre de broche (B). L'arbre est aligné correctement lorsque la marque "TOP" peut être vue du dessus.




Ce côté vers le haut.

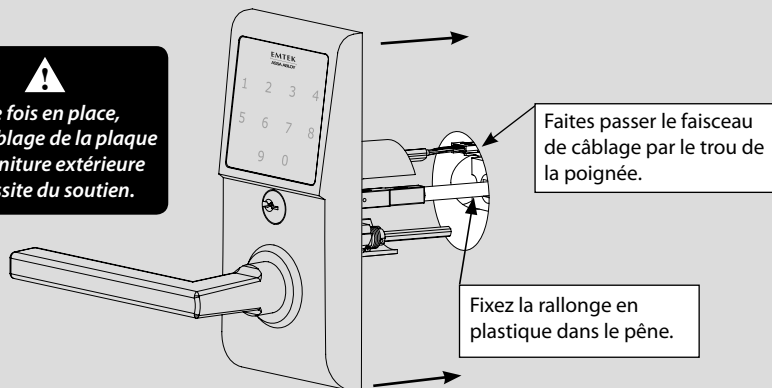
FR

3

ÉTAPE 2

Positionnez l'assemblage de la plaque de garniture extérieure dans le trou de la poignée.


Une fois en place, l'assemblage de la plaque de garniture extérieure nécessite du soutien.



Faites passer le faisceau de câblage par le trou de la poignée.

Fixez la rallonge en plastique dans le pêne.

ÉTAPE 3

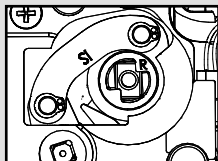
Alors que l'assemblage de la plaque de garniture est aligné sur la porte, **RETIREZ** la rallonge en plastique.

Installation du bâti intérieur

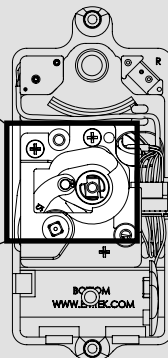
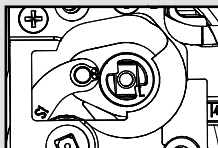
ÉTAPE 1

Confirmation du lien de la came.

Pour les serrures avec ouverture à droite :
Tournez vers la position de droite.



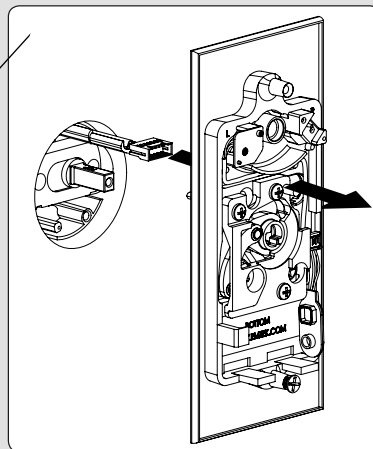
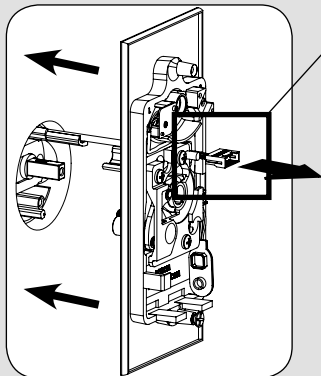
Pour les serrures avec ouverture à gauche :
Tournez vers la position de gauche.



Le lien de la came doit demeurer dans la position adéquate durant l'installation.

ÉTAPE 2

Faites passer le faisceau de câblage dans le bâti intérieur.



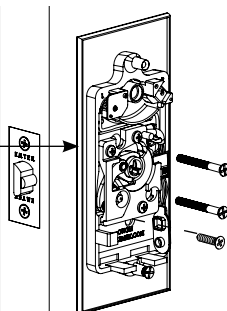
4

ÉTAPE 3

Fixez le bâti intérieur à l'aide de deux vis à métal n° 8-32 x 1½ po à tête plate (article n° 5)



**Avant de fixer
fermement les vis,
vérifiez l'alignement.**

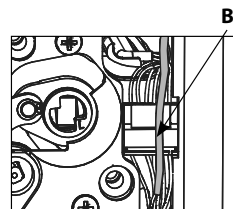
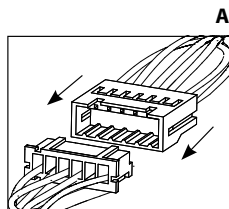
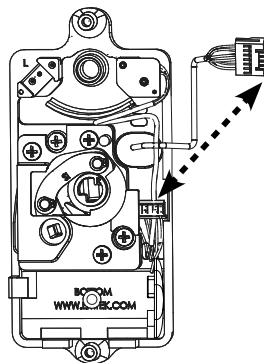


En option - Une vis à bois # 8 supplémentaire (fournie) peut être installée pour empêcher la garniture intérieure de tourner

FR

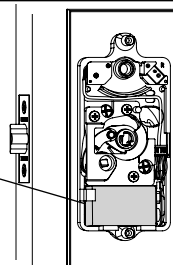
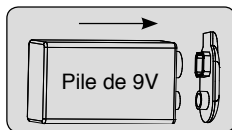
ÉTAPE 4

Branchez le faisceau de câblage (A) dans les connecteurs horizontaux tel qu'illustré (B).



ÉTAPE 5

Installez la pile.

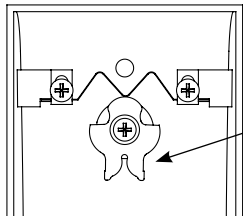


*Pour une performance optimale,
utilisez toujours une pile de
bonne qualité.*

5

Installation de la plaque de garniture intérieure

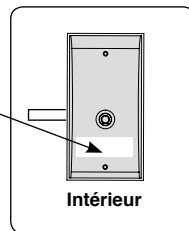
Fixez la plaque de garniture intérieure à l'aide de deux vis à métal n° 8-32 x 3/8 po à tête plate (article n° 4c).



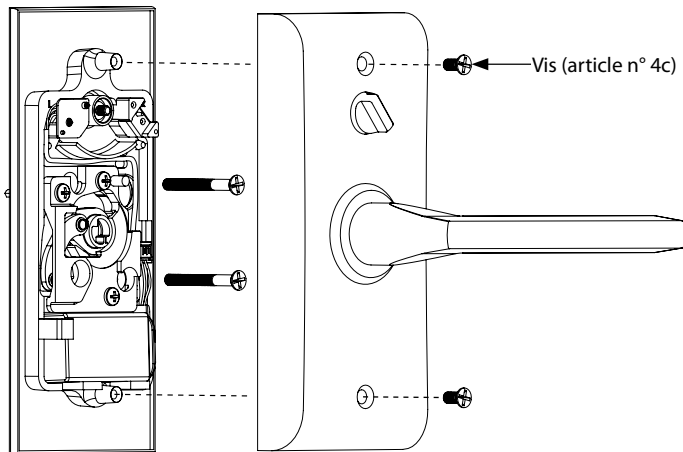
Les codes d'utilisateurs se trouvent sur la plaque de garniture intérieure et reportez-vous à la couverture arrière.



*Position adéquate pour l'installation. La came de blocage à oreilles doit être placée tel que illustré (position neutre)**



***Position neutre** verrouillée est requise pour l'installation et pour retirer l'assemblage de la plaque de garniture intérieure.

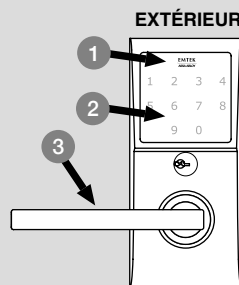


Lors de la livraison, votre serrure Emtek est configurée avec deux codes d'utilisateur à 4 chiffres et un code de programmation à 6 chiffres. Ces codes sont générés au hasard à l'usine.

(Pour obtenir les instructions de programmation, reportez-vous à la page suivante.)

Pour déverrouiller

1. Appuyez sur la touche EMTEK ou touchez l'écran à l'aide de trois doigts.
2. Entrez les codes d'utilisateurs à 4 chiffres.
(Voir l'étiquette située sur la plaque de garniture intérieure ou reportez-vous à la couverture arrière).
3. Tournez la poignée.



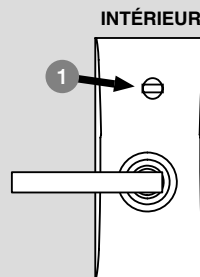
Fonction pour passage

Ceci ne s'applique pas dans le cas d'un clavier d'entreposage/produits pour barrière de sécurité (gate)

Activez la fonction en tournant la poignée à barrette tournante à la position déverrouillée. Ceci va engager le levier extérieur de façon à ce qu'aucun code ne soit requis pour entrer.

Pour verrouiller

1. Tournez la poignée à barrette tournante par l'intérieur.



Pour faire la programmation

Programmation de votre serrure

De façon à pouvoir effectuer chacune des six fonctions ci-dessous, la serrure doit d'abord être mise en mode de programmation :

1. Maintenez la touche EMTEK enfoncée durant 3 secondes
2. La DEL **Jaune** clignote et demeure ensuite allumée*, les touches numériques sont également éclairées
3. Entrez le code de programmation
4. Le DEL **Jaune** clignote et ensuite 2 bips se font entendre
5. Le DEL **Jaune** demeure allumée (attendant qu'une touche soit enfoncée : voir le tableau ci-dessous)

Si vous désirez	Appuyez sur la touche	Actions		Voyants
Modifier le code de programmation (6 chiffres)	1	Entrez le nouveau code de programmation (6 chiffres)	Entrez une deuxième fois le nouveau code de programmation (6 chiffres)	• 1 clignotement de la DEL Verte • 1 bip • 1 clignotement de la DEL Verte • 1 bip • 2 clignotements de la DEL Verte • 2 bips
Ajouter un code d'utilisateur (4 chiffres) (Jusqu'à 20 codes d'utilisateur peuvent être stockés)	2	Entrez le nouveau code d'utilisateur (4 chiffres)	Entrez une deuxième fois le nouveau code d'utilisateur (4 chiffres)	• 1 clignotement de la DEL Verte • 1 bip • 1 clignotement de la DEL Verte • 1 bip • 2 clignotements de la DEL Verte • 2 bips
Supprimer un code d'utilisateur	3	Entrez le code d'utilisateur que vous désirez supprimer	Entrez une deuxième fois le code d'utilisateur que vous désirez supprimer	• 1 clignotement de la DEL Verte • 1 bip • 1 clignotement de la DEL Verte • 1 bip • 2 clignotements de la DEL Verte • 2 bips
**Activer/Désactiver tous les codes d'utilisateurs	4	Entrer "4" désactive tous les utilisateurs (les active tous s'ils étaient désactivés)		• 2 clignotements de la DEL Verte • 2 bips
Supprimer tous les codes d'utilisateur	5	Entrez de nouveau le code de programmation		• 1 clignotement de la DEL Verte • 1 bip • 2 clignotements de la DEL Verte • 2 bips
Mettre EN ou HORS service l'avertisseur sonore	6	L'entrée de "6" le met HORS fonction (EN fonction)		• 1 clignotement de la DEL Verte • 1 bip • 2 clignotements de la DEL Verte • 2 bips

*Si aucune entrée n'est effectuée durant 20 secondes, la DEL **Jaune** s'éteint, la DEL **Rouge** clignote et la serrure quitte le mode de programmation

**Veuillez également vous reporter au "mode Vacances". Cette commande désactive temporairement tous les codes d'utilisateur (mais la clé métallique fonctionne toujours).

Fonctionnement du clavier - Avertisseur sonore et voyants à DEL

Fonction	Voyants
Code valide	• 1 bip court. La touche EMTEK clignote en <i>Verte</i>
Code invalide/Accès refusé*	• 1 clignotement de La DEL <i>Rouge</i> • 2 bips courts
Erreur - Mode de verrouillage	• 2 bips courts • 1 bip court toute les secondes pour toute la durée de l'opération
Accès permis	• 1 bip court • 1 clignotement de la DEL <i>Verte</i>
Pile faible	• 4 clignotements de la DEL <i>Rouge</i> • 4 bips courts
Pile défectueuse**	• 1 long clignotement de la DEL <i>Rouge</i> • 4 bips longs
Touche enfoncée acceptée	• 1 clignotement de la DEL <i>Jaune</i> • 1 bip court
Poignée à barrette tournante extérieure activée	• 2 clignotement de la DEL <i>Verte</i>

*Si trois codes erronés consécutifs sont entrés, la serrure émet 4 bips courts et la touche EMTEK clignote enrouge. La serrure n'acceptera pas de code additionnel durant 20 secondes (20 bips). Lorsqu'un prochain code valide est entré, la serrure émet 3 bips rapides pour indiquer que des codes invalides ont été précédemment entrés.

** La tension de la pile a chuté trop bas : le clavier sera désactivé mais une clé métallique peut être utilisée pour déverrouiller la serrure.

Rétablissement de la serrure à ses réglages par défaut

Cette procédure efface tous les utilisateurs de la serrure et rétablit le code de programmation et les deux codes d'utilisateur à leur valeur par défaut configurée à l'usine.

- Maintenez la touche EMTEK enfoncée durant 3 secondes.
- Entrez "000000"
- Après 2 bips et 2 clignotements de la DEL *Verte*, enlevez l'alimentation (débranchez la pile de 9V) de la serrure.
- Après 5 secondes, rétablissez le courant (rebranchez la pile de 9V).
- L'opération est confirmée par 2 bips et 2 clignotements de la DEL *Verte*.

Le brevet américain:

8,176,761

8,141,400

Canadian Brevets:

2,698,041

2,789,278

2,789,280

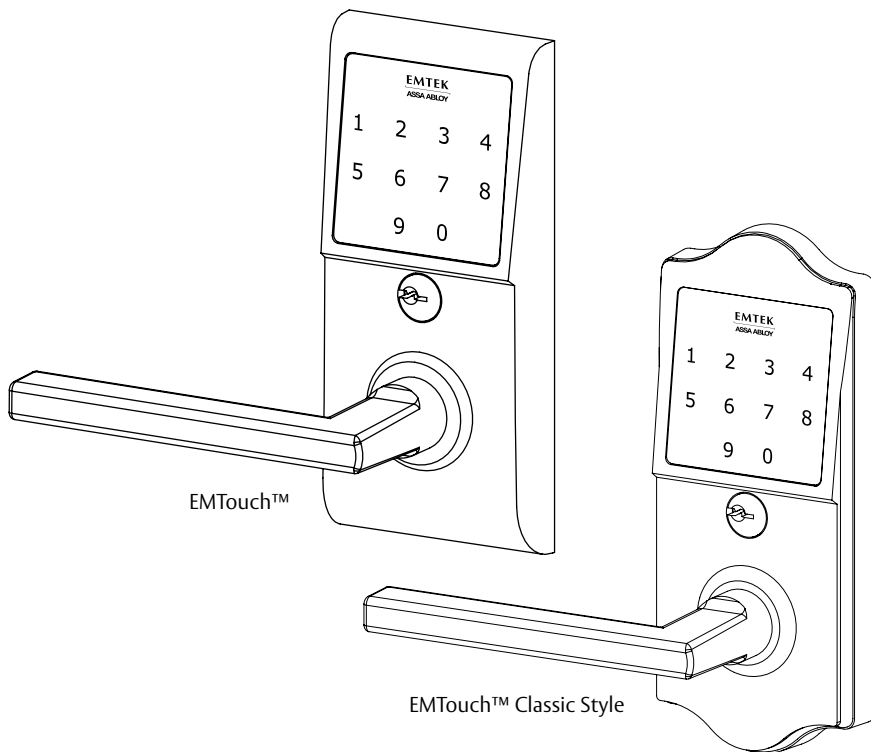
© Emtek Products, inc., 2017. Une entreprise du groupe ASSA ABLOY. Tous droits réservés. La reproduction totale ou partielle sans l'autorisation expresse écrite par Emtek Products, inc. est interdite.

Guía de Instalación y Programación

EMTEK®
ASSA ABLOY

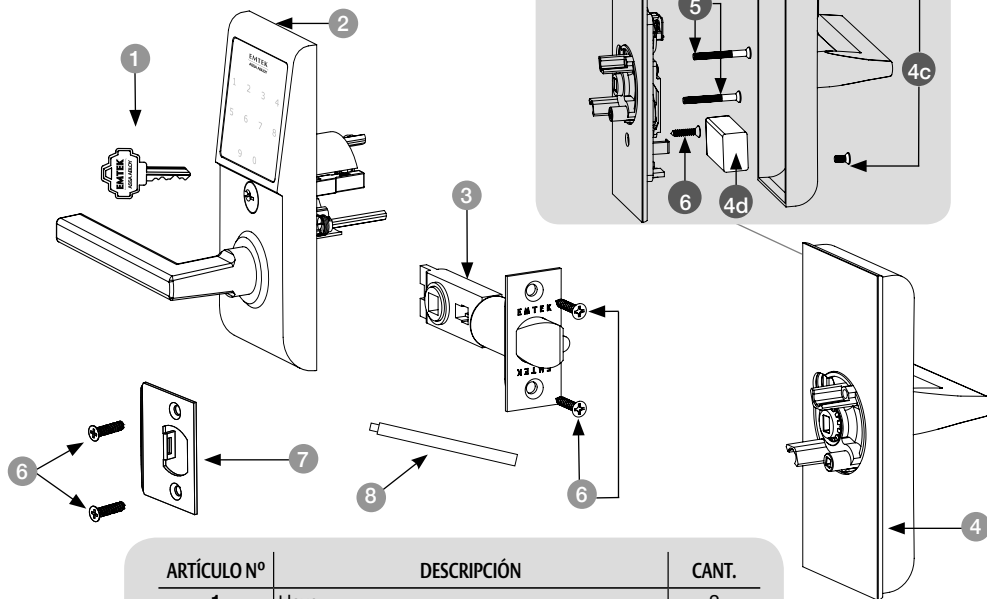
EMTouch™ & EMTouch™ Classic Style

Palanca Electrónica para Juego de Cerraduras



ES

Qué Hay en la Caja



ARTÍCULO N°	DESCRIPCIÓN	CANT.
1	Llave	2
2	Montaje de la Placa Decorativa externa	1
3	Pestillo para 2 3/8" o 2 3/4" de Distancia	1
4	Montaje de la Placa Decorativa Interior	1
4a	Chasis Interno	1
4b	Placa Decorativa Interior	1
4c	Tornillo de Cabeza Plana de #8-32 x 3/8"	2
4d	Batería Alcalina de 9V	1
5	Tornillo de Cabeza Plana de #8-32 x 1 1/2"	2
6	Tornillo para Madera de #8 x 3/4"	5
7	Placa de Impacto	1
8	Extensor de Plástico	1

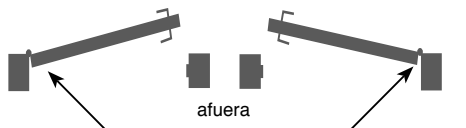
Preparación

Confirme el Manejo

A

LA OPERACIÓN DE LA PUERTA ESTÁ SIEMPRE DETERMINADA DESDE AFUERA

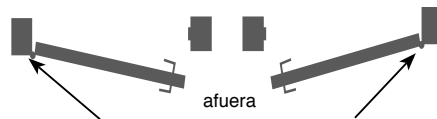
Puertas que abren hacia adentro



La bisagra está a la izquierda
La puerta es Izquierda (LH)

La bisagra está a la derecha
La puerta es Derecha (RH)

Puertas que abren hacia afuera

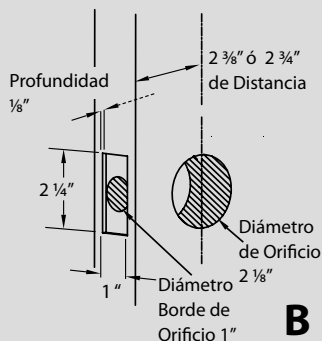


La bisagra está a la izquierda
La puerta es Izquierda (LH)

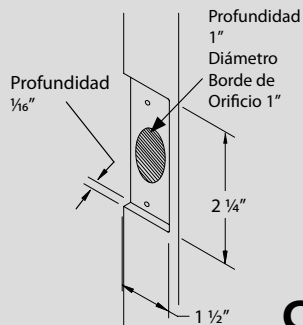
La bisagra está a la derecha
La puerta es Derecha (RH)

ES

Preparación de la Puerta

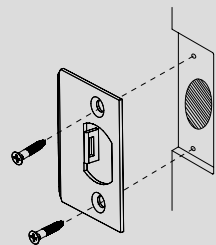


Preparación de la Jamba



Instale la Placa de Impacto

Asegure la Placa de Impacto usando dos Tornillos para Madera #8 x 3/4" (artículo #6).

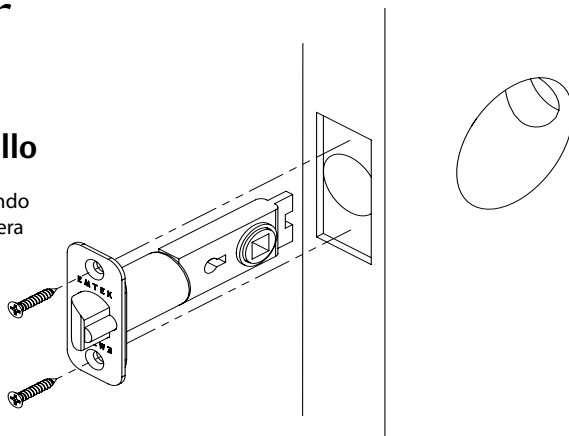


Cómo Instalar

1

Instale el Pestillo

Asegure el Pestillo usando dos Tornillos para Madera #8 x ¾" (artículo #6).

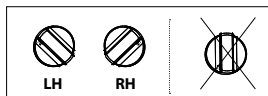


Retire los Tornillos de la Placa Decorativa Interior

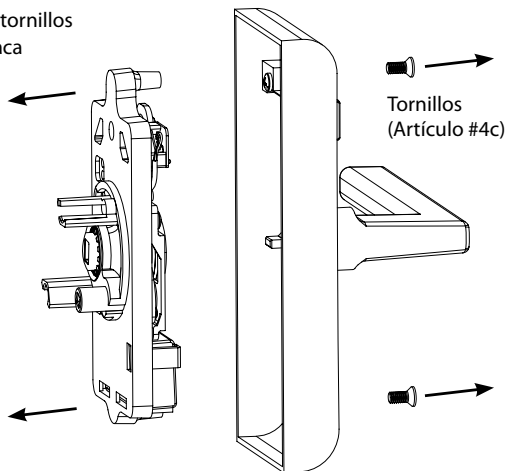
Use un destornillador Phillips para retirar los tornillos (artículo #4c) mostrados abajo y separe la Placa Decorativa Interior del Chasis Interno.



Retire el chasis interno de la placa decorativa antes de instalar la placa exterior. El Cerrojo manual debe estar en posición neutral.



Ver Hoja 27 para Información de manejo

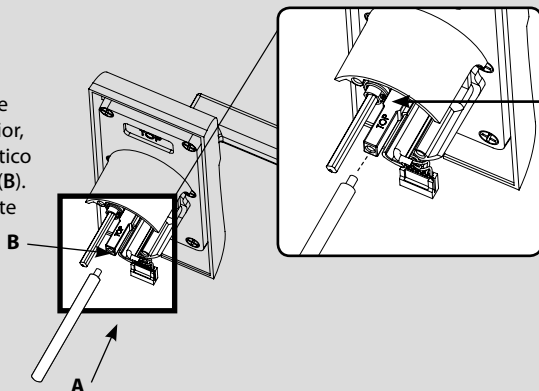


2

Instale el Montaje de la Placa Decorativa Exterior

PASO 1

Mientras sostiene el Montaje de la Placa Decorativa Exterior, Presione el Extensor de Plástico (A) dentro del Eje del Rotor (B). El Rotor está apropiadamente alineado cuando la marca 'TOP' puede ser visualizada desde arriba.




**Este lado
hacia arriba.**

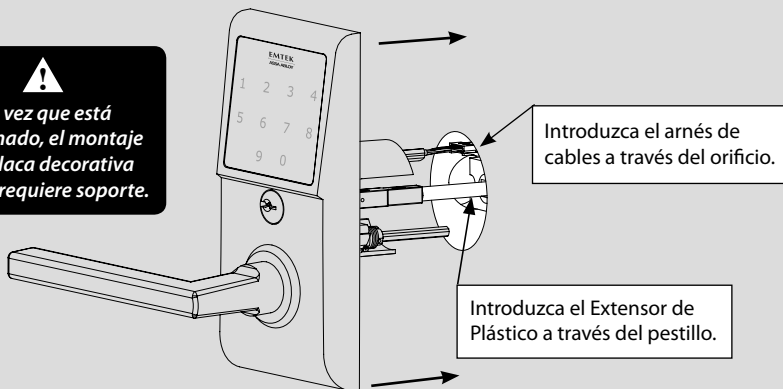
ES

3

PASO 2

Posicione el Montaje de la Placa Decorativa Exterior a través del orificio.


**Una vez que está
posicionado, el montaje
de la placa decorativa
exterior requiere soporte.**



Introduzca el arnés de
cables a través del orificio.

Introduzca el Extensor de
Plástico a través del pestillo.

PASO 3

Con el Montaje de la Placa Decorativa Exterior alineado a la puerta, **RETIRE** Extensor de Plástico.

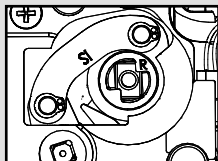
Instale el Chasis Interno

PASO 1

Confirme la posición de la Unión de Levas.

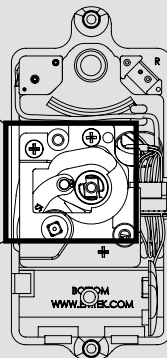
Para Cerraduras Derechas:

Gire a la posición
derecha.



Para Cerraduras Izquierdas:

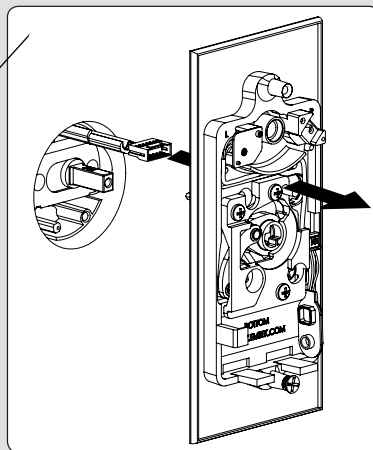
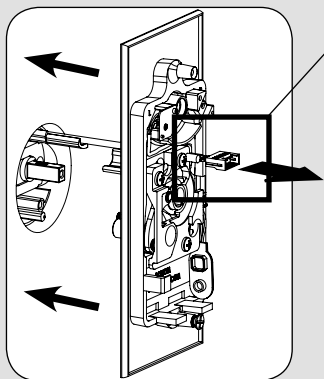
Gire a la posición
izquierda.



*La unión de levas
debe permanecer en
la posición correcta
durante la instalación.*

PASO 2

Introduzca el Arnés de Cables a través
del Chasis Interno.



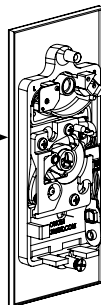
4

PASO 3

Asegure el Chasis Interno usando dos tornillos de Cabeza Plana #8-32 x 1½" (artículo #5).



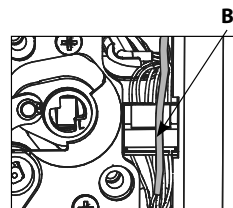
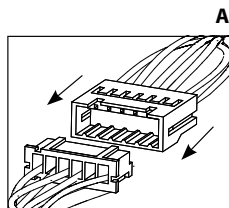
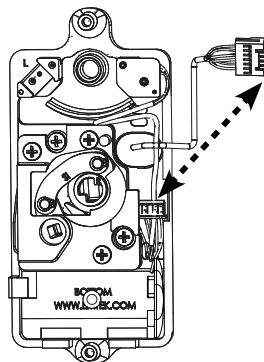
Verifique la alineación antes de ajustar por completo los tornillos



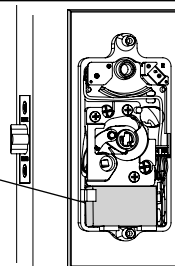
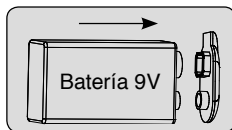
Opcional - Se puede instalar un tornillo # 8 de madera adicional (proporcionado) para evitar que el Chasis interior gire

PASO 4

Conecte el Arnés de Cables (A) e inserte los Conectores como se muestra (B).

**PASO 5**

Instale la Batería.



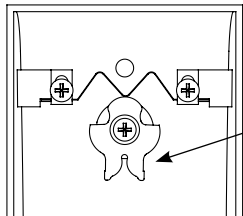
Para un funcionamiento óptimo, siempre use una batería de buena calidad

ES

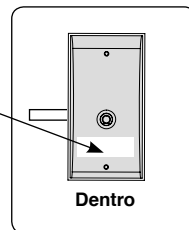
5

Instale la Placa Decorativa Interior

Asegure la Placa Decorativa Interior usando dos Tornillos de Cabeza Plana #8-32 x $\frac{3}{8}$ " (artículo #4c).

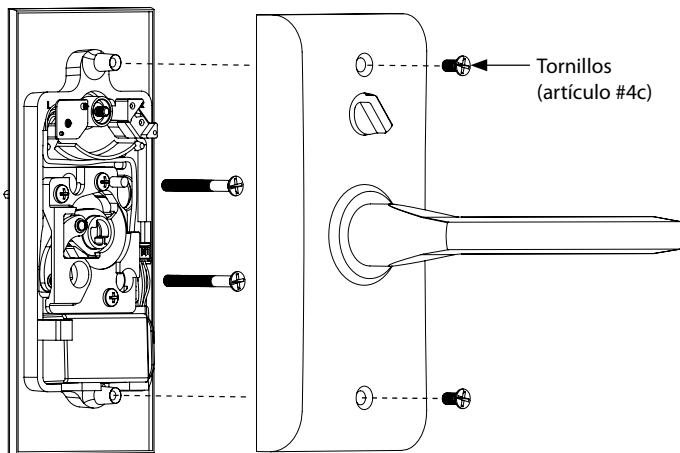


!
Los códigos de usuario están localizados en la placa interior y la última página.



!
Posición correcta para instalación. La leva manual debe estar posicionada como se muestra (Posición Neutral)*

*La **posición neutral** es necesaria para la instalación y extracción del Montaje de la Placa Decorativa Interior.



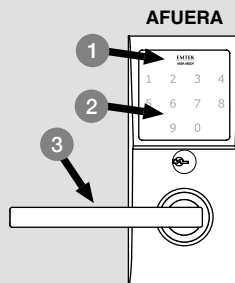
Cómo Usar

Su Cerradura está Lista para Usar

Su cerradura Emtek es enviada con dos códigos de usuario de 4 dígitos y un código de programación de 6 dígitos. Estos códigos son generados al azar en la fábrica.
(Vaya a la próxima página para las Instrucciones de Programación.)

Para Desbloquear

1. Presione la tecla EMTEK o toque con 3 dedos la pantalla.
2. Ingrese los códigos de usuario de 4 dígitos.
(Vea la etiqueta ubicada dentro de la placa decorativa interior o la última página).
3. Gire la Palanca.



ES

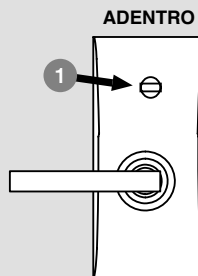
Característica de paso

(No se aplica al producto: Keypad Storeroom/Gate)

Activar girando el cerrojo manual interior a la posición de desbloqueo. Esto engranará la palanca externa, de manera que no se requiera un código para ingresar.

Para Bloquear

1. Gire el Cerrojo Manual desde adentro.



Cómo Programar

Programando su cerradura

Con el fin de realizar cada una de las seis siguientes funciones, la cerradura debe ser puesta en la opción de Modo de Programación:

1. Mantenga presionado el botón EMTEK durante 3 segundos
4. El LED **Amarillo** parpadea, y después 2 bips
2. El LED **Amarillo** parpadea y después se mantiene encendido*, las teclas numeradas también se iluminan
5. El LED **Amarillo** se mantiene encendido (esperando se presione el botón; vea la siguiente Tabla)
3. Introduzca el Código de Programación

Si Desea	Presione el Botón	Acciones		Indicadores
Cambiar el Código de Programación (6 dígitos)	1	Introducir el Nuevo Código de Programación (6 dígitos)	Reingresar el Nuevo Código de Programación (6 dígitos)	• 1 Destello del LED Verde • 1 bip • 1 Destello del LED Verde • 1 bip • 2 Destellos del LED Verde • 2 bips
Añadir el Código de Usuario (4 dígitos) (Almacena hasta 20 Códigos de Usuario)	2	Ingrese el Nuevo Código de Usuario (4 dígitos)	Reingresar el Nuevo Código de Usuario (4 dígitos)	• 1 Destello del LED Verde • 1 bip • 1 Destello del LED Verde • 1 bip • 2 Destellos del LED Verde • 2 bips
Borrar el Código de Usuario	3	Ingrese el Código de Usuario a ser Borrado	Reingrese el Código de Usuario a ser Borrado	• 1 Destello del LED Verde • 1 bip • 1 Destello del LED Verde • 1 bip • 2 Destellos del LED Verde • 2 bips
**Habilitar/Deshabilitar Todos los Códigos de Usuario	4	Ingresando '4' deshabilita a todos los Usuarios (habilita a todos si estaban deshabilitados)		• 2 Destellos del LED Verde • 2 bips
Borrar Todos los Códigos de Usuario	5	Reingresar el Código de Programación		• 1 Destello del LED Verde • 1 bip • 2 Destellos del LED Verde • 2 bips
Encender el Bíper ON/OFF	6	Ingresando '6' se apaga OFF (o prende ON)		• 1 Destello del LED Verde • 1 bip • 2 Destellos del LED Verde • 2 bips

*Si no se ingresa nada durante 20 segundos, el LED **Amarillo** se apaga, el LED **Rojo** parpadea y la cerradura sale del Modo de Programación.

**También referido como "modo vacación." Este comando inhabilita temporalmente todos los códigos de usuario (la anulación mediante la llave de metal seguirá funcionando).

Funcionamiento del Teclado – Indicadores de Bíper y LED

Función	Indicators
Código Válido	• 1 bip corto, el botón EMTEK parpadea Verde
Código inválido/Acceso Denegado*	• 1 parpadeo del LED Rojo • 2 bips cortos
Error del Modo de Bloqueo	• 2 bips cortos • 1 bip corto por segundo por duración
Acceso Aceptado	• 1 bip corto • 1 destello del LED Verde
Batería Baja	• 4 destellos del LED Rojo • 4 bips cortos
Batería Agotada**	• 1 destello del LED Rojo • 4 bips largos
Presión de Botón Aceptada	• 1 destello del LED Amarillo • 1 bip corto
Seguro Manual Externo Habilitado	• 2 destellos del LED Verde

* Si se introducen 3 códigos incorrectos consecutivamente, la cerradura emite 4 bips cortos y un botón EMTEK **Rojo**. La cerradura no aceptará otro ingreso por 20 segundos (20 bips). Cuando el siguiente código válido se ingresa, la cerradura emitirá 3 bips rápidos para alertar sobre los códigos incorrectos.

** El voltaje de la batería ha disminuido demasiado; el teclado estará inhabilitado, pero la anulación con llave de metal seguirá funcionando.

Restaurando la Cerradura a la Configuración de Fábrica

Este procedimiento elimina a todos los usuarios de la cerradura y restaura el Código de Programación y los 2 Códigos de Usuario enviados con la cerradura.

- Mantenga presionado el botón EMTEK durante 3 segundos.
- Introduzca "000000"
- Después de dos bips y dos parpadeos del LED **Verde**, corte la energía (desconecte la batería de 9V) de la Cerradura.
- Después de 5 segundos, restaure la energía (reconecte la batería de 9V).
- Confirma por 2 bips y 2 parpadeos del LED **Verde**.

Patente de EE.UU:

8,176,761

8,141,400

Patente Canadiense:

2,698,041

2,789,278

2,789,280

Copyright © 2017, Emtek Products, Inc. an ASSA ABLOY Group company. Todos los derechos reservados. Está prohibida la reproducción total o parcial sin la expresa autorización escrita de Emtek Products, Inc.

ES

ASSA ABLOY is the global
leader in door opening solutions,
dedicated to satisfying
end-user needs for security,
safety and convenience.



EMTEK Products, Inc.
15250 E. Stafford Street
City of Industry • CA 91744
Tel: 800-356-2741 • 626-961-0413
Fax: 800-577-5771 • 626-336-2812
emtek.com

Place Sticker Here



Copyright © 2017, Emtek Products, Inc. an ASSA ABLOY Group company. All rights reserved. Reproduction in whole or in part without the express written permission of Emtek Products, Inc. is prohibited.

IN8-EMTOUCHLL

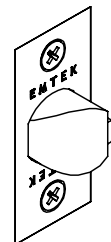
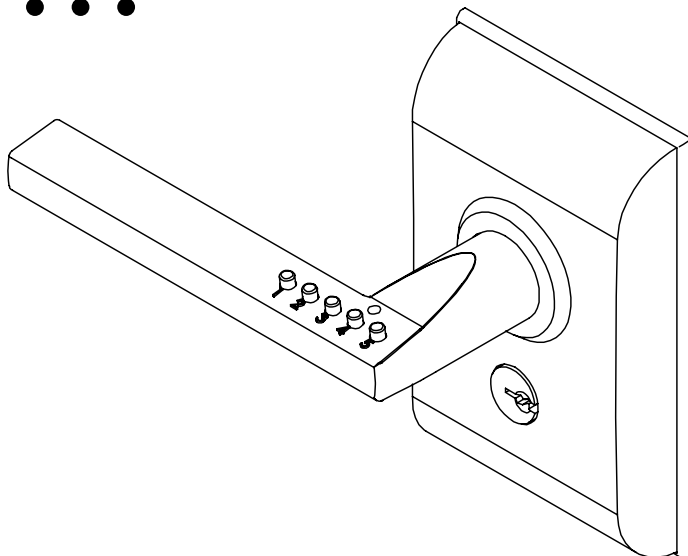
REV 17C 12/01/17

Installation Guide & User Manual

EMTEK®

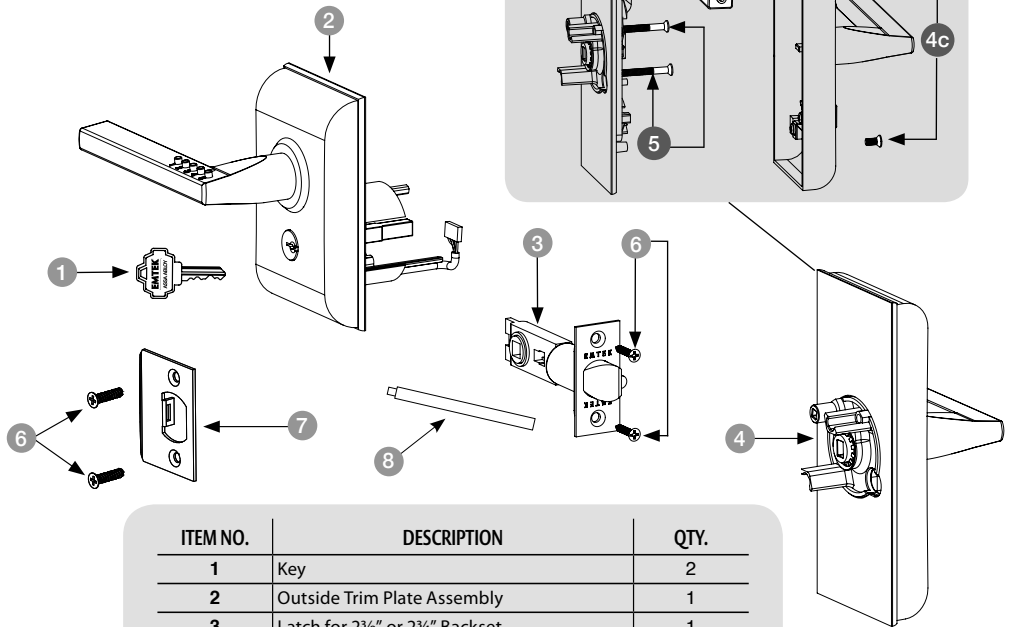
ASSA ABLOY

LISCIO



**Electronic Keypad Lever Lockset
with Bluetooth Programming**

What's in the Box



ITEM NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY.
1	Key	2
2	Outside Trim Plate Assembly	1
3	Latch for 2 3/8" or 2 3/4" Backset	1
4	Inside Trim Plate Assembly	1
4a	Inside Chassis	1
4b	Inside Trim Plate	1
4c	#8-32 x 3/8" Flat Head Machine Screw	2
4d	9V Alkaline Battery	1
5	#8-32 x 1 1/2" Flat Head Machine Screw	2
6	#8 x 3/4" Wood Screw	5
7	Strike Plate	1
8	Plastic Extender	1

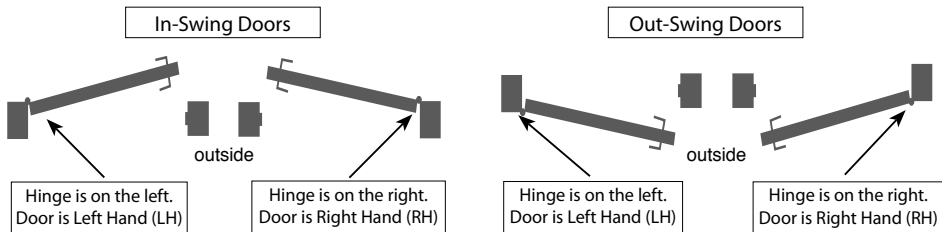
Preparation

Confirm Handing

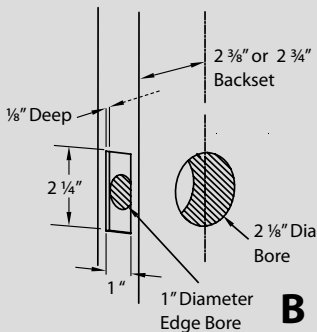
A

EN

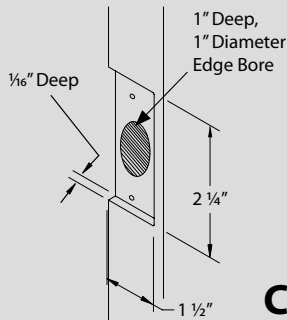
HANDING OF DOOR IS ALWAYS DETERMINED FROM THE OUTSIDE



Door Prep

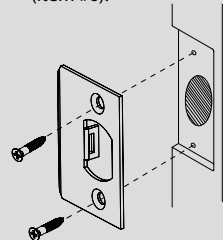


Door Jamb Prep



Install Strike Plate

Fasten Strike Plate using two #8 x 3/4" Wood Screws (item #6).

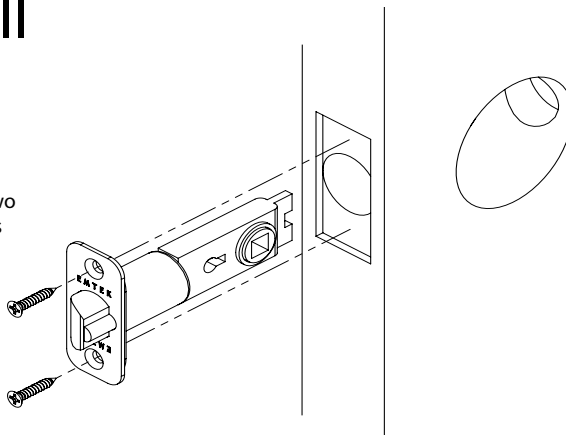


How to Install

1

Install Latch

Fasten Latch using two #8 x ¾" Wood Screws (item #6).

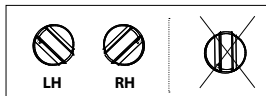


Remove Screws from Inside Trim Plate

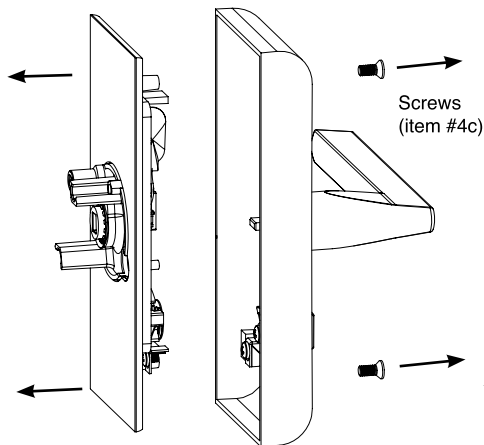
Use a Phillips head screwdriver to remove screws (item #4c) shown below and detach Inside Trim Plate from the Inside Chassis.



Remove inside chassis from trim plate before installing the outside trim. Thumbturn must be in neutral position.



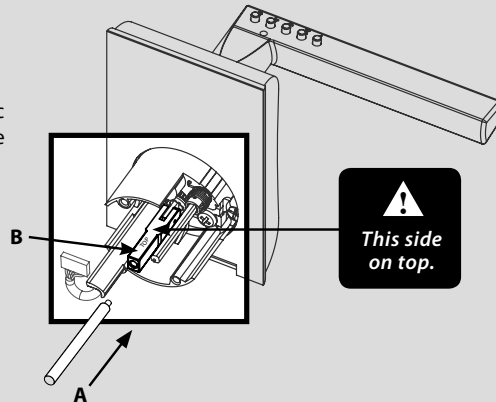
See Page 3 for Handling Information.



Install Outside Trim Plate Assembly

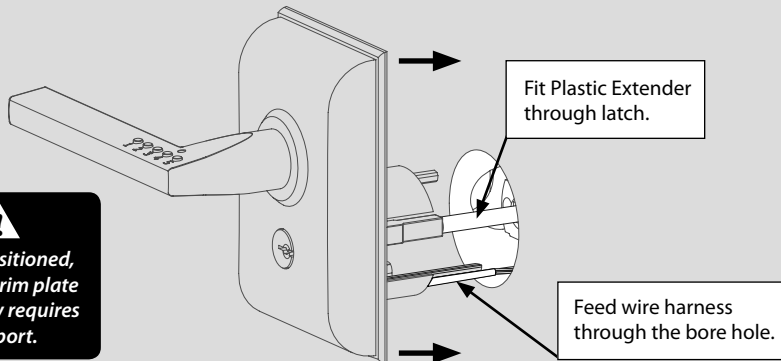
STEP 1

While holding Outside Trim Plate Assembly, Press the Plastic Extender (A) into end of Spindle Shaft (B). The Shaft is properly aligned when the marking 'TOP' can be seen from an overhead view.



STEP 2

Position the Outside Trim Plate Assembly through the bore hole.



STEP 3

With the Outside Trim Plate Assembly flush to the door, **REMOVE** the Plastic Extender.

EN

3

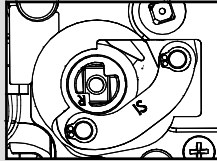
Install Inside Chassis

STEP 1

Confirm the position of Cam Link.

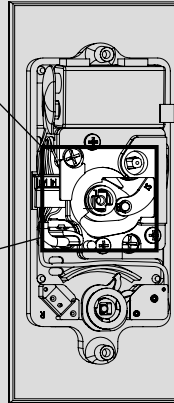
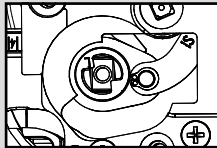
For Right Hand Locks:

Turn to right position.



For Left Hand Locks:

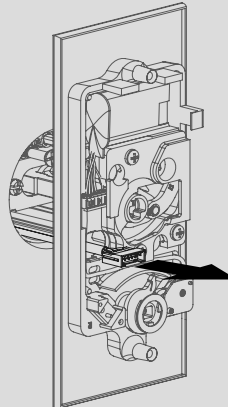
Turn to left position.



*Cam link must remain
in the correct position
during installation.*

STEP 2

Feed the Wire Harness through Inside Chassis.



4

STEP 3

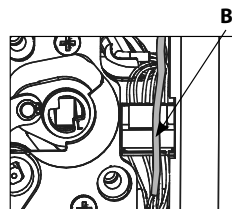
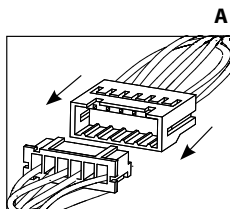
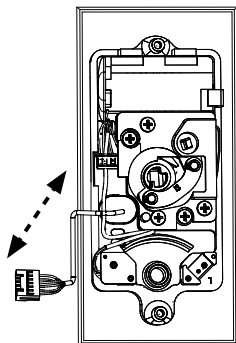
Fasten Inside Chassis using two #8-32 x 1½" Flat Head Machine Screw (item #5).


Check alignment before fully tightening screws.

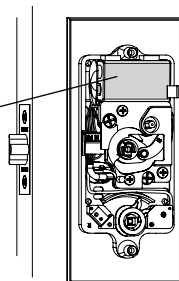
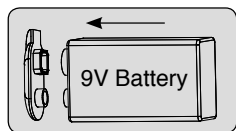
Optional - An additional #8 wood screw (provided) can be installed to prevent the interior trim from rotating

STEP 4

Connect Wire Harness (A) and tuck Connectors as shown (B).

**STEP 5**

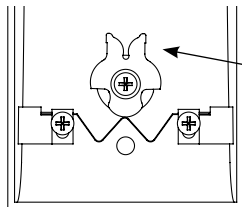
Install Battery.



For optimal performance, always use a good quality battery.

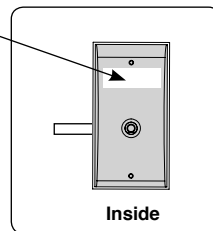
5 Install Inside Trim Plate

Fasten Inside Trim Plate using two #8-32 x $\frac{3}{16}$ " Flat Head Machine Screws (item #4c).

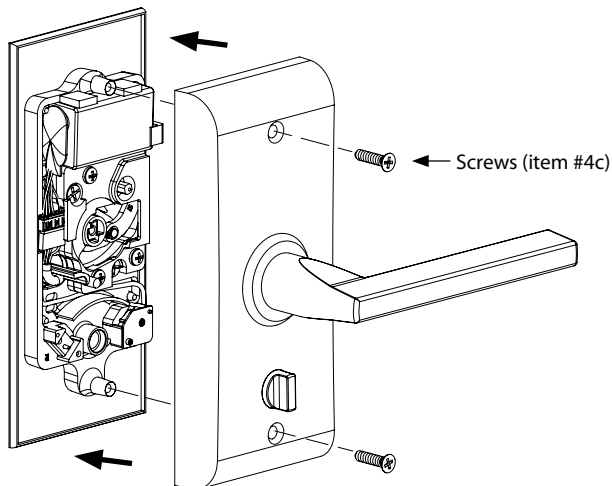


Correct position for installation.
*Thumbcam must be positioned
as shown (Neutral Position)**

Warning:
*User codes are located
on the inside trim plate
& back cover page.*



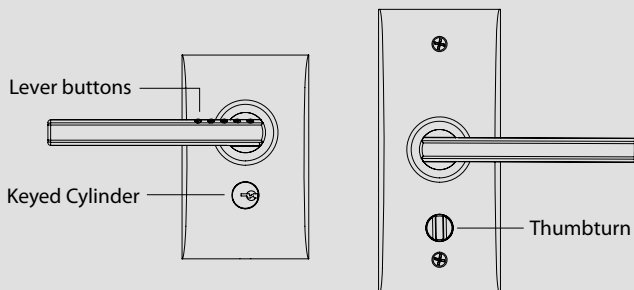
***Neutral position** is required for installation and removal of the Inside Trim Plate Assembly.



How to Use

Your Lock is Ready to Use

EN



Using the Lock

Once installed on door with the battery connected - your lock is ready for use.

Factory Default Setting

User & Master Codes are labeled on the inside trim plate and back cover page.

Entering User Codes

- Entering a correct, active user code (green LED x1 & beep x1) - unlocks
- Entering an incorrect or inactive code (red LED x2 & beep x2) - remains locked
- Three incorrect entries will result in lockout, signaled by 3 red LED flashes & 3 short beeps, lockout lasts for 30 seconds.

To Restart Code Entry

Press and hold #1 button for three seconds (this works in entry or programming mode).

Key Access

Lock may also be unlocked and locked via keyed cylinder, each lock comes with two keys.

Passage & Privacy Mode

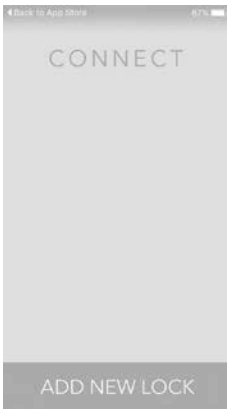
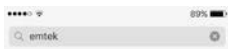
Use inside thumbturn.

Setting	Setting Description	Thumbturn Position	LED Feedback
Thumbturn Enable ON	Lock access is regulated. A correct, active user code is required for access. (Privacy Mode)		Green
Thumbturn Enable OFF	Lock access is NOT regulated. Always Unlocked (Passage Mode)		Amber

Getting Started

Device App

App is free and available at App Store ( devices) or Play Store ( devices).



A From  devices (iPhone 4S, 5, 5S & 5C; iPad 3rd generation and later running iOS 8 and later)

1. Go to App Store, select Search, enter “Emtek”, select “Emtek Liscio Bluetooth”, select download icon, when ready select Open. If upon opening app you receive a screen that advises you that your device is “Unsupported” you will not be able to run app on this device.

B From  devices (OS 4.3 and later)

1. Go to Play Store, select Search icon, enter “Emtek”, select “Emtek Liscio Bluetooth” app, select Install, select Accept, when ready select Open. If app does not appear then your device is running OS prior to 4.3.

C Once App is opened you will be on the Welcome screen

1. Selecting Start you will move through the setup wizard, lock will need to be nearby for this.
2. Select Videos, Quick Reference, About or Show Phone Info as needed
3. If you call Emtek for customer service please have the information listed in the Show Phone Info available.

Programming Features



EN

Once App is setup and you have logged into app you will be on the Home screen – from here you can:

A Select Users – you can add, edit and delete users

1. To add user – select + New, enter Name and enter user code (factory set at 4 digits)
2. To edit user – select user to edit, user information will be shown, select Edit, edit as needed, select Update
3. To delete user – select user to edit, user information will be shown, select Edit, select X Delete
4. You must communicate changes to lock before they are recognized at the lock – see Transfer below (B)

B Select Transfer – you can send data/setting changes to the lock, view lock activity or get data/settings from the lock

1. Sending data to Lock – to communicate any user adds, edits or deletes along and any settings changes
2. Viewing lock activity – lock activity on app is from last update, you will need to select Get new lock activity to view the latest activity
3. Getting data from Lock – to communicate latest user and setting data from the lock to the app

C Select Setting – you can customize some of the lock and app features

1. From the settings screen you can edit the noted settings, scrolling down is Advanced Settings

D Select Logoff when you are done or when you want to program a different lock.

E Battery Status – when BT communications are successful, an “Operation Complete” screen gives you a battery status.

1. “Good” means battery has the power to operate lock and BT communications.
2. “Low” means battery still has power to operate lock and BT communications but should be replaced. Lock LED shows 4 amber flashes and 4 beeps.
3. “Blackout” means the battery can no longer operate lock and battery must be replaced. Lock LED shows 6 red flashes and 6 beeps
4. Replacement battery should be a high quality 9 volt alkaline battery. Battery is located behind the interior trim plate.

Troubleshooting

Verify that device meets minimum requirements



Apple – iPhone 4S, 5, 5S and 5C; iPad 3rd generation and later running iOS 8 or later



Android – running OS 4.3 or later

Re-pairing App Function

Once App is setup and you have logged into app you will be on the Home screen – from here you can:

A Use this action when device to lock communications are not working, but were previously and several retries have failed.

B How to:

1. App – Navigate to Login screen, enter the app password, select the door name, move slider “Force Re-Pairing” to ON and then press Login button.

2. Lock – Manually reset lock to factory defaults – press #1 and #5 buttons simultaneously, enter master code, press the #1 and then the #4 buttons

(not simultaneously) and re-enter the master code. LED will blink green once that lock has been reset – OR – disconnect battery and when you reconnect battery hold down any button for 3 seconds, reset will be signaled by LED flashing 3 times and 3 beeps. Once reset the lock’s activity log will be empty and the user and master codes will be back to factory defaults – see labels placed on back cover page or inside of the interior trim plate.

3. Follow app wizard through setup process.

4. Transfer user and master codes and settings on app to lock

Reset App and Lock

A Use this action when device to lock communications are not working, but were previously and several retries have failed.

B How to:

1. App – Navigate to Settings screen, scroll down and select “Advanced Settings”, select “Clear database”, at Select desired action: select “Delete this application database”, for Confirm delete move slider to ON, then select Commit Changes. You will be sent back to Welcome screen to start setup wizard from the beginning.

2. Device – () Navigate to main Settings, select Bluetooth, select “i” icon for Emtek 1 under DEVICES, select Forget this Device, and confirm Forget Device. () Navigate to main Settings, select Bluetooth, select Emtek 1 (icon on right side) and then select Unpair.

3. Lock – Manually reset lock to factory defaults (see section 2 above)

4. Follow app wizard through setup process.

5. This will reset all information both app and lock.

If problem still persists – Remove App from Device, Download Again, Reset Lock

A Use this action when action 2 above does not correct Bluetooth communications.

B How to:

1. Device – () Press on Emtek icon until all icons shake and have x at corner of apps, select x on Emtek app, press Apple Home Button and apps will return to normal. Go to App Store and download app again and open to start again.

() Navigate to main Settings, select Apps, scroll to find the Emtek icon and press, then select Uninstall.

2. Device – () Navigate to main Settings, select Bluetooth, select “i” icon for Emtek 1 under DEVICES, select Forget this Device, and confirm Forget Device. () Navigate to main Settings, select Bluetooth, select Emtek 1 (icon on right side) and then select Unpair

3. Device – Cycle power off then back on

4. Lock – Manually reset lock to factory defaults. (see section 2 above)

5. Start Emtek app and follow wizard through setup process.

6. This will reset all information both app and lock.

Manual Programming

EN

The lock can be programmed manually using the keypad buttons 1 through 5. This feature is made available but programming using a smart phone is highly recommended.

Manual Programming Commands

- 1** To enter programming mode – press the #1 and the #5 buttons simultaneously
- 2** Enter the lock's 6 digit master code (the master code will be on sticker on back cover page and inside trim plate of lock)
- 3** The features below now accessible by entering a combination of two buttons one after the other (not simultaneously)

If You WishTo	Press Button	Actions
Add a code	# 1 and then # 3	Then enter new code and enter again to confirm (factory setting is 4 digit mode)
Delete a code	# 4 and then # 3	Then enter code to delete and enter again to confirm
Change master code	# 3 and then # 3 again	Then enter new master code and enter again to confirm
Turn ON Deny Users	# 4 and then # 1	
Turn OFF Deny Users	# 5 and then # 1	(factory setting is OFF)

Deny Users can disable or enable all user codes – when ON, no user codes will work, only key operates lock

Delete all codes	# 5 and then # 5 again	
Set 4 digit code length	# 5 and then # 2	(factory setting is 4 digits)
Set 6 digit code length	# 5 and then # 3	
Turn Beeper ON	# 1 and then # 1 again	(factory setting is ON)
Turn Beeper OFF	# 1 and then # 2	
Turn Extended timeout OFF	# 2 and then # 1	(factory setting is OFF)
Turn Extended timeout ON	# 2 and then # 2 again	

Extended timeout mode allows for a longer duration of unlock time upon entry of a valid user code.

Turn Passage switch OFF	# 3 and then # 1	
Turn Passage switch ON	# 3 and then # 2	(factory setting is ON)

Passage switch mode ON, choose between Passage (lock unsecured) and Privacy (always locked) and OFF lock is always in Privacy (always locked).

Restore Factory Defaults	enter # 1 and then # 4	enter master code to confirm
---------------------------------	------------------------	------------------------------

Feedback – LED and Beeper

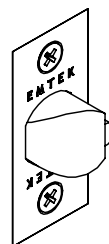
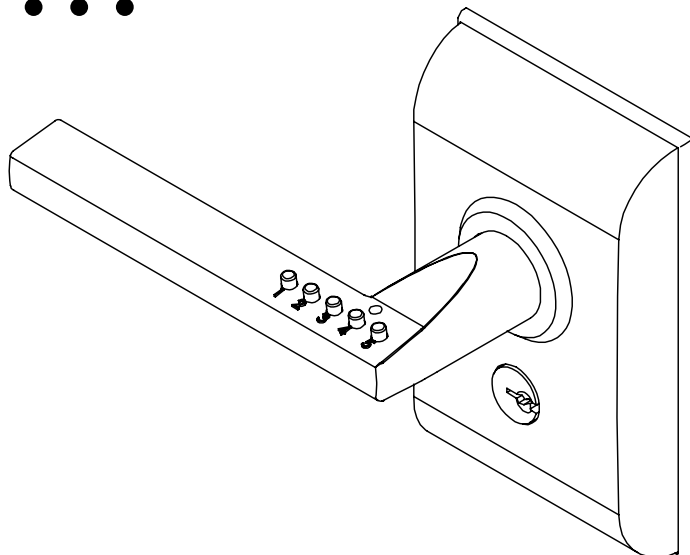
Condition	Color	Count	Duration	Comment
POWER ON				
Normal Power on	amber	1	long	
Factory default reset	amber	3	long	
Battery low	amber	4	long	
Battery blackout	red	6	long	
USER ACCESS				
Access granted - normal	green	1	long	
Access granted - battery low	amber	4	long	
Access denied - normal	red	2	long	
Access denied - Battery blackout	red	6	long	
Access denied - lockout	red	3	long	
ID input during timeout	red	2	long	
PASSAGE SWITCH				
Lock secured	green	1	long	
Lock unsecured	amber	1	long	
MANUAL PROGRAMMING				
Programming active	amber	1	continuous	Blinks to off on key press
Programming operation success	green	1	medium	
Programming operation failed	red	2	medium	
Programming cancelled	amber	2	medium	
Programming time out	amber	2	medium	After 20 seconds
BLUETOOTH PROGRAMMING				
BT enable interval	amber	1	long	Delay for entering BT
Programming active	green	1	continuous	
Programming completed - normal	green	1	medium	
Programming completed - battery low	amber	4	long	
Programming completed - battery blackout	red	6	long	
Programming cancelled or time out	red	2	medium	
Programming failed	red	2	medium	After 60 seconds
KEY PRESS				
User Access	amber	1	short	
Manual Programming	OFF	1	short	Blink against solid amber

U.S. patents:	Canadian patents:
8,176,761	2,698,041
8,141,400	2,789,278
	2,789,280

Guide d'installation et le mode d'emploi

EMTEK®
ASSA ABLOY

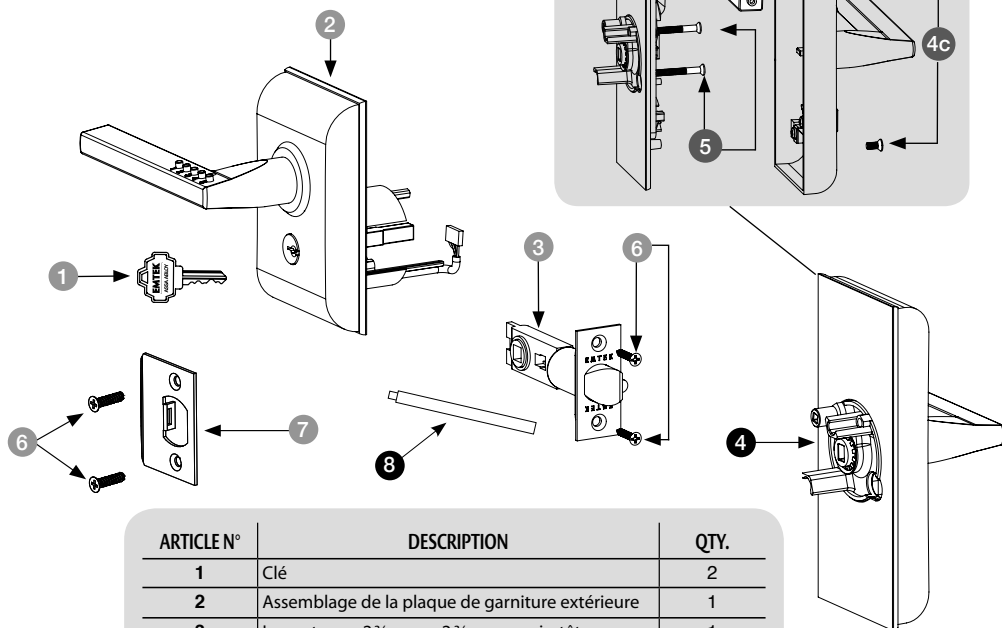
LISCIO



FR

**Clavier Électronique Leverset Avec
Programmation Bluetooth**

Que contient la boîte



ARTICLE N°	DESCRIPTION	QTY.
1	Clé	2
2	Assemblage de la plaque de garniture extérieure	1
3	Loquet pour 2 3/4 po ou 2 3/4 po appuie-tête	1
4	Assemblage de la plaque de garniture intérieure	1
4a	Bâti intérieur	1
4b	Plaque de garniture intérieure	1
4c	Vis à métal à tête plate n° 8-32 x 3/8 po	2
4d	Pile alcaline de 9V	1
5	Vis à métal à tête plate n° 8-32 x 1 1/2 po	2
6	Vis à bois n° 8 x 3/4 po	5
7	Plaque de gâche	1
8	Rallonge en plastique	1

Préparation

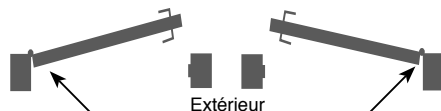
Confirmation du sens d'ouverture

A

LE SENS DE LA PORTE EST TOUJOURS DÉTERMINÉ DE L'EXTÉRIEUR

FR

Portes avec ouverture vers l'intérieur.



Charnière sur la gauche –
porte avec ouverture vers
la gauche (MG)

Charnière sur la droite – Porte
avec ouverture vers la droite
(MD)

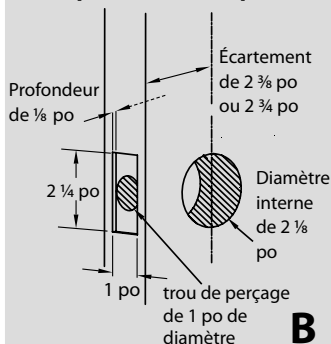
Portes avec ouverture vers l'extérieur



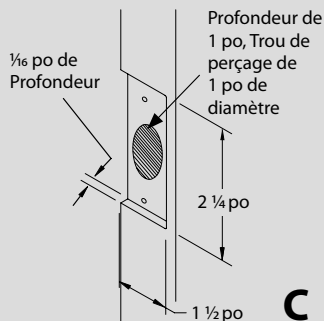
Charnière sur la gauche –
porte avec ouverture vers
la gauche (MG)

Charnière sur la droite – Porte
avec ouverture vers la droite
(MD)

Préparation de la porte

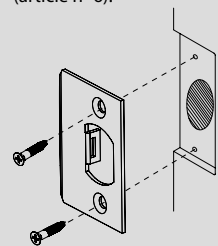


Préparation de l'embrasure de porte



Installation de la plaque de gâche

Fixez la plaque de gâche à l'aide des deux vis à bois n° 8 x 3/4 po (article n° 6).

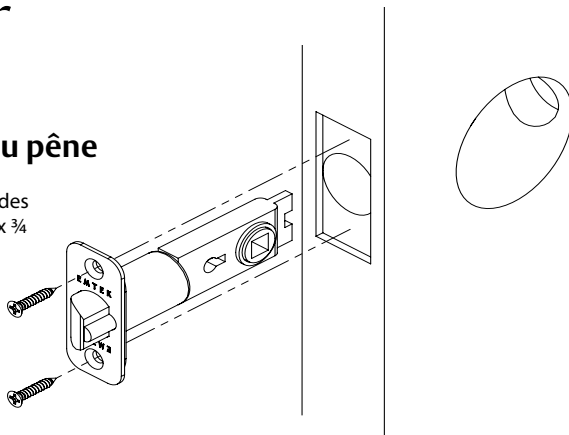


Pour installer

1

Installation du pêne

Fixez le pêne à l'aide des deux vis à bois n° 8 x ¾ po (article n° 6).

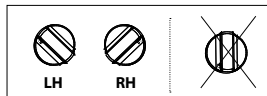


Retirez les vis de la plaque de garniture intérieure

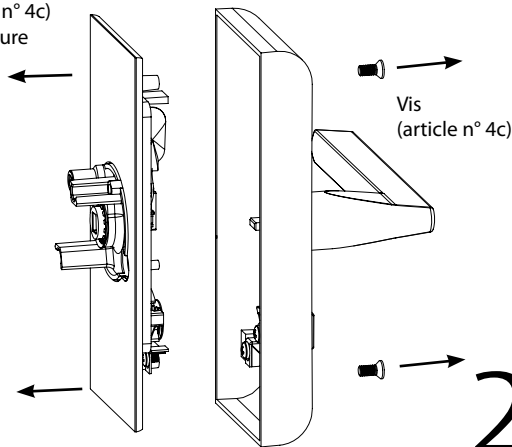
À l'aide d'un tournevis Phillips, retirez les vis (article n° 4c) illustrées ci-dessous et détachez la plaque de garniture intérieure de l'intérieur du bâti.



Avant d'installer la garniture extérieure, retirez le bâti intérieur de la plaque de garniture. La barette tournante doit être dans la position neutre.



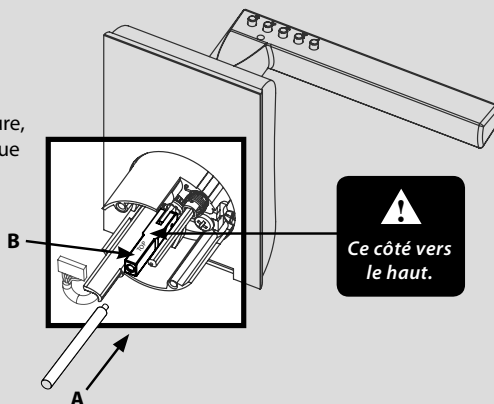
Voir page 17 pour du sens d'informations.



Installation de l'assemblage de la plaque de garniture extérieure

ÉTAPE 1

Tout en maintenant l'assemblage de la plaque de garniture extérieure, appuyer sur la rallonge en plastique (A) pour l'insérer dans l'arbre de broche (B). L'arbre est aligné correctement lorsque la marque "TOP" peut être vue du dessus.

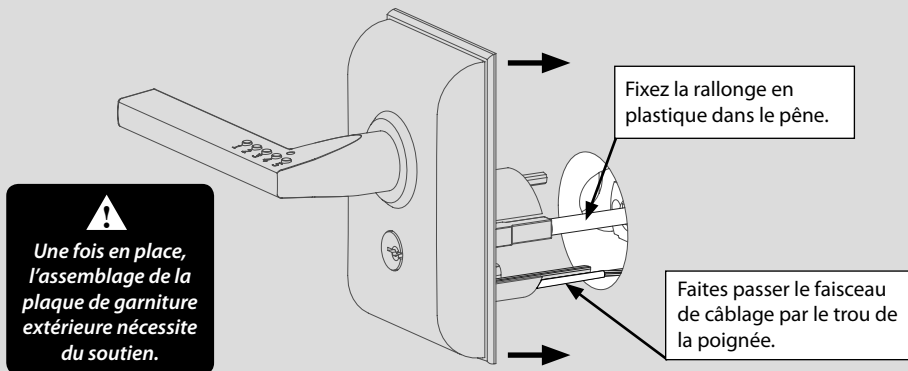


FR

3

ÉTAPE 2

Positionnez l'assemblage de la plaque de garniture extérieure dans le trou de la poignée.



ÉTAPE 3

Alors que l'assemblage de la plaque de garniture est aligné sur la porte, **RETIREZ** la rallonge en plastique.

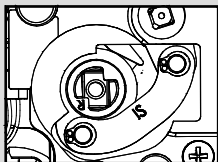
Installation du bâti intérieur

ÉTAPE 1

Confirmation du lien de la came.

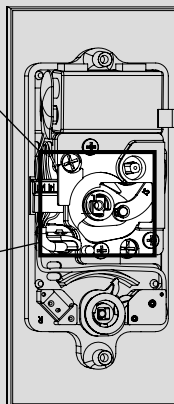
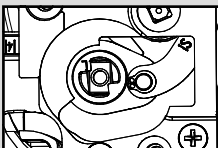
**Pour les serrures avec
ouverture à droite :**

Tournez vers la position
de droite.



**Pour les serrures avec
ouverture à gauche :**

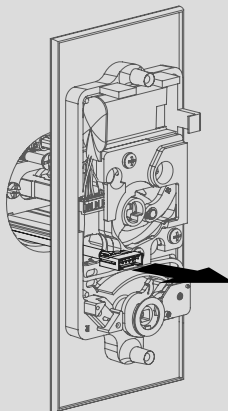
Tournez vers la position
de gauche.



*Le lien de la came
doit demeurer dans
la position adéquate
durant l'installation.*

ÉTAPE 2

Faites passer le faisceau de câblage
dans le bâti intérieur.



4

ÉTAPE 3

Fixez le bâti intérieur à l'aide de deux vis à métal n° 8-32 x 14½ po à tête plate (article n° 5)

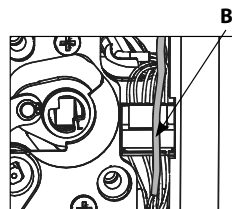
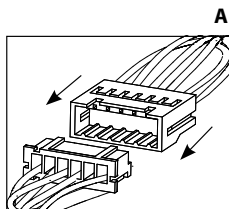
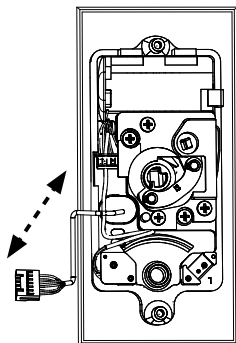
**Avant de fixer
fermement les vis,
vérifiez l'alignement.**

En option - Une vis à bois # 8 supplémentaire (fournie) peut être installée pour empêcher la garniture intérieure de tourner

FR

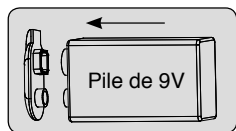
ÉTAPE 4

Branchez le faisceau de câblage (A) dans les connecteurs horizontaux tel qu'illustré (B).



ÉTAPE 5

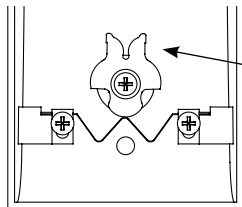
Install Battery.



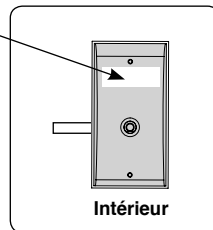
*Pour une performance optimale,
utilisez toujours une pile de
bonne qualité.*

5 Installation de la plaque de garniture intérieure

Fixez la plaque de garniture intérieure à l'aide de deux vis à métal n° 8-32 x $\frac{3}{8}$ po à tête plate (article n° 4c).

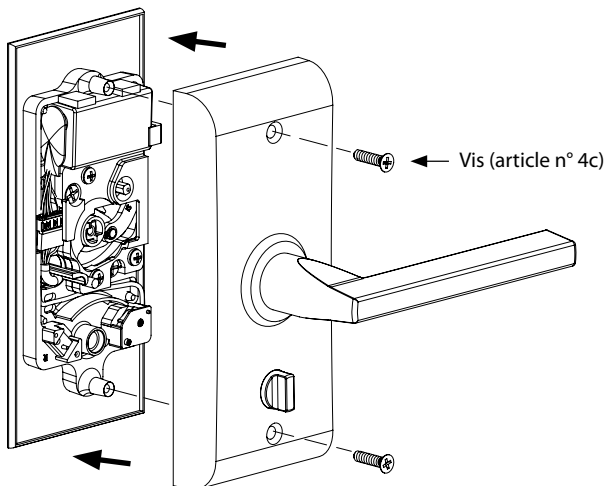



Les codes d'utilisateurs se trouvent sur la plaque de garniture intérieure et reportez-vous à la couverture arrière.




*Position adéquate pour l'installation. La came de blocage à oreilles doit être placée tel que illustré (position neutre)**

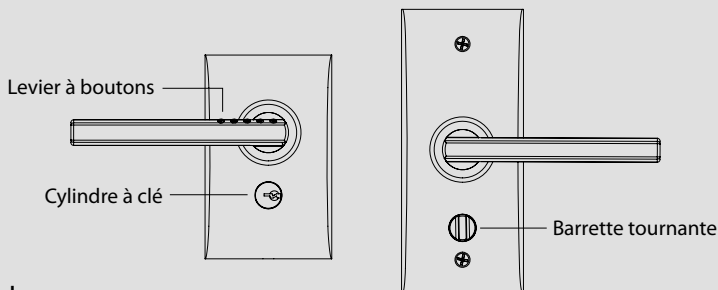
***Position neutre verrouillée** est requise pour l'installation et pour retirer l'assemblage de la plaque de garniture intérieure.



Comment utiliser la serrure

Votre serrure est prête à être utilisée

FR



Utilisation de la serrure

Une fois installée sur la porte et la pile branchée, votre serrure est prête à être utilisée.

Réglages des valeurs par défaut

Les codes d'utilisateur et maître sont indiqués dans la plaque de garniture intérieure ou reportez-vous à la couverture arrière.

Entrée des codes d'utilisateur

- Entrée d'un code d'utilisateur valide et actif (DEL verte 1 x et bip 1 x) - Déverrouillage
- Entrée d'un code d'utilisateur non valide et inactif (DEL rouge 2 x et bip 2 x) - Demeure verrouillée
- Trois entrées invalides de suite vont entraîner le blocage de la serrure durant 30 secondes, blocage qui sera signalé par 3 clignotements de la DEL rouge et de 3 bips.

Pour redémarrer l'entrée d'un code

Maintenez le bouton 1 enfoncé pendant trois secondes (cela fonctionne en mode d'entrée et en mode de programmation).

Clé d'accès

La serrure peut également être déverrouillée et verrouillée à l'aide du cylindre à clé (chaque serrure est fournie avec deux clés).

Mode passage et privé

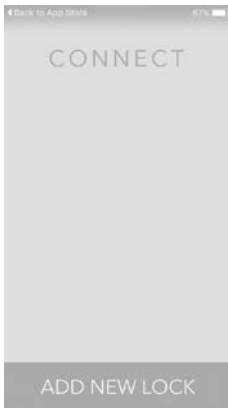
Utilisez la barrette tournante intérieure.

Réglage	Description du réglage	Position de la barrette tournante	Réaction de la DEL
Barrette tournante activée (en service)	L'accès à la serrure est réglementé. Un code d'utilisateur valide et actif est requis pour l'accès. (Mode Privé).		Verte
Barrette tournante activée (hors service)	L'accès à la serrure n'est PAS réglementé. Toujours déverrouillée. (Mode passage).		Ambre

C'est le temps de commencer

Appli du dispositif

L'Appli est gratuite et oerte sur App Store (dispositifs ) ou sur Pay Store (dispositifs ).



- A À partir de dispositifs  (iPhone 4S, 5, 5S et 5C; iPad de 3e génération et exécutant iOS 8 et ultérieure)

1. Rendez-vous sur App Store, sélectionnez Rechercher, entrez « **Emtek** », sélectionnez « **Emtek Liscio Bluetooth** », sélectionnez l'icône télécharger et lorsque prêt, sélectionnez Ouvrir. Si lors de l'ouverture de l'appli vous recevez un écran vous avisant que votre dispositif "n'est pas supporté", vous ne serez pas en mesure d'exécuter l'application sur ce dispositif.

- B À partir de dispositifs  (O.S. 4.3 et ultérieure)

1. Rendez-vous sur Play Store, sélectionnez l'icône Rechercher, entrez « **Emtek** », sélectionnez l'application « **Emtek Liscio Bluetooth** », sélectionnez Installer, sélectionnez Accepter et, lorsque prêt, sélectionnez Ouvrir. Si l'application n'apparaît pas, cela signifie que votre dispositif fonctionne avec une version OS antérieure à 4.3.

- C Une fois l'application ouverte, vous serez dirigé dans l'écran de bienvenue et de l'application

1. La sélection de « **Start** » (Démarrer) vous conduira vers l'assistant de réglage; pour ce faire, la serrure devra être à proximité.

2. Au besoin, sélectionnez « **Videos** » (Vidéos), « **Quick Reference** » (Référence rapide), « **About** » (À propos) ou « **Show Phone Info** » (Voir l'info du téléphone)

3. Si vous téléphonez chez Emtek pour obtenir du service à la clientèle, veuillez avoir en main l'information énumérée dans « **Show Phone Info** ».

Caractéristiques de programmation

Lorsque l'application est réglée et que vous avez ouvert une session dans celle-ci, vous serez dirigé dans l'écran « **Home** » – à partir de là, vous pouvez:



FR

A Sélectionner « **Users** » (Utilisateurs) - vous pouvez ajouter, modifier et supprimer des utilisateurs

1. Pour ajouter un utilisateur – sélectionnez « **+ New** », entrez le nom et entrez le code d'utilisateur (réglé à l'usine à quatre chiffres)
2. Pour modifier un utilisateur – sélectionnez l'utilisateur que vous voulez modifier, l'information sur l'utilisateur sera affichée, sélectionnez « **Edit** » et faites les modifications nécessaires, sélectionnez ensuite « **Update** »
3. Pour supprimer un utilisateur – sélectionnez l'utilisateur que vous voulez supprimer, l'information sur l'utilisateur sera affichée, sélectionnez « **Edit** » et ensuite sélectionnez « **X Delete** »
4. Vous devez transmettre les modifications à la serrure avant que celle-ci puisse les reconnaître - voir Transfert ci-dessous (B)

B Sélectionnez « **Transfer** » – Vous pouvez transmettre les données/réglages modifiés à la serrure, voir les activités de la serrure ou obtenir les données/réglages de la serrure

1. Transmission des données vers la serrure « **Sending data to Lock** » – pour transmettre tous les ajouts, les modifications, les suppressions d'utilisateur ou toutes les modifications de réglages
2. Visionnement des activités de la serrure – les activités de la serrure sur l'application sont montrées à partir de la dernière jusqu'à la première. Vous allez devoir sélectionner « **Get new lock activity** » (Voir la nouvelle activité de la serrure) pour voir la plus récente activité de la serrure

3. Obtenir les données de la serrure « **Getting data from Lock** » – pour transmettre les plus récents réglages d'utilisateur et de données de la serrure à l'application

C Sélectionnez les réglages « **Select Setting** » – vous pouvez personnaliser certaines des fonctions de la serrure et de l'application

1. À partir de l'écran de réglages, vous pouvez modifier les réglages notés et défiler vers le bas pour les réglages avancés

D Sélectionnez « **Logoff** » (fermeture de session) une fois que vous avez terminé ou lorsque vous désirez programmer une autre serrure.

E « **Battery Status** » (état de la pile) – lorsque les communications BT sont fructueuses, un écran « **Operation Complete** » (opération terminée) vous indique l'état de la pile.

1. « **Good** » (Parfait) signifie que la pile a la bonne alimentation pour faire fonctionner la serrure et les communications BT.
2. « **Low** » (Faible) signifie que la pile n'a pas la bonne alimentation pour faire fonctionner la serrure ou les communications BT et qu'elle doit être remplacée. La DEL orangée clignote 4 fois et 4 bips se font entendre.
3. « **Blackout** » (Panne de courant) signifie que la pile ne peut plus faire fonctionner la serrure et que la pile doit être remplacée. La DEL rouge de la serrure clignote 6 fois et 6 bips se font entendre.
4. La pile de remplacement doit être une pile alcaline de 9 volts de haute qualité. La pile est située derrière la plaque de garniture intérieure.

Dépannage

Assurez-vous que le dispositif répond aux exigences minimales



Apple – iPhone 4S, 5, 5S et 5C; iPad de 3e génération et exécutant iOS 8 et ultérieure



Android – exécutant OS 4.3 ou ultérieure

Rejumelage de la fonction de l'application

A Utilisez cette action lorsque les communications avec le dispositif à verrouiller ne fonctionnent pas mais seulement après avoir fait plusieurs essais infructueux.

B Comment faire:

1. Application - Naviguez jusqu'à l'écran d'ouverture de session, entre le mot de passe de l'application, sélectionnez le nom de la porte, déplacez la barre glissante « **Force Re-Pairing** » (Forcer le jumelage) à la position ON et appuyez ensuite sur le bouton « **Login** » (ouverture de session).
2. Serrure - Rétablissez manuellement la serrure à ses valeurs par défaut - appuyez simultanément sur les boutons 1 et 5, entrez le code maître, appuyez sur les boutons 1 et 4 (un après l'autre, et non simultanément) et entrez

et entrez le code maître de nouveau. Une fois la serrure rétablie, la DEL clignote une fois en vert - OU - débranchez la pile et, lorsque vous la rebrancherez, maintenez n'importe quel bouton enfoncé durant 3 secondes; le rétablissement sera signalé par trois clignotements de la DEL et par 3 bips. Une fois la serrure rétablie, le registre d'activités est vide et les codes d'utilisateur et maître reviennent à leur valeur par défaut - consultez les étiquettes qui se trouvent à l'intérieur de la plaque de garniture intérieure ou reportez-vous à la couverture arrière.

3. Suivez la procédure de réglage dictée par l'assistant de l'appli.

4. Transférez les codes d'utilisateur et maître ainsi que les réglages de l'appli vers la serrure.

Rétablissement de l'application et de la serrure

A Utilisez cette action lorsque le rejumelage de la fonction de l'appli ne rétablit pas les communications Bluetooth. Ceci aura pour effet de rétablir à la fois l'appli et la serrure, de supprimer le registre des activités ainsi que de rétablir les codes d'utilisateur et maître à leur valeur par défaut.

B Comment faire:

1. Application - Naviguez dans l'écran de réglages, défilez vers le bas et sélectionnez « **Advanced Settings** » (Réglages avancés), sélectionnez « **Clear database** » (Effacez la base de données) et sélectionnez l'action désirée: sélectionnez « **Delete this application database** » (Supprimer la base de données de cette application). Pour confirmer, déplacez la barre glissante à la position « ON » (EN) et sélectionnez ensuite « **Commit Changes** » (Confirmer les modifications). Vous serez redirigé vers l'écran d'accueil et

démarrer l'assistant de démarrage à partir du début.

2. Dispositif - () naviguez vers les réglages principaux, sélectionnez « **Bluetooth** », sélectionnez l'icône « i » pour Emtek 1 sous « **DEVICES** » (DISPOSITIFS), sélectionnez « **Forget this Device** » (Oublier ce dispositif) et confirmez « **Forget Device** » (Oublier ce dispositif). () - Naviguez vers les réglages principaux, sélectionnez « **Bluetooth** », sélectionnez Emtek 1 (l'icône sur le côté droit) et ensuite sélectionnez « **Unpair** » (Déjumeler).

3. Serrure - Rétablissez manuellement la serrure à ses valeurs par défaut (voir la section 2 ci-dessus)

4. Suivez la procédure de réglage dictée par l'assistant de l'appli.

5. Ceci aura pour effet de rétablir l'information à la fois de l'appli et de la serrure.

Si le problème persiste — Enlevez l'appli du dispositif et téléchargez-la de nouveau. Rétablissez également la serrure.

A Utilisez cette action lorsque l'action 2 ci-dessus ne corrige pas les communications Bluetooth.

B Comment faire:

1. Dispositif - () Appuyez sur l'icône « **Emtek** » jusqu'à ce que toutes les icônes se mettent à s'agiter et qu'un x apparaisse dans le coin des applications. Sélectionnez x sur l'appli « **Emtek** » et appuyez sur le bouton « **Apple Home** » (Accueil Apple) et toutes les applis reviendront à leur état normal. Rendez-vous sur App store et téléchargez de nouveau l'appli et ouvrez-la pour la démarrer de nouveau.

() - naviguez vers le menu des réglages principaux, sélectionnez « **Apps** » (Applis) et défilez pour trouver l'icône « **Emtek** », appuyez sur celle-ci et ensuite sur « **Uninstall** » (Désinstaller)

2. Device - () Navigate to main Settings, select Bluetooth, select "x" icon for Emtek 1 under DEVICES, select Forget this Device, and confirm Forget Device. () Navigate to main Settings, select Bluetooth, select Emtek 1 (icon on right side) and then select Unpair

3. Device – Cycle power off then back on

4. Lock – Manually reset lock to factory defaults. (see section 2 above)

5. Start Emtek app and follow wizard through setup process.

6. This will reset all information both app and lock.

Programmation manuelle

La serrure peut être programmée manuellement à l'aide des boutons 1 à 5 du levier. Cette fonction est disponible mais la programmation à l'aide d'un téléphone intelligent est fortement recommandée.

Commandes de programmation manuelle

- 1
- Pour accéder au mode de programmation manuelle, appuyez simultanément sur les boutons 1 et 5.
- 2
- Entrez le code maître à six (6) chiffres de la serrure (ce code se trouve sur l'étiquette à la page 7 du présent manuel et à l'intérieur de la plaque de garniture intérieure).
- 3
- Les fonctions ci-dessous sont maintenant accessibles en entrant une combinaison de boutons l'un après l'autre. (et non pas enfoncés simultanément.)

Si vous désirez	Appuyez sur la touche	Actions
Ajouter un code	Entrez 1 et ensuite 3	entrez maintenant le nouveau code et entrez-le de nouveau pour le confirmer
Supprimer un code	Entrez 4 et ensuite 3	et entrez ensuite le code à effacer et entrez-le de nouveau pour confirmer
Modifier le code maître	Entrez 3 et ensuite 3 de nouveau	et entrez ensuite le nouveau code maître et entrez-le de nouveau pour confirmer
Refuser les utilisateurs EN	Entrez 4 et ensuite 1	
Refuser les utilisateurs HORS	Entrez 5 et ensuite 1	(le réglage par défaut est HORS)
Refuser less utilisateurs permet de désactiver ou d'activer tous les codes d'utilisateur - Lorsque que l'option est EN fonction , aucun codes d'utilisateurs ne fonctionne , seule la clé		
Supprimer tous les codes	Entrez 5 et ensuite 5 de nouveau	
Régler la longueur des codes à 4 chiffres	Entrez 5 et ensuite 2	(le réglage par défaut est 4 chiffres)
Régler la longueur de code à 6 chiffres	Entrez 5 et ensuite 3	
Avertisseur sonore EN	Entrez 1 et ensuite 1 de nouveau	(le réglage par défaut est EN)
Avertisseur sonore HORS	Entrez 1 et ensuite 2	
Prolonger le temps d'arrêt HORS	Entrez 2 et ensuite 1	(le réglage par défaut est HORS)
Prolonger le temps d'arrêt EN	Entrez 2 et ensuite 2 de nouveau	
Le mode Temps d'arrêt prolongé permet que la durée de temps ou la serrure est déverrouiller après l'entrée d'un code valide soit plus longue		
Interrupteur de passage HORS	Entrez 3 et ensuite 1	
Interrupteur de passage EN	Entrez 3 et ensuite 2	(le réglage par défaut est EN)
Lorsque le mode Interrupteur de passage est EN fonction, vous pouvez choisir entre « Passage » (serrure non verrouillée) et le mode « Privacy/Privé » (serrure toujours verrouillée) et lorsque ce mode est réglé à HORS service, la serrure est toujours en mode Privé (toujours verrouillée) .		
Rétablissement des valeurs par défaut	Entrez 1 et ensuite 4	entrez le code maître pour confirmer

Rétroaction - DEL et avertisseur sonore

Condition	Couleur	Compter	Durée	Commentaire
Serrure sous tension				
Alimentation normale en fonction	ambre	1	long	
Rétablissement de la valeur par défaut	ambre	3	long	
Pile faible	ambre	4	long	
Panne totale de la pile	rouge	6	long	
Accès par un utilisateur				
Accès accordé - normal	verte	1	long	
Accès accordé - pile faible	ambre	4	long	
Accès refusé - normal	rouge	2	long	
Accès refusé - panne totale de la pile	rouge	6	long	
Accès refusé - Blocage de la serrure	rouge	3	long	
Entrée ID durant le temps d'arrêt	rouge	2	long	
Interrupteur de passage				
Serrure verrouillée	verte	1	long	
Serrure déverrouillée	ambre	1	long	
Programmation manuelle				
Programmation en cours	ambre	1	continue	Clignote lors'un bouton est enfoncé
Action de programmation effectuée avec succès	verte	1	médium	
Échec de l'action de programmation	rouge	2	médium	
Programmation annulée	ambre	2	médium	
Temps d'arrêt durant la programmation	ambre	2	médium	Après 20 secondes
Programmation Bluetooth				
Intervalle BT activé	ambre	1	long	Délai pour entrer en mode BT
Programmation en cours	verte	1	continue	
Programmation terminée - normal	verte	1	médium	
Programmation terminée - pile faible	ambre	4	long	
Programmation terminée - panne totale de la pile	rouge	6	long	
Programmation annulée ou temps d'arrêt	rouge	2	médium	
Échec de programmation	rouge	2	médium	Après 60 secondes
Bouton enfoncé				
Accès par un utilisateur	ambre	1	court	
Programmation manuelle	HORS	1	court	Clignote et reste ensuite allumée ambre

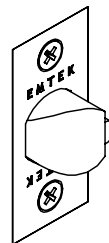
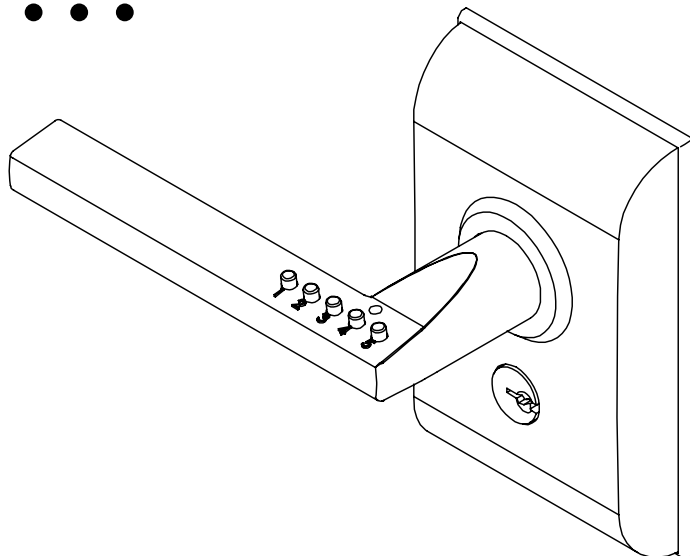
© Emtek Products, inc., 2017. Une entreprise du groupe ASSA ABLOY. Tous droits réservés. La reproduction totale ou partielle sans l'autorisation expresse écrite par Emtek Products, inc. est interdite.

Le brevet américain:	Canadian Brevets:
8,176,761	2,698,041
8,141,400	2,789,278
	2,789,280

Guía de Instalación y Manual de Usuario

EMTEK®
ASSA ABLOY

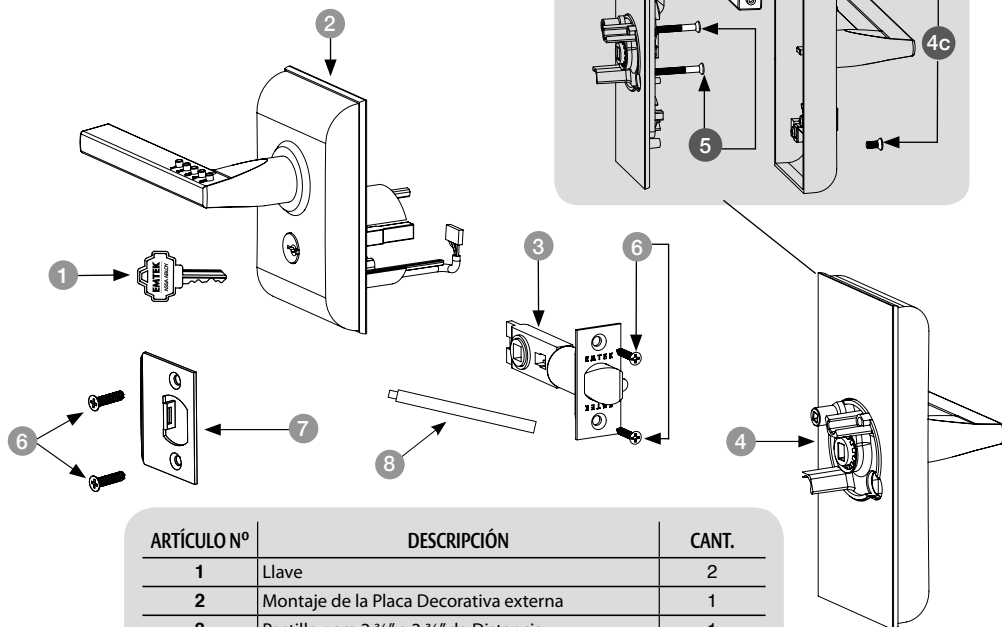
LISCIO



ES

Juego De Teclado Electrónico Y Palanca
Con Programación Bluetooth

Qué Hay en la Caja



ARTÍCULO N°	DESCRIPCIÓN	CANT.
1	Llave	2
2	Montaje de la Placa Decorativa externa	1
3	Pestillo para 2 3/8" o 2 3/4" de Distancia	1
4	Montaje de la Placa Decorativa Interior	1
4a	Chasis Interno	1
4b	Placa Decorativa Interior	1
4c	Tornillo de Cabeza Plana de #8-32 x 3/8"	2
4d	Batería Alcalina de 9V	1
5	Tornillo de Cabeza Plana de #8-32 x 1 1/2"	2
6	Tornillo para Madera de #8 x 3/4"	5
7	Placa de Impacto	1
8	Extensor de Plástico	1

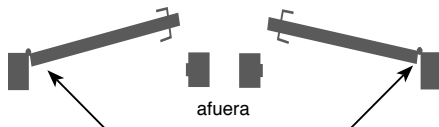
Preparación

Confirme el Manejo

A

LA OPERACIÓN DE LA PUERTA ESTÁ SIEMPRE DETERMINADA DESDE AFUERA

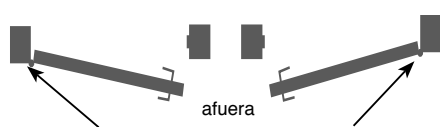
Puertas que abren hacia adentro



La bisagra está a la izquierda
La puerta es Izquierda (LH)

La bisagra está a la derecha
La puerta es Derecha (RH)

Puertas que abren hacia afuera

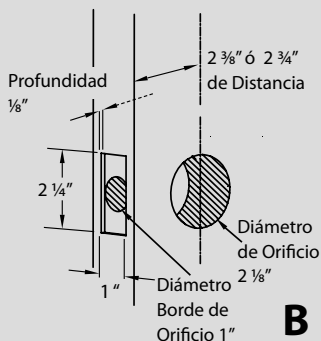


La bisagra está a la izquierda
La puerta es Izquierda (LH)

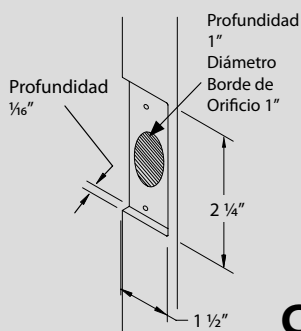
La bisagra está a la derecha
La puerta es Derecha (RH)

ES

Preparación de la Puerta

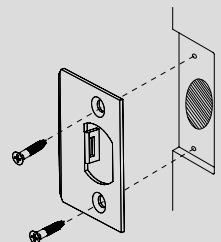


Preparación de la Jamba



Instale la Placa de Impacto

Asegure la Placa de Impacto usando dos Tornillos para Madera #8 x 3/4" (artículo #6).

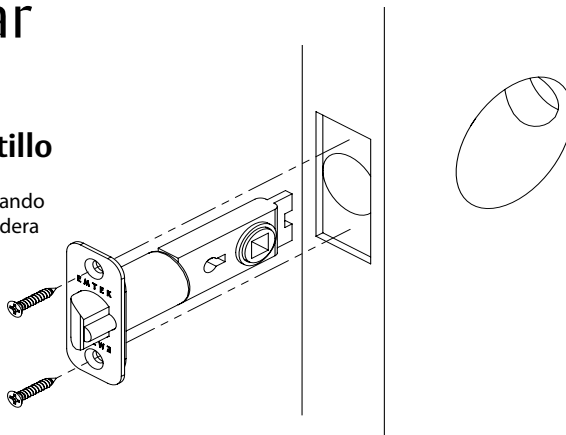


Cómo Instalar

1

Instale el Pestillo

Asegure el Pestillo usando dos Tornillos para Madera #8 x ¾" (artículo #6).

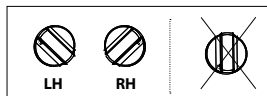


Retire los Tornillos de la Placa Decorativa Interior

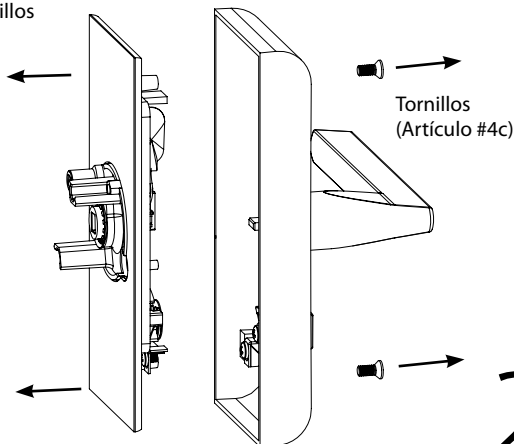
Use un destornillador Phillips para retirar los tornillos (artículo #4c) mostrados abajo y separe la Placa Decorativa Interior del Chasis Interno.



Retire el chasis interno de la placa decorativa antes de instalar la placa exterior. El Cerrojo manual debe estar en posición neutral.



Ver Hoja 31 para Información de manejo

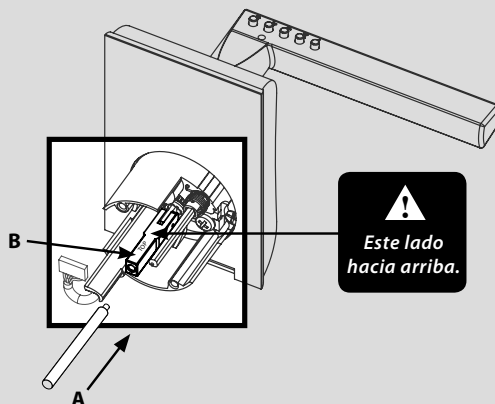


2

Instale el Montaje de la Placa Decorativa Exterior

PASO 1

Mientras sostiene el Montaje de la Placa Decorativa Exterior, Presione el Extensor de Plástico (A) dentro del Eje del Rotor (B). El Rotor está apropiadamente alineado cuando la marca 'TOP' puede ser visualizada desde arriba.



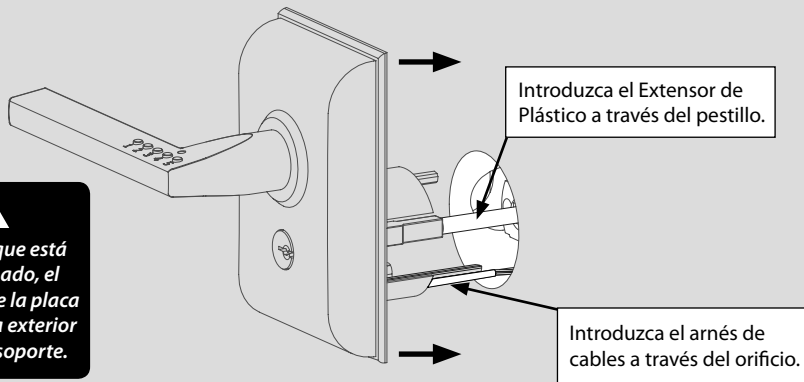
 Este lado hacia arriba.

ES

3

PASO 2

Posicione el Montaje de la Placa Decorativa Exterior a través del orificio.



 Una vez que está posicionado, el montaje de la placa decorativa exterior requiere soporte.

Introduzca el Extensor de Plástico a través del pestillo.

Introduzca el arnés de cables a través del orificio.

PASO 3

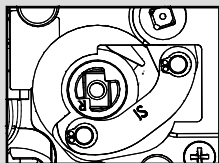
Con el Montaje de la Placa Decorativa Exterior alineado a la puerta, **RETIRE** Extensor de Plástico.

Instale el Chasis Interno

PASO 1 Confirme la posición de la Unión de Levas.

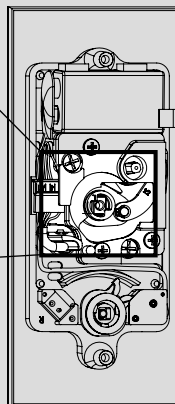
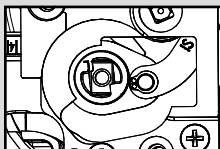
Para Cerraduras Derechas:

Gire a la posición derecha.



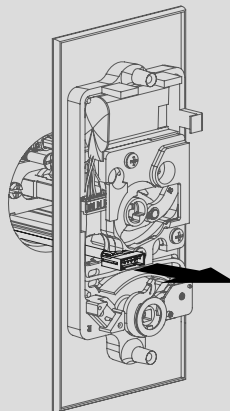
Para Cerraduras Izquierdas:

Gire a la posición izquierda.



La unión de levas debe permanecer en la posición correcta durante la instalación.

PASO 2 Introduzca el Arnés de Cables a través del Chasis Interno.

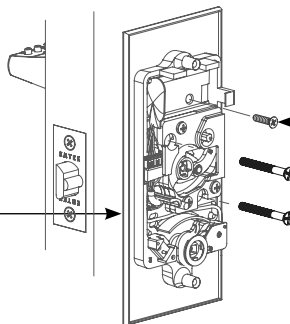


4

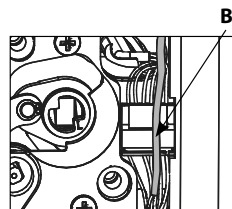
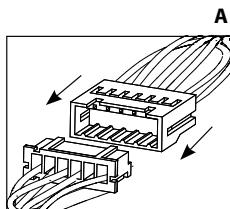
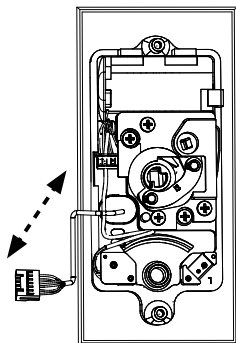
PASO 3

Asegure el Chasis Interno usando dos tornillos de Cabeza Plana #8-32 x 1½" (artículo #5).

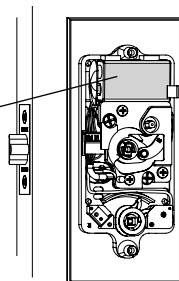
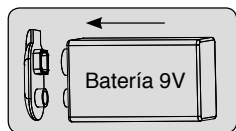

**Verifique la alineación
antes de ajustar por
completo los tornillos**

**PASO 4**

Conecte el Arnés de Cables (A) e inserte los Conectores como se muestra (B).

**PASO 5**

Instale la Batería.

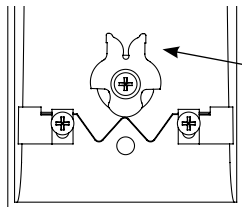


*Para un funcionamiento óptimo,
siempre use una batería de
buena calidad*

ES

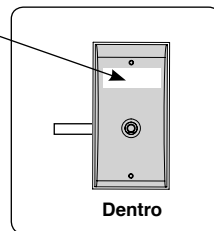
5 Instale la Placa Decorativa Interior

Asegure la Placa Decorativa Interior usando dos Tornillos de Cabeza Plana #8-32 x $\frac{3}{8}$ " (artículo #4c).

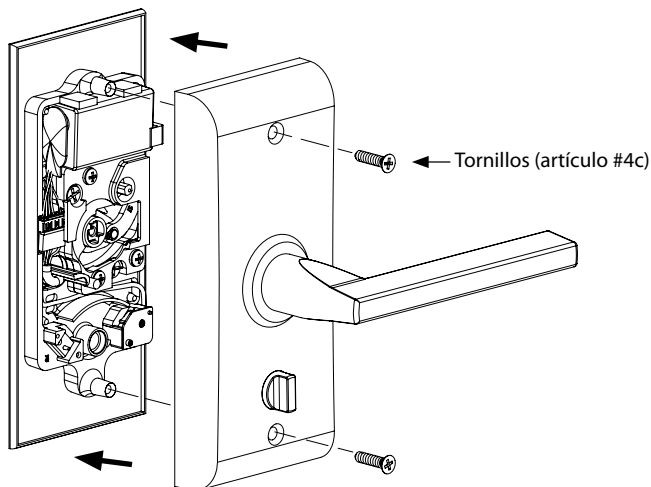


Posición correcta para instalación. La leva manual debe estar posicionada como se muestra (Posición Neutral)*

Los códigos de usuario están localizados en la placa interior y la última página.

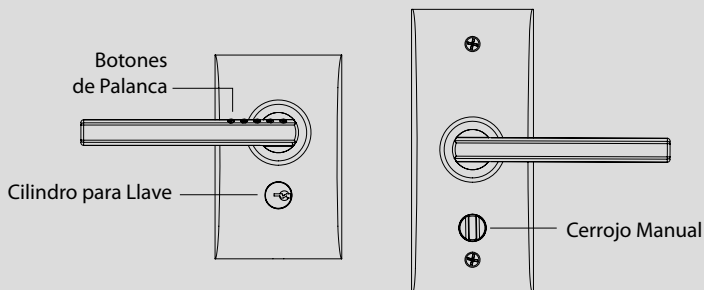


***La posición neutral es necesaria para la instalación y extracción del Montaje de la Placa Decorativa Interior.**



Cómo Usar

Su Cerradura está Lista para Usar



ES

Usando la Cerradura

Una vez que está instalada en la puerta con la batería conectada - la cerradura está lista para su uso.

Configuración Predeterminada de Fábrica

Los Códigos Maestros y de Usuario están señalados en la placa decorativa interior y la última página.

Ingresando los Códigos de Usuario

- Ingresando un código de usuario correcto, activo (LED verde x1 y bip x1) - abre
- Ingresando un código incorrecto o inactivo (LED rojo x2 y bip x2) - permanece cerrada
- Tres ingresos incorrectos resultarán en un bloqueo, señalado por 3 destellos de LED rojos y 3 bips cortos, el bloqueo dura 30 segundos.

Para Reiniciar el Ingreso del Código

Presione y sostenga el botón # 1 por tres segundos (esto funciona en el modo de ingreso o programación).

Acceso con Llave

La cerradura también puede ser abierta o cerrada mediante el cilindro, cada cerradura viene con dos llaves.

Modo de Entrada y Privacidad

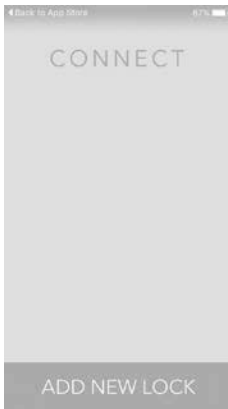
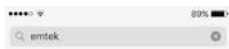
Use el pestillo interior.

Configuración	Descripción de la Configuración	Posición del Pestillo	Señal LED
Pestillo Activo ON	El acceso de la cerradura es regulado. Un código de usuario correcto, activo se requiere para el acceso. (Modo de Privacidad)		Verde
Pestillo Activo OFF	El acceso de la cerradura NO es regulado. Siempre Abierto. (Modo de Entrada)		Ámbar

Primeros Pasos

Aplicación del Dispositivo

La aplicación es gratis y está disponible en la App Store (dispositivos ) o Play Store (dispositivos ).



A Desde dispositivos  (iPhone 4S, 5, 5S y 5C; iPad 3ra generación y posteriores funcionando con iOS 8 y posteriores)

1. Ir a la App Store, seleccionar Buscar, ingresar "**Emtek**", seleccionar "**Emtek Liscio Bluetooth**", seleccionar el ícono dedescarga, cuando esté listo seleccione Abrir. Si luego de abrir la aplicación aparece una pantalla que le notifique su dispositivo no es "Compatible", no podrá hacer funcionar la aplicación en este dispositivo.

B Desde dispositivos  (SO 4.3 y posteriores)

1. Ir a la Play Store, seleccionar el ícono Buscar, ingresar "**Emtek**", seleccionar la aplicación "**Emtek Liscio Bluetooth**", seleccione Instalar, seleccione Aceptar, cuando esté listo seleccione Abrir. Si la aplicación no aparece, entonces su dispositivo está funcionando con un SO anterior al 4.3.

C Una vez que la Aplicación es abierta, se encontrará en la pantalla de Bienvenida

1. Seleccionando Empezar, se moverá a través del asistente de configuración, la cerradura debe estar cerca para ello.
2. Seleccione Videos, Referencia Rápida, Acerca De o Mostrar Información del Teléfono, según lo necesite
3. Si llama a Emtek para servicio al cliente, por favor tenga la información detallada en la pantalla disponible Mostrar Información de Teléfono.

Características de Programación



Una vez que la Aplicación es configurada y ha iniciado sesión en la misma, estará en la pantalla de Inicio – desde aquí puede:

A **Seleccionar Usuarios** – puede adicionar, editar y eliminar usuarios

1. Para adicionar un usuario – seleccione + Nuevo, ingrese Nombre y código de usuario (predeterminado a 4 dígitos)
2. Para editar un usuario – seleccione el usuario a editarse, la información del usuario será mostrada, seleccione Editar, edite según lo necesite, seleccione Actualizar
3. Para eliminar un usuario – seleccione el usuario a editar, la información del usuario será mostrada, seleccione Editar, seleccione X Eliminar

B **Seleccionar Transferir** – puede enviar cambios de datos/configuraciones a la cerradura, ver la actividad de la misma u obtener datos/configuraciones de la cerradura

1. Enviando datos a la Cerradura – para comunicar cualquier adición, edición o eliminación de usuarios y cualquier cambio de configuración
2. Viendo la actividad de la cerradura – la actividad de la cerradura en la aplicación está desde la última actualización, necesitará seleccionar Obtener nueva actividad de la cerradura, para ver la última actividad

3. Obteniendo datos desde la Cerradura – para comunicar los últimos datos de usuario y configuración de la cerradura a la aplicación

C **Seleccione Configuración** – puede personalizar algunas de las características de la cerradura y la aplicación

1. Desde la pantalla de configuraciones puede editar las configuraciones anotadas, desplazándose hacia abajo están las Configuraciones Avanzadas

D **Seleccione Cierre** de Sesión cuando acabe o cuando desee programar una cerradura diferente.

E **Estado de la Batería** – cuando las comunicaciones BT son exitosas, una pantalla de “Operación Completa” brinda un estado de la batería.

1. “Buena” significa que la batería tiene la energía para operar la cerradura y las comunicaciones BT.
2. “Baja” significa que la batería todavía tiene energía para operar la cerradura y las comunicaciones BT, pero debería ser reemplazada. El LED de la cerradura muestra 4 destellos ámbar y 4 bips.
3. “Apagón” significa que la batería ya no puede operar la cerradura y debe ser reemplazada. El LED de la cerradura muestra 6 destellos rojos y 6 bips
4. La batería de reemplazo debería ser una batería de alta calidad alcalina de 9 voltios. La batería está ubicada detrás de la placa decorativa interior.

ES

Solución de Problemas

Verifique que el dispositivo cumple los requisitos mínimos



Apple – iPhone 4S, 5, 5S y 5C; iPad 3ª generación y posteriores, funcionando con iOS 8 o posteriores



Android – funcionando con SO 4.3 o posteriores

Reconectando la Función de la Aplicación

A

Use esta acción cuando las comunicaciones dispositivo a cerradura no están funcionando, pero lo estaban antes y varios intentos han fallado.

B

Cómo hacerlo:

1. Aplicación – Navegue a la pantalla de Acceso, ingrese la contraseña de la aplicación, seleccione el nombre de la puerta, mueva la barra deslizante "Forzar Reconexión" a ON y presione el botón Acceso.
2. Cerradura – Manualmente reinicie la cerradura a los valores predeterminados de fábrica – presione los botones #1 y #5 simultáneamente, ingrese el código maestro, presione el botón #1 y luego el #4 (no simultáneamente) y reingrese el código maestro.

El LED parpadeará en verde, una vez que la cerradura haya sido reiniciada – O – desconecte la batería y cuando la reconecte mantenga presionado cualquier botón por 3 segundos, el reiniciador será señalado por el LED destellando 3 veces y 3 bips. Una vez que se reinicia, el registro de actividad de la cerradura estará vacío y el código de usuario y código maestro estarán de nuevo con los valores de fábrica – ver las etiquetas ubicadas en la página 7 del Manual de Usuario y dentro de la placa decorativa interior.

3. Siga al asistente de la aplicación a través del proceso de configuración.

4. Transfiera a la cerradura el código de usuario y código maestro y las configuraciones en la aplicación

Reiniciar la Aplicación y la Cerradura

A

Use esta acción cuando la función de reconexión de la aplicación no restaure las comunicaciones Bluetooth. Esto reiniciará la aplicación y la cerradura, borrando el registro de actividad y reiniciando el código de usuario y código maestro nuevamente a los valores predeterminados de fábrica.

B

Cómo hacerlo:

1. Aplicación – Navegar a la pantalla de Configuraciones, desplazarse hacia abajo y seleccionar "Configuraciones Avanzadas", seleccionar "Limpiar base de datos", en Selección la acción deseada: seleccione "Eliminar estabase de datos de aplicación", para Confirmar la eliminación mueva la barra deslizante a ON, luego seleccione Confirmar Cambios. Será enviado de nuevo a la pantalla de Bienvenida para iniciar el asistente de configuración desde el principio.

2. Dispositivo – (🍏) Navegue a las Configuraciones principales, seleccione Bluetooth, seleccione el ícono "i" para Emtek 1 bajo DISPOSITIVOS, seleccione Olvidar este Dispositivo, y confirme Olvidar Dispositivo. (🔌) Navegue a las Configuraciones principales, seleccione Bluetooth, seleccione Emtek 1 (ícono a la derecha) y seleccione Desconectar.

3. Cerradura – Reinicie manualmente la cerradura a los valores predeterminados de fábrica (ver sección 2 arriba)

4. Siga al asistente de la aplicación a través del proceso de configuración.

5. Esto reiniciará toda la información tanto en la aplicación como en la cerradura.

Si el problema persiste – Desinstale la Aplicación del Dispositivo, descargue de nuevo, reinicie la cerradura

A

Use esta acción cuando la acción 2 arriba no corrija las comunicaciones Bluetooth.

B

Cómo hacerlo:

1. Dispositivo – (🍏) Presione el ícono Emtek hasta que todos los íconos tiemblen y tengan una x en la esquina de las aplicaciones, seleccione x en la aplicación Emtek, presione el Botón de Inicio de Apple y las aplicaciones volverán a la normalidad. Diríjase a la App Store, descargue la aplicación y ábrala para comenzar nuevamente.

(🔌) Navegue a Configuraciones principales, seleccione Aplicaciones, desplace el cursor para encontrar el ícono Emtek y presione, luego seleccione Desinstalar.

2. Dispositivo – (🍏) Navegue a Configuraciones principales, seleccione Bluetooth, seleccione el ícono "i" para Emtek 1 bajo DISPOSITIVOS, seleccione Olvidar este Dispositivo, y confirme Olvidar Dispositivo. (🔌) Navegue a Configuraciones principales, seleccione Bluetooth, seleccione Emtek 1 (ícono a la derecha) y luego seleccione Desconectar.

3. Dispositivo – Apáguelo y enciéndalo de nuevo

4. Cerradura – Reinicie manualmente la cerradura a los valores predeterminados de fábrica. (ver sección 2 arriba)

5. Inicie la aplicación Emtek y siga el asistente a través del proceso de configuración.

6. Esto reiniciará toda la información tanto en la aplicación como en la cerradura.

Solución de Problemas

La cerradura puede ser programada manualmente, usando los botones del teclado 1 a 5. Esta configuración está disponible pero la programación usando un teléfono inteligente es altamente recomendada.

Comandos de Programación Manual

- 1
- Para ingresar al modo de programación – presione los botones #1 y #5 simultáneamente
- 2
- Ingrese el código maestro de 6 dígitos de la cerradura (el código maestro estará en la etiqueta en la página 7 del manual de usuario y dentro de la placa decorativa interior de la cerradura)
- 3
- Las características abajo son ahora accesibles mediante el ingreso de una combinación de dos botones, uno después del otro (no simultáneamente)

Si Desea	Presione El Botón	Acciones
Para adicionar un código	ingrese # 1 y luego # 3	luego ingrese el nuevo código e ingréselo de nuevo para confirmar (el valor de fábrica está en modo de 4 dígitos)
Para borrar un código	ingrese # 4 y luego # 3	luego ingrese el código para borrar e ingréselo de nuevo para confirmar
Para cambiar el código maestro	ingrese # 3 y luego # 3 nuevamente	luego ingrese el nuevo código maestro e ingréselo de nuevo para confirmar
Rechazar Usuarios ON	ingrese # 4 y luego # 1	
Rechazar Usuarios OFF	ingrese # 5 y luego # 1	(configuración de fábrica está OFF)
Rechazar Usuarios puede desactivar o activar todos los códigos de usuario – cuando está en ON, ningún código de usuario funcionará, sólo la llave opera la cerradura		
Borrar todos los códigos	ingrese # 5 y luego # 5 nuevamente	
Configurar la extensión de código de 4 dígitos	ingrese # 5 y luego # 2	(configuración de fábrica está en 4 dígitos)
Configurar la extensión de código de 6 dígitos	ingrese # 5 y luego # 3	
Bíper ON	ingrese # 1 y luego # 1 nuevamente	(configuración de fábrica está ON)
Bíper OFF	ingrese # 1 y luego # 2	
Pausa extendida OFF	ingrese # 2 y luego # 1	(configuración de fábrica está OFF)
Pausa extendida ON	ingrese # 2 y luego # 2 nuevamente	
El modo de pausa extendida permite una mayor duración de tiempo de desbloqueo, luego de la entrada de un código válido de usuario.		
Interruptor de entrada OFF	ingrese # 3 y luego # 1	
Interruptor de entrada ON	ingrese # 3 y luego # 2	(configuración de fábrica está ON)
Modo de interruptor de entrada ON, elija entre Entrada (cerradura sin asegurar) y Privacidad (siempre cerrada) y OFF cerradura está siempre en Privacidad (siempre cerrada).		
Restaurar los valores de fábrica	ingrese # 1 y luego # 4	ingrese el código maestro para confirmar

ES

Retroalimentación – LED y Bíper

Condición	Color	Conteo	Duración	Comentario
Encendido				
Energía Normal encendida	ámbar	1	larga	
Reinicio de valores de fábrica	ámbar	3	larga	
Batería baja	ámbar	4	larga	
Apagón de batería	rojo	6	larga	
Acceso de Usuario				
Acceso otorgado - normal	verde	1	larga	
Acceso otorgado - batería baja	ámbar	4	larga	
Acceso rechazado - normal	rojo	2	larga	
Acceso rechazado - Apagón de batería	rojo	6	larga	
Acceso rechazado - bloqueo	rojo	3	larga	
Ingreso de ID durante pausa	rojo	2	larga	
Interruptor de Entrada				
Cerradura asegurada	verde	1	larga	
Cerradura sin asegurar	ámbar	1	larga	
Programación Manual				
Programación activa	ámbar	1	continua	Parpadea hasta apagarse al presionar con llave
Éxito de operación de programación	verde	1	media	
Operación de programación falló	rojo	2	media	
Programación cancelada	ámbar	2	media	
Pausa de programación	ámbar	2	media	Luego de 20 segundos
Programación Bluetooth				
Intervalo de activación de BT	ámbar	1	larga	Retraso para ingresar BT
Programación activa	verde	1	continua	
Programación completada - normal	verde	1	media	
Programación completada - batería baja	ámbar	4	larga	
Programación completada - apagón de batería	rojo	6	larga	
Programación cancelada o pausada	rojo	2	media	
Programación falló	rojo	2	media	Luego de 60 segundos
Presión de Llave				
Acceso de Usuario	ámbar	1	corta	
Programación Manual	APAGADO	1	corta	Parpadeo contra ámbar sólido

Patente de	Patente Canadiense:
EE.UU:	2,698,041
8,176,761	2,789,278
8,141,400	2,789,280

Copyright © 2017, Emtek Products, Inc. an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
 Todos los derechos reservados. Está prohibida la reproducción total o
 parcial sin la expresa autorización escrita de Emtek Products, Inc.

ASSA ABLOY is the global
leader in door opening solutions,
dedicated to satisfying
end-user needs for security,
safety and convenience.



EMTEK Products, Inc.
15250 E. Stafford Street
City of Industry • CA 91744
Tel: 800-356-2741 • 626-961-0413
Fax: 800-577-5771 • 626-336-2812
emtek.com

Place Sticker Here

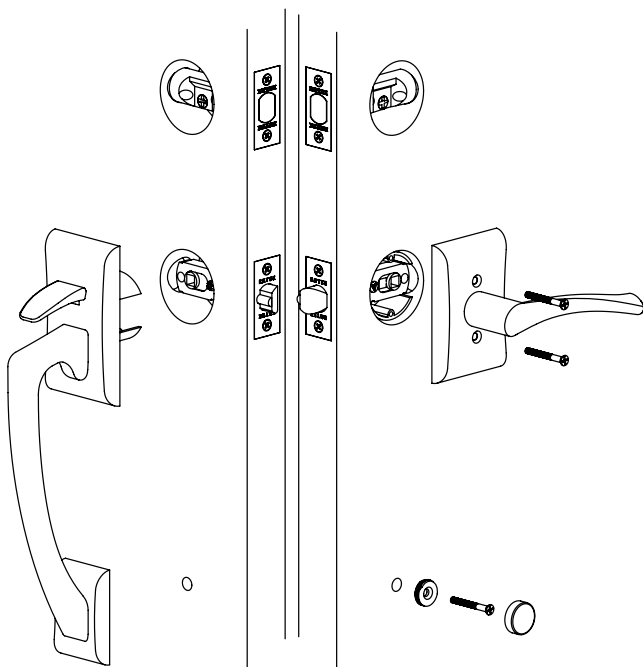
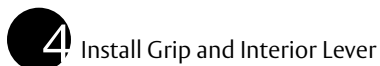
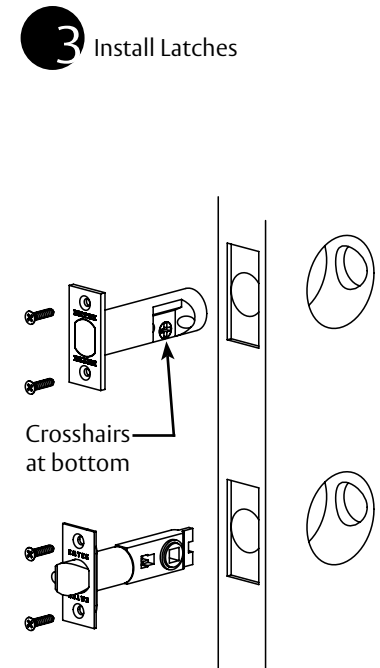
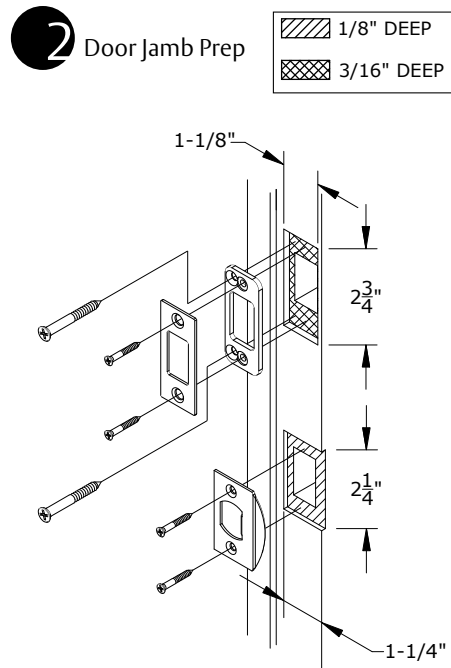
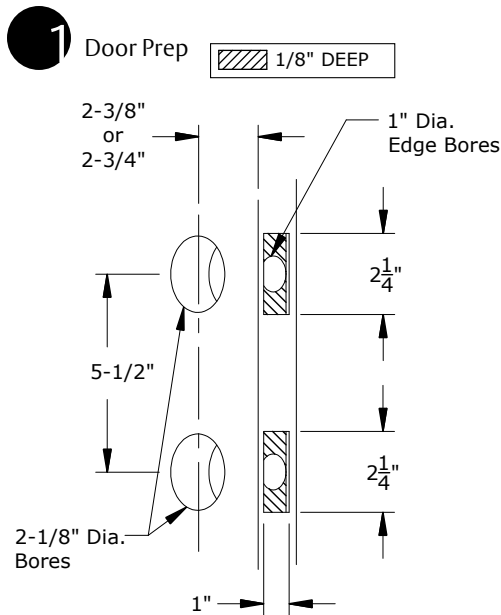


Copyright © 2017, Emtek Products, Inc. an ASSA ABLOY Group company. All rights reserved. Reproduction in whole or in part without the express written permission of Emtek Products, Inc. is prohibited.

IN8-LISCIO

REV 17C 12/01/17

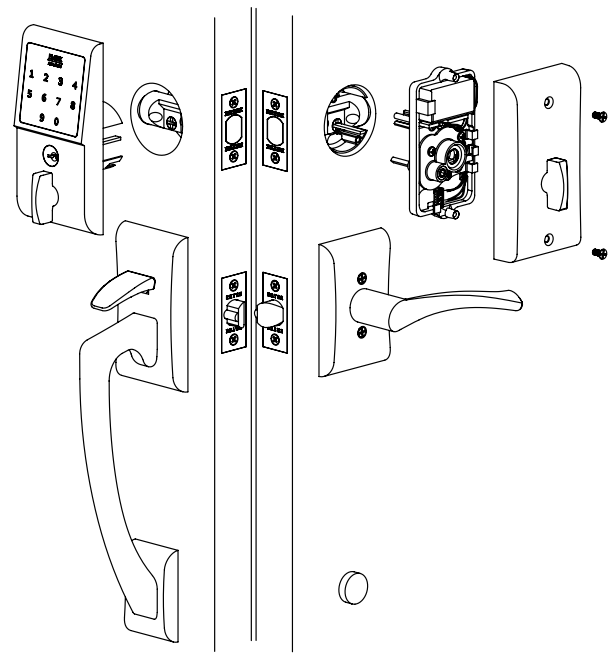
Installation Guide -Electronic Keypad Entry Set



Handles and Lever/knob vary depending on style



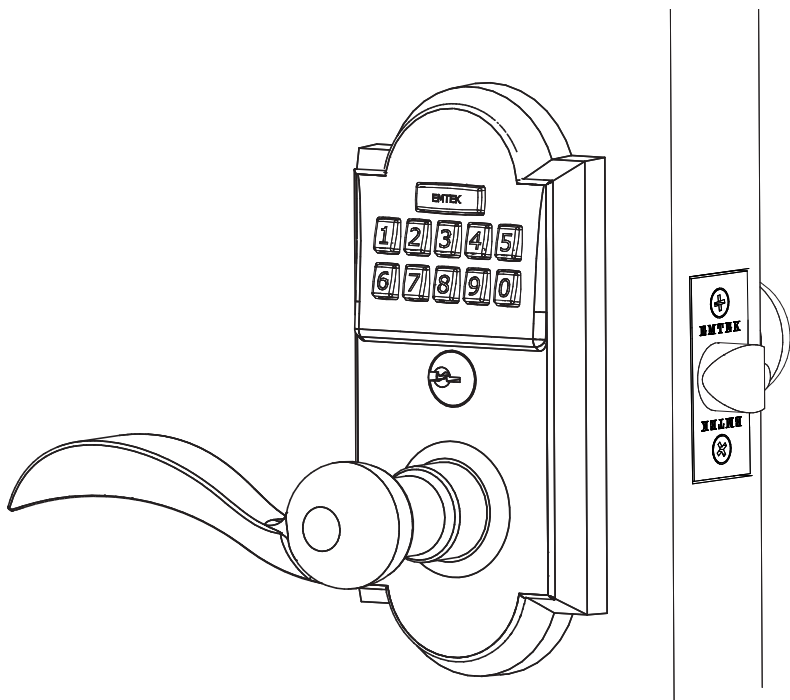
Install Electronic Deadbolt per installation and programming guide (provided).



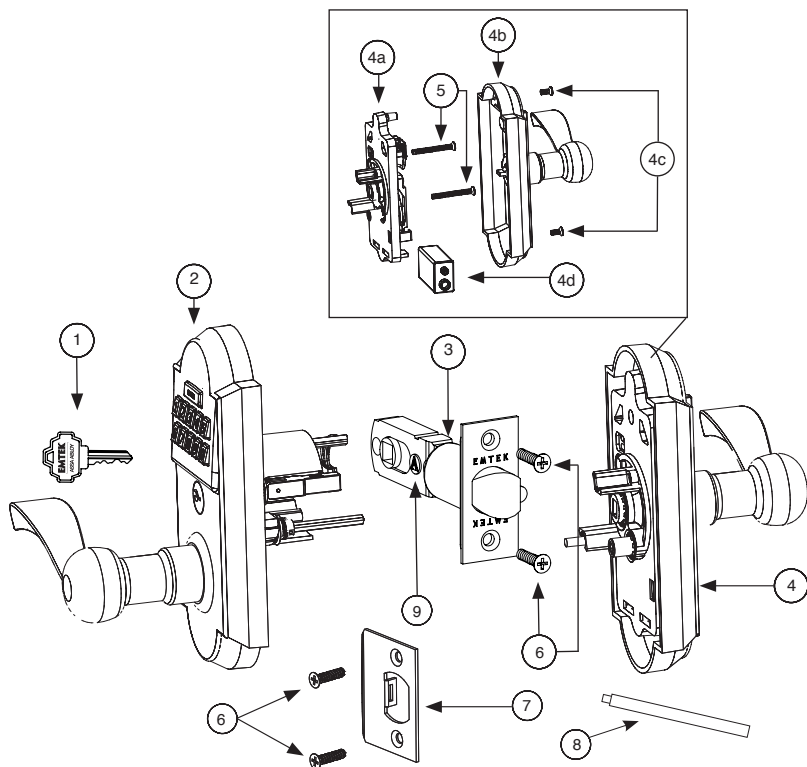
Electronic Deadbolt varies depending on style

Installation & Programming Guide

Keypad Lever Locksets



What's in the Box

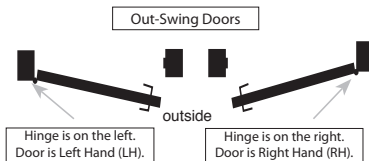
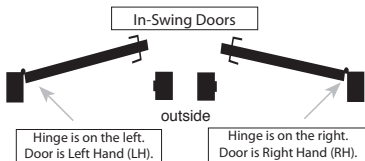


ITEM NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY.
1	Key	2
2	Outside Trim Plate Assembly	1
3	Adjustable Latch for 2 3/8" or 2 3/4" Backset	1
4	Inside Trim Plate Assembly	1
4a	Inside Chassis	1
4b	Inside Trim Plate	1
4c	#8-32 x 3/8" Flat Head Machine Screw	2
4d	9V Alkaline Battery	1
5	#8-32 x 1 1/2" Flat Head Machine Screw	2
6	#8 x 3/4" Wood Screw	4
7	Strike Plate	1
8	Plastic Extender	1
9	Plastic Latch Pin	1

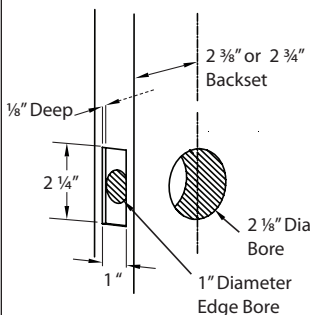
Preparation

1. Confirm Handing

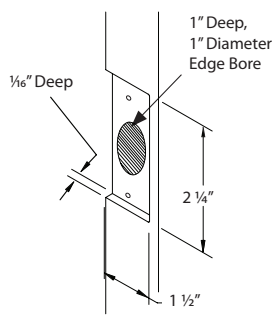
HANDING OF DOOR IS ALWAYS DETERMINED FROM THE OUTSIDE



2. Door Prep

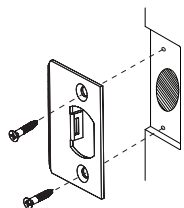


3. Door Jamb Prep



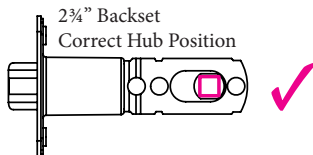
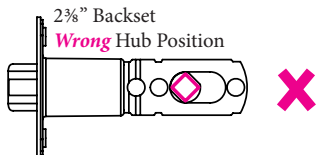
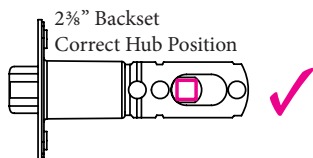
4. Install Strike Plate

Fasten Strike Plate using two #8 x $\frac{3}{4}$ " Wood Screws (item #6).



IMPORTANT!

CHECK LATCH HUB POSITION BEFORE INSTALLING



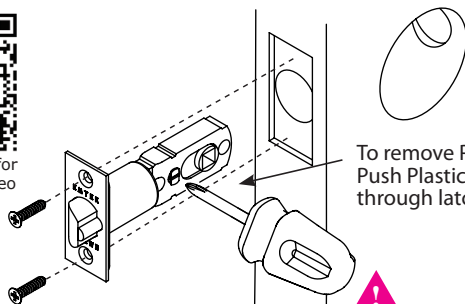
How to Install

1. Install Adjustable Latch

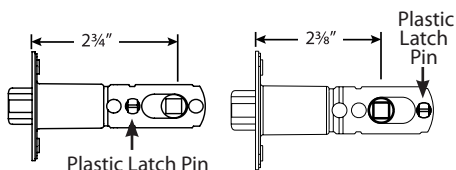
Fasten Adjustable Latch using two #8 x $\frac{3}{4}$ " Wood Screws (item #6).



Scan QR code for installation video



To remove Pin:
Push Plastic Latch Pin (item #9)
through latch with screwdriver.



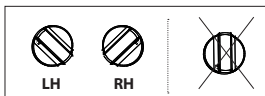
The Adjustable Latch is factory shipped with a 2 $\frac{3}{4}$ " backset position. Remove pin and slide spindle hub forward for a 2 $\frac{3}{8}$ " backset, then reinsert the pin in the hole at the back of the latch as shown.

2. Remove Screws from Inside Trim Plate

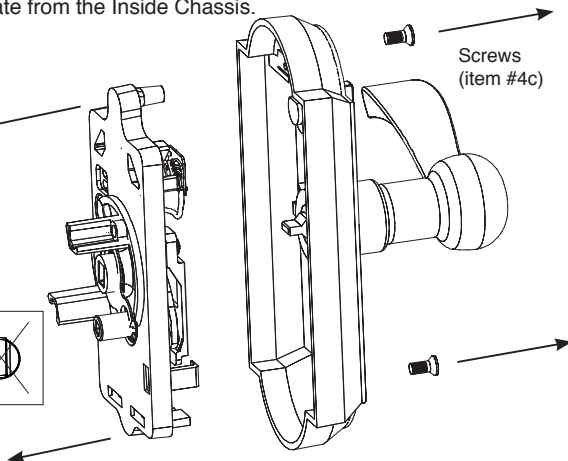
Use a Phillips head screwdriver to remove screws (item #4c) shown below and detach Inside Trim Plate from the Inside Chassis.



REMOVE INSIDE CHASSIS FROM TRIM PLATE BEFORE INSTALLING THE OUTSIDE TRIM. THUMBTURN MUST BE IN NEUTRAL POSITION.

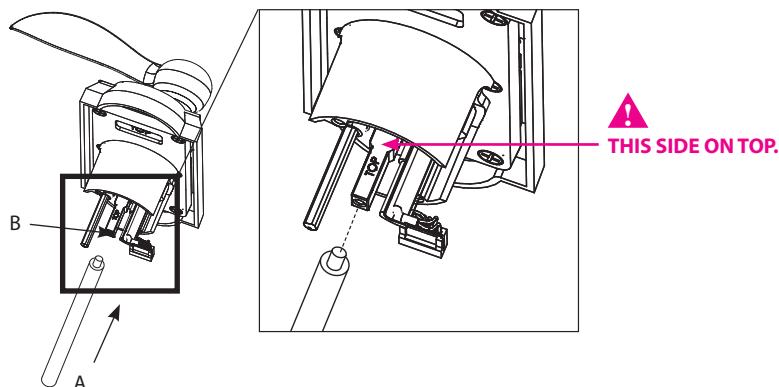


See Page 3 for Handling Information.



3. Install Outside Trim Plate Assembly

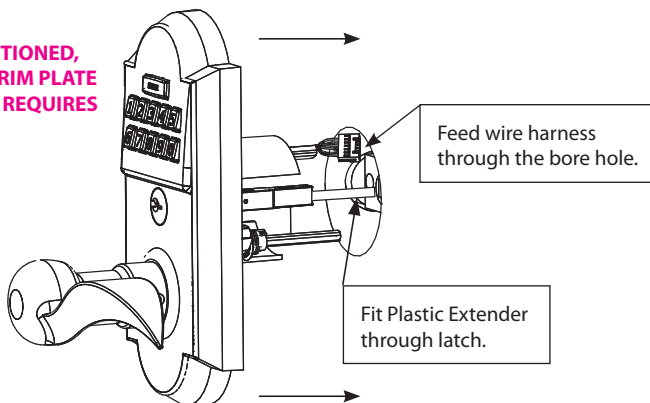
Step 1: While holding Outside Trim Plate Assembly, Press the Plastic Extender (A) into end of Spindle Shaft (B). The Shaft is properly aligned when the marking 'TOP' can be seen from an overhead view.



Step 2: Position the Outside Trim Plate Assembly through the bore hole.



**ONCE POSITIONED,
OUTSIDE TRIM PLATE
ASSEMBLY REQUIRES
SUPPORT.**



Step 3: With the Outside Trim Plate Assembly flush to the door, **REMOVE** the Plastic Extender.

4. Install Inside Chassis

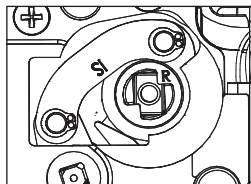
Step 1: Confirm the position of Cam Link.



**CAM LINK MUST
REMAIN IN
THE CORRECT
POSITION DURING
INSTALLATION.**

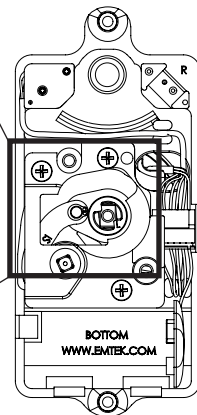
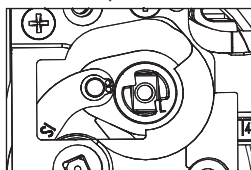
For Right Hand Locks:

Turn to right position.

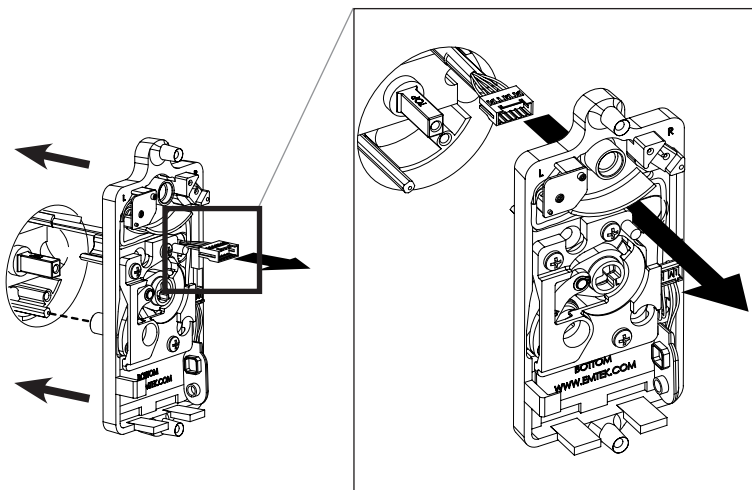


For Left Hand Locks:

Turn to left position.



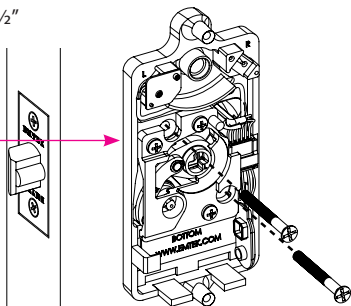
Step 2: Feed the Wire Harness through Inside Chassis.



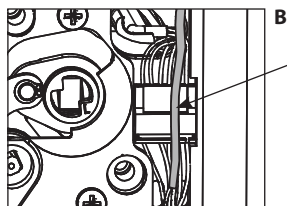
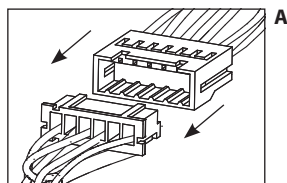
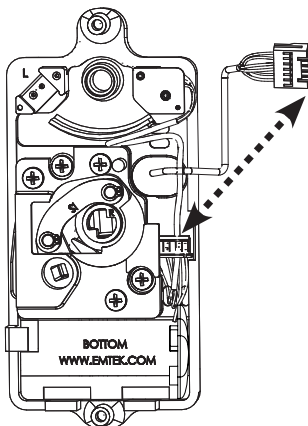
Step 3: Fasten Inside Chassis using two #8-32 x 1½" Flat Head Machine Screw (item #5).



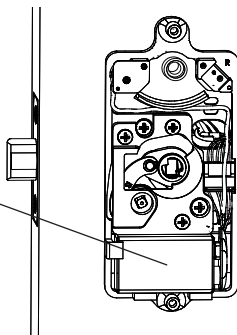
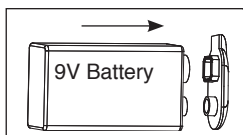
CHECK ALIGNMENT BEFORE FULLY TIGHTENING SCREWS.



Step 4: Connect Wire Harness (A) and tuck Connectors as shown (B).



Step 5: Install Battery.



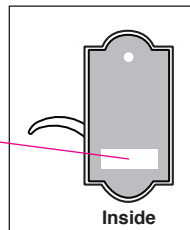
For optimal performance, always use a good quality battery.

5. Install Inside Trim Plate

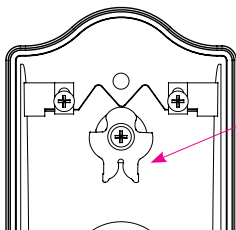
Fasten Inside Trim Plate using two #8-32 x $\frac{3}{8}$ " Flat Head Machine Screws (item #4c).



USER CODES ARE LOCATED ON THE INSIDE TRIM PLATE & ON PAGE 11.

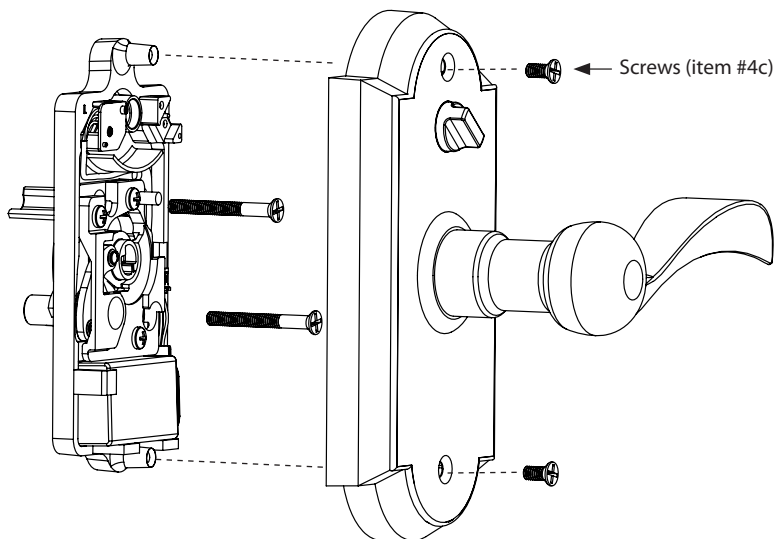


Scan QR code for installation video



Correct position for installation. Thumbcam must be positioned as shown (Neutral Position)*

***Neutral position** is required for installation and removal of the Inside Trim Plate Assembly. *(Does not apply to Keypad Storeroom/Gate product)*

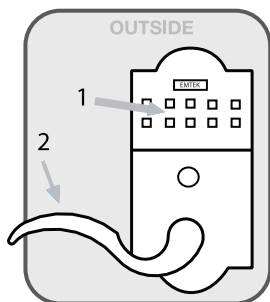


Your Lock is Ready to Use

Your Emtek lock is shipped with two 4-digit user codes and a 6-digit programming code. These codes are randomly generated at the factory.
(Turn to next page for Programming Instructions.)

To Unlock:

1. Enter 4-digit user codes.
(See sticker located on the inside trim plate or on page 11).
2. Turn Handle.



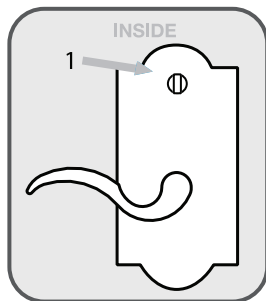
Passage feature

(Does not apply to Keypad Storeroom/Gate product)

Activate by turning the inside thumbturn to the unlocked position.
This will engage the outside lever so a code is not required to enter.

To Lock:

1. Rotate Thumbturn from inside.



Programming Your Lock

In order to perform each of the following six functions, the lock must first be placed in Programming Mode:

1. Press and hold EMTEK button for 3 seconds
2. **Yellow** LED flashes, then remains solid*
3. Enter Programming Code
4. **Green** LED flashes, then 2 beeps
5. **Yellow** LED remains solid (awaiting button press; see following Table)

IF YOU WISH TO	PRESS BUTTON	ACTIONS		INDICATORS
Change Programming Code (6 digits)	1	Enter New Programming Code (6 digits)	Re-Enter New Programming Code (6 digits)	• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
Add User Code (4 digits) (Maximum of 20 User Codes)	2	Enter New User Code (4 digits)	Re-Enter New User Code (4 digits)	• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
Delete User Code	3	Enter User Code to be Deleted	Re-Enter User Code to be Deleted	• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
**Enable/Disable All User Codes	4	Entering '4' disables all Users (enables all if disabled)		• 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
Delete All User Codes	5	Re-Enter Programming Code		• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
Turn Beeper On/Off	6	Entering '6' turns OFF (or ON)		• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps

*If no input within 10 seconds, **Yellow** LED goes out, **Red** LED flashes and lock exits Programming Mode.

**Also referred to as "vacation mode". This command temporarily disables all user codes (metal key override will still work).

Keypad Operation - Beeper & LED Indicators

Function	Indicators
Valid Code	• 1 short beep, EMTEK button flashes Green .
Invalid Code/Access Denied*	• 1 Red LED flash • 2 short beeps
Lock-Out Mode Error	• 2 short beeps • 1 short beep per second for duration
Access Accepted	• 1 short beep • 1 Green LED flash
Low Battery	• 4 Red LED flashes • 4 short beeps
Blackout Battery**	• 1 long Red LED flash • 4 long beeps
Button Press Accepted	• 1 Yellow LED flash • 1 Short Beep
Outside Thumb Turn Enabled	• 2 Green LED flashes

* If 3 consecutive incorrect codes are entered, the lock emits 4 short beeps and a flashing **Red** EMTEK button. The lock will not accept additional input for 20 seconds (20 beeps). When the next valid code is entered the lock will beep quickly 4 times to alert of the incorrect codes.

** Battery voltage has dropped too low; keypad will be disabled but metal key override will still work.

Restoring the Lock to Factory Default Setting

This procedure clears the lock of all users and restores the Programming Code and 2 User Codes shipped with the lock.

- Remove power (disconnect 9V battery) from Lock
- Press and Hold EMTEK button
- Restore power (reconnect 9V battery) while continuing to hold EMTEK button
- Continue to hold EMTEK button for 3 seconds
- 1 **Green** LED Flash and 2 short beeps followed by 1 **Green** LED Flash and 2 short beeps indicates the lock has been successfully restored

U.S. patent: **8,176,761**
International patents pending.

Place Sticker Here



Scan QR code for
installation video

EMTEK[®]

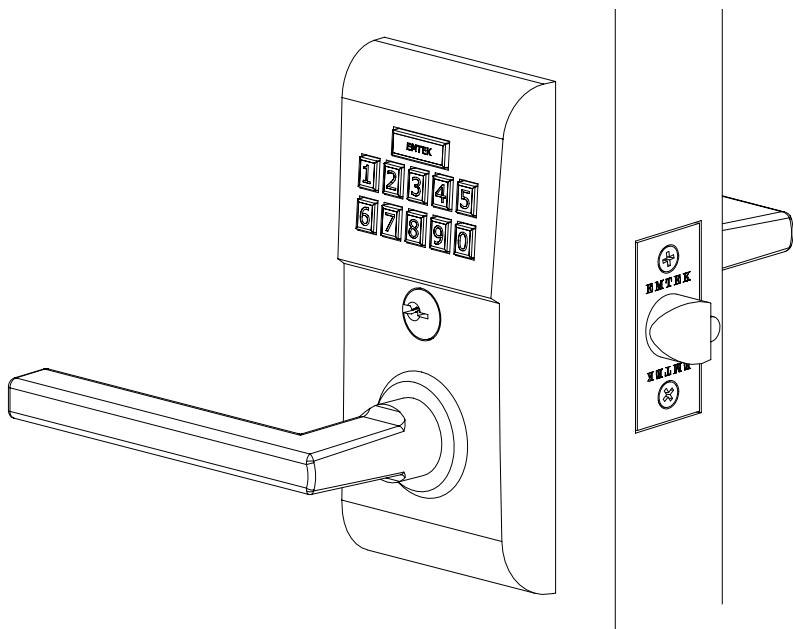
ASSA ABLOY

ASSA ABLOY is the global leader in door opening solutions, dedicated to satisfying end-user needs for security, safety and convenience.

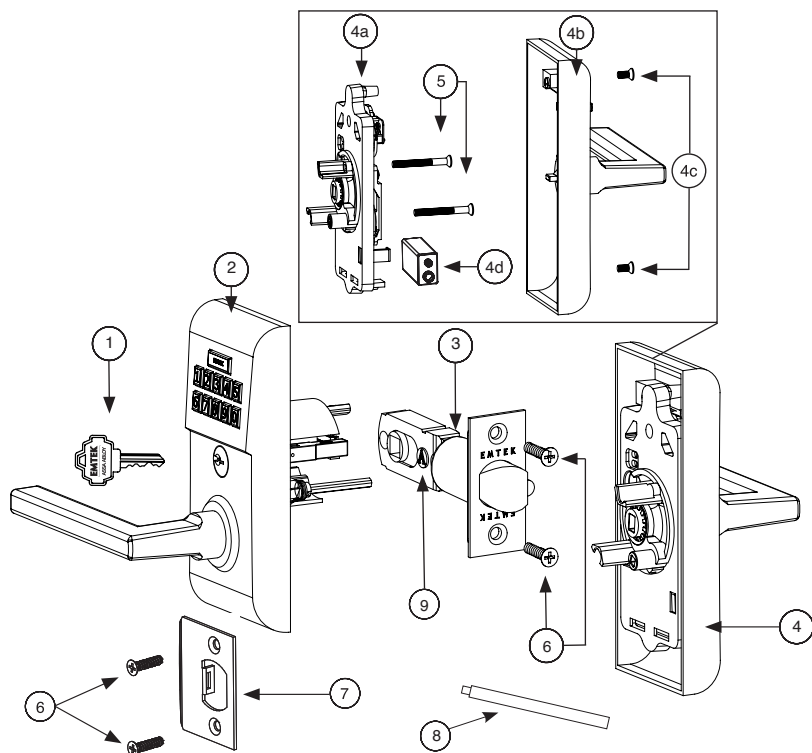
Copyright © 2013, Emtek Products, Inc. an ASSA ABLOY Group company. All rights reserved. Reproduction in whole or in part without the express written permission of Emtek Products, Inc. is prohibited.

Installation & Programming Guide

Modern Keypad Lever Locksets



What's in the Box

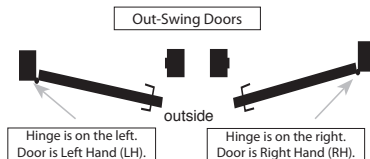
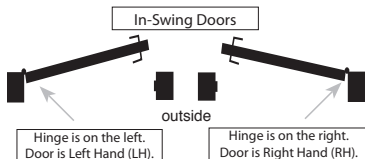


ITEM NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY.
1	Key	2
2	Outside Trim Plate Assembly	1
3	Adjustable Latch for 2 3/8" or 2 3/4" Backset	1
4	Inside Trim Plate Assembly	1
4a	Inside Chassis	1
4b	Inside Trim Plate	1
4c	#8-32 x 3/8" Flat Head Machine Screw	2
4d	9V Alkaline Battery	1
5	#8-32 x 1 1/2" Flat Head Machine Screw	2
6	#8 x 3/4" Wood Screw	4
7	Strike Plate	1
8	Plastic Extender	1
9	Plastic Latch Pin	1

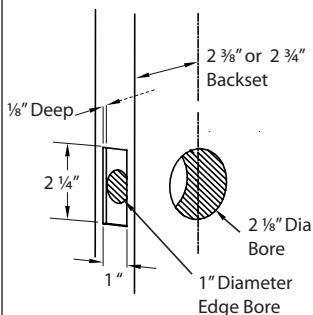
Preparation

1. Confirm Handing

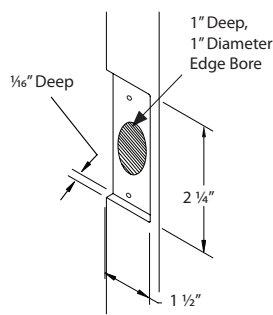
HANDING OF DOOR IS ALWAYS DETERMINED FROM THE OUTSIDE



2. Door Prep

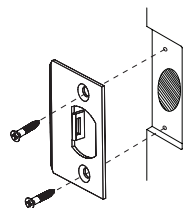


3. Door Jamb Prep



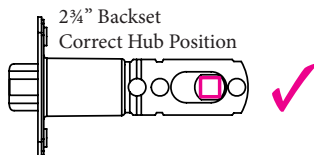
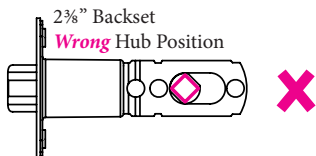
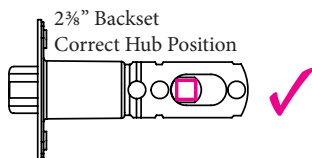
4. Install Strike Plate

Fasten Strike Plate using two #8 x $\frac{3}{4}$ " Wood Screws (item #6).



IMPORTANT!

CHECK LATCH HUB POSITION BEFORE INSTALLING



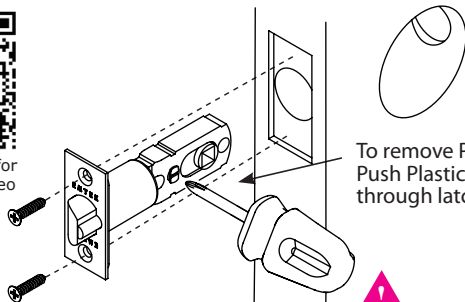
How to Install

1. Install Adjustable Latch

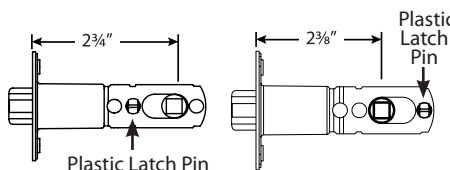
Fasten Adjustable Latch using two #8 x 3/4" Wood Screws (item #6).



Scan QR code for installation video



To remove Pin:
Push Plastic Latch Pin (item #9)
through latch with screwdriver.



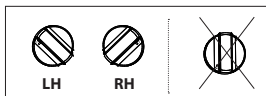
The Adjustable Latch is factory shipped with a 2 3/4" backset position. Remove pin and slide spindle hub forward for a 2 3/8" backset, then reinsert the pin in the hole at the back of the latch as shown.

2. Remove Screws from Inside Trim Plate

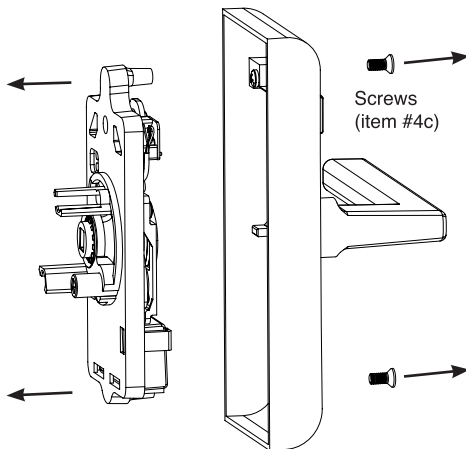
Use a Phillips head screwdriver to remove screws (item #4c) shown below and detach Inside Trim Plate from the Inside Chassis.



REMOVE INSIDE CHASSIS FROM TRIM PLATE BEFORE INSTALLING THE OUTSIDE TRIM. THUMBTURN MUST BE IN NEUTRAL POSITION.

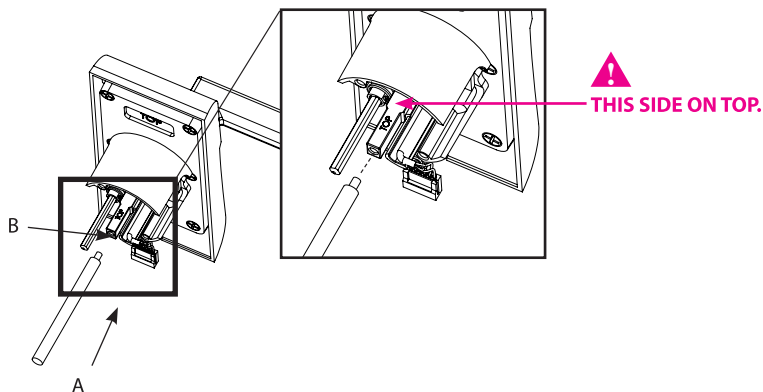


See Page 3 for Handling Information.



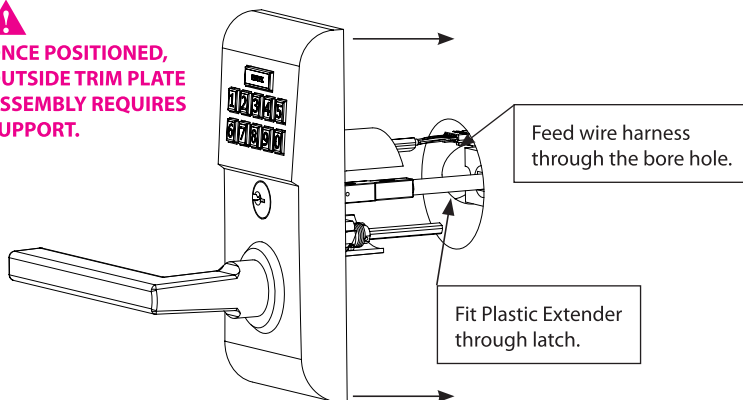
3. Install Outside Trim Plate Assembly

Step 1: While holding Outside Trim Plate Assembly, Press the Plastic Extender (A) into end of Spindle Shaft (B). The Shaft is properly aligned when the marking 'TOP' can be seen from an overhead view.



Step 2: Position the Outside Trim Plate Assembly through the bore hole.

! ONCE POSITIONED, OUTSIDE TRIM PLATE ASSEMBLY REQUIRES SUPPORT.



Step 3: With the Outside Trim Plate Assembly flush to the door, **REMOVE** the Plastic Extender.

4. Install Inside Chassis

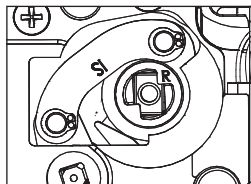
Step 1: Confirm the position of Cam Link.



**CAM LINK MUST
REMAIN IN
THE CORRECT
POSITION DURING
INSTALLATION.**

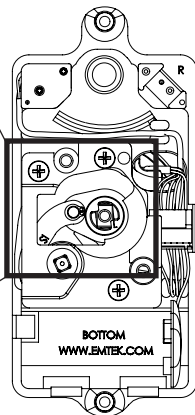
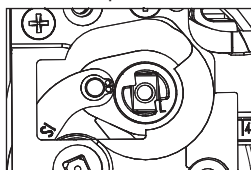
For Right Hand Locks:

Turn to right position.

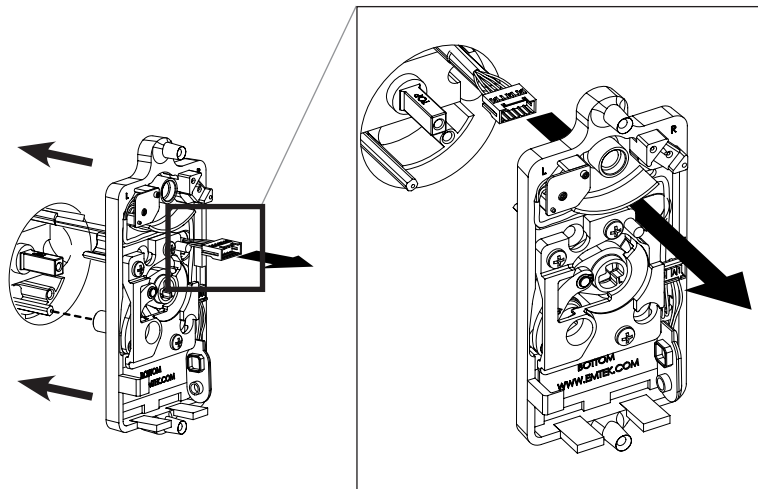


For Left Hand Locks:

Turn to left position.



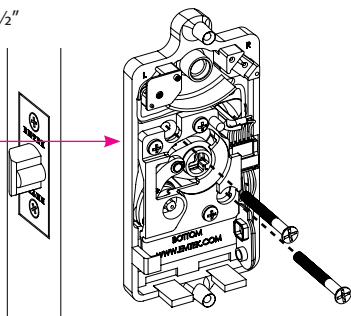
Step 2: Feed the Wire Harness through Inside Chassis.



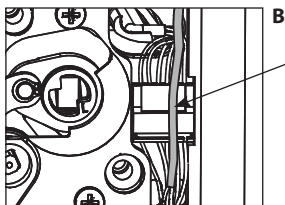
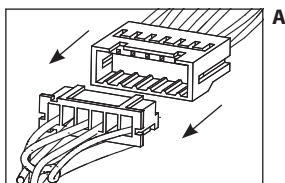
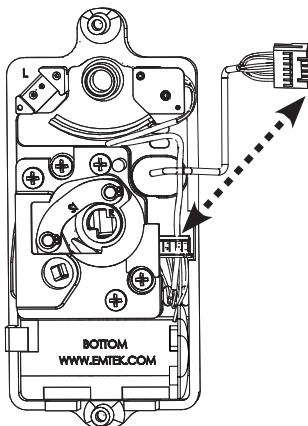
Step 3: Fasten Inside Chassis using two #8-32 x 1½" Flat Head Machine Screw (item #5).



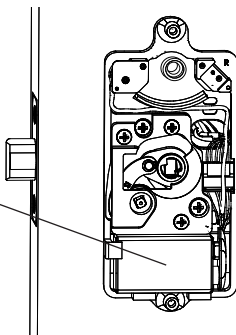
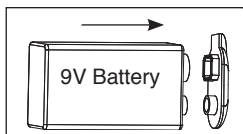
CHECK ALIGNMENT BEFORE FULLY TIGHTENING SCREWS.



Step 4: Connect Wire Harness (A) and tuck Connectors as shown (B).



Step 5: Install Battery.



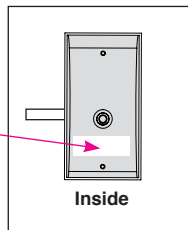
For optimal performance, always use a good quality battery.

5. Install Inside Trim Plate

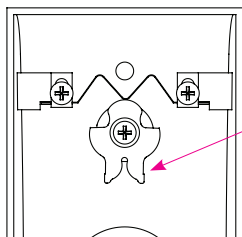
Fasten Inside Trim Plate using two #8-32 x $\frac{3}{8}$ " Flat Head Machine Screws (item #4c).



**USER CODES ARE LOCATED
ON THE INSIDE TRIM PLATE &
ON PAGE 11.**

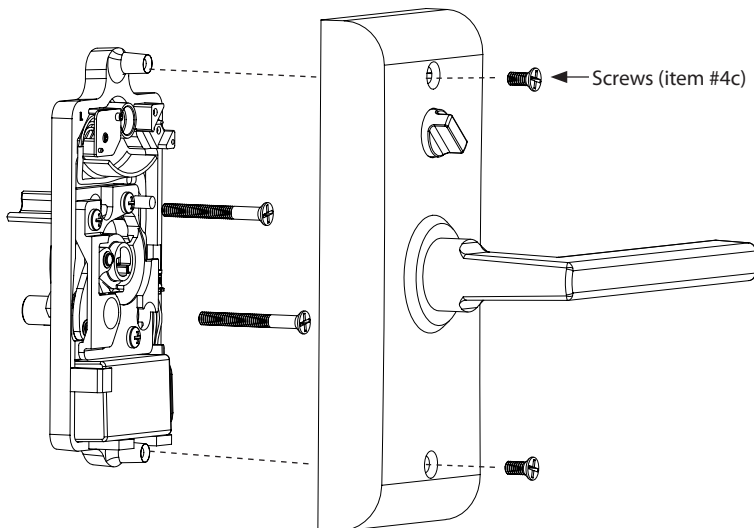


Scan QR code for
installation video



**Correct position for
installation. Thumbcam
must be positioned as
shown (Neutral Position)***

***Neutral position** is required for installation and removal of the Inside Trim Plate Assembly. *(Does not apply to Keypad Storeroom/Gate product)*

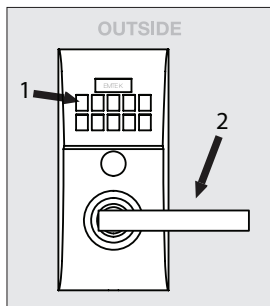


Your Lock is Ready to Use

Your Emtek lock is shipped with two 4-digit user codes and a 6-digit programming code. These codes are randomly generated at the factory.
(Turn to next page for Programming Instructions.)

To Unlock:

1. Enter 4-digit user codes.
(See sticker located on the inside trim plate or on page 11).
2. Turn Handle.



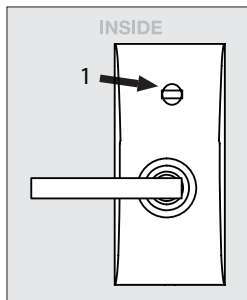
Passage feature

(Does not apply to Keypad Storeroom/Gate product)

Activate by turning the inside thumbturn to the unlocked position. This will engage the outside lever so a code is not required to enter.

To Lock:

1. Rotate Thumbturn from inside.



Programming Your Lock

In order to perform each of the following six functions, the lock must first be placed in Programming Mode:

1. Press and hold EMTEK button for 3 seconds
2. **Yellow** LED flashes, then remains solid*, number keys also illuminate
3. Enter Programming Code
4. **Green** LED flashes, then 2 beeps
5. **Yellow** LED remains solid (awaiting button press; see following Table)

IF YOU WISH TO	PRESS BUTTON	ACTIONS		INDICATORS
Change Programming Code (6 digits)	1	Enter New Programming Code (6 digits)	Re-Enter New Programming Code (6 digits)	• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
Add User Code (4 digits) (Store up to 20 User Codes)	2	Enter New User Code (4 digits)	Re-Enter New User Code (4 digits)	• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
Delete User Code	3	Enter User Code to be Deleted	Re-Enter User Code to be Deleted	• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
**Enable/Disable All User Codes	4	Entering '4' disables all Users (enables all if disabled)		• 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
Delete All User Codes	5	Re-Enter Programming Code		• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
Turn Beeper On/Off	6	Entering '6' turns OFF (or ON)		• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps

*If no input within 10 seconds, **Yellow** LED goes out, **Red** LED flashes and lock exits Programming Mode.

**Also referred to as "vacation mode". This command temporarily disables all user codes (metal key override will still work).

Keypad Operation - Beeper & LED Indicators

Function	Indicators
Valid Code	• 1 short beep, EMTEK button flashes Green .
Invalid Code/Access Denied*	• 1 Red LED flash • 2 short beeps
Lock-Out Mode Error	• 2 short beeps • 1 short beep per second for duration
Access Accepted	• 1 short beep • 1 Green LED flash
Low Battery	• 4 Red LED flashes • 4 short beeps
Blackout Battery**	• 1 long Red LED flash • 4 long beeps
Button Press Accepted	• 1 Yellow LED flash • 1 Short Beep
Outside Thumb Turn Enabled	• 2 Green LED flashes

* If 3 consecutive incorrect codes are entered, the lock emits 4 short beeps and a flashing **Red** EMTEK button. The lock will not accept additional input for 20 seconds (20 beeps). When the next valid code is entered the lock will beep quickly 4 times to alert of the incorrect codes.

** Battery voltage has dropped too low; keypad will be disabled but metal key override will still work.

Restoring the Lock to Factory Default Setting

This procedure clears the lock of all users and restores the Programming Code and 2 User Codes shipped with the lock.

- Remove power (disconnect 9V battery) from Lock
- Press and Hold EMTEK button
- While continuing to hold EMTEK button, restore power (reconnect 9V battery)
- Continue to hold EMTEK button for 3 seconds
- 1 **Green** LED Flash and 2 short beeps followed by 1 **Green** LED Flash and 2 short beeps indicates the lock has been successfully restored

U.S. patent: **8,176,761**

International patents pending.

Place Sticker Here



Scan QR code for
installation video



ASSA ABLOY is the global leader in door opening solutions, dedicated to satisfying end-user needs for security, safety and convenience.

Copyright © 2013, Emtek Products, Inc. an ASSA ABLOY Group company. All rights reserved. Reproduction in whole or in part without the express written permission of Emtek Products, Inc. is prohibited.

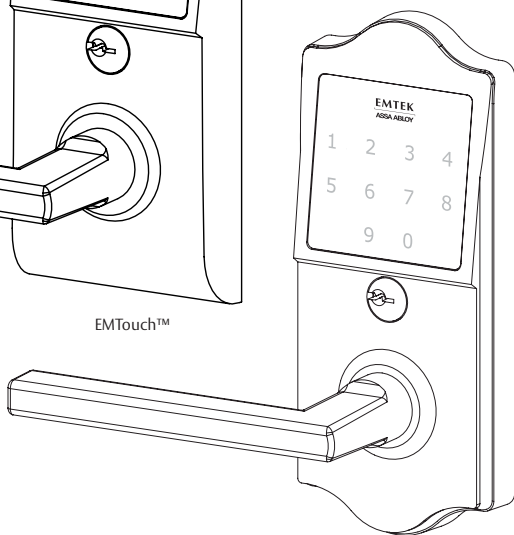
Installation & Programming Guide

EMTouch™ & EMTouch™ Classic Style

Electronic Lever Locksets

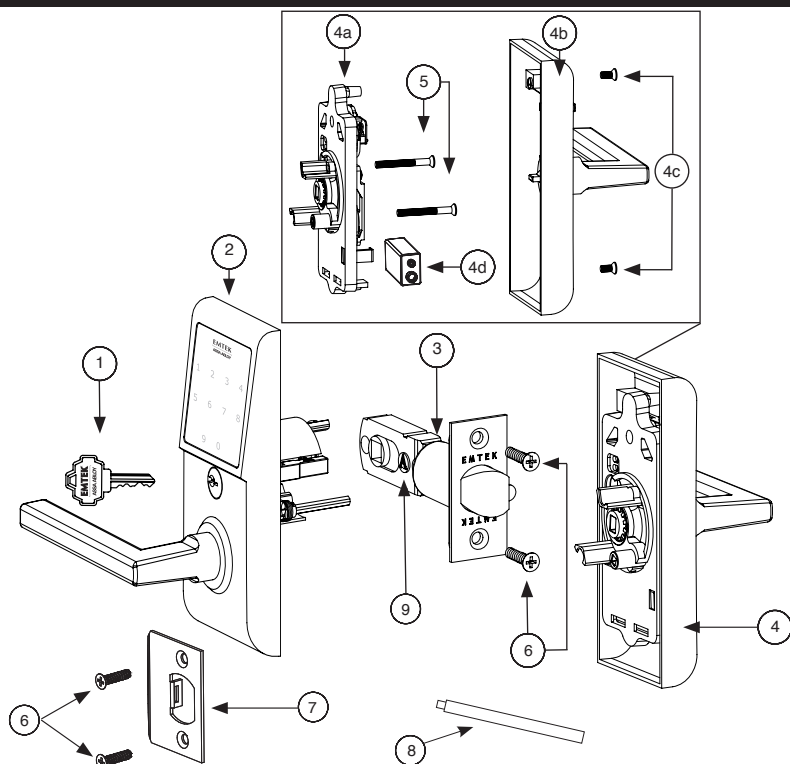


EMTouch™



EMTouch™ Classic Style

What's in the Box

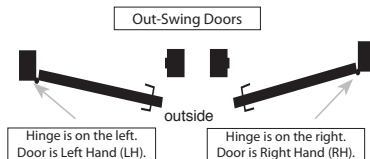
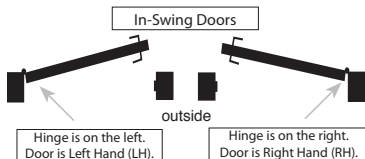


ITEM NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY.
1	Key	2
2	Outside Trim Plate Assembly	1
3	Adjustable Latch for 2 3/8" or 2 3/4" Backset	1
4	Inside Trim Plate Assembly	1
4a	Inside Chassis	1
4b	Inside Trim Plate	1
4c	#8-32 x 3/8" Flat Head Machine Screw	2
4d	9V Alkaline Battery	1
5	#8-32 x 1 1/2" Flat Head Machine Screw	2
6	#8 x 3/4" Wood Screw	4
7	Strike Plate	1
8	Plastic Extender	1
9	Plastic Latch Pin	1

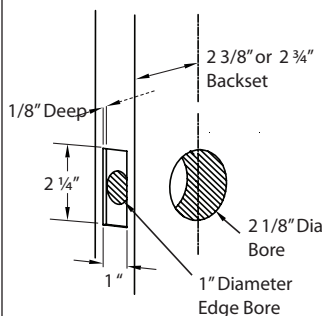
Preparation

1. Confirm Handing

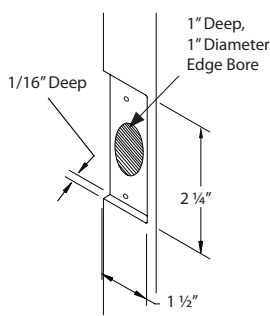
HANDING OF DOOR IS ALWAYS DETERMINED FROM THE OUTSIDE



2. Door Prep

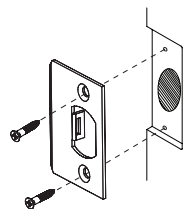


3. Door Jamb Prep



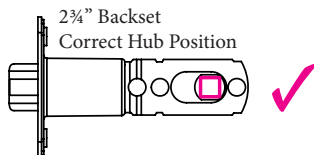
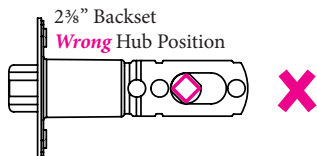
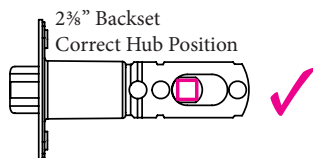
4. Install Strike Plate

Fasten Strike Plate using two #8 x 3/4" Wood Screws (item #6).



IMPORTANT!

CHECK LATCH HUB POSITION BEFORE INSTALLING



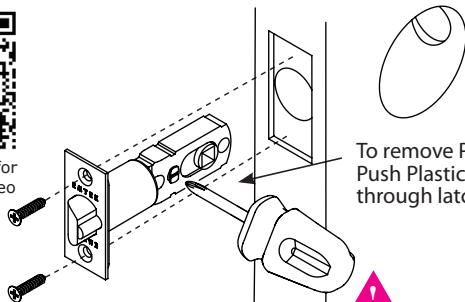
How to Install

1. Install Adjustable Latch

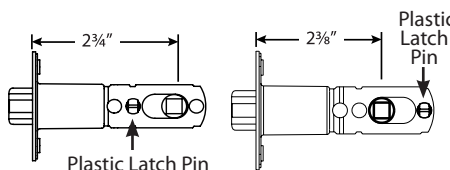
Fasten Adjustable Latch using two #8 x 3/4" Wood Screws (item #6).



Scan QR code for installation video



To remove Pin:
Push Plastic Latch Pin (item #9)
through latch with screwdriver.



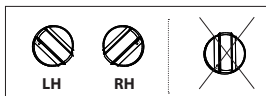
The Adjustable Latch is factory shipped with a 2 3/4" backset position. Remove pin and slide spindle hub forward for a 2 3/8" backset, then reinsert the pin in the hole at the back of the latch as shown.

2. Remove Screws from Inside Trim Plate

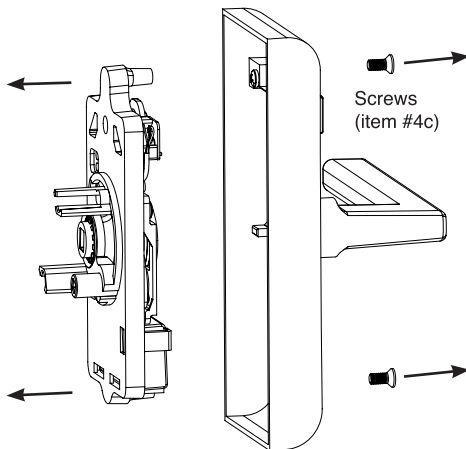
Use a Phillips head screwdriver to remove screws (item #4c) shown below and detach Inside Trim Plate from the Inside Chassis.



REMOVE INSIDE CHASSIS FROM TRIM PLATE BEFORE INSTALLING THE OUTSIDE TRIM. THUMBTURN MUST BE IN NEUTRAL POSITION.

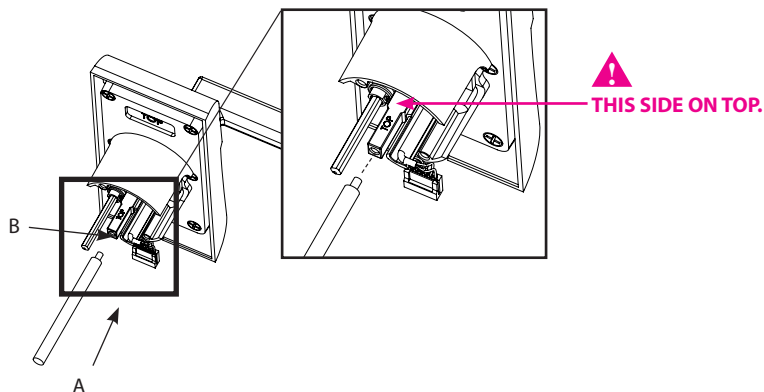


See Page 3 for Handling Information.

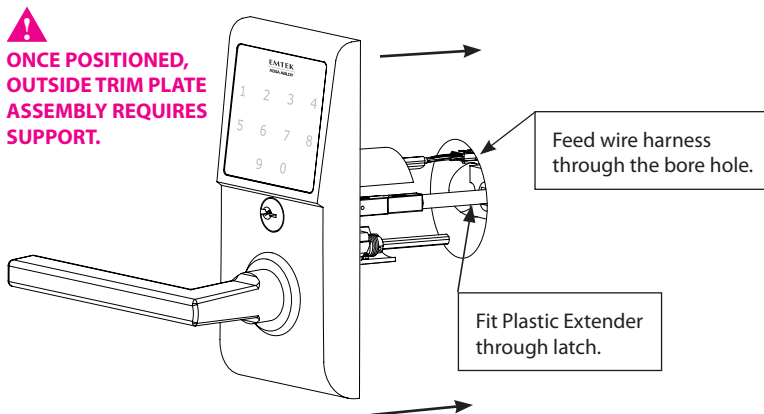


3. Install Outside Trim Plate Assembly

Step 1: While holding Outside Trim Plate Assembly, Press the Plastic Extender (A) into end of Spindle Shaft (B). The Shaft is properly aligned when the marking 'TOP' can be seen from an overhead view.



Step 2: Position the Outside Trim Plate Assembly through the bore hole.



Step 3: With the Outside Trim Plate Assembly flush to the door, **REMOVE** the Plastic Extender.

4. Install Inside Chassis

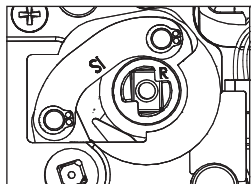
Step 1: Confirm the position of Cam Link.



**CAM LINK MUST
REMAIN IN
THE CORRECT
POSITION DURING
INSTALLATION.**

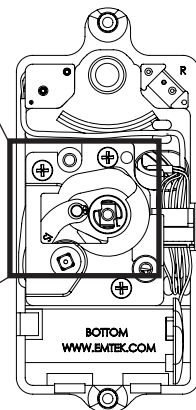
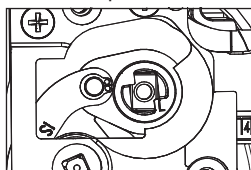
For Right Hand Locks:

Turn to right position.

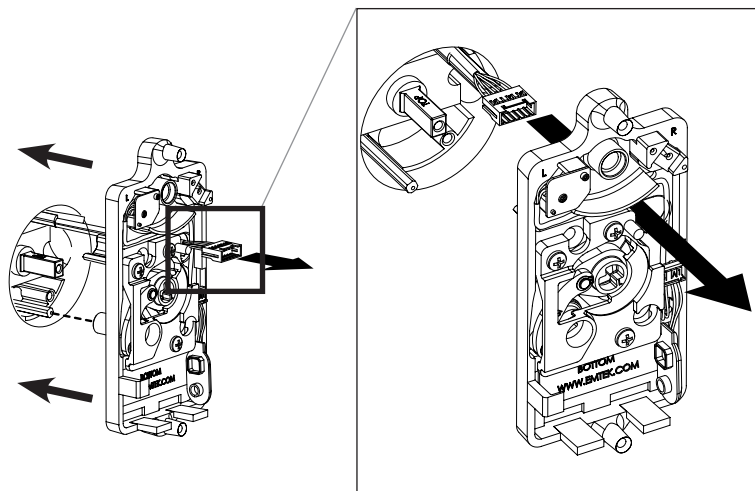


For Left Hand Locks:

Turn to left position.



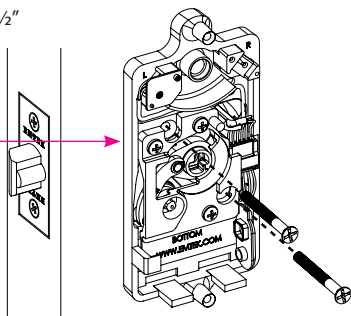
Step 2: Feed the Wire Harness through Inside Chassis.



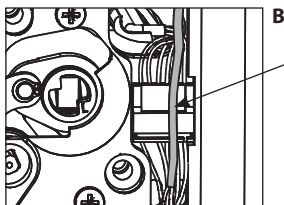
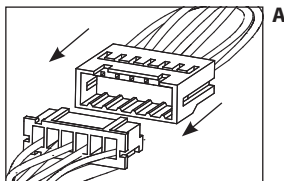
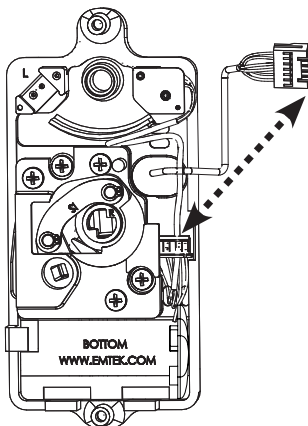
Step 3: Fasten Inside Chassis using two #8-32 x 1½" Flat Head Machine Screw (item #5).



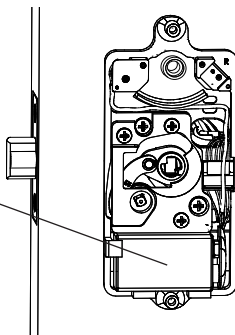
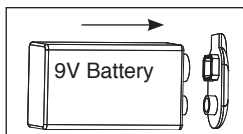
CHECK ALIGNMENT BEFORE FULLY TIGHTENING SCREWS.



Step 4: Connect Wire Harness (A) and tuck Connectors as shown (B).



Step 5: Install Battery.



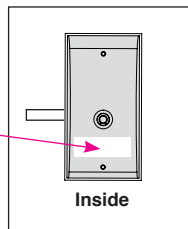
For optimal performance, always use a good quality battery.

5. Install Inside Trim Plate

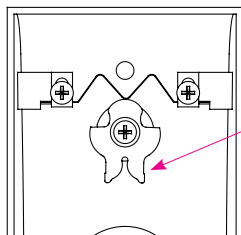
Fasten Inside Trim Plate using two #8-32 x 3/8" Flat Head Machine Screws (item #4c).



USER CODES ARE LOCATED ON THE INSIDE TRIM PLATE & ON PAGE 11.

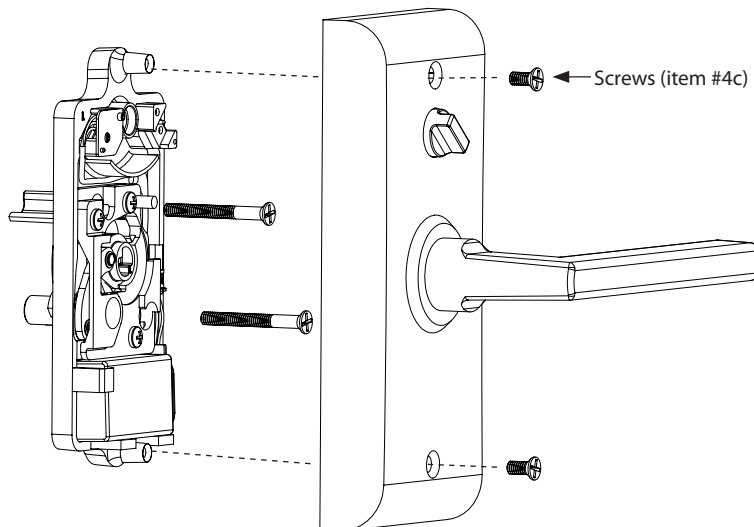


Scan QR code for installation video



Correct position for installation. Thumbcam must be positioned as shown (Neutral Position)*

***Neutral position** is required for installation and removal of the Inside Trim Plate Assembly. *(Does not apply to Keypad Storeroom/Gate product)*

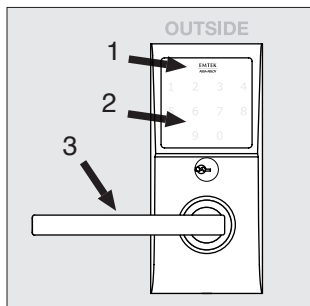


Your Lock is Ready to Use

Your Emtek lock is shipped with two 4-digit user codes and a 6-digit programming code. These codes are randomly generated at the factory.
(Turn to next page for Programming Instructions.)

To Unlock:

1. Press EMTEK key or touch 3 fingers across screen.
2. Enter 4-digit user codes.
(See sticker located on the inside trim plate or on page 11).
3. Turn Handle.



Passage feature

(Does not apply to Keypad Storeroom/Gate product)

Activate by turning the inside thumbturn to the unlocked position. This will engage the outside lever so a code is not required to enter.

To Lock:

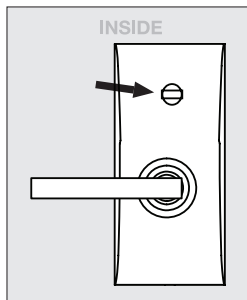
1. Rotate Thumbturn from inside.



Locked



Unlocked



Programming Your Lock

In order to perform each of the following six functions, the lock must first be placed in Programming Mode:

1. Press and hold EMTEK button for 3 seconds
2. **Yellow** LED flashes, then remains solid*, number keys also illuminate
3. Enter Programming Code
4. **Yellow** LED flashes, then 2 beeps
5. **Yellow** LED remains solid (awaiting button press; see following Table)

IF YOU WISH TO	PRESS BUTTON	ACTIONS		INDICATORS
Change Programming Code (6 digits)	1	Enter New Programming Code (6 digits)	Re-Enter New Programming Code (6 digits)	• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
Add User Code (4 digits) (Store up to 20 User Codes)	2	Enter New User Code (4 digits)	Re-Enter New User Code (4 digits)	• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
Delete User Code	3	Enter User Code to be Deleted	Re-Enter User Code to be Deleted	• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
**Enable/Disable All User Codes	4	Entering '4' disables all Users (enables all if disabled)		• 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
Delete All User Codes	5	Re-Enter Programming Code		• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps
Turn Beeper On/Off	6	Entering '6' turns OFF (or ON)		• 1 Green LED flash • 1 beep • 2 Green LED flashes • 2 beeps

*If no input within 20 seconds, **Yellow** LED goes out, **Red** LED flashes and lock exits Programming Mode.

**Also referred to as "vacation mode". This command temporarily disables all user codes (metal key override will still work).

Keypad Operation - Beeper & LED Indicators

Function	Indicators
Valid Code	• 1 short beep, EMTEK button flashes Green .
Invalid Code/Access Denied*	• 1 Red LED flash • 2 short beeps
Lock-Out Mode Error	• 2 short beeps • 1 short beep per second for duration
Access Accepted	• 1 short beep • 1 Green LED flash
Low Battery	• 4 Red LED flashes • 4 short beeps
Blackout Battery**	• 1 long Red LED flash • 4 long beeps
Button Press Accepted	• 1 Yellow LED flash • 1 Short Beep
Outside Thumb Turn Enabled	• 2 Green LED flashes

* If 3 consecutive incorrect codes are entered, the lock emits 4 short beeps and a flashing **Red** EMTEK button. The lock will not accept additional input for 20 seconds (20 beeps). When the next valid code is entered the lock will beep quickly 3 times to alert of the incorrect codes.

** Battery voltage has dropped too low; keypad will be disabled but metal key override will still work.

Restoring the Lock to Factory Default Setting

This procedure clears the lock of all users and restores the Programming Code and 2 User Codes shipped with the lock.

- Press and hold EMTEK button for 3 seconds.
- Enter "000000"
- After 2 beeps and 2 **Green** LED Flash, remove power (disconnect 9V battery) from Lock.
- After 5 seconds, restore power (reconnect 9V battery)
- Confirm by 2 beeps and 2 **Green** LED Flash.

U.S. patent: **8,176,761**
International patents pending.

Place Sticker Here



Scan QR code for
installation video

EMTEK[®]

ASSA ABLOY

ASSA ABLOY is the global leader in door opening solutions, dedicated to satisfying end-user needs for security, safety and convenience.

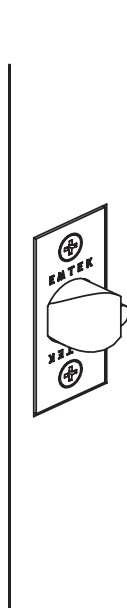
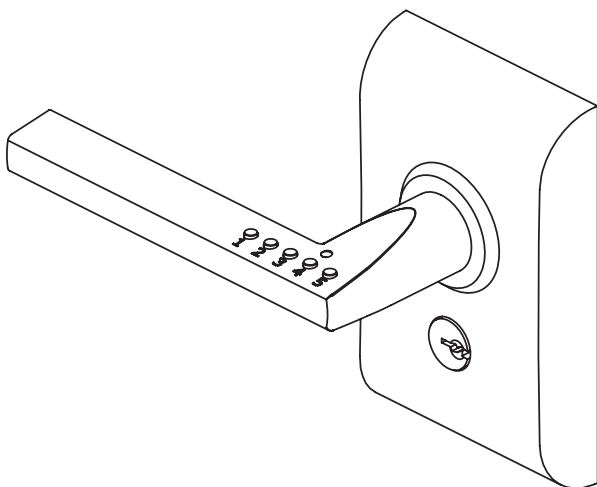
Copyright © 2013, Emtek Products, Inc. an ASSA ABLOY Group company. All rights reserved. Reproduction in whole or in part without the express written permission of Emtek Products, Inc. is prohibited.

Installation Guide

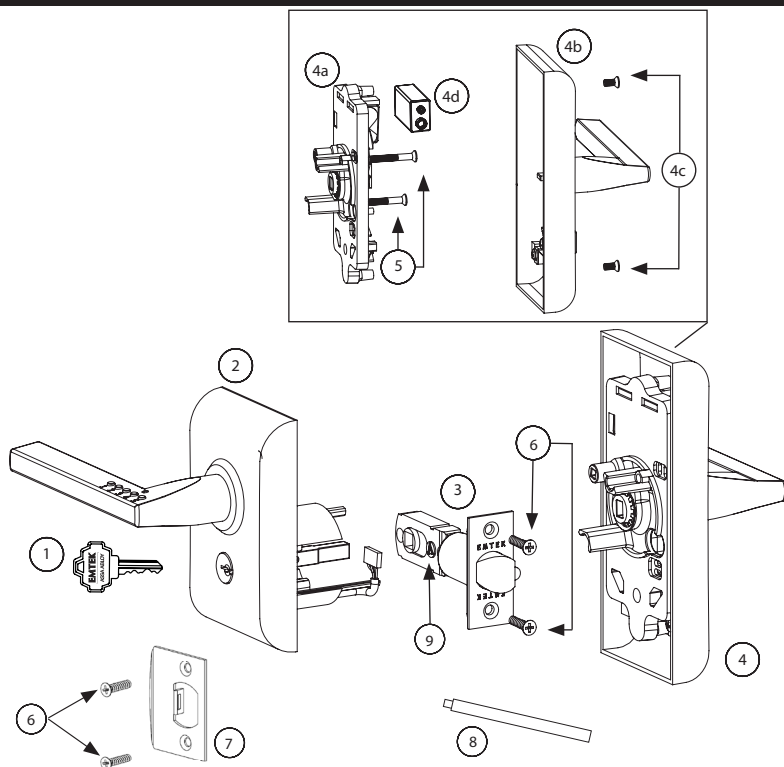
LISCIO

• • • • •

ELECTRONIC KEYPAD LEVERSET WITH
BLUETOOTH PROGRAMMING



What's in the Box

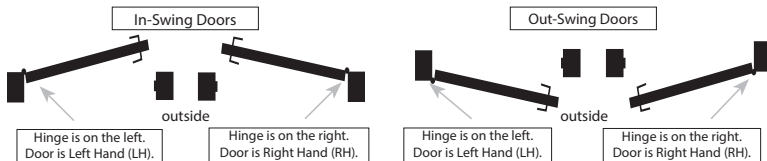


ITEM NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY.
1	Key	2
2	Outside Trim Plate Assembly	1
3	Adjustable Latch for 2 3/8" or 2 3/4" Backset	1
4	Inside Trim Plate Assembly	1
4a	Inside Chassis	1
4b	Inside Trim Plate	1
4c	#8-32 x 1/8" Flat Head Machine Screw	2
4d	9V Alkaline Battery	1
5	#8-32 x 1 1/2" Flat Head Machine Screw	2
6	#8 x 3/4" Wood Screw	4
7	Strike Plate	1
8	Plastic Extender	1
9	Plastic Latch Pin	1

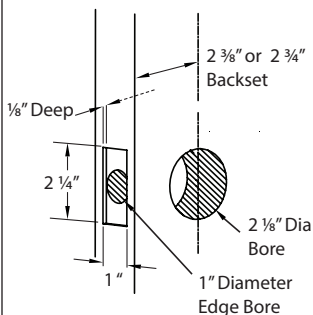
Preparation

1. Confirm Handing

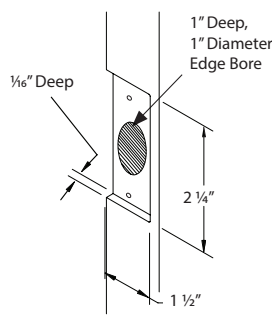
HANDING OF DOOR IS ALWAYS DETERMINED FROM THE OUTSIDE



2. Door Prep

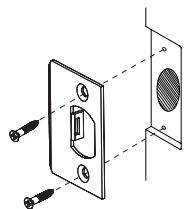


3. Door Jamb Prep



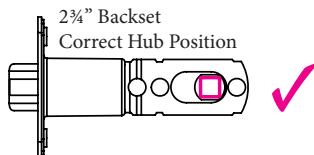
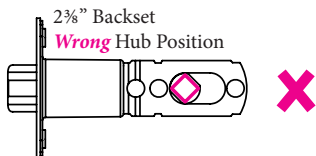
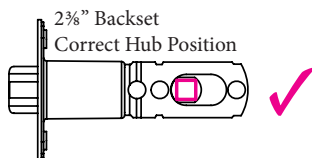
4. Install Strike Plate

Fasten Strike Plate using two #8 x 3/4" Wood Screws (item #6).



IMPORTANT!

CHECK LATCH HUB POSITION BEFORE INSTALLING



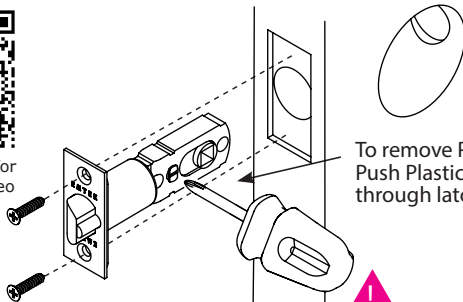
How to Install

1. Install Adjustable Latch

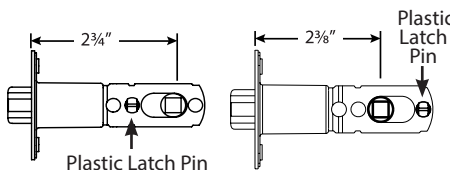
Fasten Adjustable Latch using two #8 x 3/4" Wood Screws (item #6).



Scan QR code for installation video



To remove Pin:
Push Plastic Latch Pin (item #9)
through latch with screwdriver.



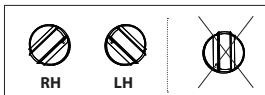
The Adjustable Latch is factory shipped with a 2 3/4" backset position. Remove pin and slide spindle hub forward for a 2 3/8" backset, then reinsert the pin in the hole at the back of the latch as shown.

2. Remove Screws from Inside Trim Plate

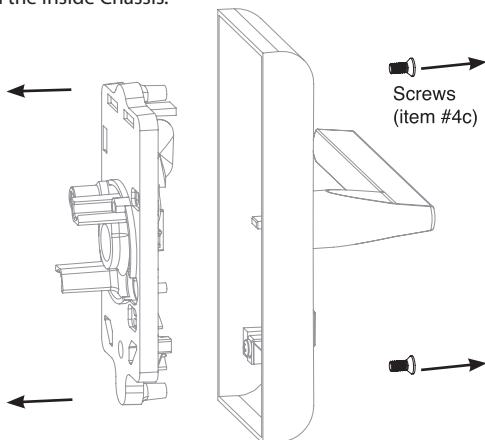
Use a Phillips head screwdriver to remove screws (item #4c) shown below and detach Inside Trim Plate from the Inside Chassis.



REMOVE INSIDE CHASSIS FROM TRIM PLATE BEFORE INSTALLING THE OUTSIDE TRIM. THUMBTURN MUST BE IN NEUTRAL POSITION.

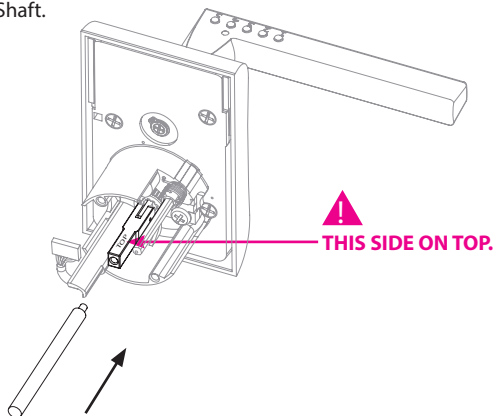


See Page 3 for Handling Information.



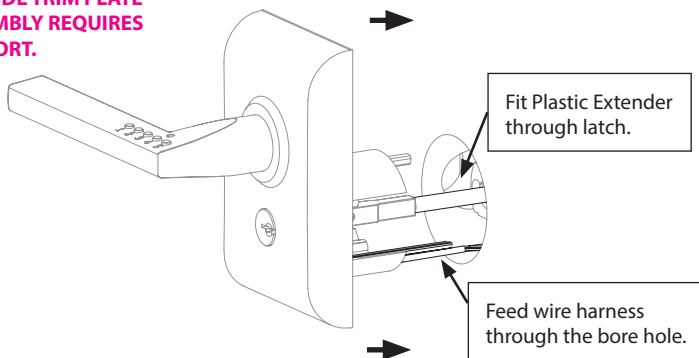
3. Install Outside Trim Plate Assembly

Step 1: While holding Outside Trim Plate Assembly, Press the Plastic Extender (item #8) into end of Spindle Shaft.



Step 2: Position the Outside Trim Plate Assembly through the bore hole.

!
ONCE POSITIONED,
OUTSIDE TRIM PLATE
ASSEMBLY REQUIRES
SUPPORT.



Step 3: With the Outside Trim Plate Assembly flush to the door, **REMOVE** the Plastic Extender.

4. Install Inside Chassis

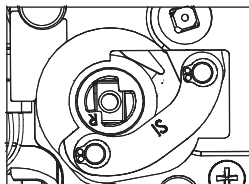
Step 1: Confirm the position of Cam Link.



**CAM LINK MUST
REMAIN IN
THE CORRECT
POSITION DURING
INSTALLATION.**

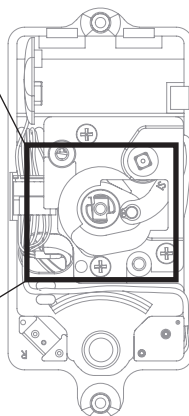
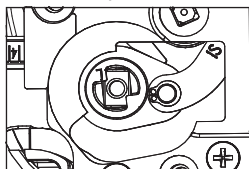
For Right Hand Locks:

Turn to right position.

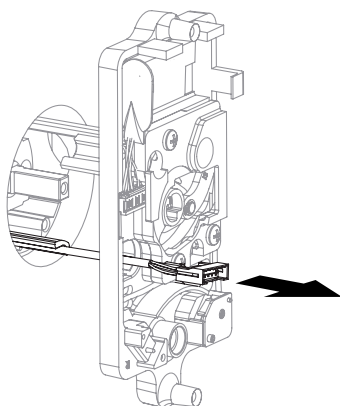


For Left Hand Locks:

Turn to left position.



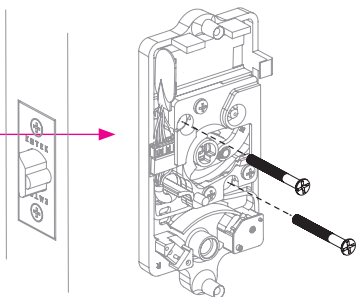
Step 2: Feed the Wire Harness through Inside Chassis.



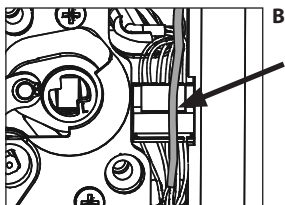
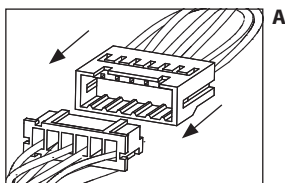
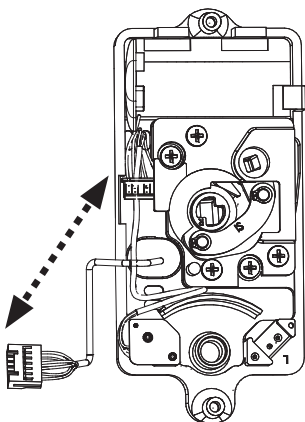
Step 3: Fasten Inside Chassis using two #8-32 x 1½" Flat Head Machine Screw (item #5).



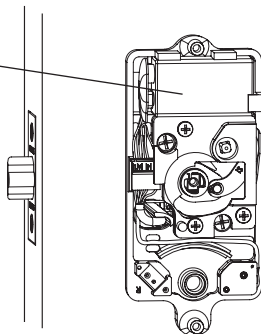
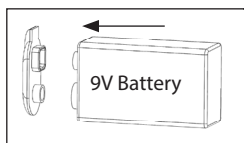
CHECK ALIGNMENT BEFORE FULLY TIGHTENING SCREWS.



Step 4: Connect Wire Harness (A) and tuck Connectors as shown (B).



Step 5: Install Battery.



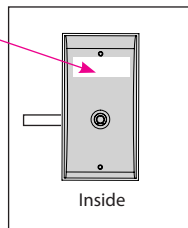
For optimal performance, always use a good quality battery.

5. Install Inside Trim Plate

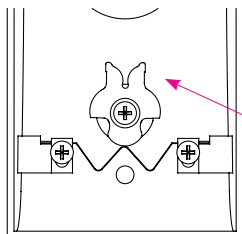
Fasten Inside Trim Plate using two #8-32 x $\frac{3}{8}$ " Flat Head Machine Screws (item #4c).



USER CODES ARE LOCATED
ON THE INSIDE TRIM PLATE &
ON USER MANUAL.

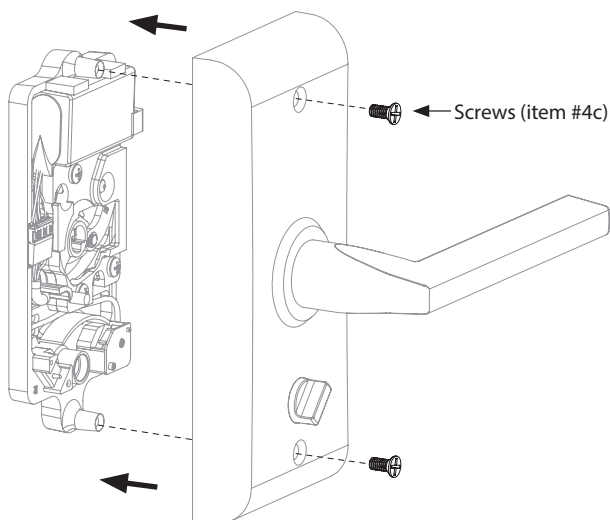


Scan QR code for
installation video



Correct position for installation.
Thumbcam must be positioned
as shown (Neutral Position)*

*Neutral position is required for installation and removal of the Inside Trim Plate Assembly.

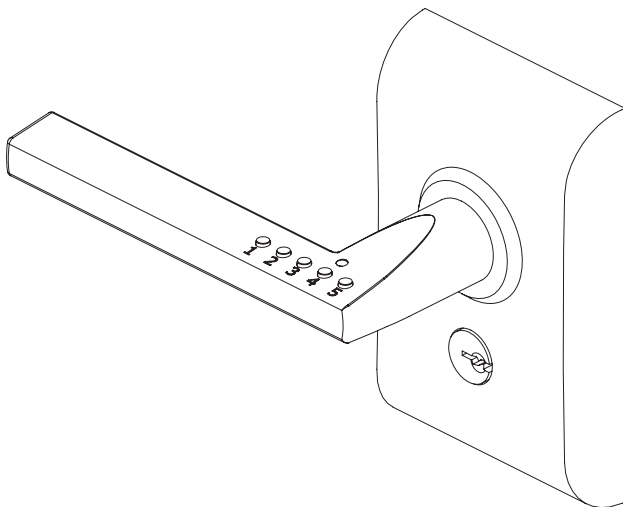


User Manual

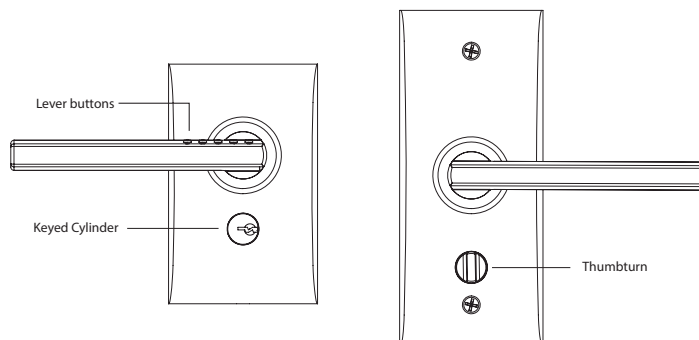
LISCIO

.....

ELECTRONIC KEYPAD LEVERSET WITH BLUETOOTH PROGRAMMING



LISCO ELECTRONIC KEYPAD LEVERSET WITH BLUETOOTH PROGRAMMING



Using the Lock

Once installed on door with the battery connected - your lock is ready for use.

Factory Default Setting

User & Master Codes are labeled on the inside trim plate and page 7 of this user manual.

Entering User Codes

- Entering a correct, active user code (green LED x1 & beep x1) - unlocks
- Entering an incorrect or inactive code (red LED x2 & beep x2) - remains locked
- Three incorrect entries will result in lockout, signaled by 3 red LED flashes & 3 short beeps, lockout lasts for 30 seconds.

To Restart Code Entry

Press and hold # 1 button for three seconds (this works in entry or programming mode).

Key Access

Lock may also be unlocked and locked via keyed cylinder, each lock comes with two keys.

Passage & Privacy Mode

Use inside thumbturn.

Setting	Setting Description	Thumbturn Position	LED Feedback
Thumbturn Enable ON	Lock access is regulated. A correct, active user code is required for access. (Privacy Mode)		Green
Thumbturn Enable OFF	Lock access is NOT regulated Always Unlocked. (Passage Mode)		Amber

Getting Started

Device App

App is free and available at App Store (Apple devices) or Play Store (Android devices).

- A. From Apple devices (iPhone 4S, 5, 5S & 5C; iPad 3rd generation and later running iOS 6.1 and later)
 1. Go to App Store, select Search, enter "Emtek", select "Emtek Liscio Bluetooth", select download icon, when ready select Open. If upon opening app you receive a screen that advises you that your device is "Unsupported" you will not be able to run app on this device.
- B. From Android devices (OS 4.3 and later)
 1. Go to Play Store, select Search icon, enter "Emtek", select "Emtek Liscio Bluetooth" app, select Install, select Accept, when ready select Open. If app does not appear then your device is running OS prior to 4.3.
- C. Once App is opened you will be on the Welcome screen
 1. selecting Start you will move through the setup wizard, lock will need to be nearby for this
 2. select Videos, Quick Reference, About or Show Phone Info as needed
 3. If you call Emtek for customer service please have the information listed in the Show Phone Info available.

Programming Features

Once App is setup and you have logged into app you will be on the Home screen – from here you can:

- A. Select Users – you can add, edit and delete users
 1. To add user – select + New, enter Name and enter user code (factory set at 4 digits)
 2. To edit user – select user to edit, user information will be shown, select Edit, edit as needed, select Update
 3. To delete user – select user to edit, user information will be shown, select Edit, select X Delete
 4. You must communicate changes to lock before they are recognized at the lock – see Transfer below (B)
- B. Select Transfer – you can send data/setting changes to the lock, view lock activity or get data/settings from the lock
 1. Sending data to Lock – to communicate any user adds, edits or deletes along and any settings changes
 2. Viewing lock activity – lock activity on app is from last update, you will need to select Get new lock activity to view the latest activity
 3. Getting data from Lock – to communicate latest user and setting data from the lock to the app
- C. Select Setting – you can customize some of the lock and app features
 1. From the settings screen you can edit the noted settings, scrolling down is Advanced Settings
- D. Select Logoff when you are done or when you want to program a different lock.
- E. Battery Status – when BT communications are successful, an "Operation Complete" screen gives you a battery status.
 1. "Good" means battery has the power to operate lock and BT communications.
 2. "Low" means battery still has power to operate lock and BT communications but should be replaced. Lock LED shows 4 amber flashes and 4 beeps.
 3. "Blackout" means the battery can no longer operate lock and battery must be replaced. Lock LED shows 6 red flashes and 6 beeps
 4. Replacement battery should be a high quality 9 volt alkaline battery. Battery is located behind the interior trim plate.

Troubleshooting

Verify that device meets minimum requirements

- A. Apple – iPhone 4S, 5, 5S and 5C; iPad 3rd generation and later running iOS 6.1 or later
- B. Android – running OS 4.3 or later

Re-pairing App Function

- A. Use this action when device to lock communications are not working, but were previously and several retries have failed.
- B. How to:
 - 1. App – Navigate to Login screen, enter the app password, select the door name, move slider “Force Re-Pairing” to ON and then press Login button.
 - 2. Lock – Manually reset lock to factory defaults – press #1 and #5 buttons simultaneously, enter master code, press the #1 and then the #4 buttons (not simultaneously) and reenter the master code. LED will blink green once that lock has been reset – OR – disconnect battery and when you reconnect battery hold down any button for 3 seconds, reset will be signaled by LED flashing 3 times and 3 beeps. Once reset the lock’s activity log will be empty and the user and master codes will be back to factory defaults – see labels placed on page 7 of User Manual booklet and inside of the interior trim plate.
 - 3. Follow app wizard through setup process.
 - 4. Transfer user and master codes and settings on app to lock

Reset App and Lock

- A. Use this action when re-pairing app function does not restore Bluetooth communications. This will reset app and lock, deleting activity log and reset user and master codes back to factory defaults.
- B. How to:
 - 1. App – Navigate to Settings screen, scroll down and select “Advanced Settings”, select “Clear database”, at Select desired action: select “Delete this application database”, for Confirm delete move slider to ON, then select Commit Changes. You will be sent back to Welcome screen to start setup wizard from the beginning.
 - 2. Device – (Apple) Navigate to main Settings, select Bluetooth, select “i” icon for Emtek 1 under DEVICES, select Forget this Device, and confirm Forget Device. (Android) Navigate to main Settings, select Bluetooth, select Emtek 1 (icon on right side) and then select Unpair.
 - 3. Lock – Manually reset lock to factory defaults (see section 2 above)
 - 4. Follow app wizard through setup process.
 - 5. This will reset all information both app and lock.

If problem still persists – Remove App from Device, download again, reset lock

- A. Use this action when action 2 above does not correct Bluetooth communications.
- B. How to:
 - 1. Device – (Apple) Press on Emtek icon until all icons shake and have x at corner of apps, select x on Emtek app, press Apple Home Button and apps will return to normal. Go to App Store and download app again and open to start again.
(Android) Navigate to main Settings, select Apps, scroll to find the Emtek icon and press, then select Uninstall.
 - 2. Device – (Apple) Navigate to main Settings, select Bluetooth, select “i” icon for Emtek 1 under DEVICES, select Forget this Device, and confirm Forget Device. (Android) Navigate to main Settings, select Bluetooth, select Emtek 1 (icon on right side) and then select Unpair
 - 3. Device – Cycle power off then back on
 - 4. Lock – Manually reset lock to factory defaults. (see section 2 above)
 - 5. Start Emtek app and follow wizard through setup process.
 - 6. This will reset all information both app and lock.

Manual Programming

The lock can be programmed manually using the keypad buttons 1 through 5. This feature is made available but programming using smart phone is highly recommended.

Manual Programming commands

- A. To enter programming mode – press the #1 and the #5 buttons simultaneously
- B. Enter the lock's 6 digit master code (the master code will be on sticker on page 7 of user manual and inside trim plate of lock)
- C. The features below now accessible by entering a combination of two buttons one after the other (not simultaneously)

1. To add a code	enter # 1 and then # 3	then enter new code and enter again to confirm (factory setting is 4 digit mode)
2. To delete a code	enter # 4 and then # 3	then enter code to delete and enter again to confirm
3. To change master code	enter # 3 and then # 3 again	then enter new master code and enter again to confirm
4. Deny Users ON	enter # 4 and then # 1	
5. Deny Users OFF	enter # 5 and then # 1	(factory setting is OFF)
Deny Users can disable or enable all user codes – when ON, no user codes will work, only key operates lock		
6. Delete all codes	enter # 5 and then # 5 again	
7. Set 4 digit code length	enter # 5 and then # 2	(factory setting is 4 digits)
8. Set 6 digit code length	enter # 5 and then # 3	
9. Beeper ON	enter # 1 and then # 1 again	(factory setting is ON)
10. Beeper OFF	enter # 1 and then # 2	
11. Extended timeout OFF	enter # 2 and then # 1	(factory setting is OFF)
12. Extended timeout ON	enter # 2 and then # 2 again	
Extended timeout mode allows for a longer duration of unlock time upon entry of a valid user code.		
13. Passage switch OFF	enter # 3 and then # 1	
14. Passage switch ON	enter # 3 and then # 2	(factory setting is ON)
Passage switch mode ON, choose between Passage (lock unsecured) and Privacy (always locked) and OFF lock is always in Privacy (always locked).		
15. Restore factory defaults	enter # 1 and then # 4	enter master code to confirm

Feedback – LED and Beeper

Condition	Color	Count	Duration	Comment
Power On				
Normal Power on	amber	1	long	
Factory default reset	amber	3	long	
Battery low	amber	4	long	
Battery blackout	red	6	long	
User Access				
Access granted - normal	green	1	long	
Access granted - battery low	amber	4	long	
Access denied - normal	red	2	long	
Access denied - Battery blackout	red	6	long	
Access denied - lockout	red	3	long	
ID input during timeout	red	2	long	
Passage Switch				
Lock secured	green	1	long	
Lock unsecured	amber	1	long	
Manual Programming				
Programming active	amber	1	continuous	Blinks to off on key press
Programming operation success	green	1	medium	
Programming operation failed	red	2	medium	
Programming cancelled	amber	2	medium	
Programming time out	amber	2	medium	After 20 seconds
Bluetooth Programming				
BT enable interval	amber	1	long	Delay for entering BT
Programming active	green	1	continuous	
Programming completed - normal	green	1	medium	
Programming completed - battery low	amber	4	long	
Programming completed - battery blackout	red	6	long	
Programming cancelled or time out	red	2	medium	
Programming failed	red	2	medium	After 60 seconds
Key Press				
User Access	amber	1	short	
Manual Programming	off	1	short	Blink against solid amber

Place Sticker Here



ASSA ABLOY is the global leader in door opening solutions, dedicated to satisfying end-user needs for security, safety and convenience.

Copyright © 2014, Emtek Products, Inc. an ASSA ABLOY Group company. All rights reserved. Reproduction in whole or in part without the express written permission of Emtek Products, Inc. is prohibited.

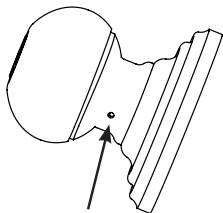


Re-Pinning Cylinder (OPTIONAL)

Regoupillage du cylindre (OPTIONNEL)

Cambio de combinación de pernos (OPCIONAL)

STEP 1 • ÉTAPE 1 • PASO 1



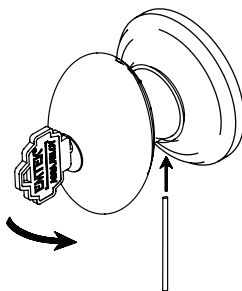
Small hole should face down.
Le petit trou doit faire face vers le bas.
Orificio pequeño debe estar hacia abajo.

STEP 2 • ÉTAPE 2 • PASO 2

Rotate key counterclockwise 90° while pressing wire into hole.

Faites tourner la clé dans le sens contraire des aiguilles d'une montre tout en enfonçant le fil dans le trou.

Gire la llave hacia la izquierda 90° mientras presiona el alambre en el orificio.

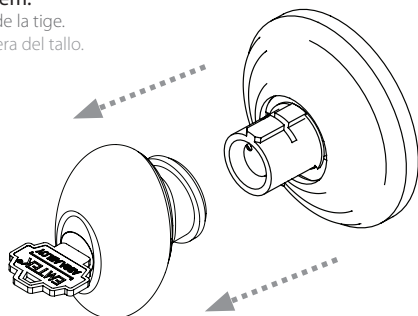


STEP 3 • ÉTAPE 3 • PASO 3

Slide knob off stem.

Retirez la poignée de la tige.

Deslice la perilla fuera del tallo.



STEP 4 • ÉTAPE 4 • PASO 4

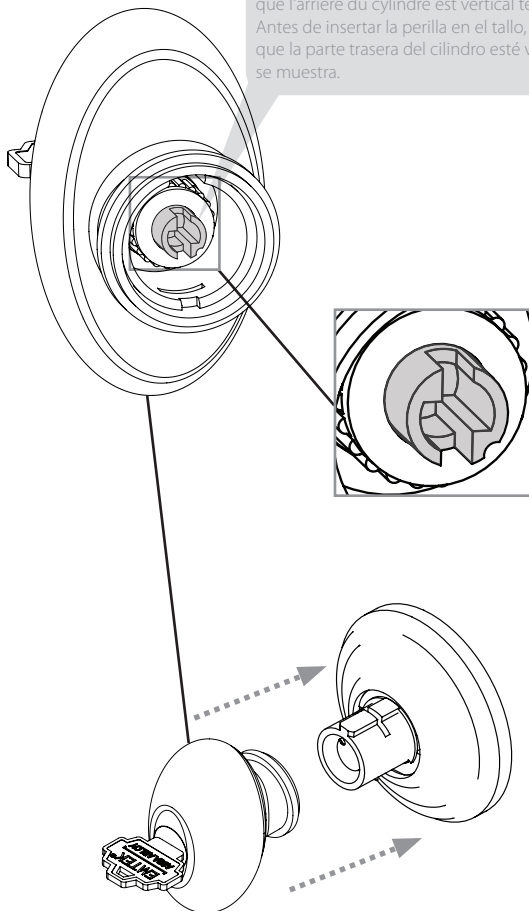
After re-pinning cylinder, insert knob onto stem

Après avoir regoupillé, insérez la poignée sur la tige.

Después de cambiar la combinación de pernos, inserte la Perilla en el tallo

Before inserting knob onto stem, make sure cylinder tailpiece is vertical as shown.

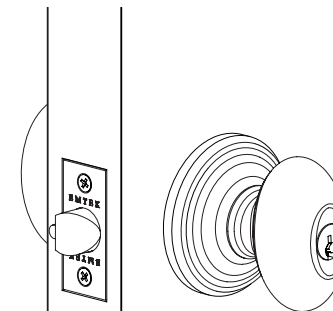
Avant d'insérer la poignée sur la tige, assurez-vous que l'arrière du cylindre est vertical tel qu'illustré.
Antes de insertar la perilla en el tallo, asegúrese que la parte trasera del cilindro esté vertical como se muestra.



EMTEK®
ASSA ABLOY

Key in Knob Lock Installation Guide

Guide d'installation pour serrure à clé dans la poignée
Guía de Instalación para Cerradura de Perilla con llave



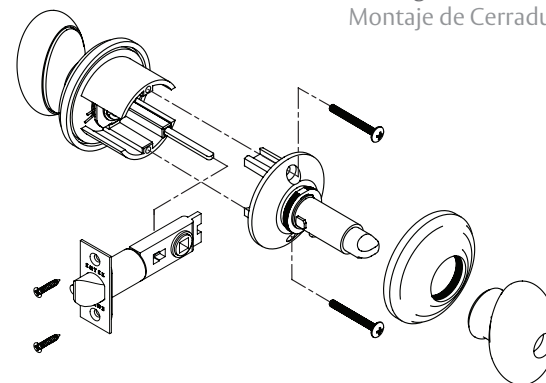
ASSA ABLOY, the global leader in door opening solutions

Outside Trim

Garniture Extérieure
Adorno Exterior

Lock Assembly

Assemblage de la Serrure
Montaje de Cerradura



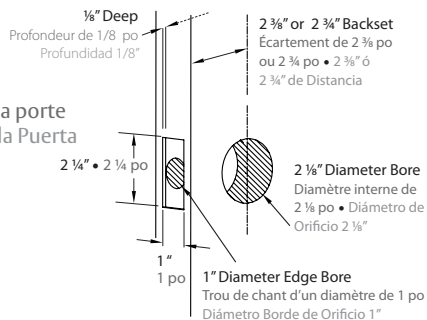
Inside Trim

Garniture Intérieure
Adorno Interior

Preparation • Préparation • Preparación

Door Prep

Préparation de la porte
Preparación de la Puerta



A

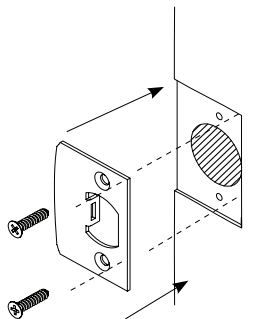
Install Strike Plate

Installation de la plaque de gâche
Instale la Placa de Impacto

Fasten Strike Plate using Two #8 x 3/4" Wood Screws (provided).

Fixez la Plaque de Gâche à l'aide des deux vis à bois n° 8 x 3/4 po (fournie).

Asegure la Placa de Impacto usando dos Tornillos para Madera #8 x 3/4" (incluidos).



B

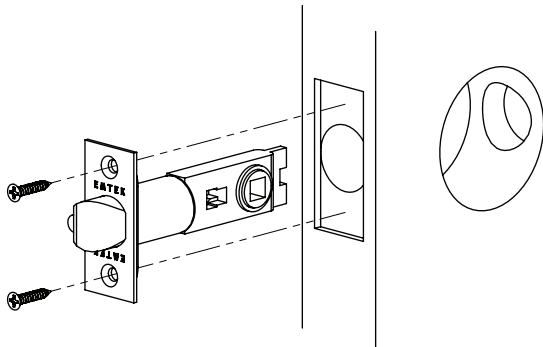
1 Install Latch

Installation du Pêne
Instale el Pestillo

Fasten Latch using two #8 x 3/4" Wood Screws (provided).

Fixez le Pêne à l'aide des deux vis à bois n° 8 x 3/4 po (fournie).

Asegure el Pestillo usando dos tornillos para madera #8 x 3/4" (incluidos).



2 Remove Inside Rosette

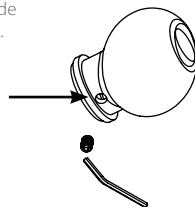
Retirez la rosette intérieure
Remueva la Roseta interior

STEP 1 • ÉTAPE 1 • PASO 1

Remove inside knob by loosening set screw w/ hex wrench (provided)

Retirez la poignée intérieure en desserrant la vis de réglage à l'aide de la clé hexadécimale (fournie).

Afloje el tornillo de ajuste con la llave Allen (incluidos) para remover la perilla interior.

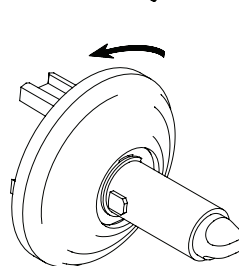


STEP 2 • ÉTAPE 2 • PASO 2

Unthread rosette counterclockwise to remove from housing before installing on door.

Dévissez la rosette dans le sens contraire des aiguilles d'une montre afin de la retirer du boîtier avant l'installation sur la porte.

Desenrosque la Roseta en sentido antihorario para removerla de su base antes de instalarla en la puerta.



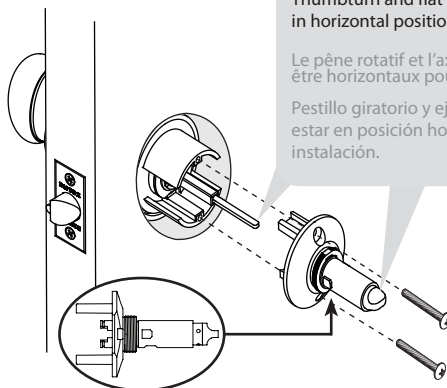
3 Installing Inside Chassis

Installation du bâti intérieur
Instale el Chasis Interno

Fasten Inside Chassis using two #8-32 x 1 1/2" Pan Head Machine Screws (provided).

Fixez le bâti intérieur à l'aide de deux vis à métal n° 8-32 x 1 1/2 po à tête plate (fournie).

Asegure el Chasis Interno usando dos tornillos de Cabeza Redonda #8-32 x 1 1/2" (incluidos).



Thumbturn and flat spindle **MUST** be in horizontal position for installation

Le pêne rotatif et l'axe plat **DOIVENT** être horizontaux pour l'installation

Pestillo giratorio y eje plano **DEBEN** estar en posición horizontal para instalación.

4 Installing Inside Trim

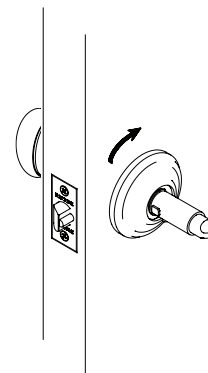
Installation de la garniture intérieure
Instale la Perilla interior

STEP 1 • ÉTAPE 1 • PASO 1

Secure inside rosette to door by threading it clockwise on to stem.

Fixez la rosette intérieure sur la porte en l'enfilant sur la tige dans le sens des aiguilles d'une montre.

Asegure la Roseta interior a la puerta enroscandola en el tallo hacia la derecha.

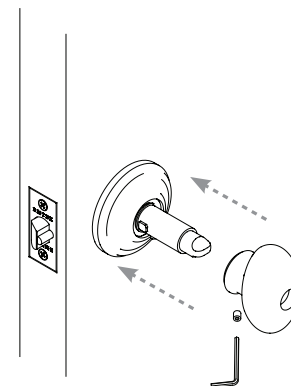


STEP 2 • ÉTAPE 2 • PASO 2

Tighten set screw after placing knob on stem.

Après avoir remis la poignée sur la tige, serrez la vis de réglage.

Apriete el tornillo de ajuste después de instalar la perilla.



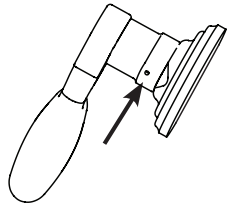


Re-Pinning Cylinder (OPTIONAL)

Regroupillage du cylindre (OPTIONNEL)

Cambio de combinación de pernos (OPCIONAL)

STEP 1 • ÉTAPE 1 • PASO 1



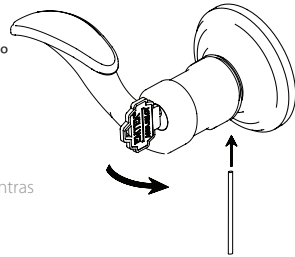
Small hole should face down.
Le petit trou doit faire face vers le bas.
Orificio pequeño debe estar hacia abajo.

STEP 2 • ÉTAPE 2 • PASO 2

Rotate key counterclockwise 90° while pressing wire into hole.

Faites tourner la clé dans le sens contraire des aiguilles d'une montre tout en enfonçant le fil dans le trou.

Gire la llave hacia la izquierda 90° mientras presiona el alambre en el orificio.

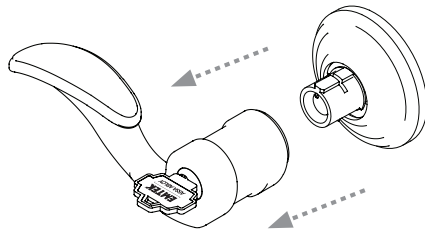


STEP 3 • ÉTAPE 3 • PASO 3

Slide lever off stem.

Retirez le levier de la tige.

Deslice la Palanca fuera del tallo.



STEP 4 • ÉTAPE 4 • PASO 4

After re-pinning cylinder, insert lever onto stem

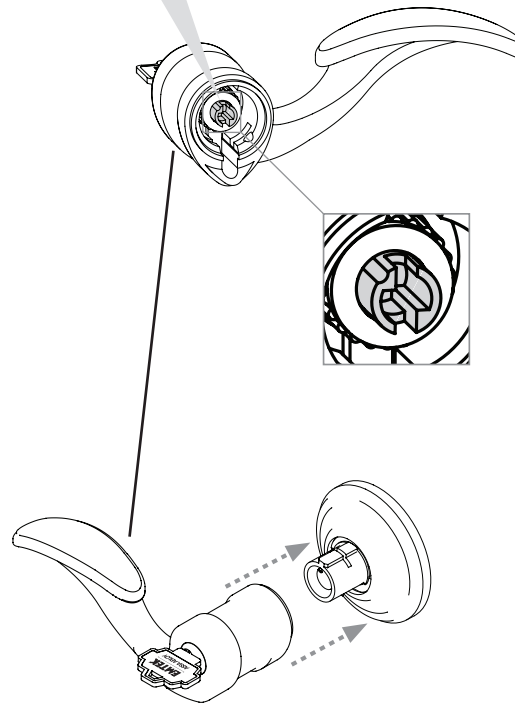
Après avoir regroupillé, insérer le levier sur la tige.

Después de cambiar la combinación de pernos, inserte la palanca en el tallo.

Before inserting lever onto stem, make sure cylinder tailpiece is vertical as shown.

Avant d'insérer le levier sur la tige, assurez-vous que l'arrière du cylindre est vertical tel qu'illustré.

Antes de insertar la palanca en el tallo, asegúrese que la parte trasera del cilindro esté vertical como se muestra.



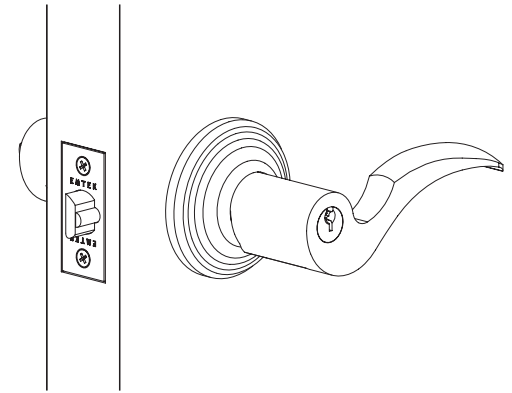
EMTEK®

ASSA ABLOY

Key in Lever Lock Installation Guide

Guide d'installation pour serrure à clé à levier

Guía de Instalación para Cerradura de Palanca con llave



ASSA ABLOY, the global leader in door opening solutions

Outside Trim

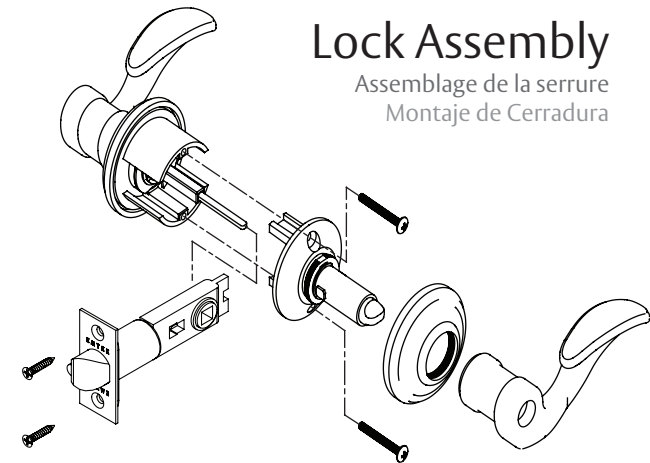
Garniture Extérieure

Adorno Exterior

Lock Assembly

Assemblage de la serrure

Montaje de Cerradura



Inside Trim

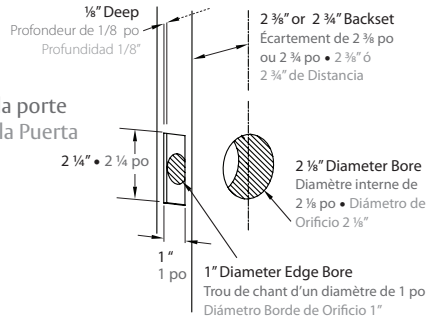
Garniture Intérieure

Adorno Interior

Preparation • Préparation • Preparación

Door Prep

Préparation de la porte
Preparación de la Puerta



A

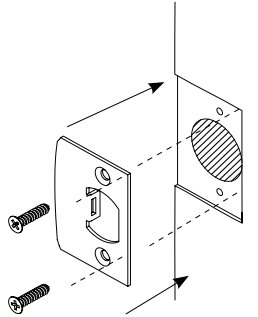
Install Strike Plate

Installation de la plaque de gâche
Instale la Placa de Impacto

Fasten Strike Plate using Two #8 x 3/4" Wood Screws (provided).

Fixez la Plaque de Gâche à l'aide des deux vis à bois n° 8 x 3/4 po (fournie).

Asegure la Placa de Impacto usando dos Tornillos para Madera #8 x 3/4" (incluidos).



B

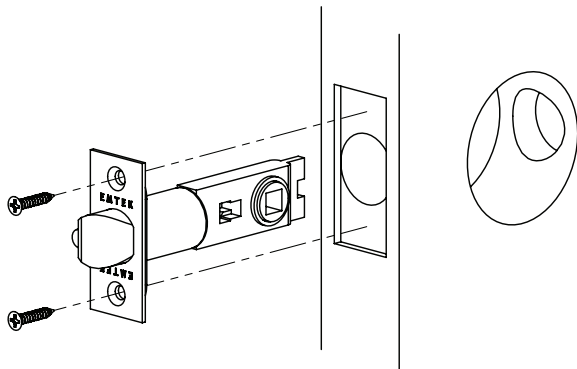
1 Install Latch

Installation du Pêne
Instale el Pestillo

Fasten Latch using two #8 x 3/4" Wood Screws (provided).

Fixez le Pêne à l'aide des deux vis à bois n° 8 x 3/4 po (fournie).

Asegure el Pestillo usando dos tornillos para madera #8 x 3/4" (incluidos).



2 Remove Inside Rosette

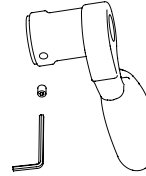
Retirez la rosette intérieure
Remueva la Roseta interior

STEP 1 • ÉTAPE 1 • PASO 1

Remove inside lever by loosening set screw w/ hex wrench (provided).

Retirez le levier intérieur en desserrant la vis de réglage à l'aide de la clé hexadécimale (fournie).

Afloje el tornillo de ajuste con la llave Allen (incluidos) para remover la palanca interior.

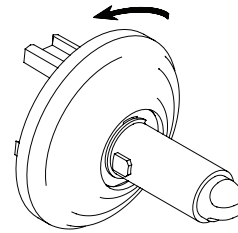


STEP 2 • ÉTAPE 2 • PASO 2

Unthread rosette counterclockwise to remove from housing before installing on door.

Dévissez la rosette dans le sens contraire des aiguilles d'une montre afin de la retirer du boîtier avant l'installation sur la porte.

Desenrosque la Roseta en sentido antihorario para removerla de su base antes de instalarla en la puerta.



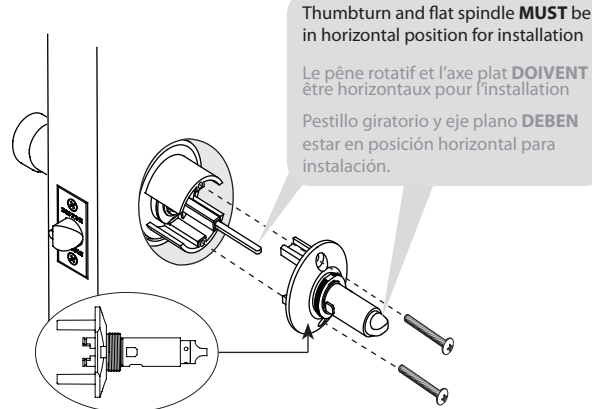
3 Installing Inside Chassis

Installation du bâti intérieur
Instale el Chasis Interno

Fasten Inside Chassis using two #8-32 x 1 1/2" Pan Head Machine Screws (provided).

Fixez le bâti intérieur à l'aide de deux vis à métal n° 8-32 x 1 1/2 po à tête plate (fournie).

Asegure el Chasis Interno usando dos tornillos de Cabeza Redonda #8-32 x 1 1/2" (incluidos).



4 Installing Inside Trim

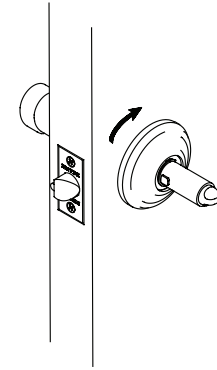
Installation de la garniture intérieure
Instale la Palanca interior

STEP 1 • ÉTAPE 1 • PASO 1

Secure inside rosette to door by threading it clockwise on to stem.

Fixez la rosette intérieure sur la porte en l'enfilant sur la tige dans le sens des aiguilles d'une montre.

Asegure la Roseta interior a la puerta enroscandola en el tallo hacia la derecha.

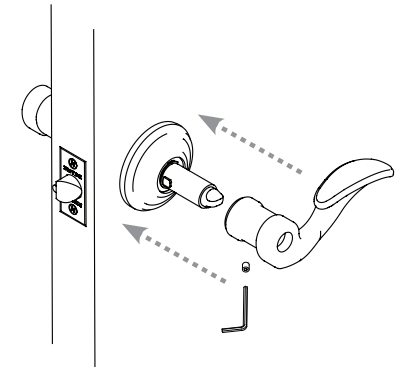


STEP 2 • ÉTAPE 2 • PASO 2

Tighten set screw after placing lever on stem.

Après avoir remis le levier sur la tige, serrez la vis de réglage.

Apriete el tornillo de ajuste después de instalar la palanca.



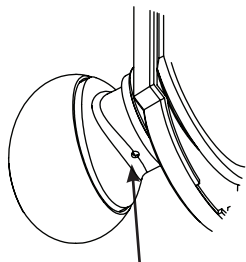


Re-Pinning Cylinder(OPTIONAL)

Regoupillage du cylindre (OPTIONNEL)

Cambio de combinación de pernos (OPCIONAL)

STEP 1 • ÉTAPE 1 • PASO 1



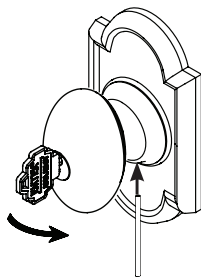
Small hole should face down.
Le petit trou doit faire face vers le bas.
Orificio pequeño debe estar hacia abajo.

STEP 2 • ÉTAPE 2 • PASO 2

Rotate key counterclockwise 90° while pressing wire into hole.

Faites tourner la clé dans le sens contraire des aiguilles d'une montre tout en enfonçant le fil dans le trou.

Gire la llave hacia la izquierda 90° mientras presiona el alambre en el orificio.

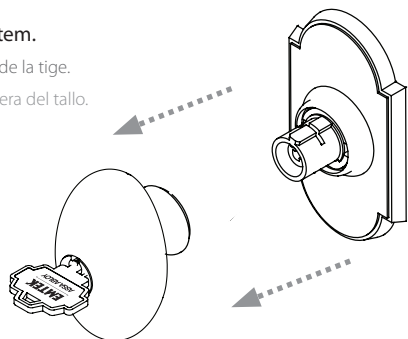


STEP 3 • ÉTAPE 3 • PASO 3

Slide knob off stem.

Retirez le poignée de la tige.

Deslice la perilla fuera del tallo.



STEP 4 • ÉTAPE 4 • PASO 4

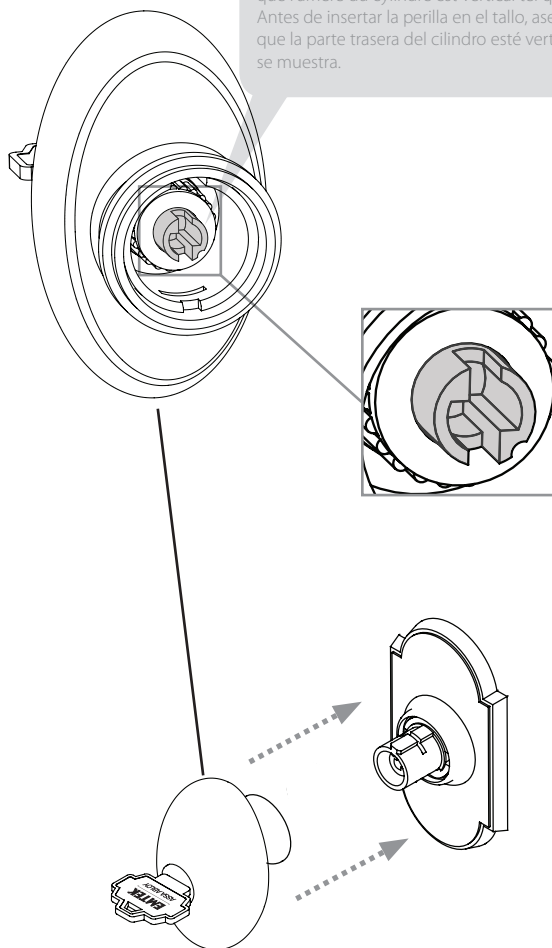
After re-pinning cylinder, insert knob onto stem

Après avoir regoupillé le cylindre, insérez la poignée sur la tige

Después de cambiar la combinación de pernos, inserte la Perilla en el tallo

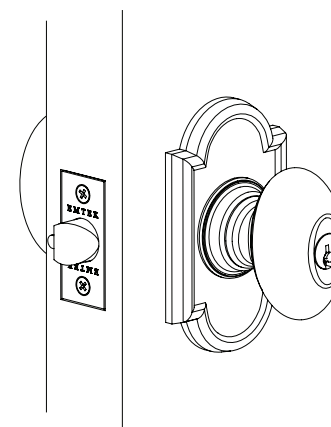
Before inserting knob onto stem, make sure cylinder tailpiece is vertical as shown.

Avant d'insérer la poignée sur la tige, assurez-vous que l'arrière du cylindre est vertical tel qu'illustré.
Antes de insertar la perilla en el tallo, asegúrese que la parte trasera del cilindro esté vertical como se muestra.



Key in Knob Lock with #8 Style Rosette Installation Guide

Guide d'installation pour serrure à clé dans le poignée avec rosette de style n° 8
Guía de Instalación para Cerradura de Perilla con llave con Roseta estilo #8



ASSA ABLOY, the global leader in door opening solutions

Outside Trim

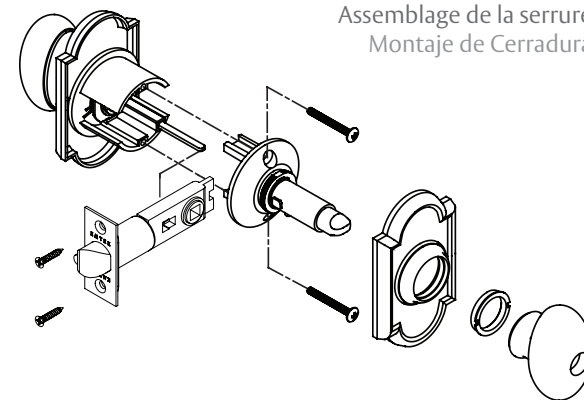
Garniture Extérieure

Adorno Exterior

Lock Assembly

Assemblage de la serrure

Montaje de Cerradura



Inside Trim

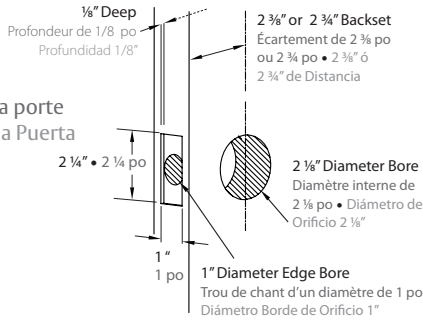
Garniture Intérieure

Adorno Interior

Preparation • Préparation • Preparación

Door Prep

Préparation de la porte
Preparación de la Puerta



A

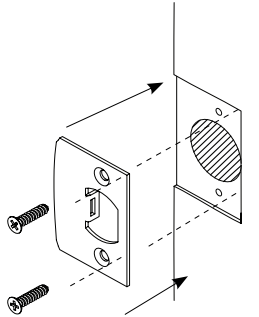
Install Strike Plate

Installation de la plaque de gâche
Instale la Placa de Impacto

Fasten Strike Plate using Two #8 x 3/4\" Wood Screws (provided).

Fixez la plaque de gâche à l'aide des deux vis à bois n° 8 x 3/4 po (fournie).

Asegure la Placa de Impacto usando dos Tornillos para Madera #8 x 3/4\" (incluidos).



B

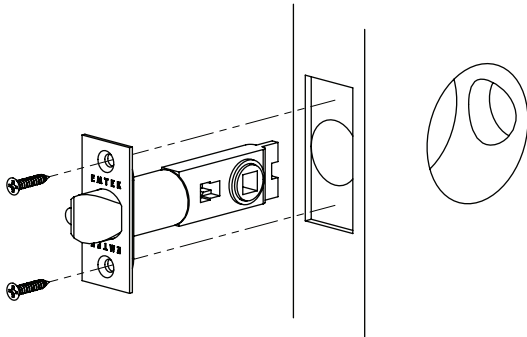
1 Install Latch

Installation du Pêne
Instale el Pestillo

Fasten Latch using two #8 x 3/4\" Wood Screws (provided).

Fixez le Pêne à l'aide des deux vis à bois n° 8 x 3/4 po (fournie).

Asegure el Pestillo usando dos tornillos para madera #8 x 3/4\" (incluidos).



2 Remove Inside Rosette

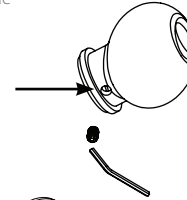
Retirez la rosette intérieure
Remueva la Roseta interior

STEP 1 • ÉTAPE 1 • PASO 1

Remove inside knob by loosening set screw w/ hex wrench (provided).

Retirez la poignée intérieure en desserrant la vis de réglage à l'aide de la clé hexadécimale (fournie).

Afloje el tornillo de ajuste con la llave Allen (incluidos) para remover la perilla interior.

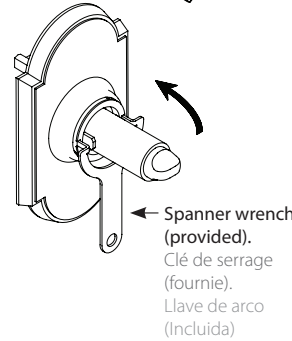


STEP 2 • ÉTAPE 2 • PASO 2

Unthread rosette nut counterclockwise to remove from housing before installing on door.

Dévissez la rosette écrou dans le sens contraire des aiguilles d'une montre afin de la retirer du boîtier avant l'installation sur la porte.

Desenrosque tuerca de la Roseta en sentido antihorario para removerla de su base antes de instalarla en la puerta.



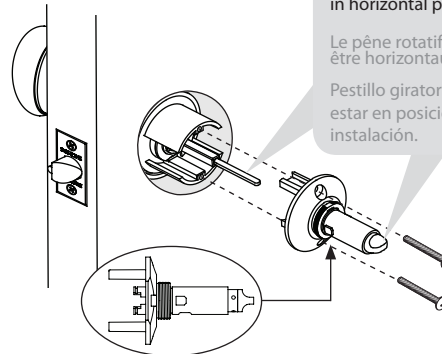
3 Installing Inside Chassis

Installation du bâti intérieur
Instale el Chasis Interno

Fasten Inside Chassis using two #8-32 x 1 1/2\" Pan Head Machine Screws (provided).

Fixez le bâti intérieur à l'aide de deux vis à métal n° 8-32 x 1 1/2 po à tête plate (fournie).

Asegure el Chasis Interno usando dos tornillos de Cabeza Redonda #8-32 x 1 1/2\" (incluidos).



Thumbturn and flat spindle **MUST** be in horizontal position for installation

Le pêne rotatif et l'axe plat **DOIVENT** être horizontaux pour l'installation

Pestillo giratorio y eje plano **DEBEN** estar en posición horizontal para instalación.

4 Installing Inside Trim

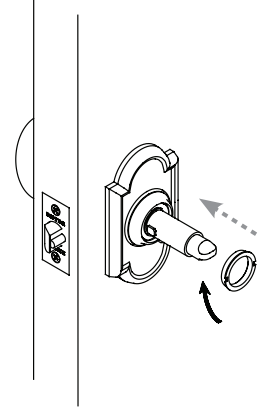
Installation de la garniture intérieure
Instale la Perilla interior

STEP 1 • ÉTAPE 1 • PASO 1

Secure inside rosette to door by threading nut in clockwise on to stem.

Fixez la rosette intérieure sur la porte en enfilant la écrou sur la tige dans le sens des aiguilles d'une montre.

Enrosque la tuerca hacia la derecha para asegurar la roseta interior a la puerta.

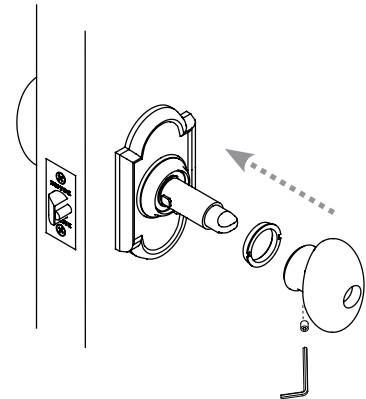


STEP 2 • ÉTAPE 2 • PASO 2

Tighten set screw after placing knob on stem.

Après avoir remis la poignée sur la tige, serrez la vis de réglage du poignée.

Apriete el tornillo de ajuste después de instalar la perilla.



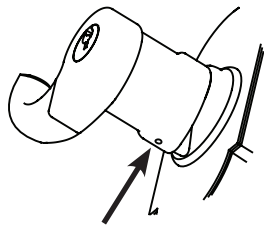


Re-Pinning Cylinder (OPTIONAL)

Regoupillage du cylindre (OPTIONNEL)

Cambio de combinación de pernos (OPCIONAL)

STEP 1 • ÉTAPE 1 • PASO 1



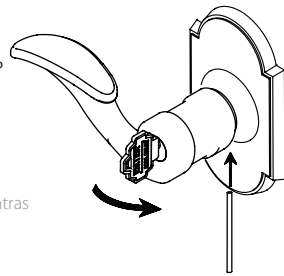
Small hole should face down.
Le petit trou doit faire face vers le bas.
Orificio pequeño debe estar hacia abajo.

STEP 2 • ÉTAPE 2 • PASO 2

Rotate key counterclockwise 90° while pressing wire into hole.

Faites tourner la clé dans le sens contraire des aiguilles d'une montre tout en enfonçant le fil dans le trou.

Gire la llave hacia la izquierda 90° mientras presiona el alambre en el orificio.

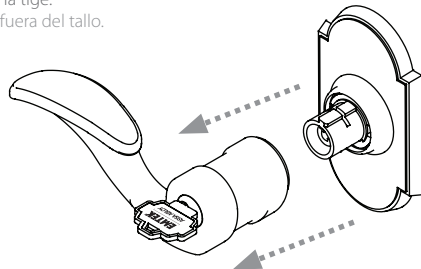


STEP 3 • ÉTAPE 3 • PASO 3

Slide lever off stem.

Retirez le levier de la tige.

Deslice la Palanca fuera del tallo.



STEP 4 • ÉTAPE 4 • PASO 4

After re-pinning cylinder, insert lever onto stem

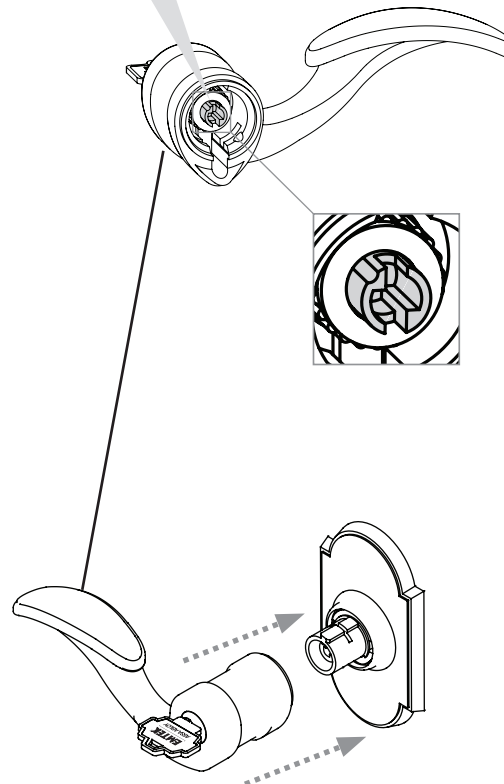
Après avoir regoupillé, insérer le levier sur la tige.

Después de cambiar la combinación de pernos, inserte la palanca en el tallo.

Before inserting lever onto stem, make sure cylinder tailpiece is vertical as shown.

Avant d'insérer le levier sur la tige, assurez-vous que l'arrière du cylindre est vertical tel qu'illustré.

Antes de insertar la palanca en el tallo, asegúrese que la parte trasera del cilindro esté vertical como se muestra.

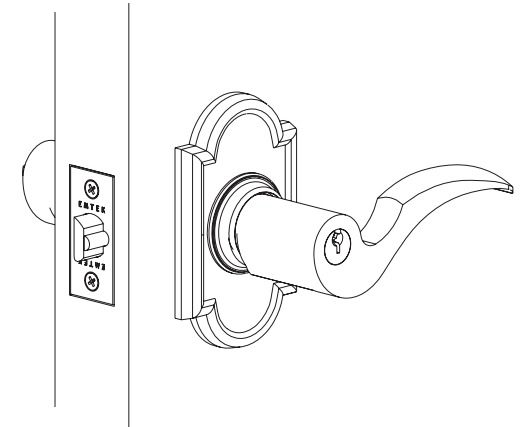


EMTEK®

ASSA ABLOY

Key in Lever Lock with #8 Style Rosette Installation Guide

Guide d'installation pour serrure à clé à levier avec rosette de style n° 8
Guía de Instalación para Cerradura de Palanca con llave con Roseta estilo #8

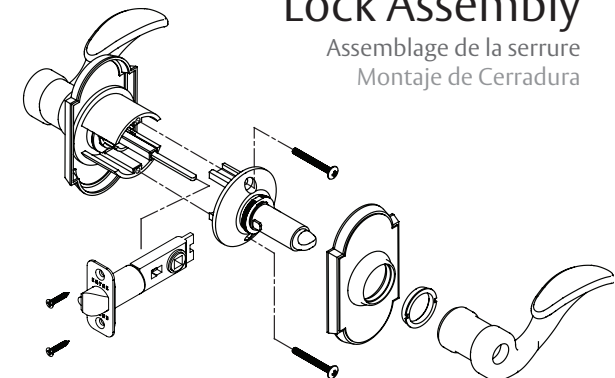


ASSA ABLOY, the global leader in door opening solutions

Outside Trim
Garniture Extérieure
Adorno Exterior

Lock Assembly

Assemblage de la serrure
Montaje de Cerradura

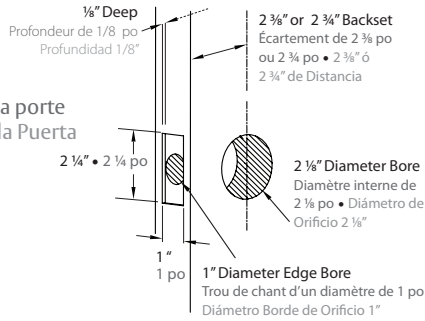


Inside Trim
Garniture Intérieure
Adorno Interior

Preparation • Préparation • Preparación

Door Prep

Préparation de la porte
Preparación de la Puerta



A

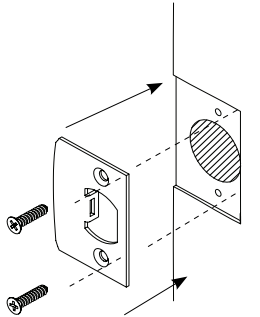
Install Strike Plate

Installation de la plaque de gâche
Instale la Placa de Impacto

Fasten Strike Plate using Two #8 x 3/4" Wood Screws (provided).

Fixez la Plaque de Gâche à l'aide des deux vis à bois n° 8 x 3/4 po (fournie).

Asegure la Placa de Impacto usando dos Tornillos para Madera #8 x 3/4" (incluidos).



B

1

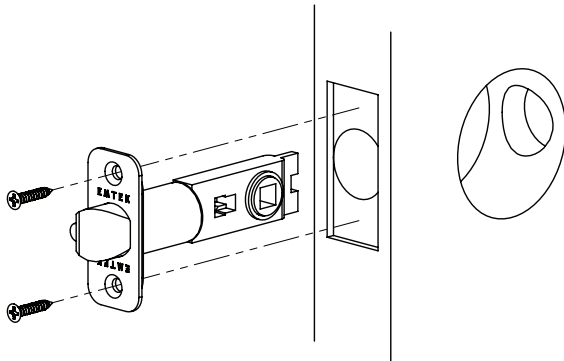
Install Latch

Installation du Loquet
Instale el Pestillo

Fasten Latch using two #8 x 3/4" Wood Screws (provided).

Fixez le Pêne à l'aide des deux vis à bois n° 8 x 3/4 po (fournie).

Asegure el Pestillo usando dos tornillos para madera #8 x 3/4" (incluidos).



2

Remove Inside Rosette

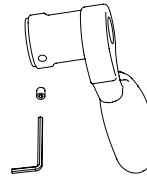
Retirez la rosette intérieure
Remueva la Roseta interior

STEP 1 • ÉTAPE 1 • PASO 1

Remove inside lever by loosening set screw w/ hex wrench (provided).

Retirez le levier intérieur en desserrant la vis de réglage à l'aide de la clé hexadécimale (fournie).

Afloje el tornillo de ajuste con la llave Allen (incluidos) para remover la palanca interior.

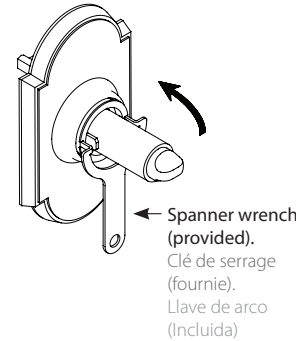


STEP 2 • ÉTAPE 2 • PASO 2

Unthread rosette nut counterclockwise to remove from housing before installing on door.

Dévissez la rosette écrou dans le sens contraire des aiguilles d'une montre afin de la retirer du boîtier avant l'installation sur la porte.

Desenrosque tuerca de la Roseta en sentido antihorario para removerla de su base antes de instalarla en la puerta.



3

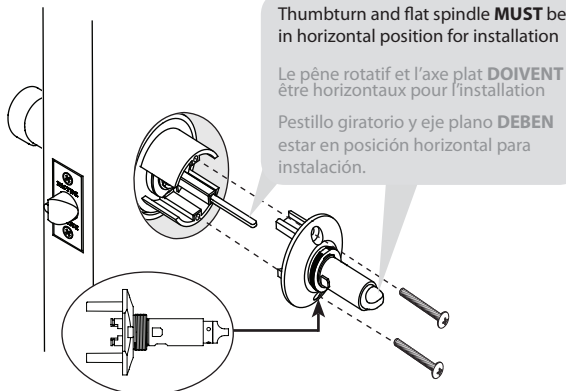
Installing Inside Chassis

Installation du bâti intérieur
Instale el Chasis Interno

Fasten Inside Chassis using two #8-32 x 1 1/2" Pan Head Machine Screws (provided).

Fixez le bâti intérieur à l'aide de deux vis à métal n° 8-32 x 1 1/2 po à tête plate (fournie).

Asegure el Chasis Interno usando dos tornillos de Cabeza Redonda #8-32 x 1 1/2" (incluidos).



4

Installing Inside Trim

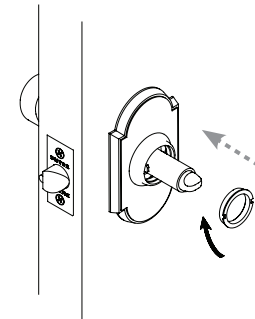
Installation de la garniture intérieure
Instale la Placa interior

STEP 1 • ÉTAPE 1 • PASO 1

Secure inside rosette to door by threading nut clockwise on to stem.

Fixez la rosette intérieure sur la porte en l'enfilant la écrou sur la tige dans le sens des aiguilles d'une montre.

Enrosque la tuerca hacia la derecha para asegurar la roseta interior a la puerta.

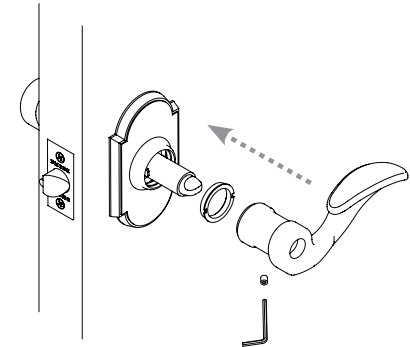


STEP 2 • ÉTAPE 2 • PASO 2

Tighten set screw after placing lever on stem.

Après avoir remis le levier sur la tige, serrez la vis de réglage.

Apriete el tornillo de ajuste después de instalar la palanca.



1 Preparation

Préparation
Preparación

STEP 1 • ÉTAPE 1 • PASO 1

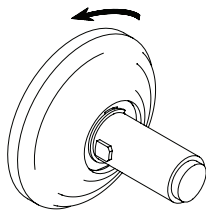
Remove lever or knob by loosening set screw w/ hex wrench (provided).
Retirez la poignée ou levier en desserrant la vis de réglage à l'aide de la clé hexadécimale (fournie).
Afloje el tornillo de ajuste con la llave Allen (incluida) para remover la perilla o palanca.



STEP 2 • ÉTAPE 2 • PASO 2

Unthread rosette counterclockwise to remove from housing before installing on door.

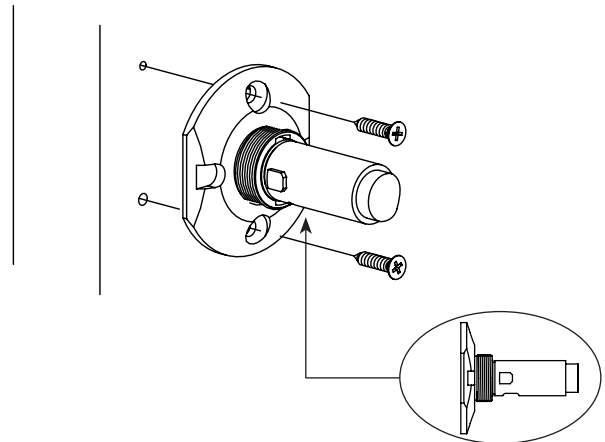
Avant l'installation sur la porte, dévissez la rosette dans le sens contraire des aiguilles d'une montre avant de la retirer du boîtier.
Desenrosque la Roseta en sentido antihorario para removerla de su base antes de instalarla en la puerta.



2 Installing Chassis

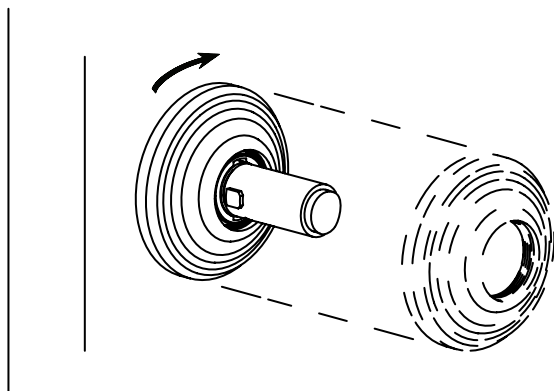
Installation du châssis
Instalar el chasis

Install housing onto surface of door, orienting the notch on the housing to the bottom. The two wood screws should be located at the top and bottom.
Installer le boîtier sur la surface de la porte en orientant l'encoche du boîtier vers le bas. Les deux vis à bois devraient être situés en haut et en bas.
Instale la base en la superficie de la puerta, oriente el corte hacia abajo. Los dos tornillos de madera deben estar localizados arriba y abajo.



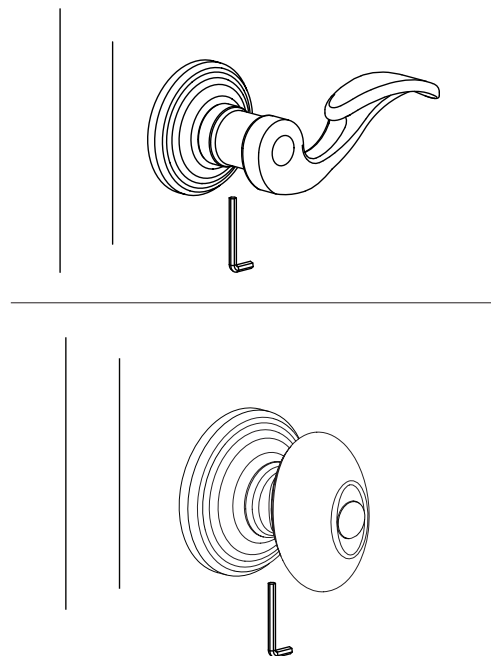
3 Installing Rosette

Installation de la rosette
Instalando la roseta



4 Installing Lever or Knob

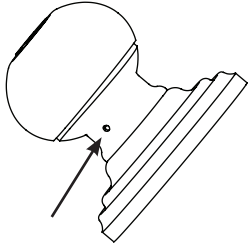
Installation du levier ou de la poignée
Instalación de la palanca o perilla



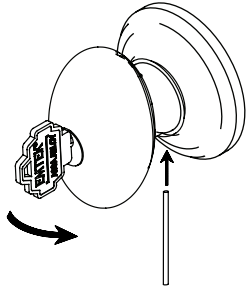
Tighten Set screw at bottom of lever or knob.
Serrez la vis de réglage au bas du levier ou de la poignée.
Apriete el tornillo de fijación en la parte inferior de la palanca o la perilla.

Re-pinning Cylinder (Optional)

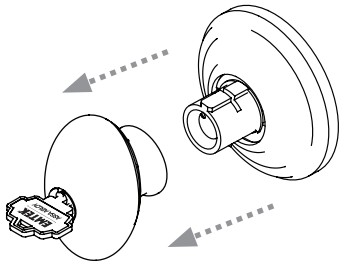
Step 1. Small hole should face down.



Step 2. Rotate key counterclockwise 90° while pressing wire into hole.



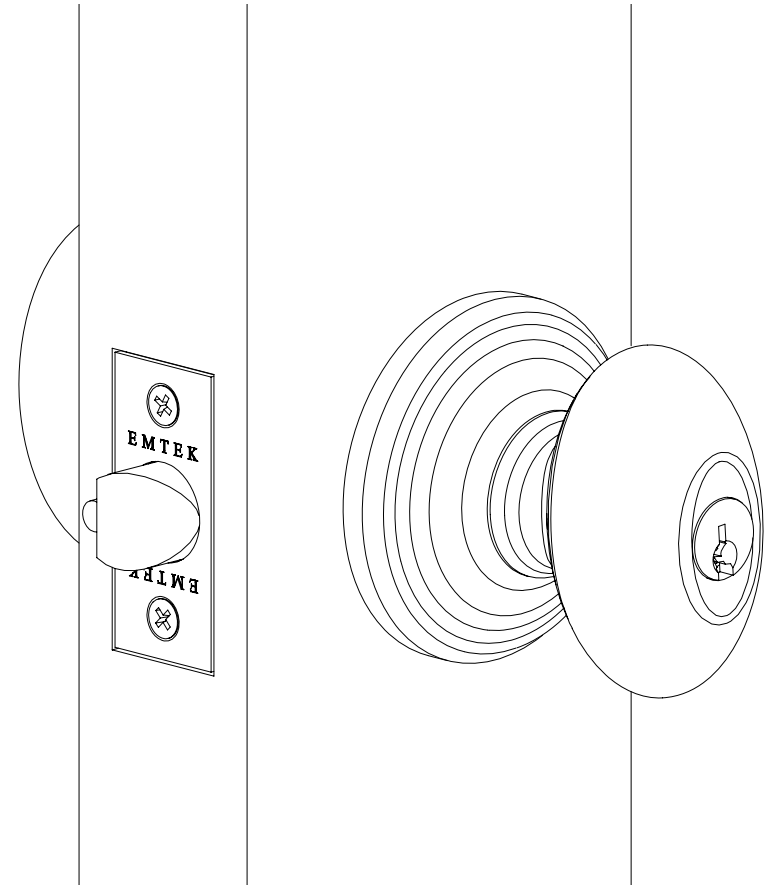
Step 3. Slide knob off stem.



For more information on rekeying cylinder, please scan the QR code for how-to video.

EMTEK®
ASSA ABLOY

Key in Knob Lock Installation Guide



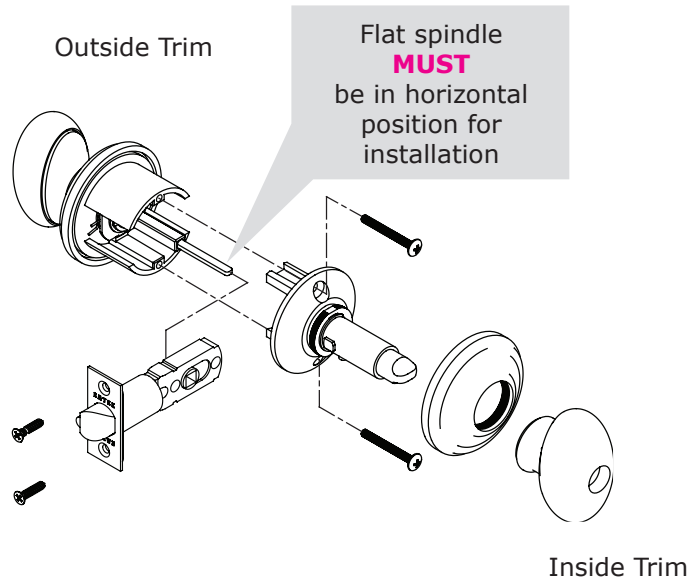
ASSA ABLOY is the global leader in door opening solutions, dedicated to satisfying end-user needs for security, safety and convenience.

Copyright © 2013, Emtek Products, Inc. an ASSA ABLOY Group company. All rights reserved. Reproduction in whole or in part without the express written permission of Emtek Products, Inc. is prohibited.

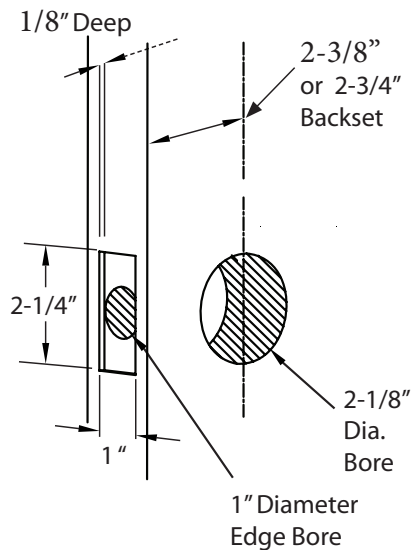
ASSA ABLOY, the global leader in door opening solutions

Installation Guide - For Key in Knob Lock

Lock Assembly

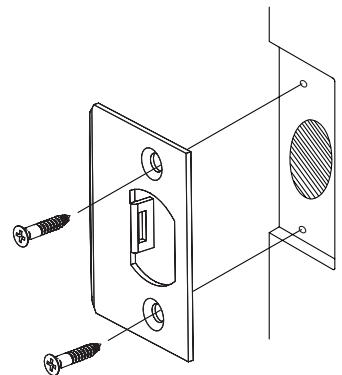


Door Prep



Install Strike Plate

Fasten Strike Plate using Two #8 x 3/4" Wood Screws (provided).

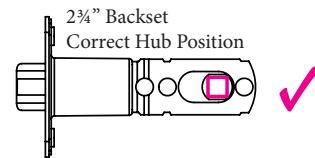
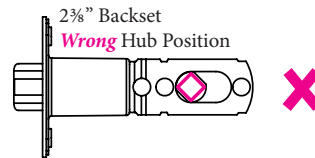
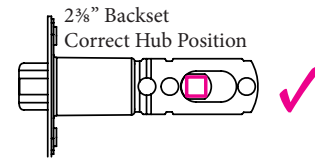


Scan this QR code for installation video



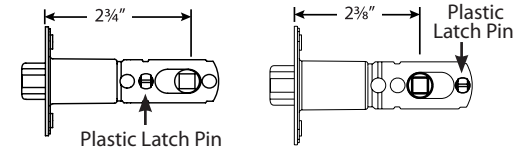
IMPORTANT!

CHECK LATCH HUB POSITION BEFORE INSTALLING



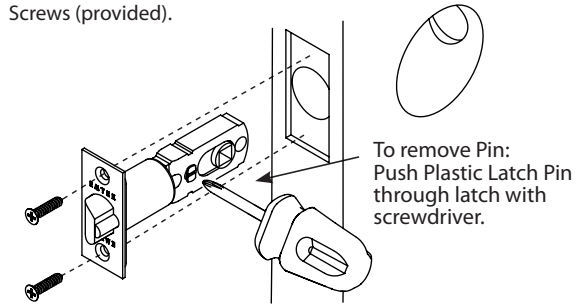
1. Adjust and Install Latch

Step 1. Adjusting for appropriate backset.



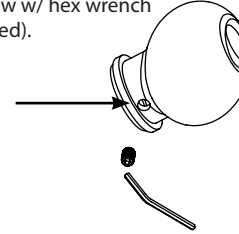
! The Adjustable Latch is factory shipped with a 2-3/4" backset position. Remove pin and slide spindle hub forward for a 2-3/8" backset, then reinsert the pin in the hole at the back of the latch as shown.

Step 2. Fasten Adjustable Latch using two #8 x 3/4" Wood Screws (provided).

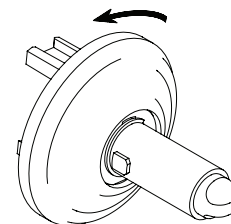


2. Remove Inside Rosette

Step 1. Remove inside knob by loosening set screw w/ hex wrench (provided).

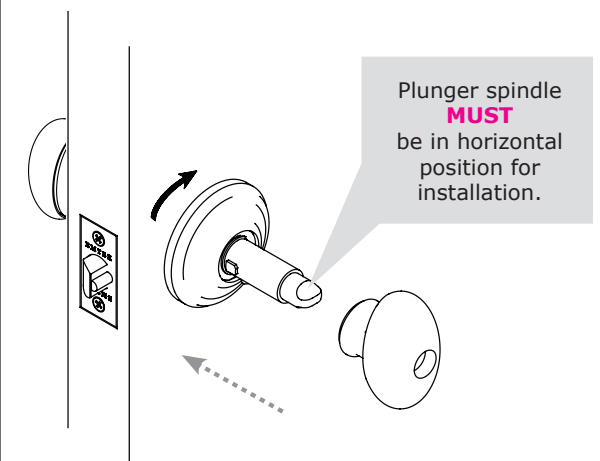


Step 2. Unthread rosette counterclockwise to remove from housing before installing on door.



3. Installing Inside Trim

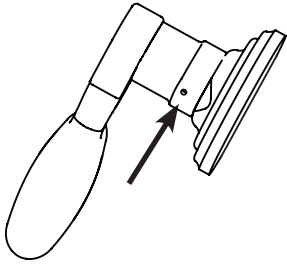
Step 1. Secure inside rosette to door by threading it clockwise on to stem.



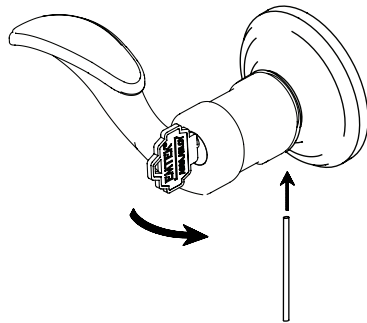
Step 2. Tighten set screw after placing knob on stem.

Re-pinning Cylinder (Optional)

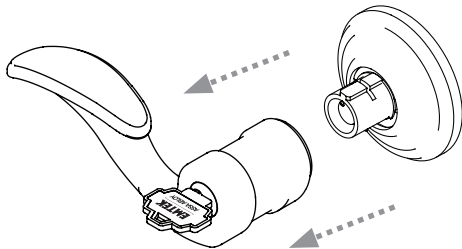
Step 1. Small hole should face down.



Step 2. Rotate key counterclockwise 90° while pressing wire into hole.



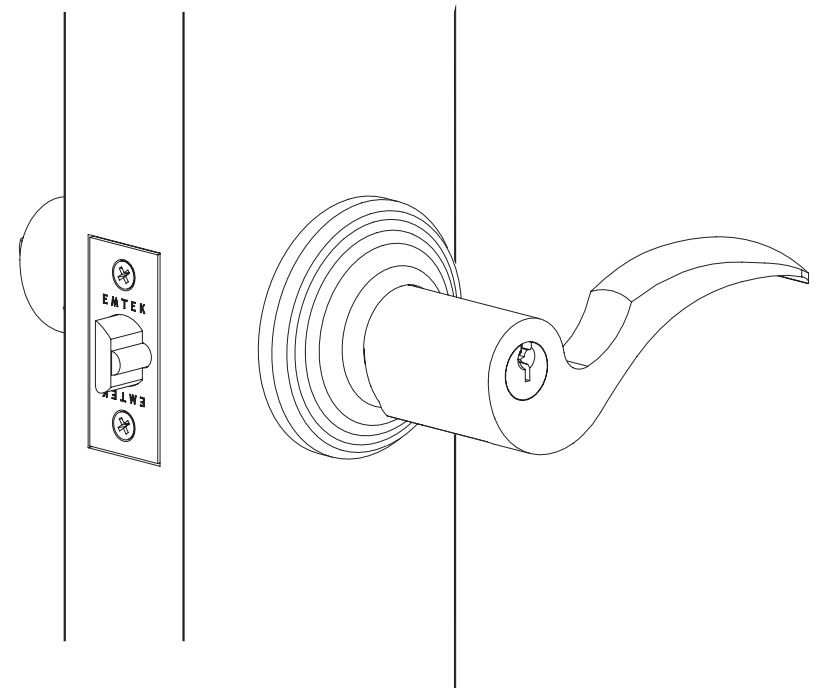
Step 3. Slide lever off stem.



For more information on rekeying cylinder, please scan the QR code for how-to video.

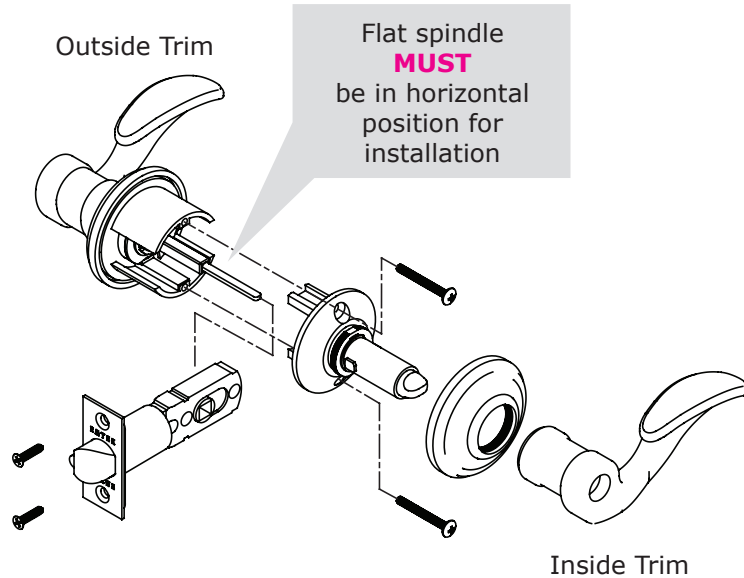
EMTEK®
ASSA ABLOY

Key in Lever Lock Installation Guide

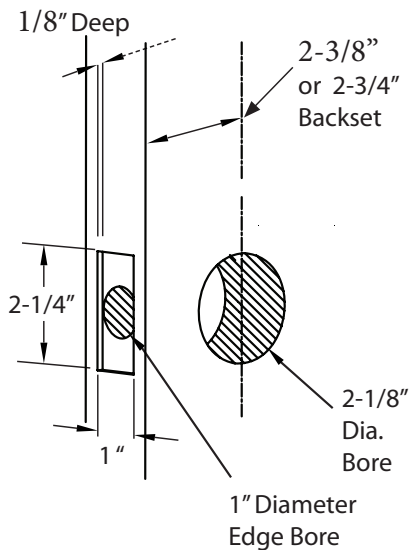


Installation Guide - For Key in Lever Lock

Lock Assembly

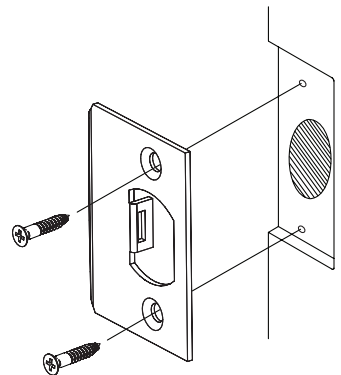


Door Prep



Install Strike Plate

Fasten Strike Plate using Two #8 x 3/4" Wood Screws (provided).

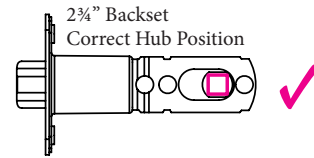
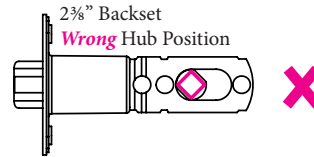
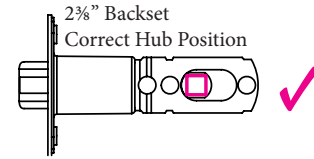


Scan this QR code for installation video



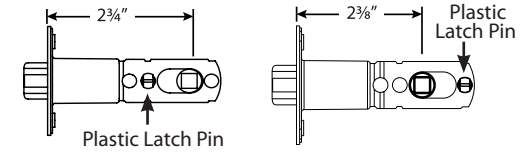
IMPORTANT!

CHECK LATCH HUB POSITION BEFORE INSTALLING



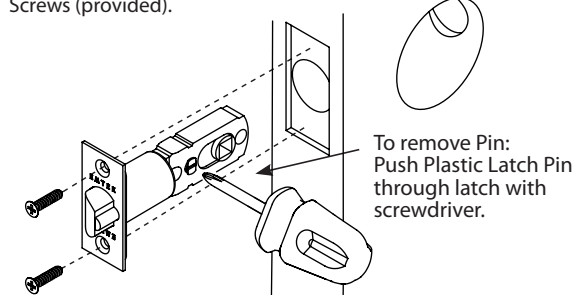
1. Adjust and Install Latch

Step 1. Adjusting for appropriate backset.



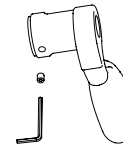
The Adjustable Latch is factory shipped with a 2-3/4" backset position. Remove pin and slide spindle hub forward for a 2-3/8" backset, then reinsert the pin in the hole at the back of the latch as shown.

Step 2. Fasten Adjustable Latch using two #8 x 3/4" Wood Screws (provided).

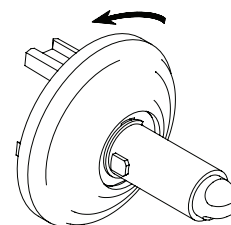


2. Remove Inside Rosette

Step 1. Remove inside lever by loosening set screw w/ hex wrench (provided).

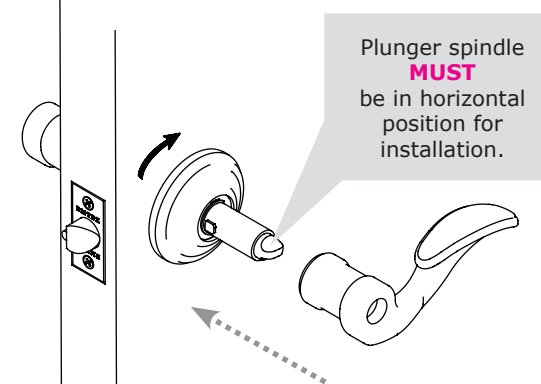


Step 2. Unthread rosette counterclockwise to remove from housing before installing on door.



3. Installing Inside Trim

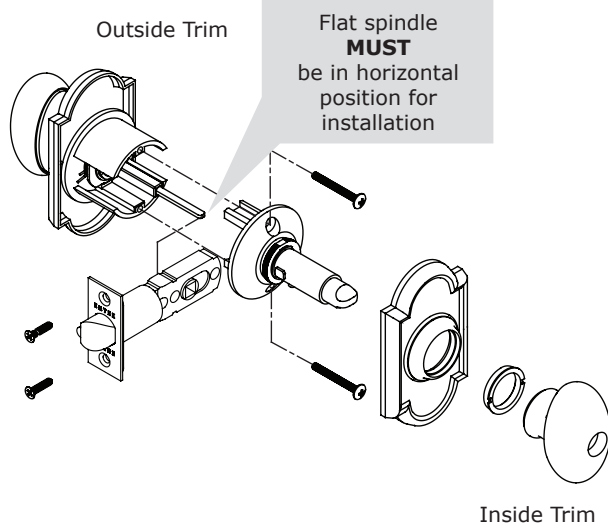
Step 1. Secure inside rosette to door by threading it clockwise on to stem.



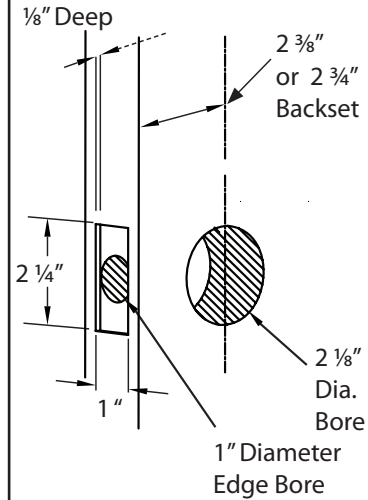
Step 2. Tighten lever set screw after placing lever on stem.

Installation Guide - For Key in Knob with #8 Style Rosette

Lock Assembly

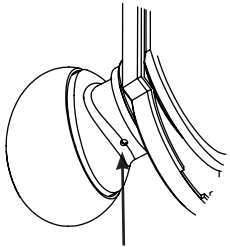


Door Prep



Re-pinning Cylinder (Optional)

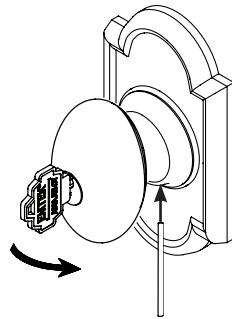
Step 1. Small hole should face down.



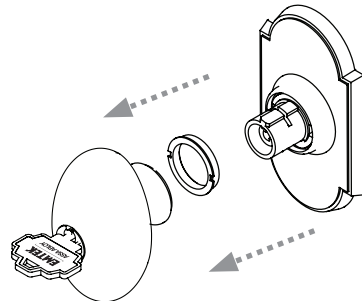
For more information on rekeying cylinder, please scan the QR code for how-to video.



Step 2. Rotate key counterclockwise 90° while pressing wire into hole.

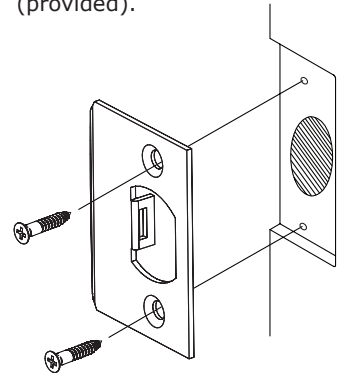


Step 3. Slide knob off stem.



1. Install Strike Plate

Fasten Strike Plate using Two #8 x 3/4" Wood Screws (provided).

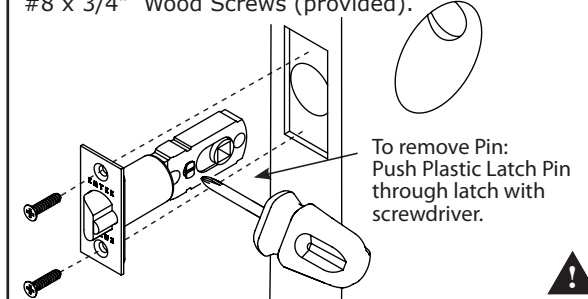


Scan this QR code for installation video

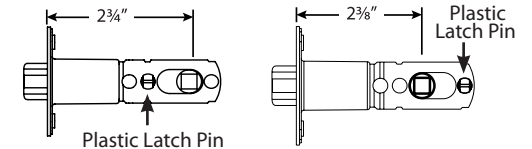


2. Install Adjustable Latch

Fasten Adjustable Latch using two #8 x 3/4" Wood Screws (provided).

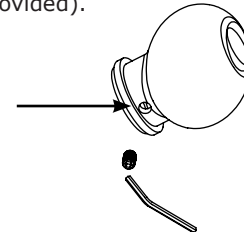


The Adjustable Latch is factory shipped with a 2 3/4" backset position. Remove pin and slide spindle hub forward for a 2 3/8" backset, then reinsert the pin in the hole at the back of the latch as shown.

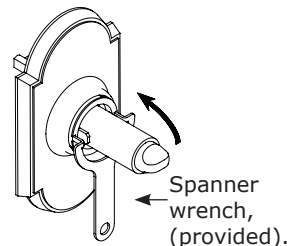


3. Remove Inside Rosette

Step 1. Remove inside knob by loosening set screw w/ hex wrench (provided).

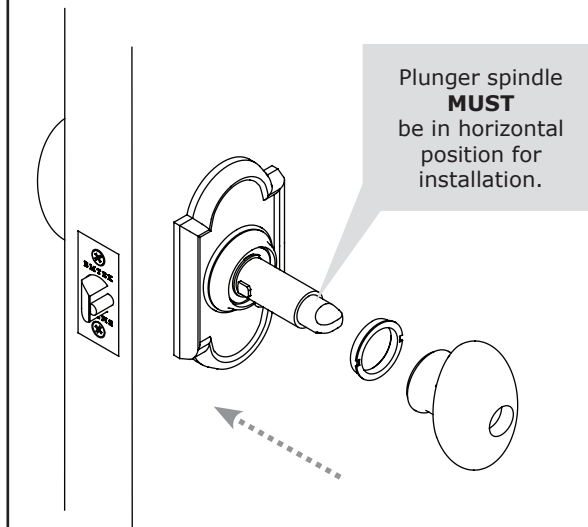


Step 2. Unthread locking ring counterclockwise to remove rosette from housing before installing on door.



4. Installing Inside Trim

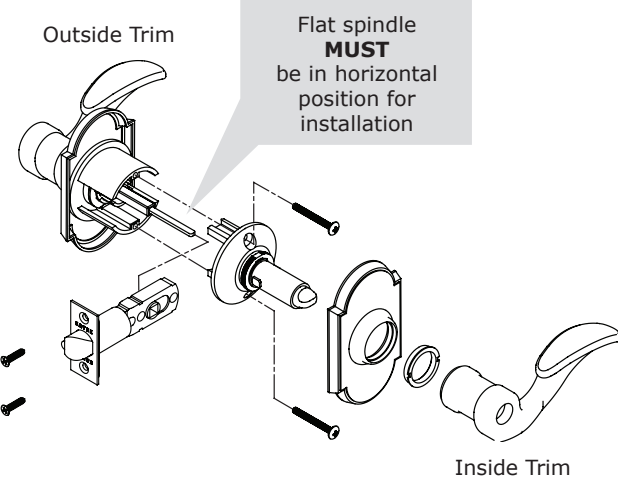
Step 1. Secure inside rosette to door by threading locking ring clockwise on to stem.



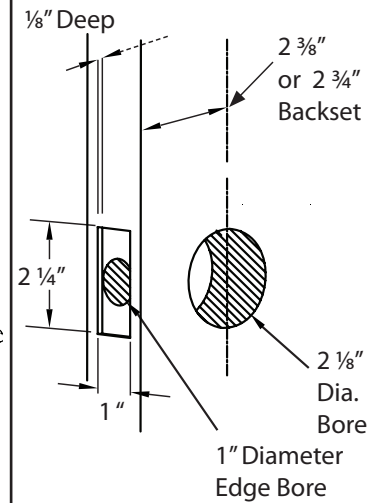
Step 2. Tighten knob set screw after placing knob on stem.

Installation Guide - For Key in Lever Lock with #8 Style Rosette

Lock Assembly

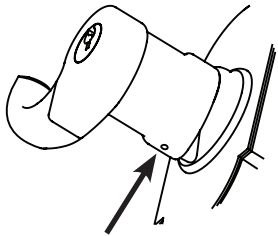


Door Prep



Re-pinning Cylinder (Optional)

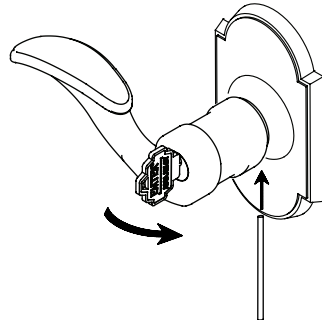
Step 1. Small hole should face down.



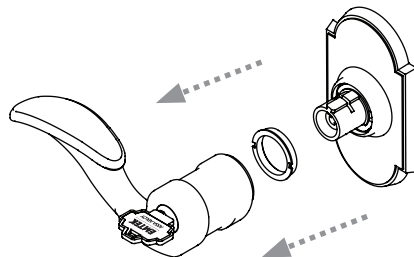
For more information on rekeying cylinder, please scan the QR code for how-to video.



Step 2. Rotate key counterclockwise 90° while pressing wire into hole.

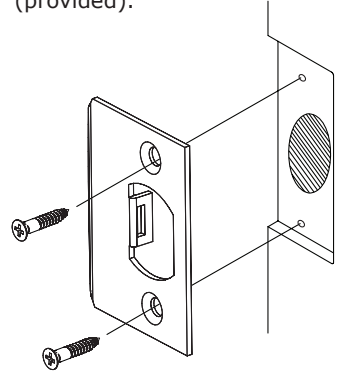


Step 3. Slide lever off stem.



1. Install Strike Plate

Fasten Strike Plate using Two #8 x 3/4" Wood Screws (provided).

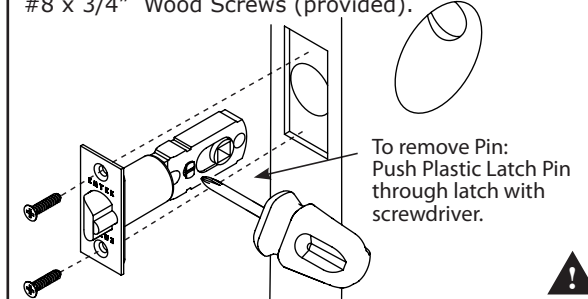


Scan this QR code for installation video

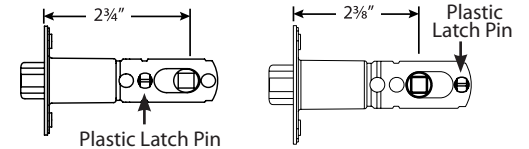


2. Install Adjustable Latch

Fasten Adjustable Latch using two #8 x 3/4" Wood Screws (provided).

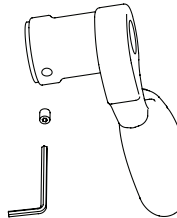


The Adjustable Latch is factory shipped with a 2 3/4" backset position. Remove pin and slide spindle hub forward for a 2 3/8" backset, then reinsert the pin in the hole at the back of the latch as shown.

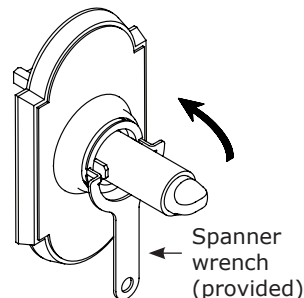


3. Remove Inside Rosette

Step 1. Remove inside lever by loosening set screw w/ hex wrench (provided).

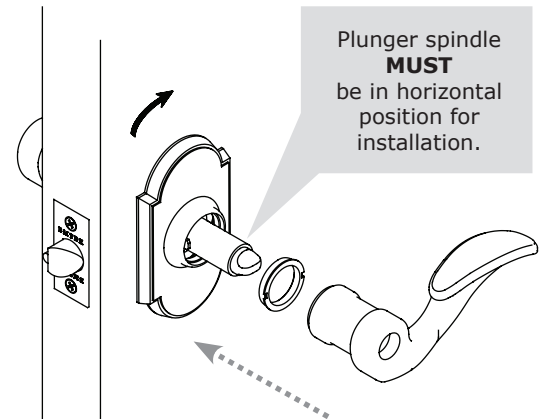


Step 2. Unthread rosette counterclockwise to remove from housing before installing on door.



4. Installing Inside Trim

Step 1. Secure inside rosette to door by threading it clockwise on to stem.



Step 2. Tighten lever set screw after placing lever on stem.



Re-Pinning Cylinder (OPTIONAL)

Regoupillage du cylindre (OPTIONNEL)

Cambio de combinación de pernos (OPCIONAL)

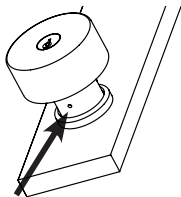
STEP 4 • ÉTAPE 4 • PASO 4

After re-pinning cylinder, insert lever/knob onto stem

Après avoir regoupillé, insérez le levier/poignée sur la tige.

Después de cambiar la combinación de pernos, inserte la Palanca/Pomo en el tallo.

STEP 1 • ÉTAPE 1 • PASO 1

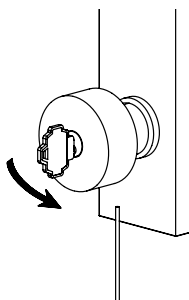


Small hole should face down.

Le petit trou doit faire face vers le bas.

Orificio pequeño debe estar hacia abajo.

STEP 2 • ÉTAPE 2 • PASO 2



Rotate key counterclockwise 90° while pressing wire into hole.

Faites tourner la clé dans le sens contraire des aiguilles d'une montre tout en enfonçant le fil dans le trou.

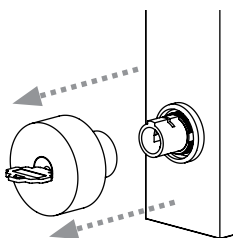
Gire la llave hacia la izquierda 90° mientras presiona el alambre en el orificio.

STEP 3 • ÉTAPE 3 • PASO 3

Slide lever/knob off stem.

Retirez le levier/poignée de la tige.

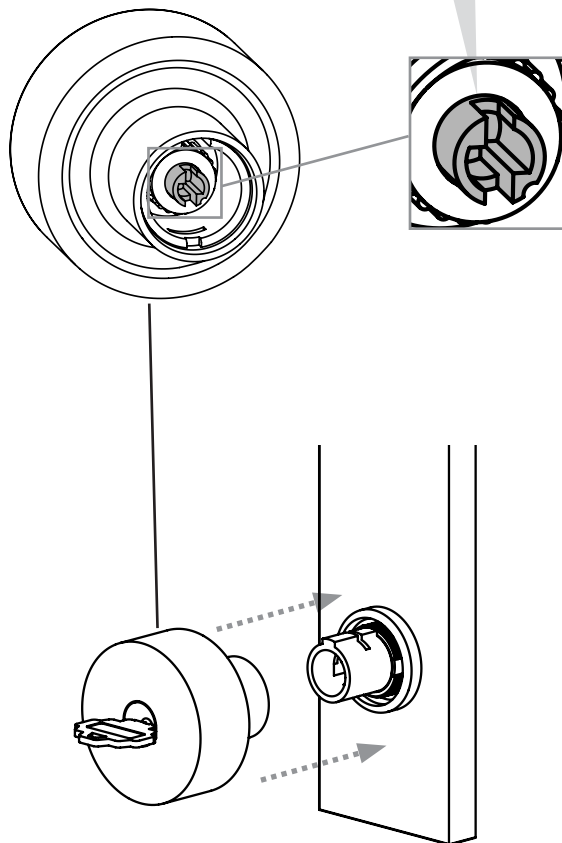
Deslice la Palanca/Pomo fuera del tallo.



Before inserting lever/knob onto stem, make sure cylinder tailpiece is vertical as shown.

Avant d'insérer le levier/poignée sur la tige, assurez-vous que l'arrière du cylindre est vertical tel qu'illustré.

Antes de insertar la palanca/pomo en el tallo, asegúrese que la parte trasera del cilindro esté vertical como se muestra.

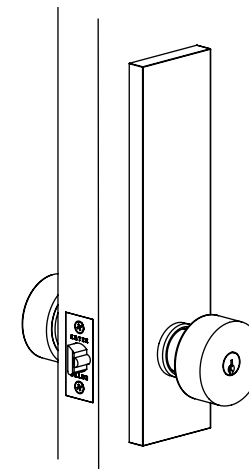


EMTEK®
ASSA ABLOY

Installation Guide

One Point Lock, Key in Knob/Lever

Guide d'installation pour serrure à clé dans le poignée/levier à un point
Guía de Instalación para Cerradura de Perilla/Pomo con llave en un punto



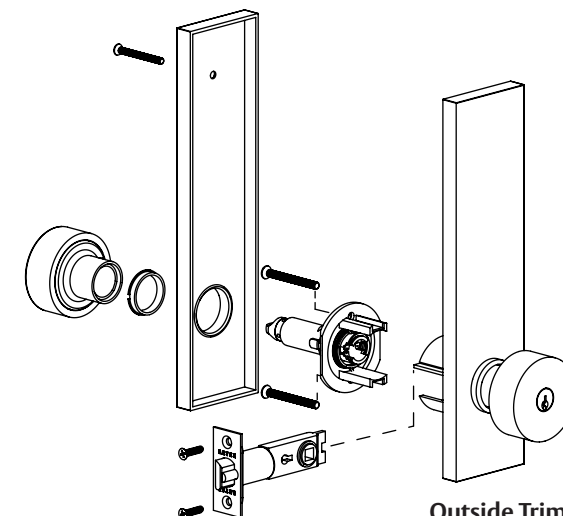
ASSA ABLOY, the global leader in door opening solutions

Lock Assembly

Assemblage de la serrure
Montaje de Cerradura

Inside Trim

Garniture Intérieure
Adorno Interior



Outside Trim

Garniture Extérieure
Adorno Exterior

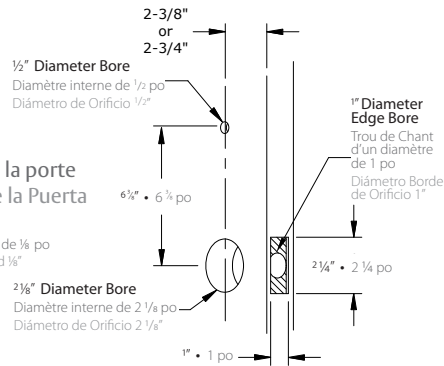
Preparation • Préparation • Preparación

Door Prep

Préparation de la porte
Preparación de la Puerta

1/8" Deep
Profondeur de 1/8 po
Profundidad 1/8"

A



Install Strike Plate

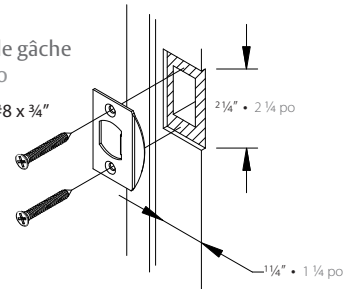
Installation de la plaque de gâche
Instale la Placa de Impacto

Fasten Strike Plate using Two #8 x 3/4" Wood Screws (provided).

Fixez la plaque de gâche à l'aide des deux vis à bois no 8 x 3/4 po (fournie).

Asegure la Placa de Impacto usando dos Tornillos para Madera #8 x 3/4" (incluidos).

B



1

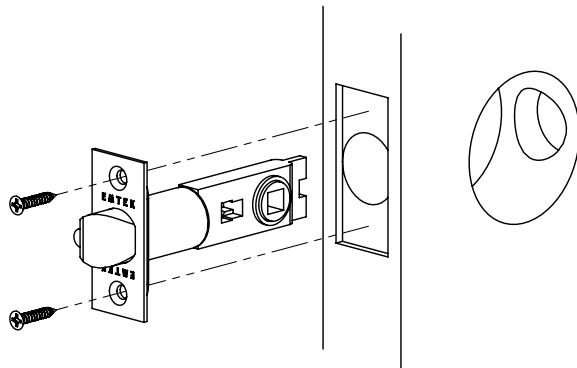
Install Latch

Installez le Pêne
Instale el Pestillo

Fasten Latch using two #8 x 3/4" Wood Screws (provided).

Fixez le Pêne à l'aide des deux vis à bois no 8 x 3/4 po (fournie).

Asegure el Pestillo usando dos tornillos para madera #8 x 3/4" (incluidos).



2

Remove Inside Trim Plate

Retirez la Garniture Intérieure
Remueva la Moldura interior

STEP 1 • ÉTAPE 1 • PASO 1

Remove inside lever/knob by loosening set screw w/ hex wrench (provided).

Desserer la vis de réglage avec la clé Allen (inclus) pour retirer le levier/poignée intérieur.

Afloje el tornillo de ajuste con la llave Allen (incluidos) para remover la palanca/pomo interior.

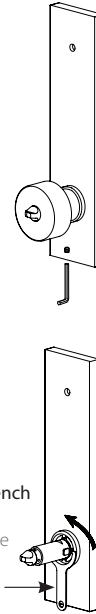
STEP 2 • ÉTAPE 2 • PASO 2

Unthread nut counterclockwise to remove from Interior Plate before installing on door.

Dévissez l'écrou de la garniture intérieure dans le sens contraire des aiguilles d'une montre pour le retirer de sa base avant de l'installer dans la porte.

Desenrosque tuerca de la Moldura Interior en sentido antihorario para removerla de su base antes de instalarla en la puerta.

Spanner wrench (provided).
Clé de serrage (fournie).
Llave de arco (incluida)



3

Install Outside Trim Plate

Installez la Garniture Extérieure
Instale la Moldura Exterior

Fasten Outside Trim Plate using two #8-32 x 1 1/2" Pan Head Machine Screws (provided).

Fixez la Garniture Extérieure à la aide des deux vis à bois à tête ronde no #8-32 x 1 1/2" (fournie).

Asegure la Moldura exterior usando dos tornillos de Cabeza Redonda #8-32 x 1 1/2" (incluidos).

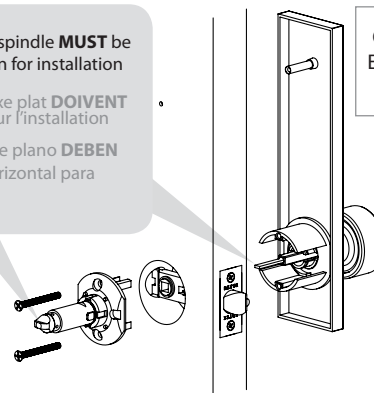
Thumbturn and flat spindle **MUST** be in horizontal position for installation

Le pêne rotatif et l'axe plat **DOIVENT** être horizontaux pour l'installation

Pestillo giratorio y eje plano **DEBEN** estar en posición horizontal para instalación.

Outside
Extérieur
Afuera

Inside
Intérieur
Adentro



4

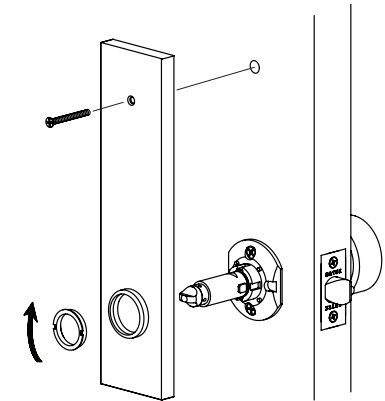
Install Inside Trim Plate

Installer la Garniture Intérieure
Instale la Moldura Interior

STEP 1 • ÉTAPE 1 • PASO 1

Screw in flat head screw and threaded nut to secure Inside Trim Plate to door

Vissez l'écrou et la vis à tête plate pour fixer la Garniture intérieure à la porte.
Enrosque la tuerca y tornillo de cabeza plana para asegurar la Moldura Interior a la puerta.

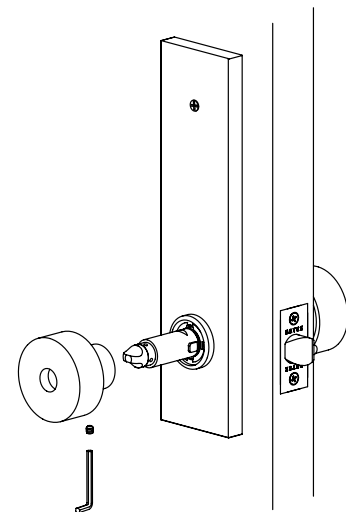


STEP 2 • ÉTAPE 2 • PASO 2

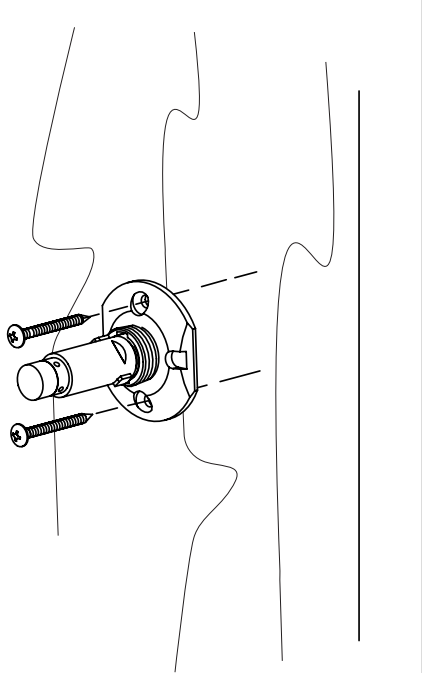
Tighten set screw after placing lever/knob on stem.

Serrer la vis de réglage après l'installation du levier/poignée.

Apriete el tornillo de ajuste después de instalar la palanca/pomo.

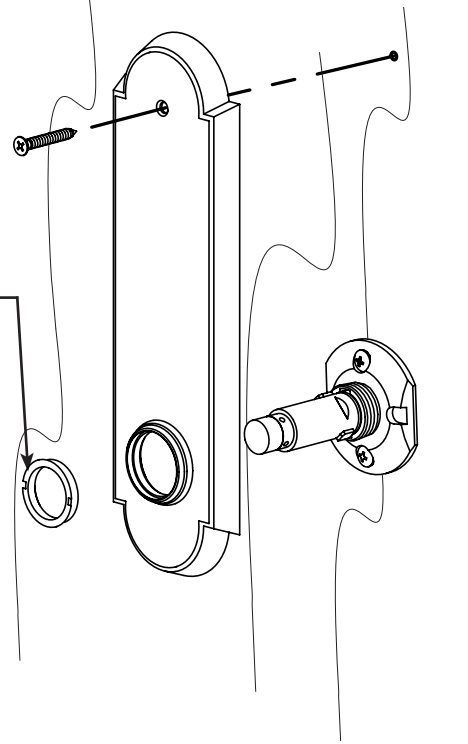


1. Install base plate



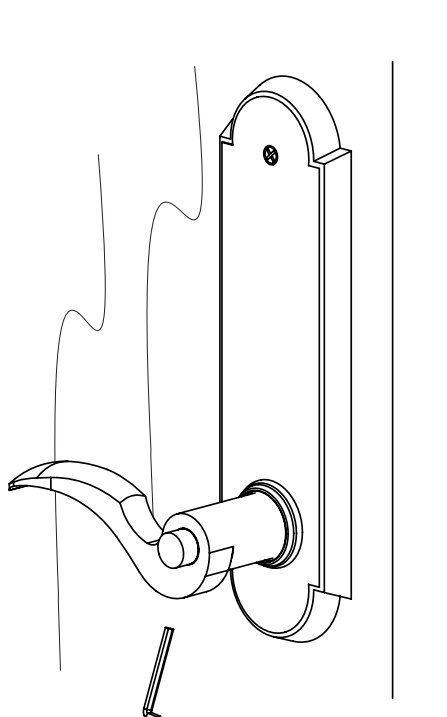
2. Install Trim Plate

Tighten rosette threaded ring with tool provided



3. Secure Handle

Plates and grips vary depending on style



After interior grip is installed, tighten set screw with hex wrench provided.

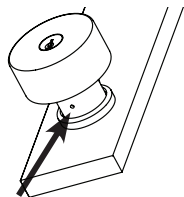


Re-Pinning Cylinder (OPTIONAL)

Regoupillage du cylindre (OPTIONNEL)

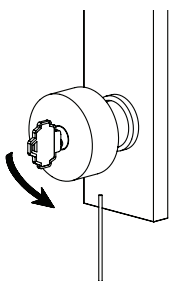
Cambio de combinación de pernos (OPCIONAL)

STEP 1 • ÉTAPE 1 • PASO 1



Small hole should face down.
Le petit trou doit faire face vers le bas.
Orificio pequeño debe estar hacia abajo.

STEP 2 • ÉTAPE 2 • PASO 2



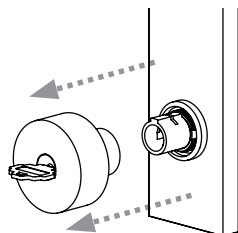
Rotate key counterclockwise 90° while pressing wire into hole.

Faites tourner la clé dans le sens contraire des aiguilles d'une montre tout en enfonçant le fil dans le trou.

Gire la llave hacia la izquierda 90° mientras presiona el alambre en el orificio.

STEP 3 • ÉTAPE 3 • PASO 3

Slide lever/knob off stem.
Retirez le levier/poignée de la tige.
Deslice la Palanca/Pomo fuera del tallo.



STEP 4 • ÉTAPE 4 • PASO 4

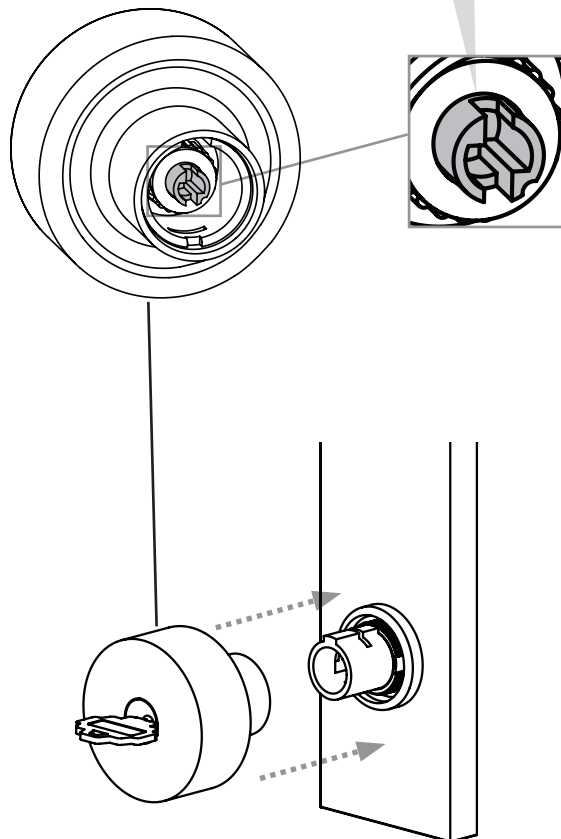
After re-pinning cylinder, insert lever/knob onto stem

Après avoir regoupillé, insérez le levier/poignée sur la tige.

Después de cambiar la combinación de pernos, inserte la Palanca/Pomo en el tallo.

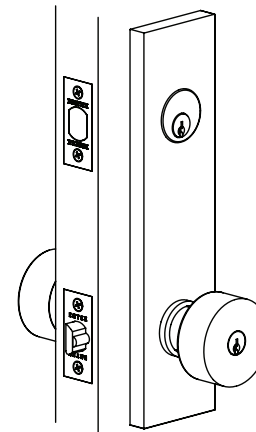
Before inserting lever/knob onto stem, make sure cylinder tailpiece is vertical as shown.

Avant d'insérer le levier/poignée sur la tige, assurez-vous que l'arrière du cylindre est vertical tel qu'illustré.
Antes de insertar la palanca/pomo en el tallo, asegúrese que la parte trasera del cilindro esté vertical como se muestra.



Installation Guide Two Point Lock, Single Cylinder

Guide d'installation - Serrure à deux points, Cylindre Simple
Guía de Instalación - Cerradura de dos puntos, Cilindro Simple



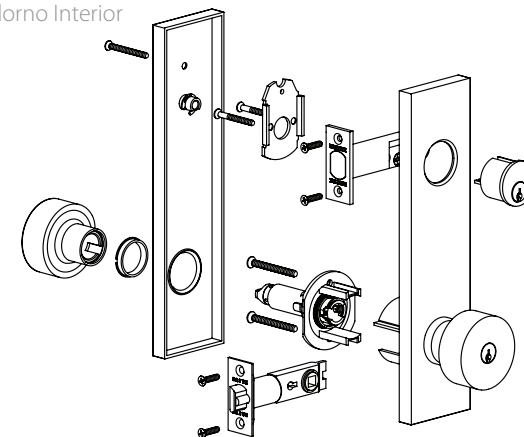
ASSA ABLOY, the global leader in door opening solutions

Lock Assembly

Assemblage de la serrure
Montaje de Cerradura

Inside Trim

Garniture Intérieure
Adorno Interior



Outside Trim

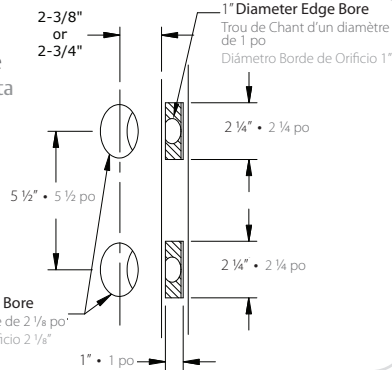
Garniture Extérieure
Adorno Exterior

Preparation • Préparation • Preparación

Door Prep

Préparation de la porte
Preparación de la Puerta

 1/8" Deep
Profondeur de 1/8 po
Profundidad 1/8"



A

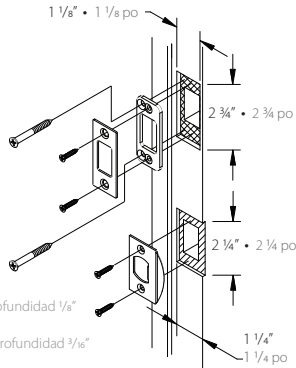
Install Strike Plates

Installez la plaque de gâche
Instale las Placas de Impacto

Fasten Strike Plate using
Wood Screws (provided).

Fixez la plaque de gâche à
l'aide de vis à bois (fournies)

Asegure la Placa de Impacto usando
los Tornillos para Madera (incluidos).



B

1

Install Bolt and Latch

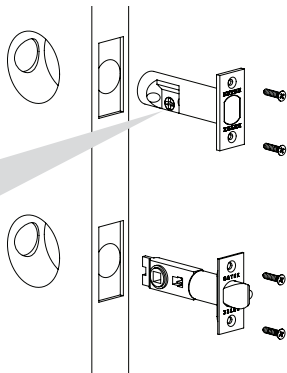
Installez le Boulon et le Loquet
Instale el Pestillo y Cerrojo de pasador

Fasten Bolt and Latch using #8 x 3/4" Wood Screws (provided).

Fixez le boulon et le pêne à l'aide des deux vis à bois no 8 x 3/4 po (fournie).

Asegure el Pestillo y Cerrojo de pasador usando tornillos para madera #8 x 3/4" (incluidos).

Cross-hairs on bottom
Réticule en bas
Cruz hacia abajo



2

Remove Inside Trim Plate

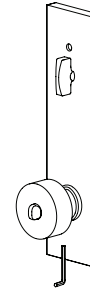
Retirez la Garniture Intérieure
Remueva la Moldura interior

STEP 1 • ÉTAPE 1 • PASO 1

Remove inside lever/knob by loosening set
screw w/ hex wrench (provided).

Desserrez la vis de réglage avec la clé Allen (inclus)
pour retirer le levier/poignée intérieur.

Afloje el tornillo de ajuste con la llave Allen
(incluidos) para remover la palanca/pomo interior.



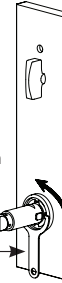
STEP 2 • ÉTAPE 2 • PASO 2

Unthread nut counterclockwise to
remove from Interior Plate before
installing on door.

Dévissez l'écrou de la garniture intérieure
dans le sens contraire des aiguilles d'une
montre pour le retirer de sa base avant de
l'installer dans la porte.

Desenrosque tuerca de la moldura interior
en sentido antihorario para removerla de
su base antes de instalarla en la puerta.

Spanner wrench
(provided).
Clé de serrage
(fournie).
Llave de arco
(Incluida)



3

Install Outside Trim Plate

Installez la Garniture Extérieure
Instale la Moldura Exterior

Fasten Outside Trim Plate using two #8-32 x 1 1/2" Pan
Head Machine Screws (provided).

Fixez la Garniture Extérieure à l'aide des deux vis à bois à tête
ronde no #8-32 x 1 1/2" (fournie).

Asegure la Moldura exterior usando dos tornillos de Cabeza
Redonda #8-32 x 1 1/2" (incluidos).

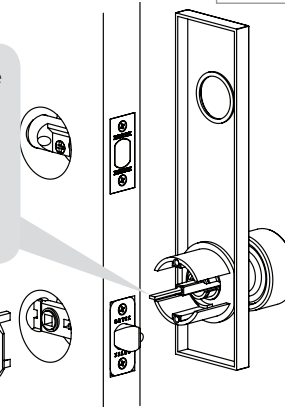
Outside
Extérieur
Afuera

Thumbturn and flat spindle **MUST** be
in horizontal position for installation

Le pêne rotatif et l'axe plat **DOIVENT**
être horizontaux pour l'installation

Pestillo giratorio y eje plano **DEBEN**
estar en posición horizontal para
instalación.

Inside
Intérieur
Adentro



4

Install Inside Trim Plate

Installer la Garniture Intérieure
Instale la Moldura Interior

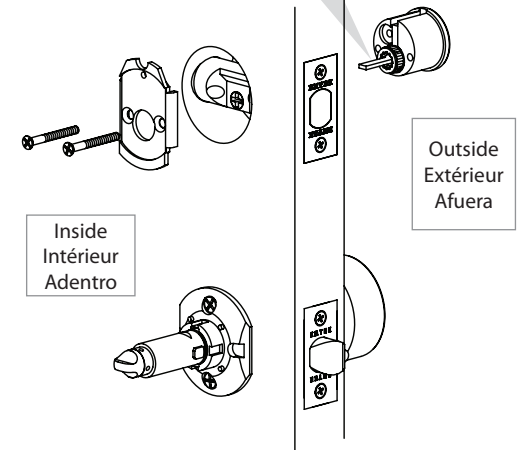
STEP 1 • ÉTAPE 1 • PASO 1

Install deadbolt using flat head screws

Installez le boulon à l'aide des vis à tête plate.

Instale el cerrojo usando los tornillos de cabeza plana

Tail piece Horizontal
Queue de pêne horizontale
Eje trasero horizontal



STEP 2 • ÉTAPE 2 • PASO 2

After interior grip is installed, tighten set screw with hex
wrench (provided)

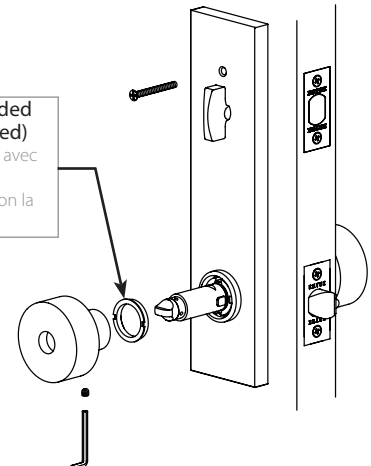
Après la poignée intérieure est installée, serrer la vis avec la clé hexagonale
fournie.

Después que la empuñadura interior sea instalada, apriete el tornillo de
ajuste con la llave hexagonal suministrada.

Tighten rosette threaded
ring with tool (provided)

Serrez la rosette nervurée avec
l'outil fourni

Ajuste la roseta roscada con la
herramienta suministrada



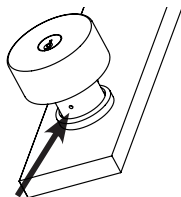


Re-Pinning Cylinder (OPTIONAL)

Regroupillage du cylindre (OPTIONNEL)

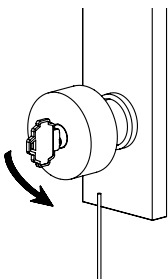
Cambio de combinación de pernos (OPCIONAL)

STEP 1 • ÉTAPE 1 • PASO 1



Small hole should face down.
Le petit trou doit faire face vers le bas.
Orificio pequeño debe estar hacia abajo.

STEP 2 • ÉTAPE 2 • PASO 2



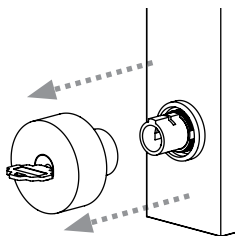
Rotate key counterclockwise 90° while pressing wire into hole.

Faites tourner la clé dans le sens contraire des aiguilles d'une montre tout en enfonçant le fil dans le trou.

Gire la llave hacia la izquierda 90° mientras presiona el alambre en el orificio.

STEP 3 • ÉTAPE 3 • PASO 3

Slide lever/knob off stem.
Retirez le levier/poignée de la tige.
Deslice la Palanca/Pomo fuera del tallo.



STEP 4 • ÉTAPE 4 • PASO 4

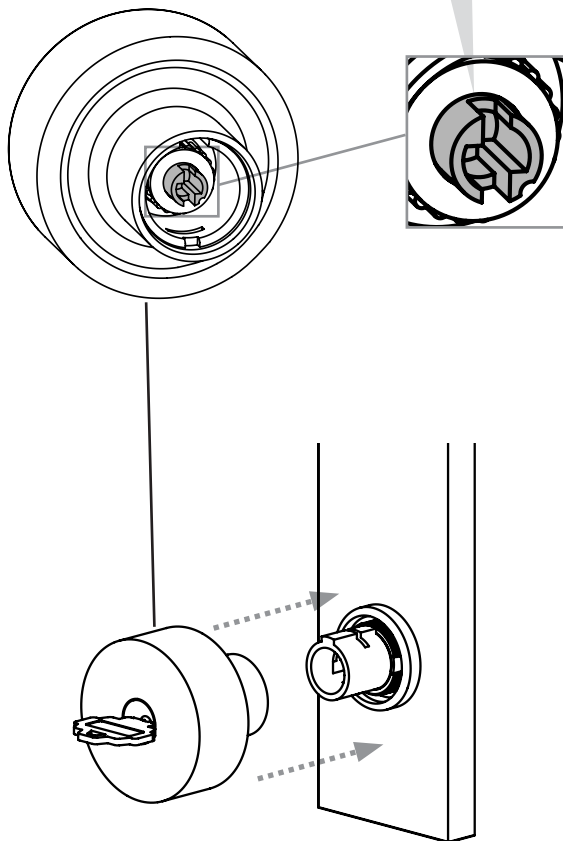
After re-pinning cylinder, insert lever/knob onto stem

Après avoir regroupillé, insérez le levier/poignée sur la tige.

Después de cambiar la combinación de pernos, inserte la Palanca/Pomo en el tallo.

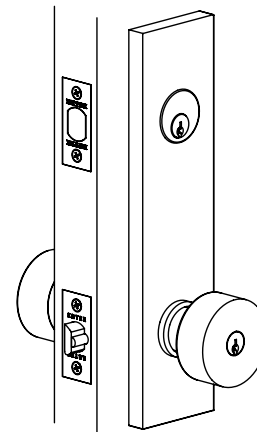
Before inserting lever/knob onto stem, make sure cylinder tailpiece is vertical as shown.

Avant d'insérer le levier/poignée sur la tige, assurez-vous que l'arrière du cylindre est vertical tel qu'illustré.
Antes de insertar la palanca/pomo en el tallo, asegúrese que la parte trasera del cilindro esté vertical como se muestra.



Installation Guide Two Point Lock, Double Cylinder

Guide d'installation - Serrure à deux points, Cylindre Double
Guía de Instalación - Cerradura de dos puntos, Cilindro Doble



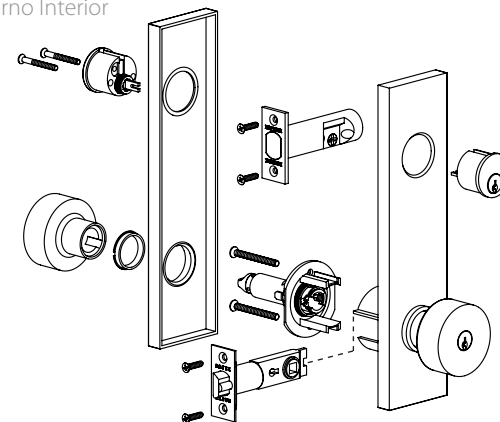
ASSA ABLOY, the global leader in door opening solutions

Lock Assembly

Assemblage de la serrure
Montaje de Cerradura

Inside Trim

Garniture Intérieure
Adorno Interior



Outside Trim

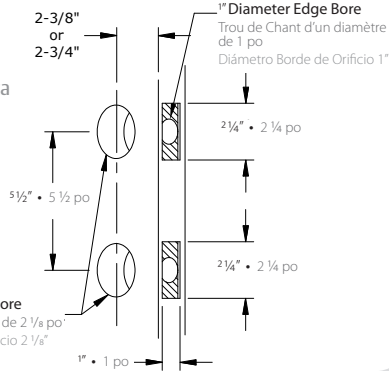
Garniture Extérieure
Adorno Exterior

Preparation • Préparation • Preparación

Door Prep

Préparation de la porte
Preparación de la Puerta

 1/8" Deep
Profondeur de 1/8 po
Profundidad 1/8"



A

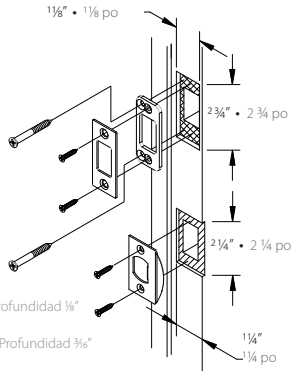
Install Strike Plates

Installez la plaque de gâche
Instale las Placas de Impacto

Fasten Strike Plate using
Wood Screws (provided).

Fixez la plaque plaque de gâche à
l'aide de vis à bois (fournies)

Asegure la Placa de Impacto usando
los Tornillos para Madera (incluidos).



B

 1/8" Deep • Profondeur de 1/8 po • Profundidad 1/8"

 3/8" Deep • Profondeur de 3/8 po • Profundidad 3/8"

1

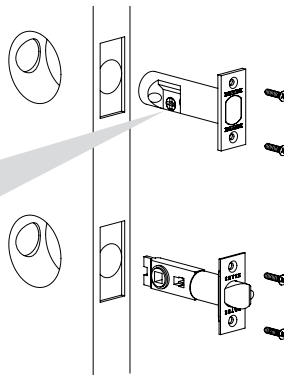
Install Bolt and Latch

Installez le Boulon et le Loquet
Instale el Pestillo y Cerrojo de pasador

Fasten Bolt and Latch using #8 x 3/4" Wood Screws (provided).

Fixez le boulon et le pêne à l'aide des deux vis à bois no 8 x 3/4 po (fournie).
Asegure el Pestillo y Cerrojo de pasador usando tornillos para madera #8 x 3/4" (incluidos).

Cross-hairs on bottom
Réticule en bas
Cruz hacia abajo



2

Remove Inside Trim Plate

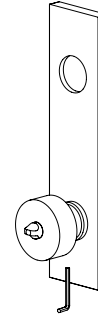
Retirez la Garniture Intérieure
Remueva la Moldura interior

STEP 1 • ÉTAPE 1 • PASO 1

Remove inside lever/knob by loosening set
screw w/ hex wrench (provided).

Desserrez la vis de réglage avec la clé Allen (inclus)
pour retirer le levier/poignée intérieur.

Afloje el tornillo de ajuste con la llave Allen
(incluidos) para remover la palanca/pomo interior.



STEP 2 • ÉTAPE 2 • PASO 2

Unthread nut counterclockwise to
remove from Interior Plate before
installing on door.

Dévissez l'écrou de la garniture intérieure
dans le sens contraire des aiguilles d'une
montre pour le retirer de sa base avant de
l'installer dans la porte.

Desenrosque tuerca de la Moldura Interior
en sentido antihorario para removerla de
su base antes de instalarla en la puerta.

Spanner wrench
(provided).
Clé de serrage
(fournie).
Llave de arco
(Incluida)



3

Install Outside Trim Plate

Installez la Garniture Extérieure
Instale la Moldura Exterior

Fasten Outside Trim Plate using two #8-32 x 1 1/2" Pan
Head Machine Screws (provided).

Fixez la Garniture Extérieure à la aide des deux vis à bois à tête
ronde no #8-32 x 1 1/2" (fournie).

Asegure la Moldura exterior usando dos tornillos de Cabeza
Redonda #8-32 x 1 1/2" (incluidos).

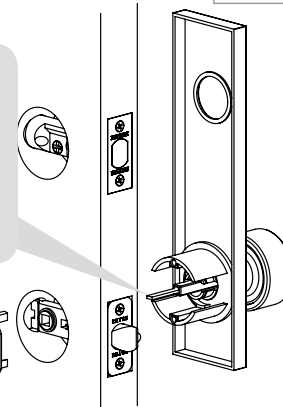
Outside
Extérieur
Afuera

Thumbturn and flat spindle **MUST** be
in horizontal position for installation

Le pêne rotatif et l'axe plat **DOIVENT**
être horizontaux pour l'installation

Pestillo giratorio y eje plano **DEBEN**
estar en posición horizontal para
instalación.

Inside
Intérieur
Adentro



4

Install Inside Trim Plate

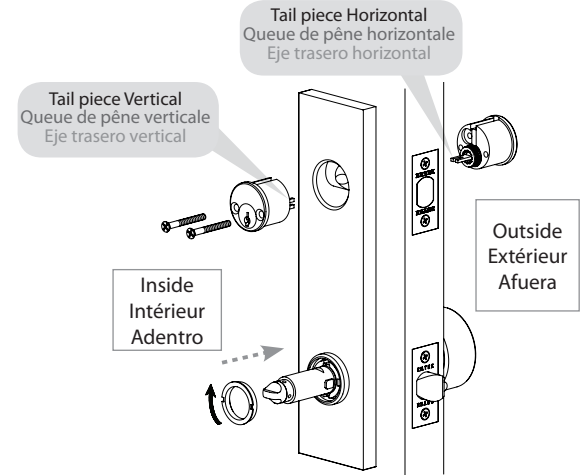
Installer la Garniture Intérieure
Instale la Moldura Interior

STEP 1 • ÉTAPE 1 • PASO 1

Install interior and exterior deadbolt using flat head screws and
mount threaded nut clockwise to secure Inside Trim Plate to door.

Installez le boulon interne et externe à l'aide des vis à tête plate et visser l'écrou
dans le sens des aiguilles d'une montre pour sécuriser la garnitures intérieure
de la porte.

Instale el cerrojo interior y exterior usando los tornillos de cabeza plana y
enrosque la tuerca en sentido horario para asegurar la Moldura Interior a la
puerta.

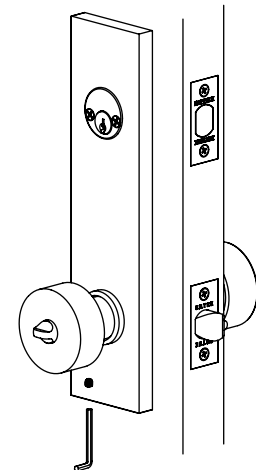


STEP 2 • ÉTAPE 2 • PASO 2

Tighten set screw after placing lever/knob on stem.

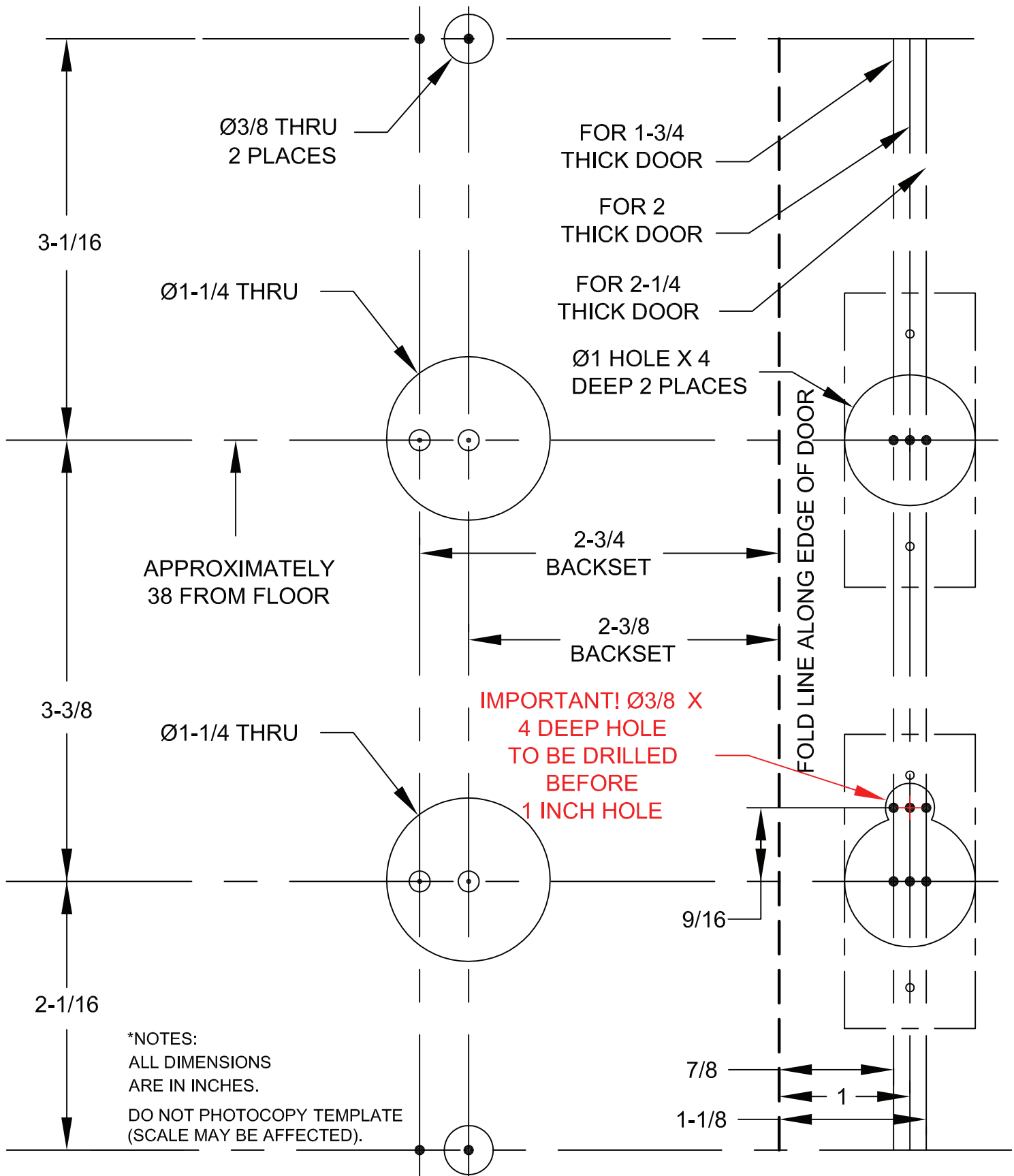
Serrez la vis de réglage après l'installation du levier/poignée.

Apriete el tornillo de ajuste después de instalar la palanca/pomo.



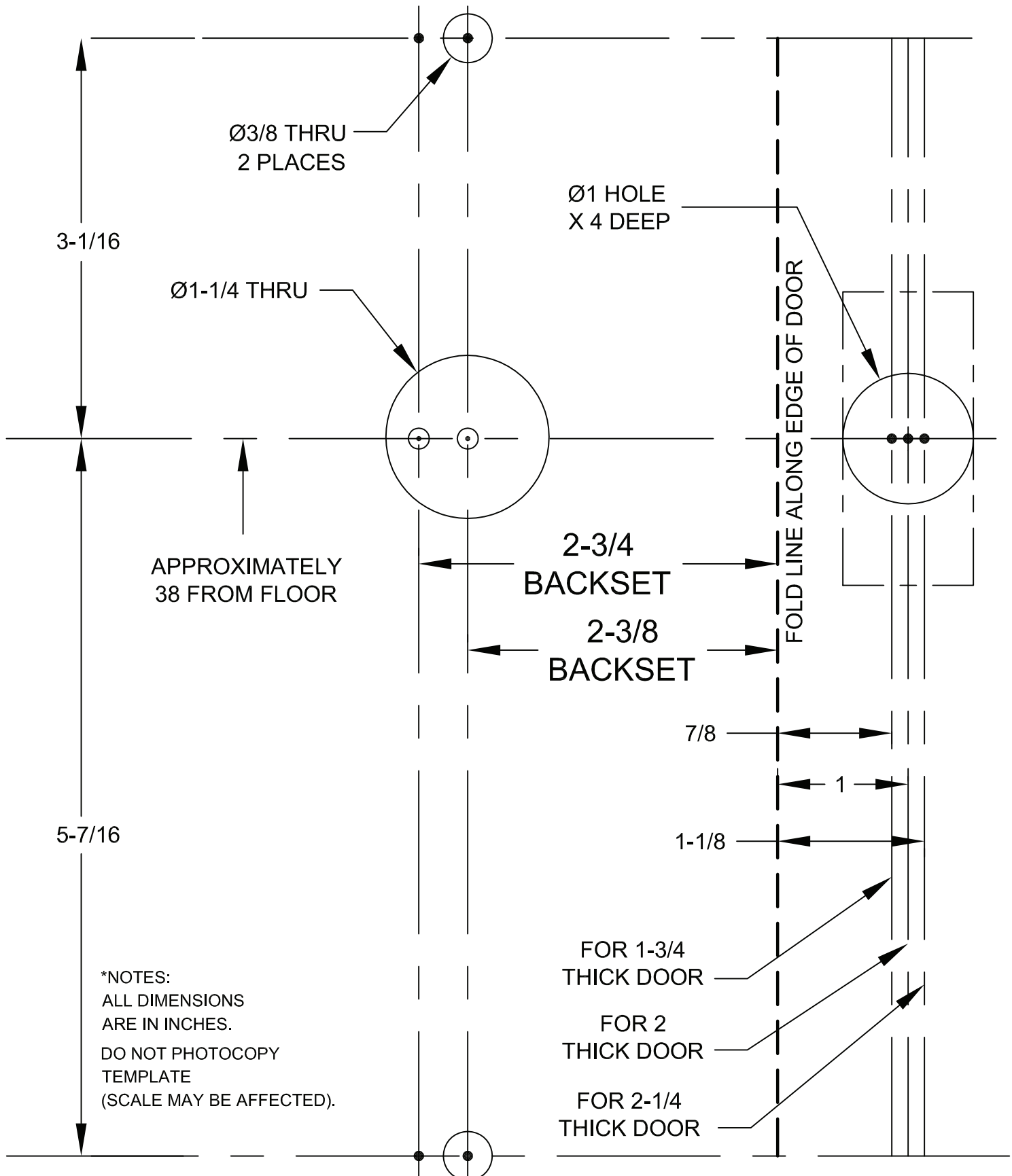
NARROW STYLE KEYED SIDEPLATE HOLE PREPARATION (LEFT HAND)*

EMTEK®
ASSA ABLOY

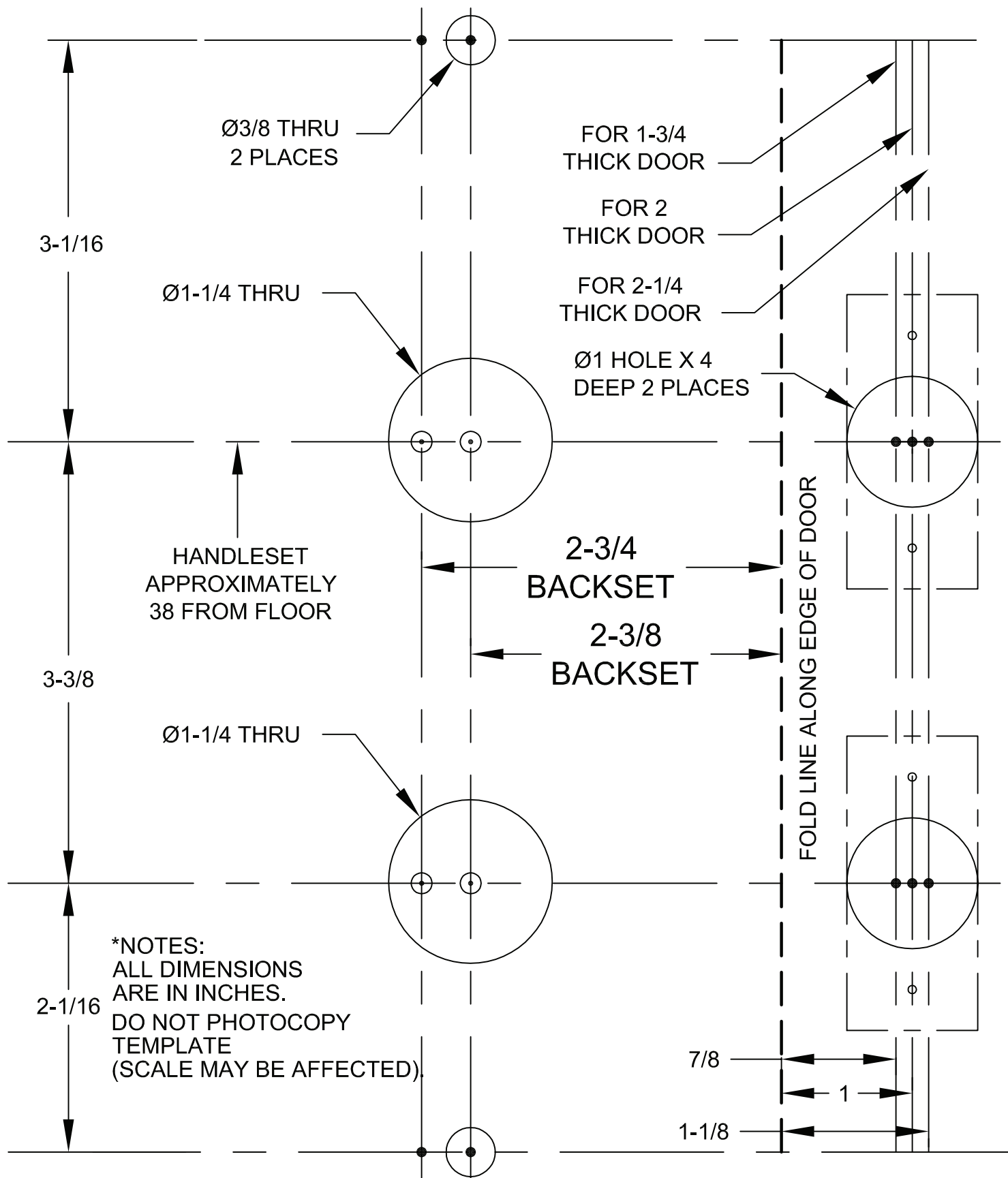


NARROW STYLE NON-KEYED SIDEPLATE HOLE PREPARATION (LEFT HAND)*

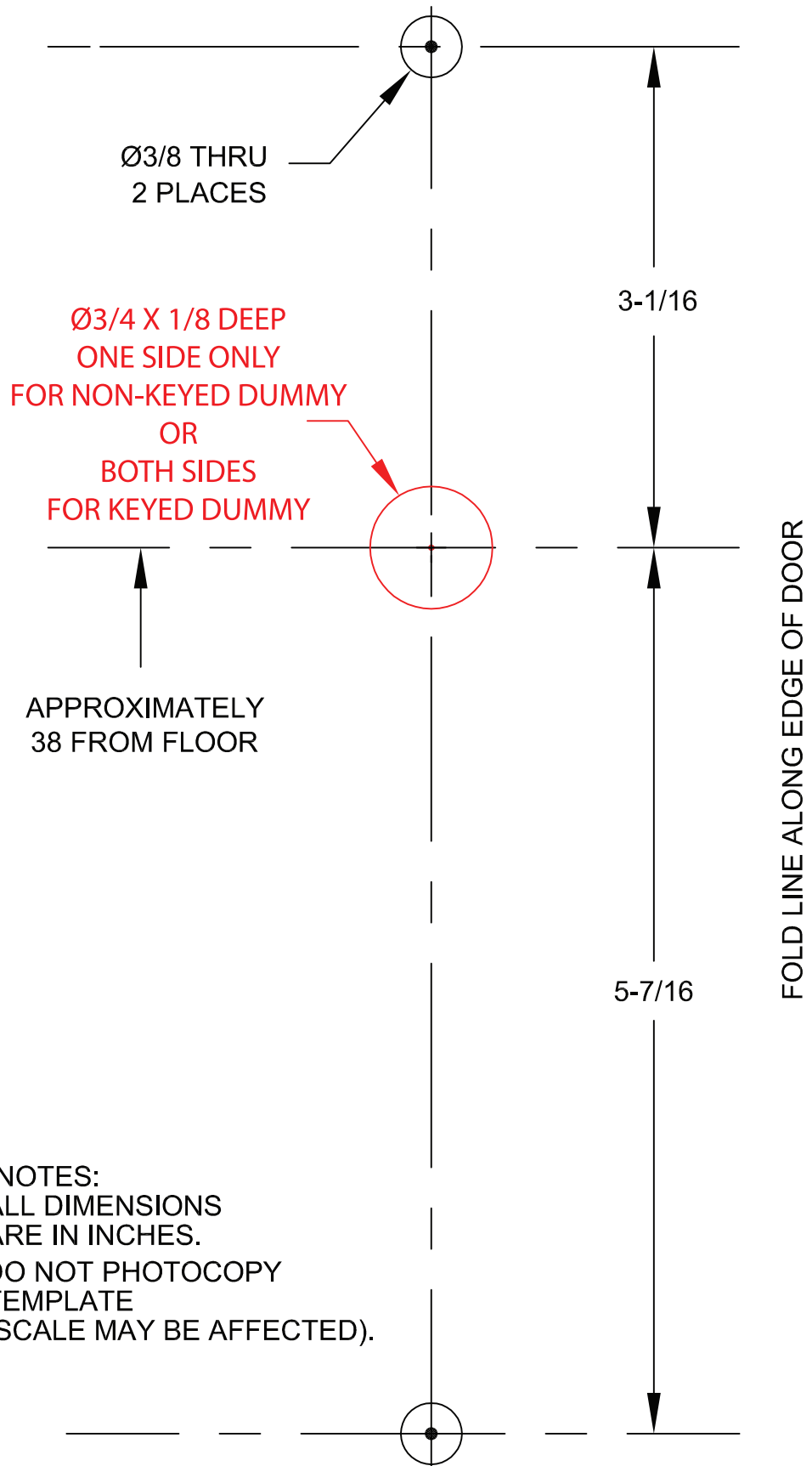
EMTEK®
ASSA ABLOY



NARROW STYLE THUMBTURN PRIVACY SIDEPLATE HOLE PREPARATION (LEFT HAND)*

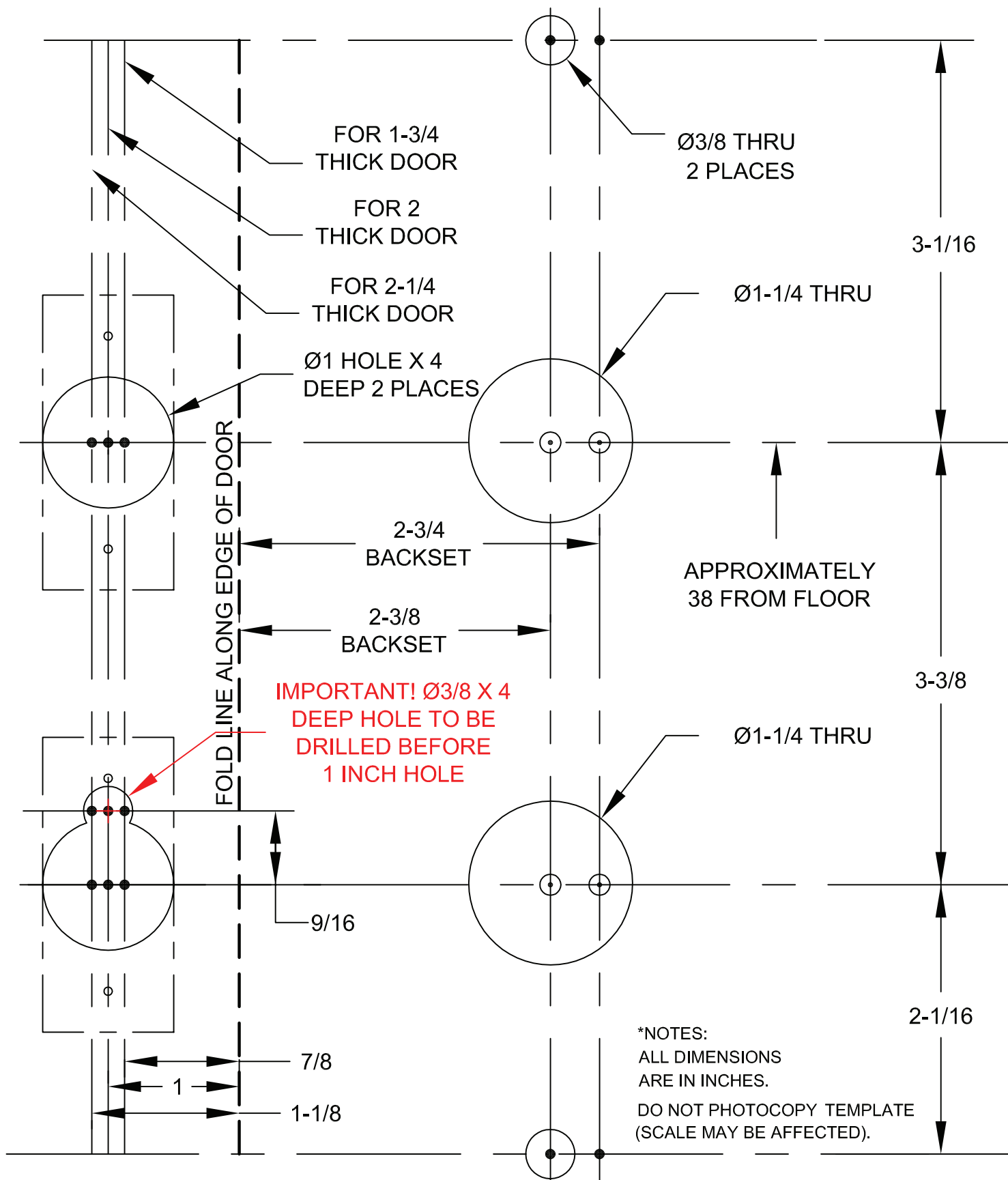


NARROW STYLE NON-KEYED DUMMY SIDEPLATE HOLE PREPARATION (LEFT HAND)*

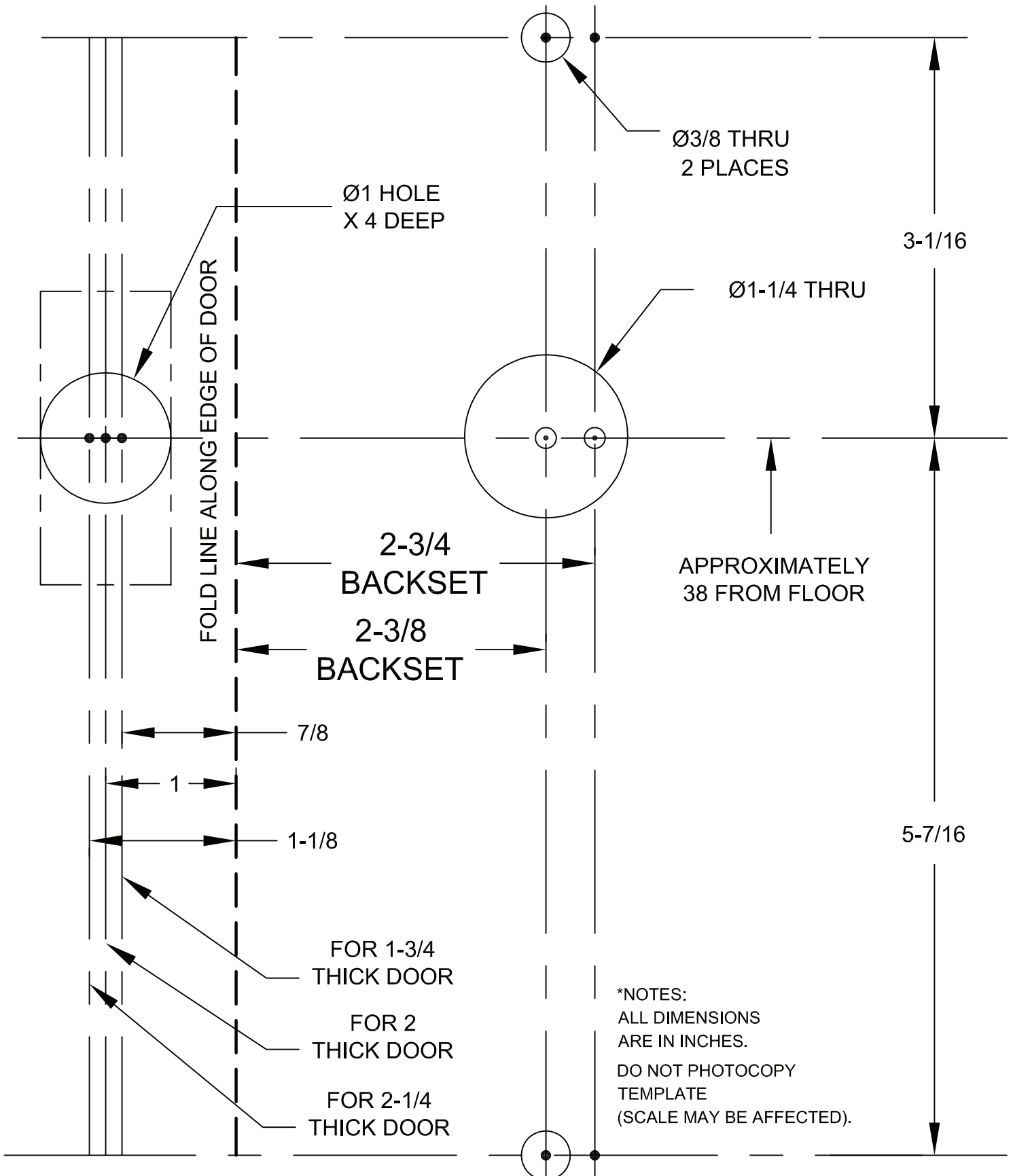


*NOTES:
ALL DIMENSIONS
ARE IN INCHES.
DO NOT PHOTOCOPY
TEMPLATE
(SCALE MAY BE AFFECTED).

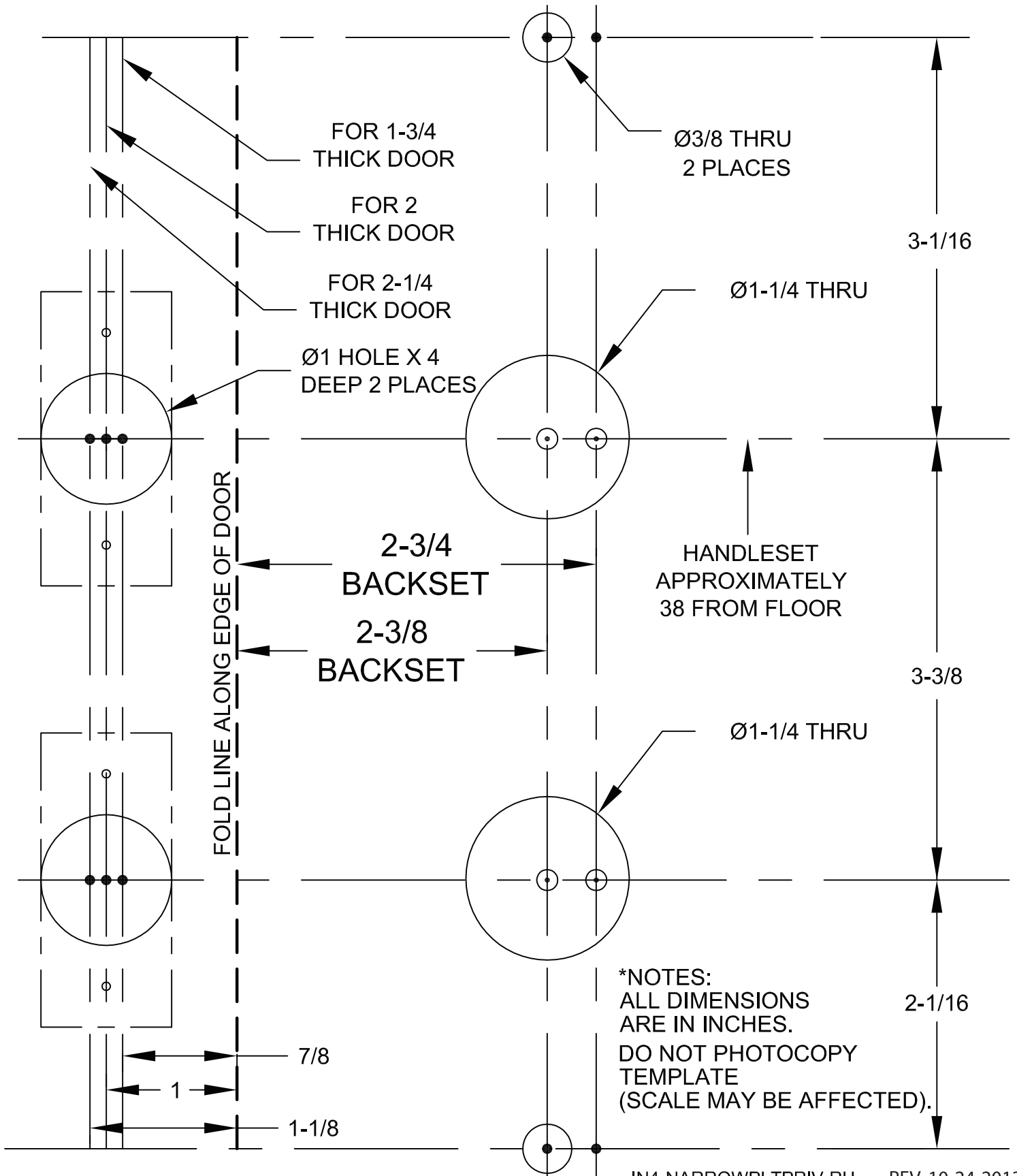
NARROW STYLE KEYED SIDEPLATE HOLE PREPARATION (RIGHT HAND)*



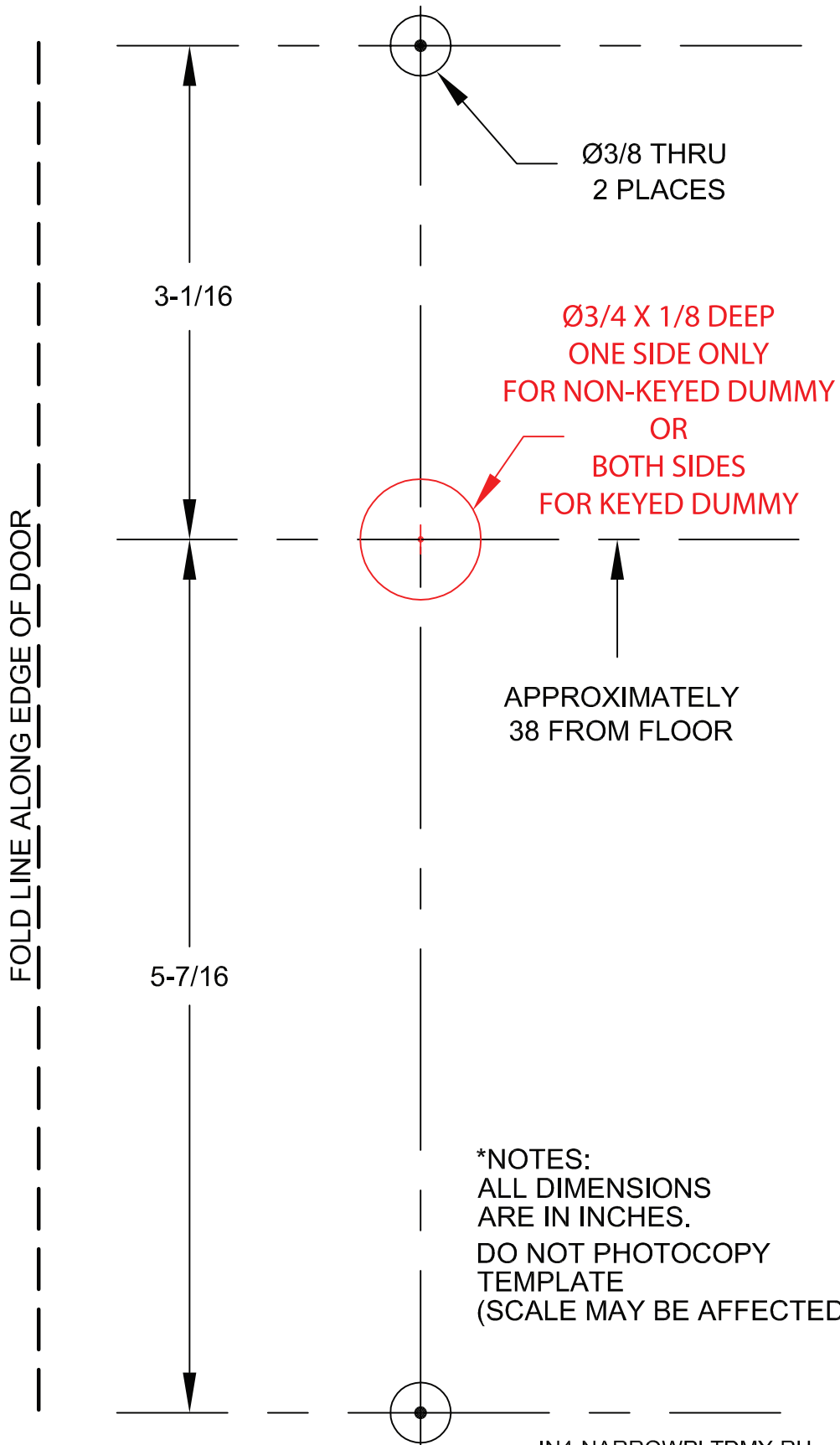
NARROW STYLE NON-KEYED SIDEPLATE HOLE PREPARATION (RIGHT HAND)*



NARROW STYLE THUMBTURN PRIVACY SIDEPLATE HOLE PREPARATION (RIGHT HAND)*

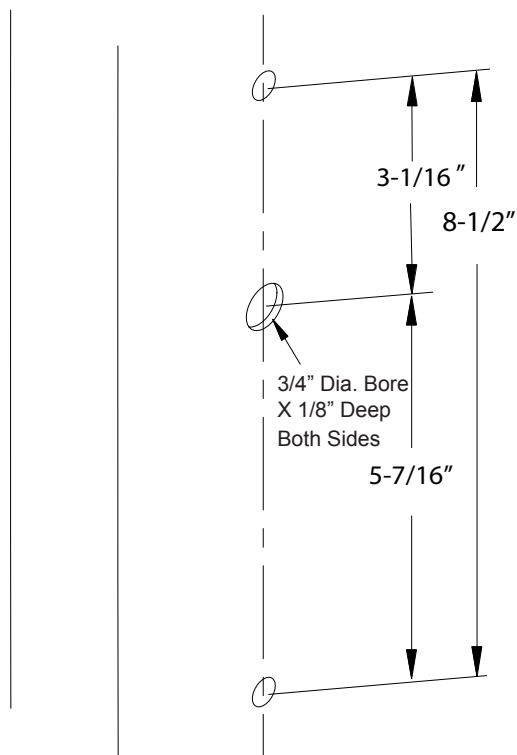


NARROW STYLE NON-KEYED DUMMY SIDEPLATE HOLE PREPARATION (RIGHT HAND)*



Installation Guide - Narrow Style Dummy Sideplates (Pair)

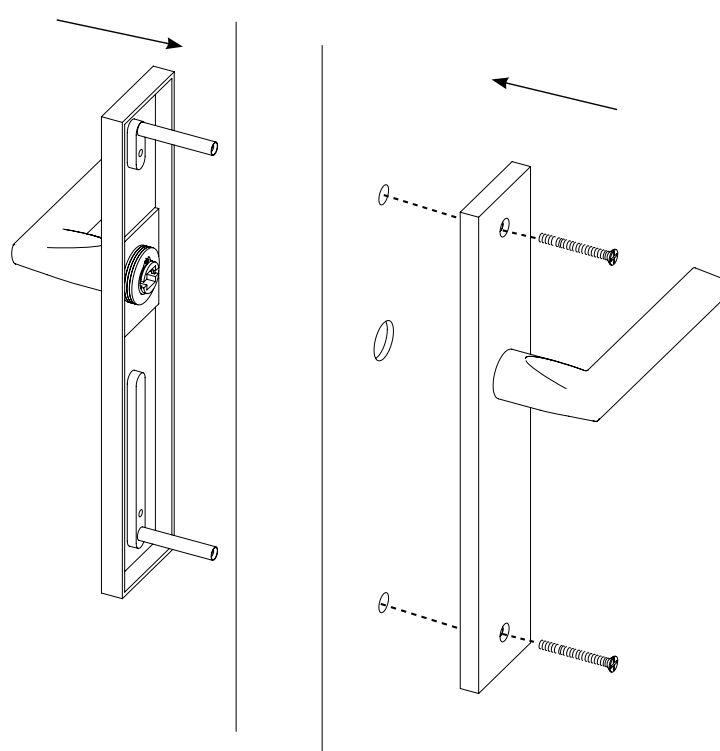
1. Door Prep For Pair Dummy



See template for door prep specifications.

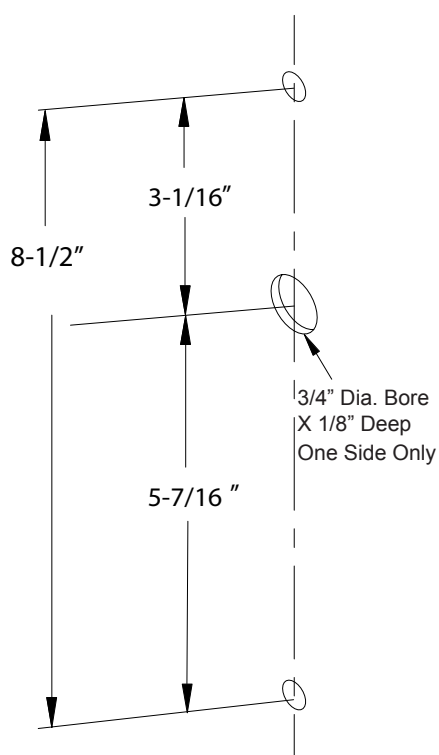
2. Pair Dummy Installation

Step 1. Position trim through the bore holes and tighten with #8 machine screws (provided).



Installation Guide - Narrow Style Dummy Sideplate (Single Sided)

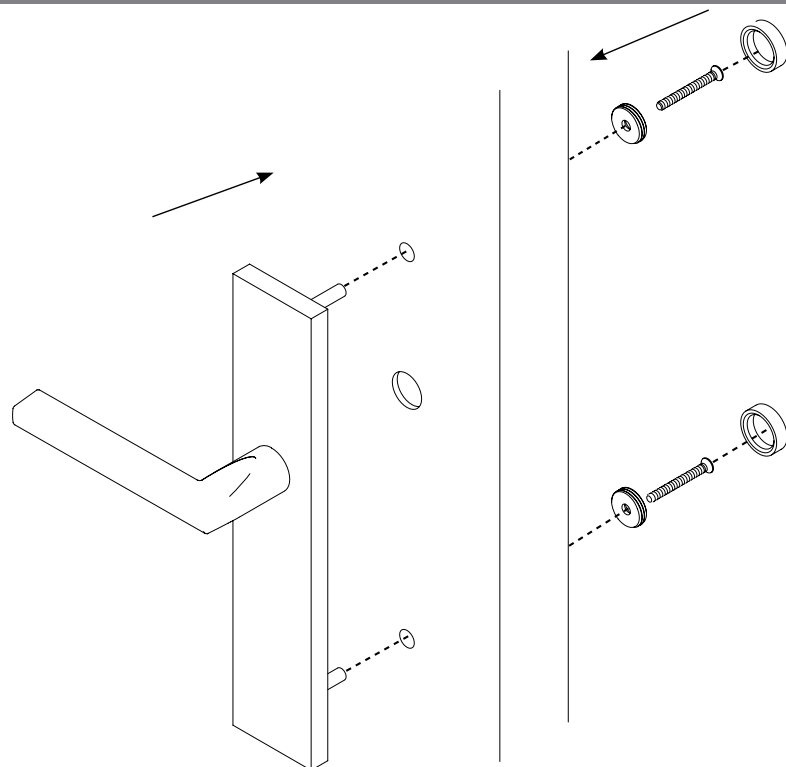
1. Door Prep For Single Sided Dummy



See template for door prep specifications.

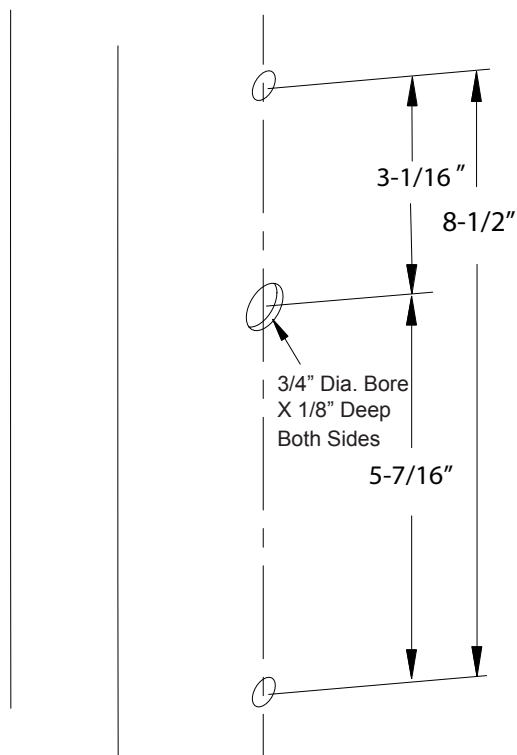
2. Single Sided Dummy Installation

Step 1. Position trim through the bore holes and tighten with #8 machine screws (provided).



Installation Guide - Narrow Style Dummy Sideplates (Pair)

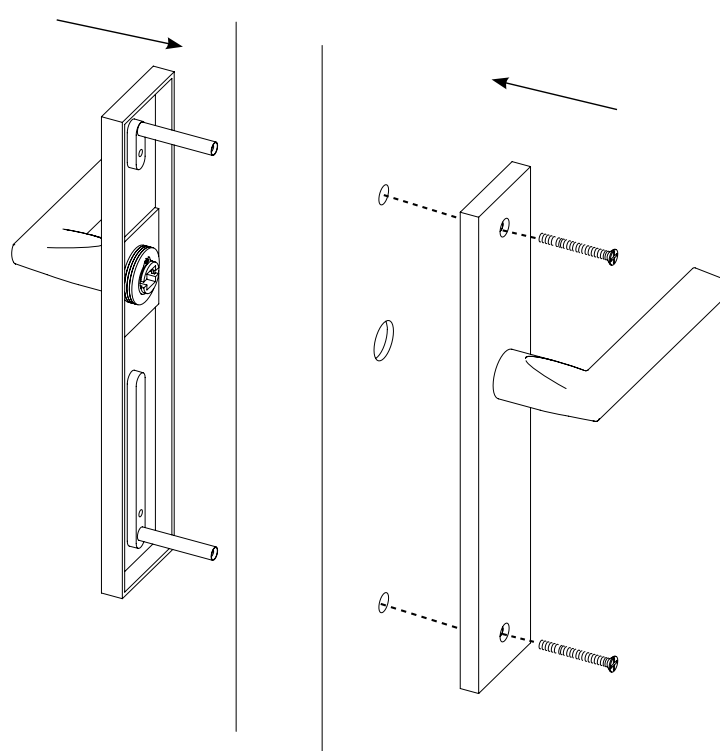
1. Door Prep For Pair Dummy



See template for door prep specifications.

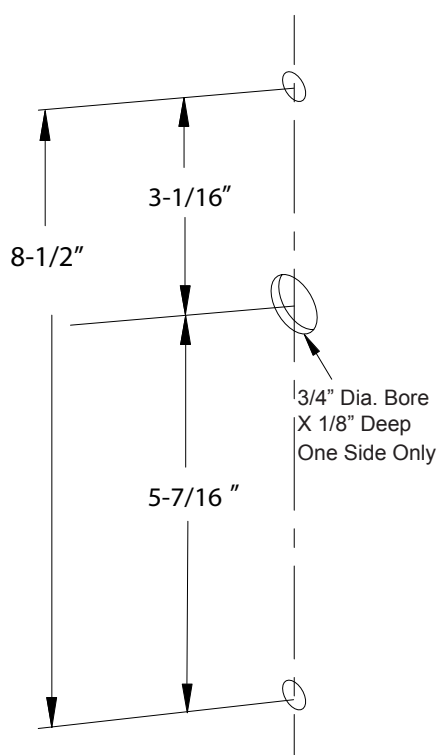
2. Pair Dummy Installation

Step 1. Position trim through the bore holes and tighten with #8 machine screws (provided).



Installation Guide - Narrow Style Dummy Sideplate (Single Sided)

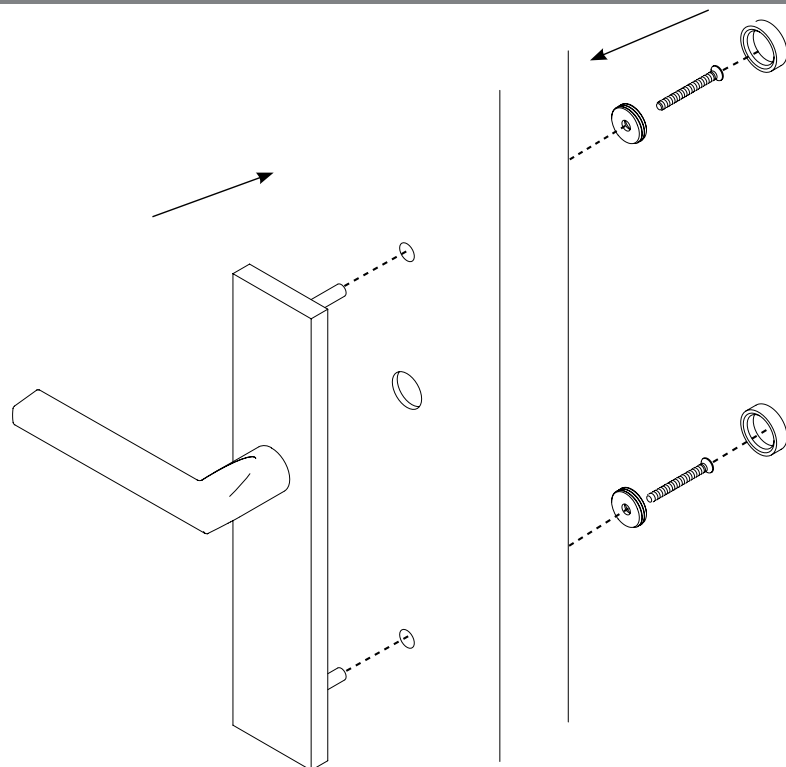
1. Door Prep For Single Sided Dummy



See template for door prep specifications.

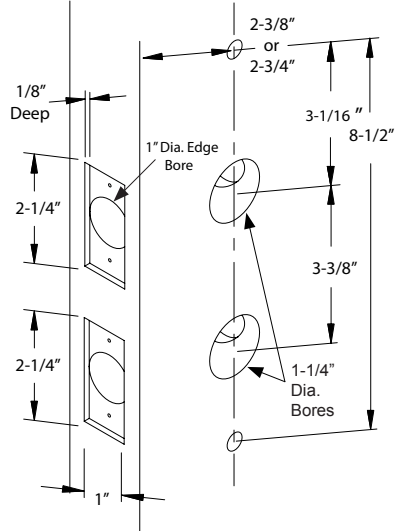
2. Single Sided Dummy Installation

Step 1. Position trim through the bore holes and tighten with #8 machine screws (provided).



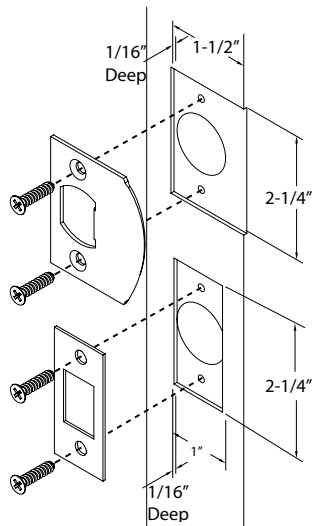
Installation Guide - Narrow Style Thumbturn Privacy Sideplates

1. Door Prep

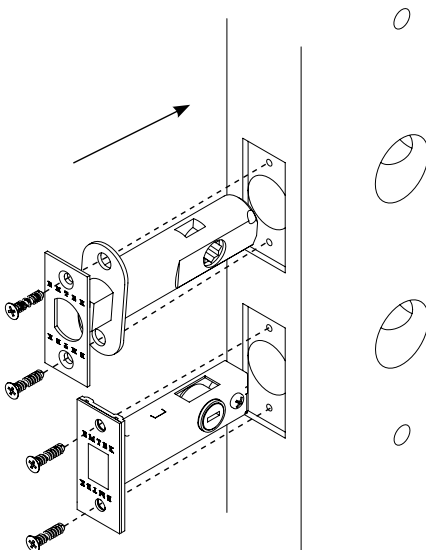


See template for door prep specifications.

2. Door Jamb Prep

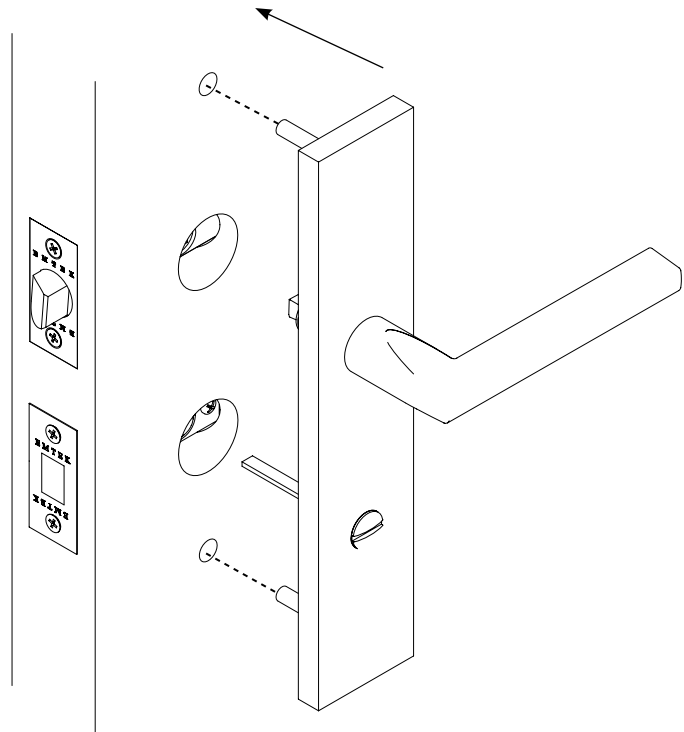


3. Install Latch & Dead Bolt



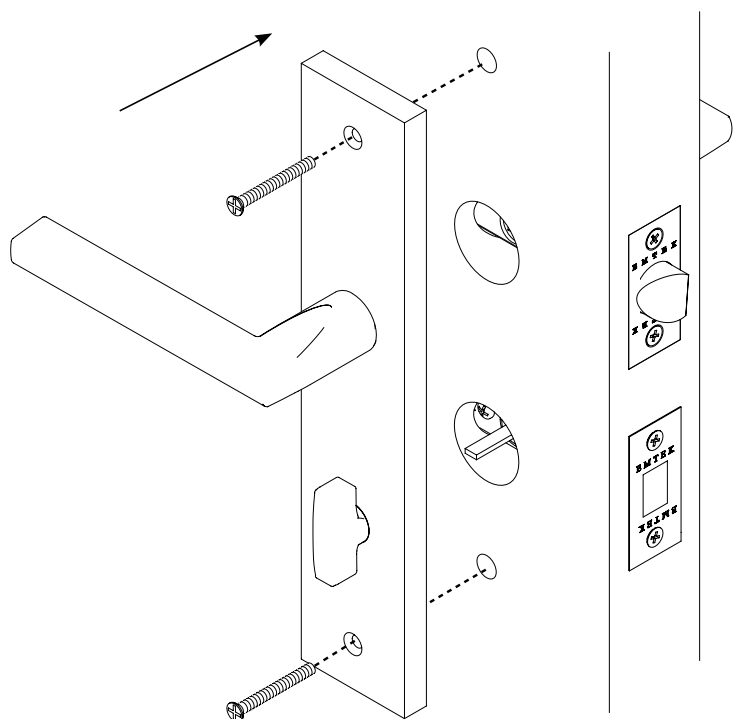
4. Outside Installation.

Step 1. Position the outside trim through the bore hole.



5. Inside Installation

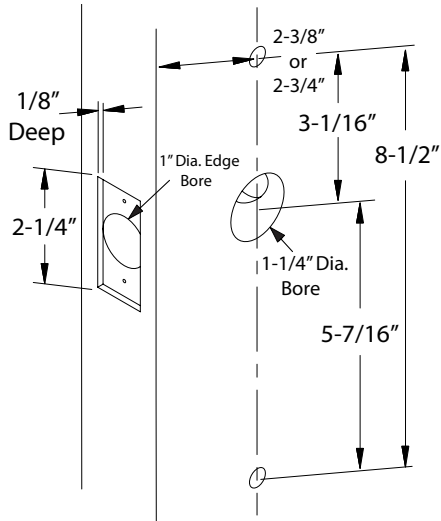
Step 2. Fasten Inside Trim using two #8 machine screws (provided).



Installation Guide - Narrow Style Non-Keyed Sideplates

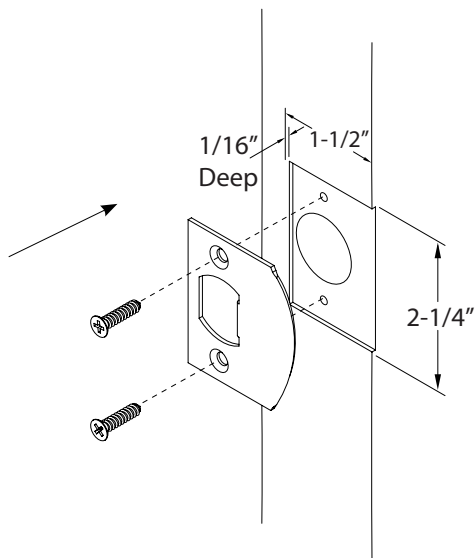
EMTEK
ASSA ABLOY

1. Door Prep

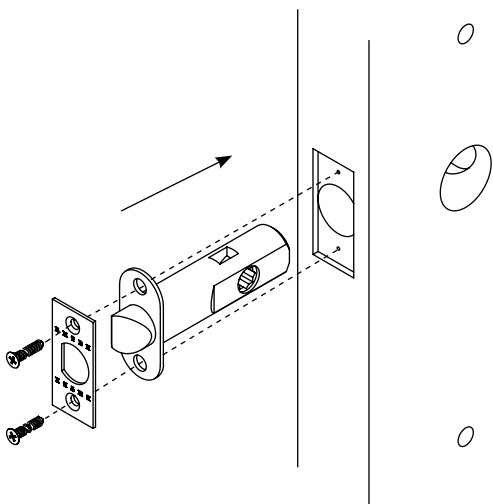


See template for door prep specifications.

2. Door Jamb Prep

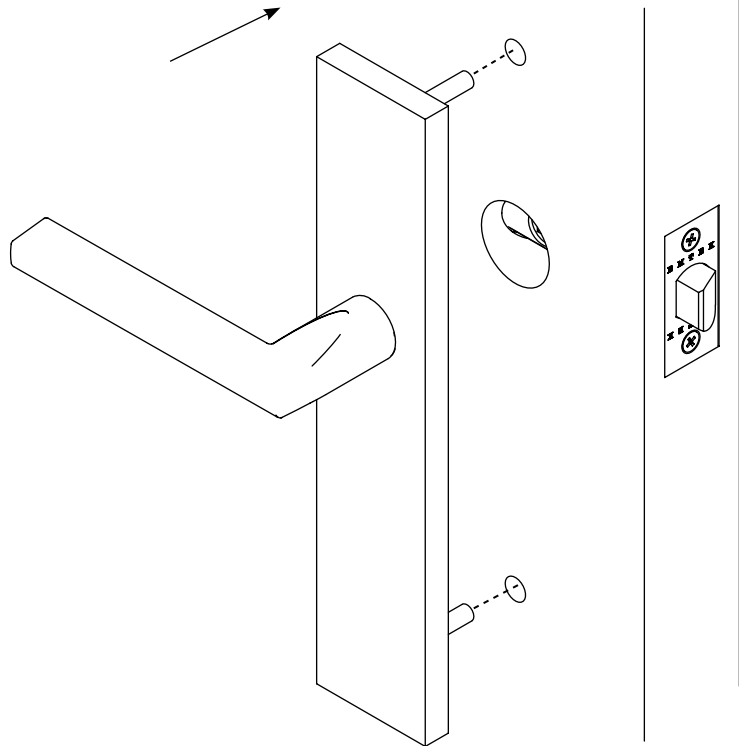


3. Install Latch



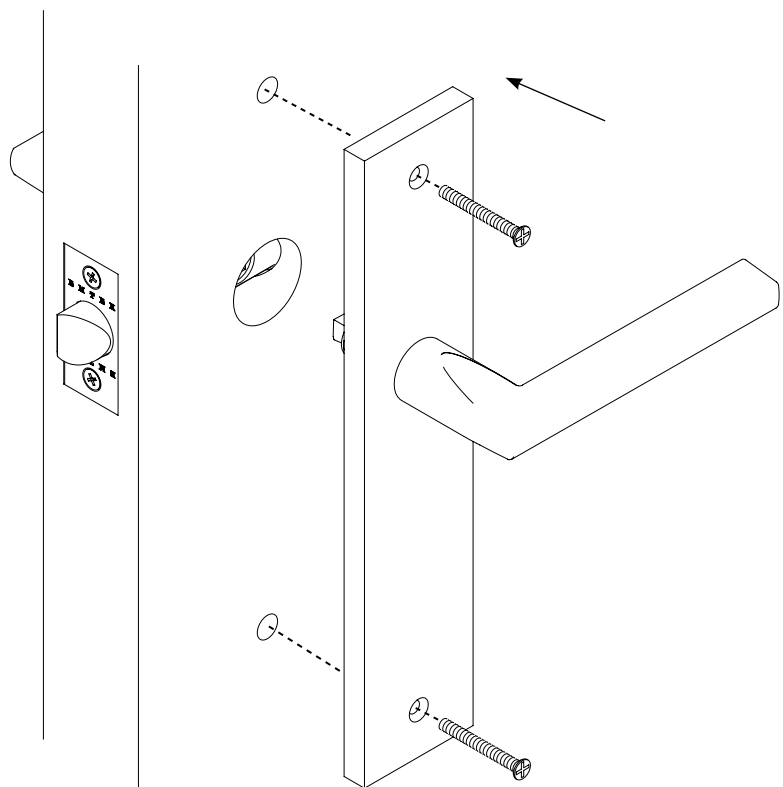
4. Outside Installation

Step 1. Position the outside trim through the bore hole.



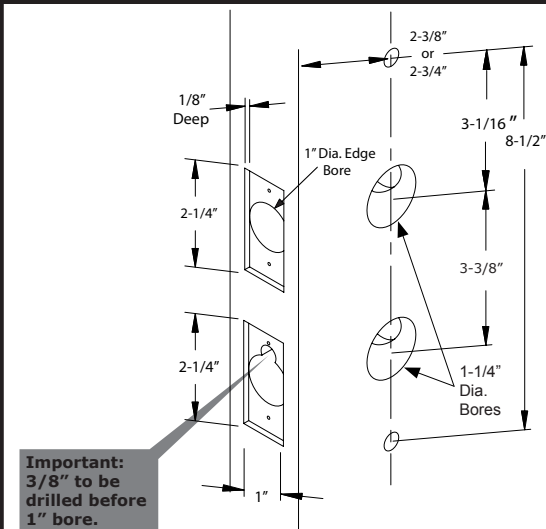
5. Inside Installation

Step 2. Fasten Inside Trim using two #8 machine screws (provided).



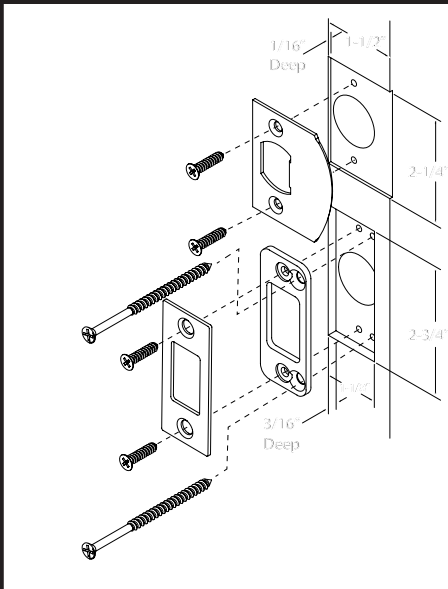
Installation Guide - Narrow Style Keyed Sideplates

1. Door Prep

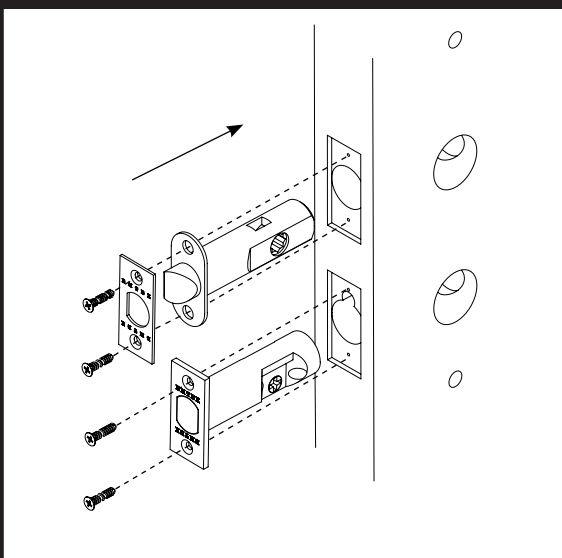


See template for door prep specifications.

2. Door Jamb Prep

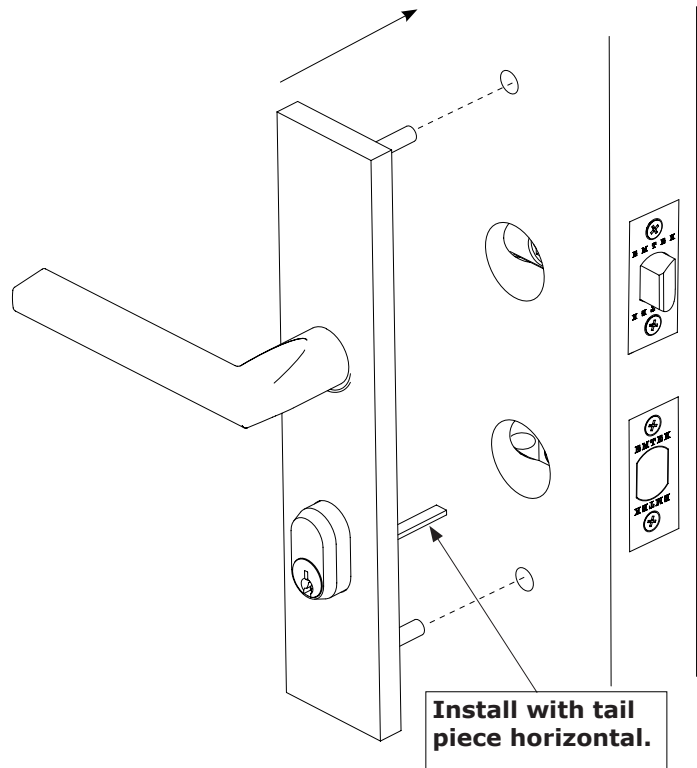


3. Install Latch & Deadbolt



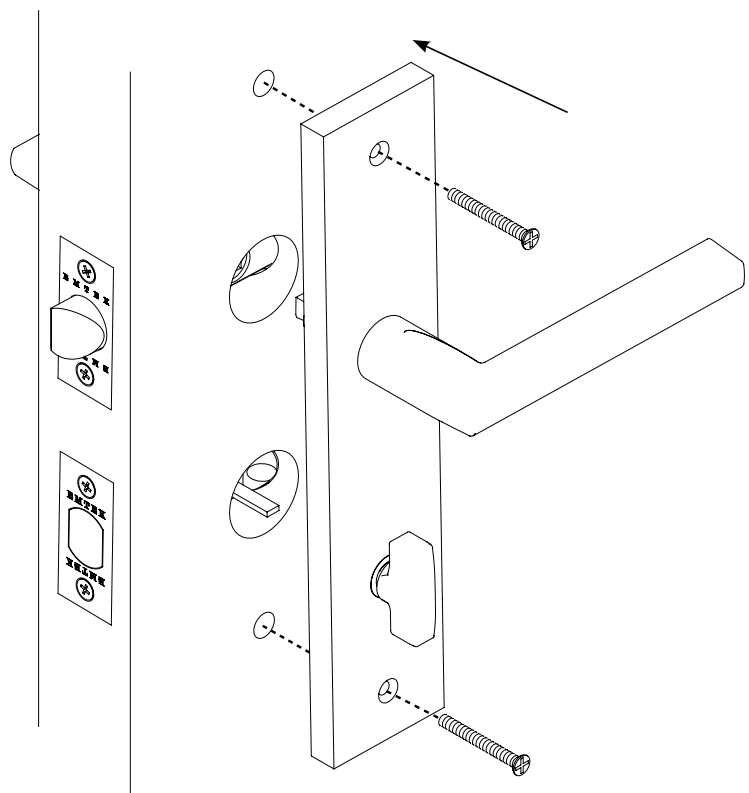
4. Outside Installation

Step 1. Position the outside trim through the bore hole.



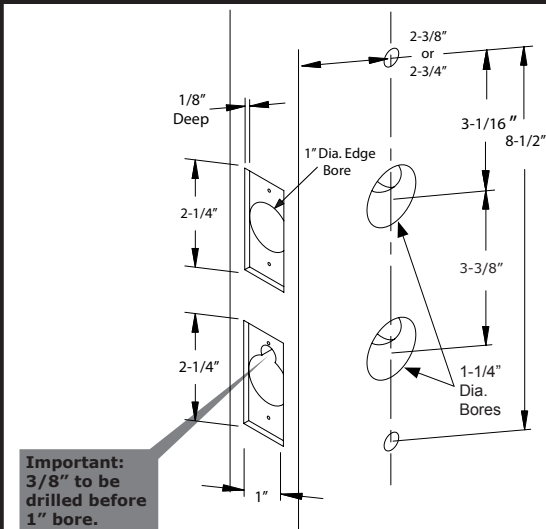
5. Inside Installation

Step 2. Fasten Inside Trim using two #8 machine screws (provided).



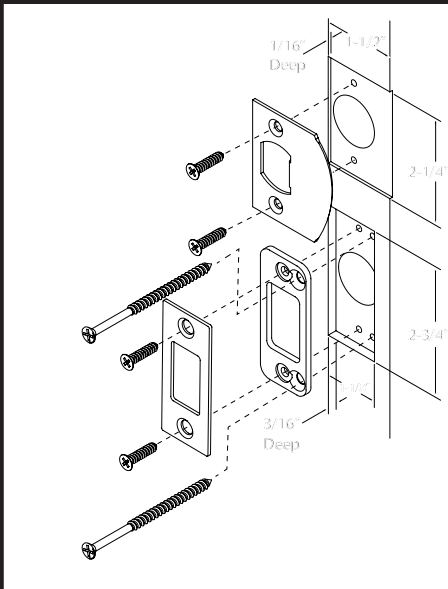
Installation Guide - Narrow Style Keyed Sideplates

1. Door Prep

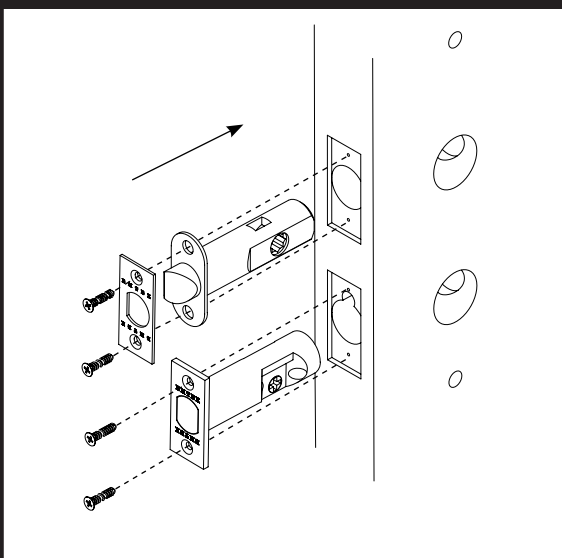


See template for door prep specifications.

2. Door Jamb Prep

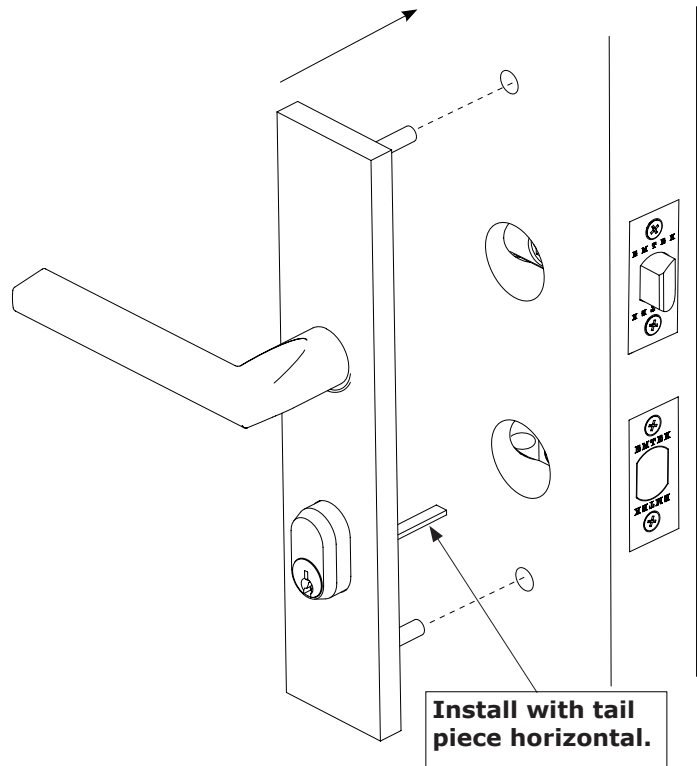


3. Install Latch & Deadbolt



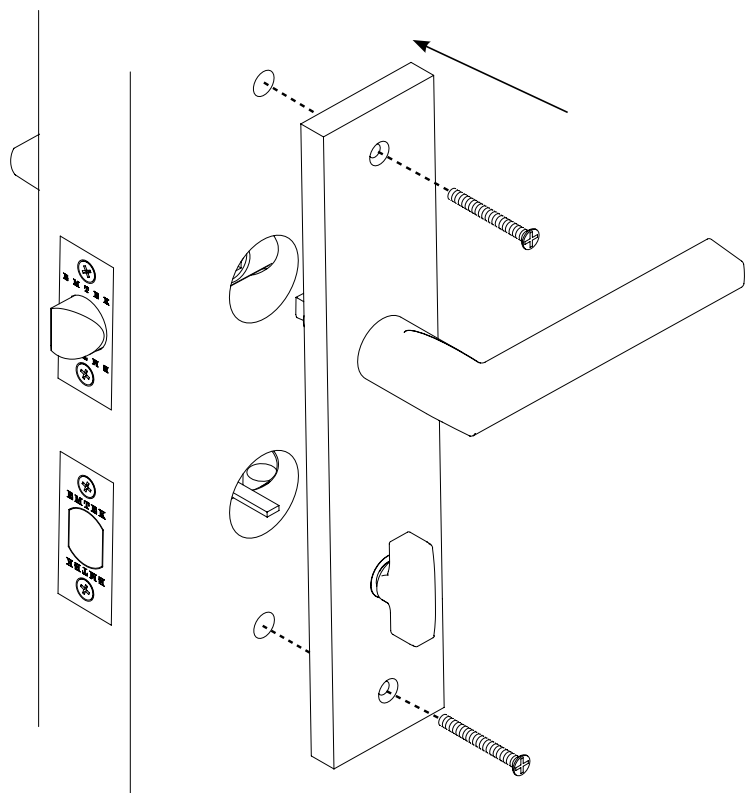
4. Outside Installation

Step 1. Position the outside trim through the bore hole.

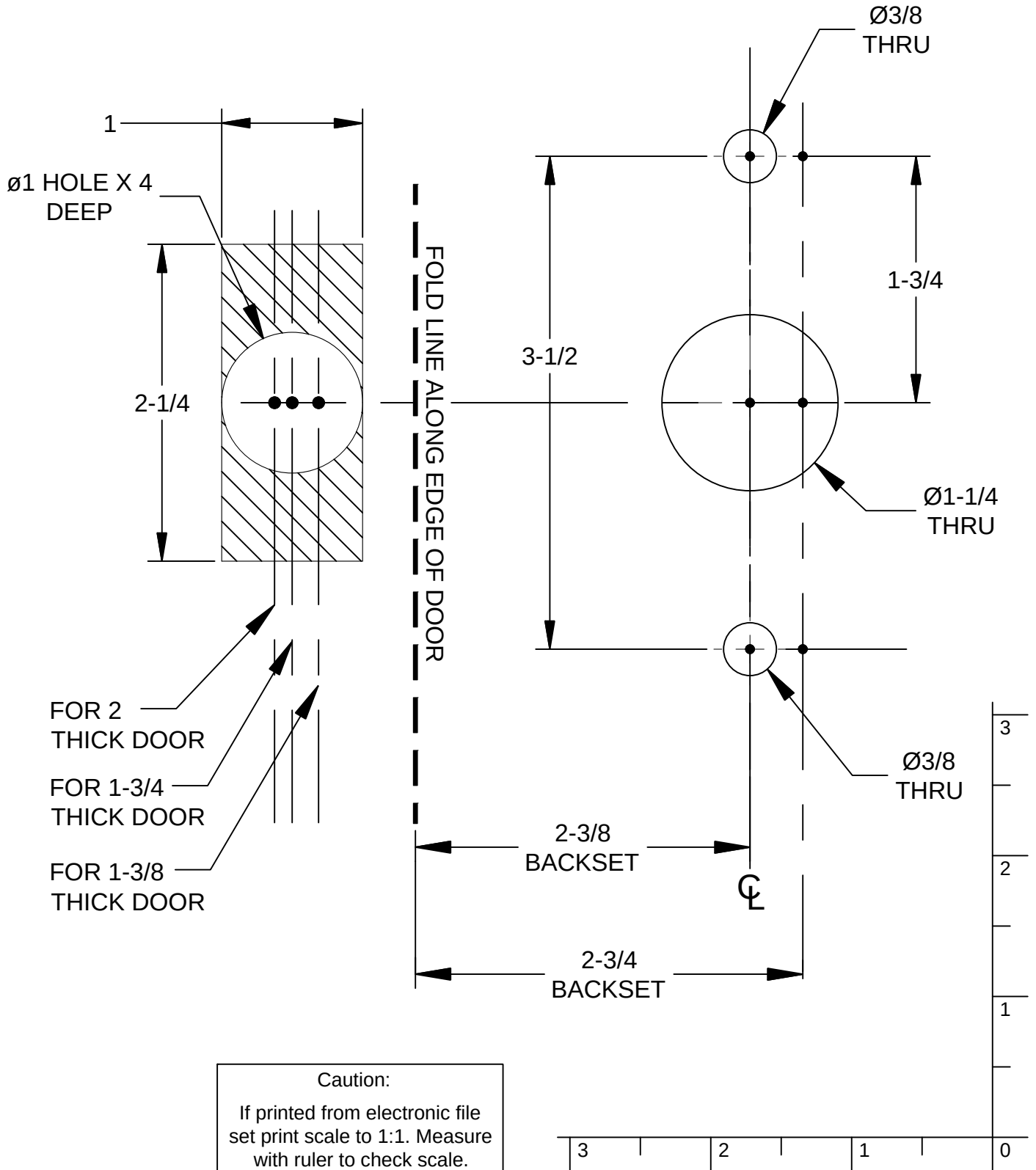


5. Inside Installation

Step 2. Fasten Inside Trim using two #8 machine screws (provided).



STRETTO 1.5X5 HOLE PREPARATION PASSAGE (RIGHT HAND)

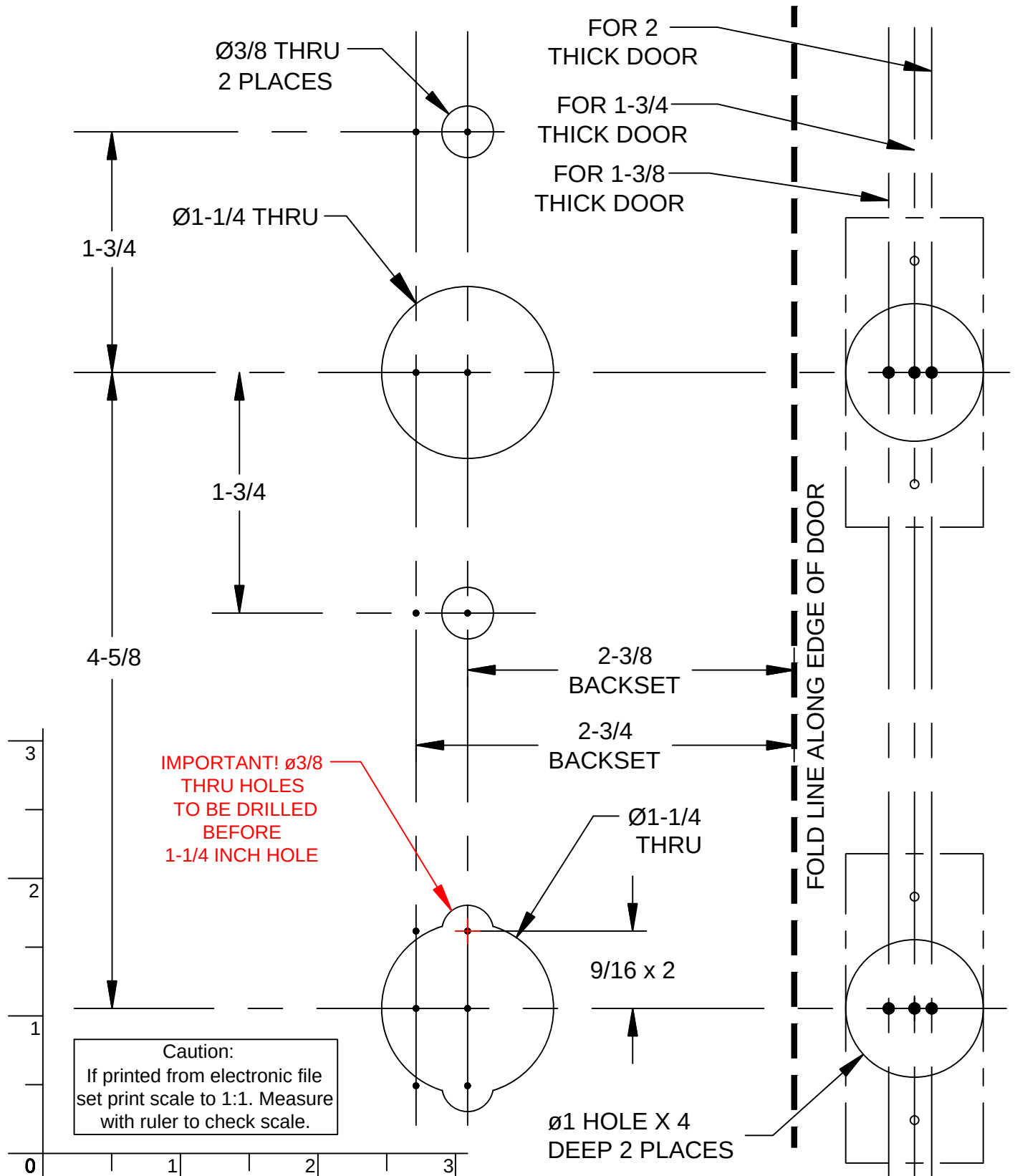


***NOTES:**

ALL DIMENSIONS ARE IN INCHES.

DO NOT PHOTOCOPY TEMPLATE (SCALE MAY BE AFFECTED).

STRETTO 1.5X5 HOLE PREPARATION PRIVACY (LEFT HAND)

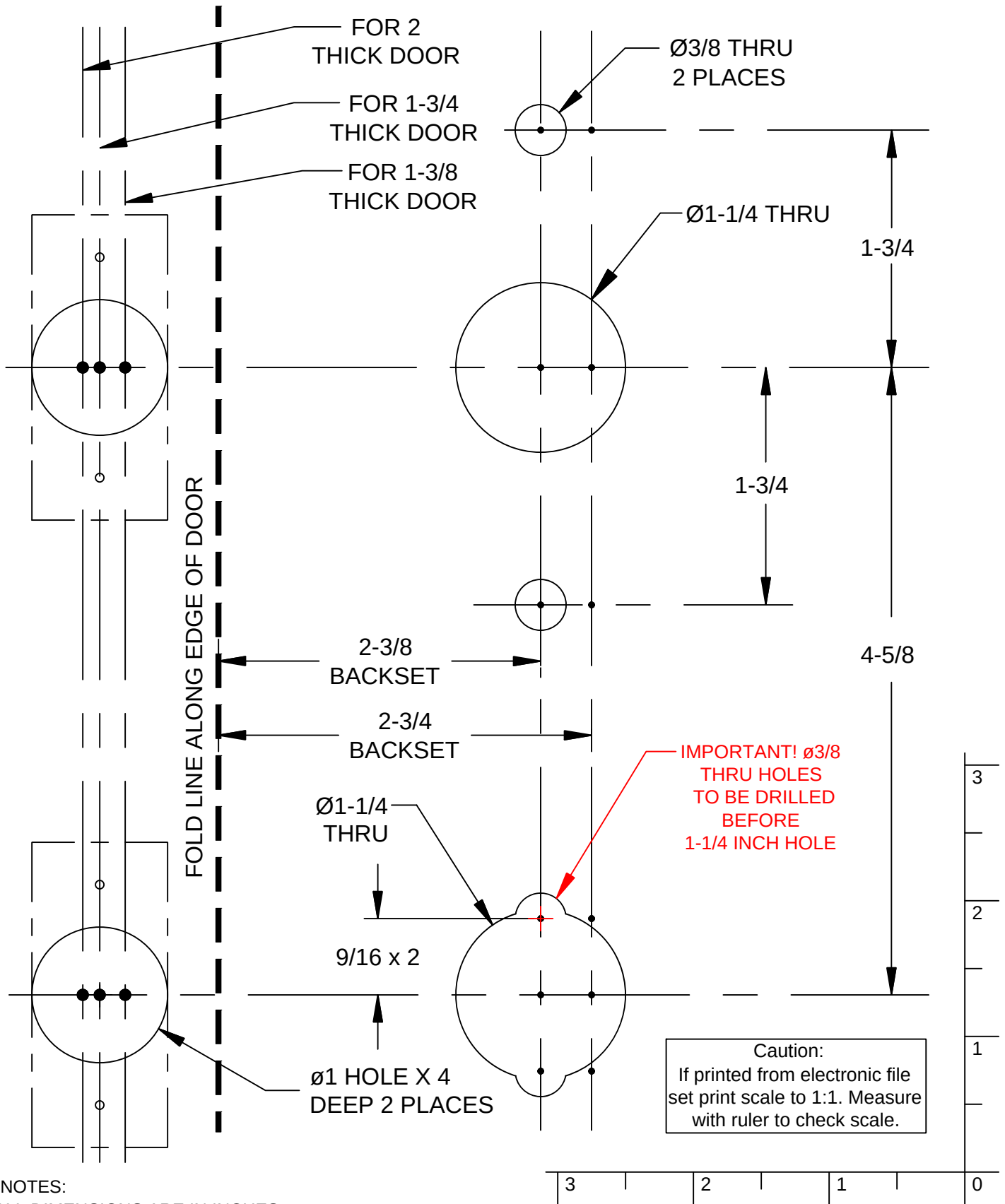


*NOTES:

ALL DIMENSIONS ARE IN INCHES.

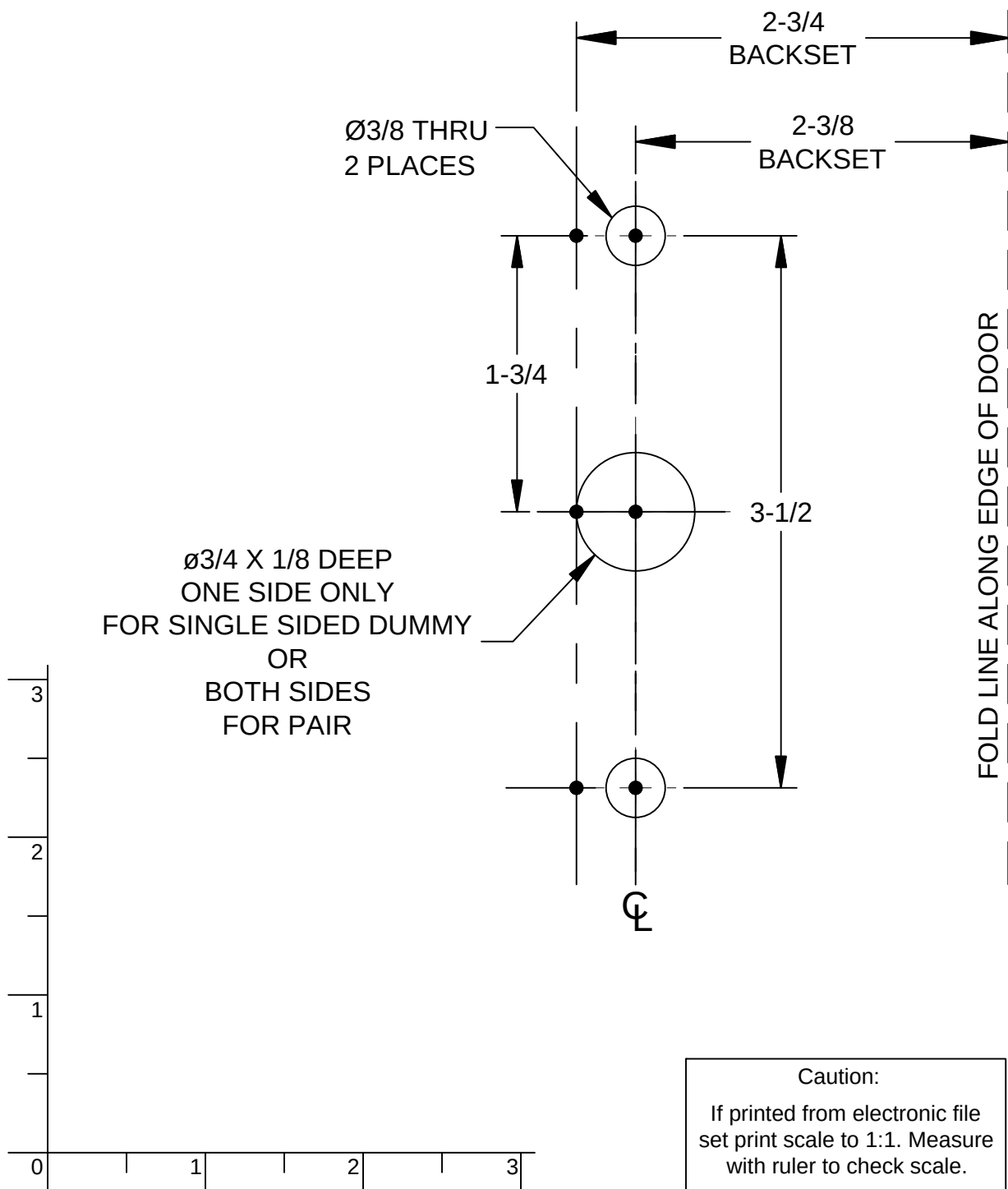
DO NOT PHOTOCOPY TEMPLATE (SCALE MAY BE AFFECTED).

STRETTO 1.5X5 HOLE PREPARATION PRIVACY (RIGHT HAND)



*NOTES:
ALL DIMENSIONS ARE IN INCHES.
DO NOT PHOTOCOPY TEMPLATE (SCALE MAY BE AFFECTED).

STRETTO 1.5X5 HOLE PREPARATION DUMMY (LEFT HAND)

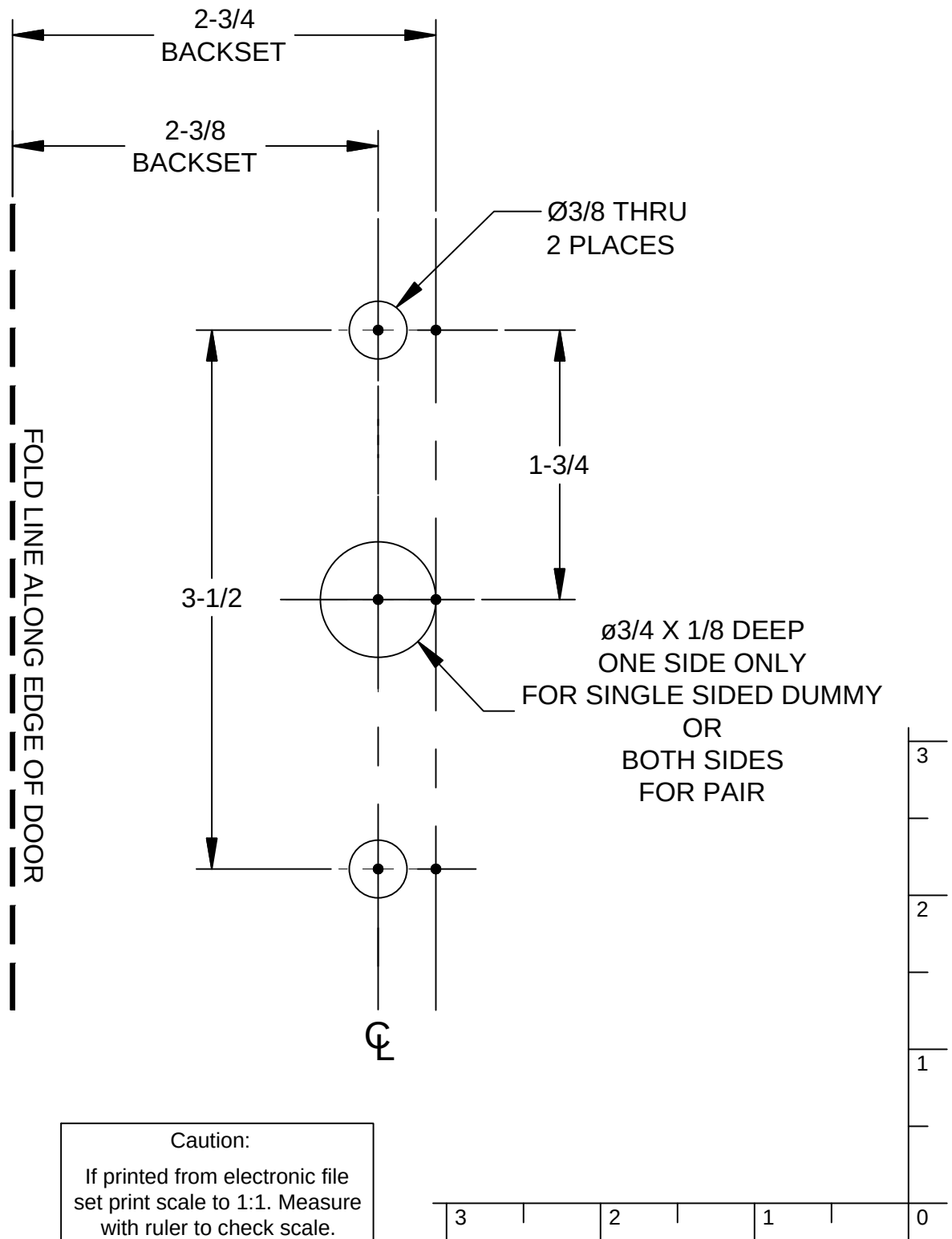


***NOTES:**

ALL DIMENSIONS ARE IN INCHES.

DO NOT PHOTOCOPY TEMPLATE (SCALE MAY BE AFFECTED).

STRETTO 1.5X5 HOLE PREPARATION DUMMY (RIGHT HAND)



***NOTES:**

ALL DIMENSIONS ARE IN INCHES.

DO NOT PHOTOCOPY TEMPLATE (SCALE MAY BE AFFECTED).

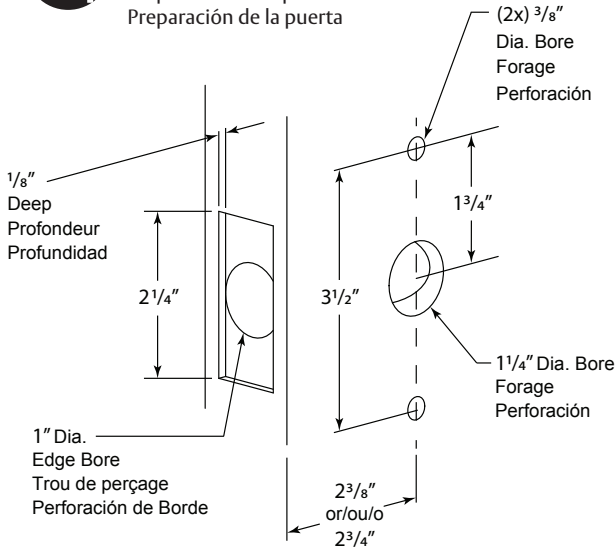
STRETTO 1.5x5 Passage Installation Guide

Guide d'installation - Stretto 1.5x5 de Passage

Guía de Instalación - Cerrojo de Pasaje Stretto 1.5x5

1 Door Prep

Préparation de la porte
Preparación de la puerta

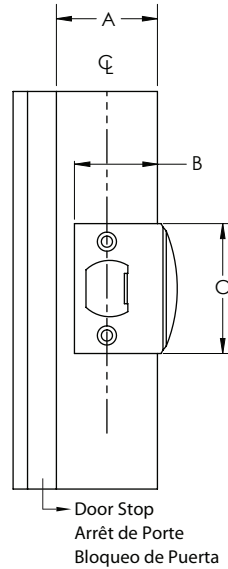


See template for door prep specifications

Pour les instructions d'assemblage de la porte, voir le modèle
Ver plantilla de especificaciones para la preparación de la puerta

2 Door Jamb Prep

Préparation du jambage de la porte
Preparación de la jamba de la puerta



Dimension B & C should be used as reference only. Due to tolerances as reference only. Due to tolerances actual door jamb prep dimensions will vary. Using the strike plate outline edges and locate screw holes on strike with center line on jamb.

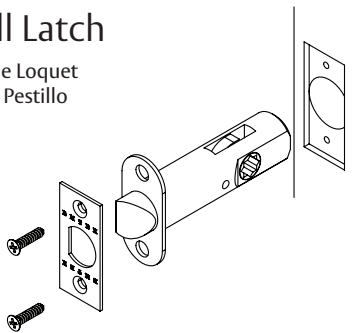
Les dimensions B & C devraient être utilisés comme référence seulement. À cause des tolérances actuelles de la porte, les dimensions de la préparation du jambage peuvent varier. En utilisant la bordure extérieure du gâche, localiser les trous de vis avec la ligne centrale du jambage.

Las dimensiones B y C solo deberían ser usadas como referencia. Debido a los rangos, pueden variar las dimensiones reales de preparación de la jamba. Usando la placa de impacto delinear los bordes y ubicar los orificios de los tornillos en la placa, con línea central en la jamba.

A	B	C
1-3/8"	1-1/4"	2-1/4"
1-1/2"	1-5/16"	2-1/4"
1-3/4"	1-7/16"	2-1/4"

3 Install Latch

Installer le Loquet
Instale el Pestillo



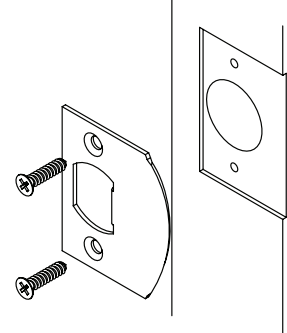
4 Install Strike Plate

Préparation de la porte
Preparación de la puerta

Fasten strike plate with #8 wood screws (provided).

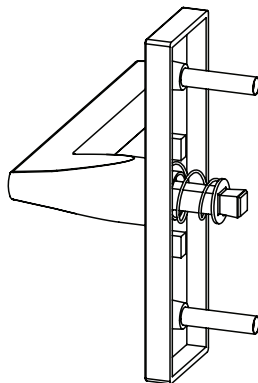
Fixer la gâche avec les vis à bois # 8 (fournies).

Asegure la placa de impacto con los tornillos de madera #8 (provistos).

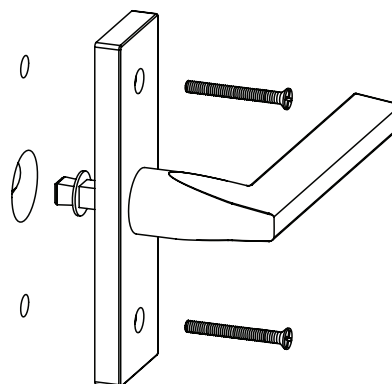


5 Install Outside and Inside Trims

Installer les Garnitures Extérieures et Intérieures
Instale las Molduras Exteriores e Interiores



Outside · Extérieur · Exterior



Inside · Intérieur · Interior

NOTE: Handles vary depending on style.

NOTE: Les leviers varient selon le style.

NOTA: Las palancas varían dependiendo del estilo.

STRETTO 1.5x5 Privacy Installation Guide

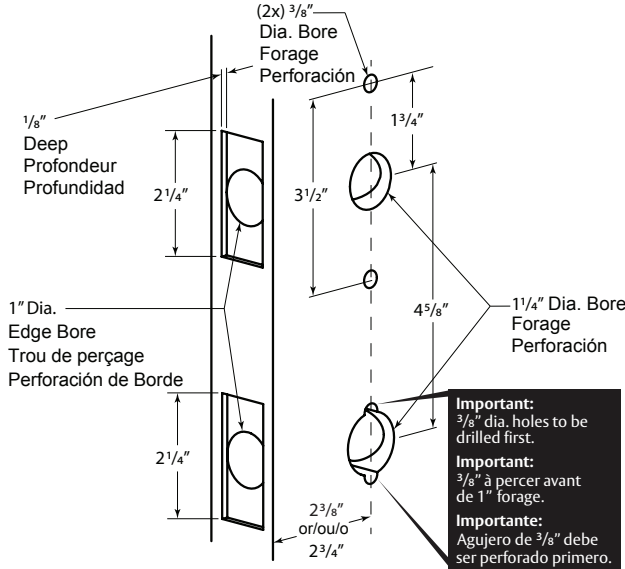
Guide d'installation - Stretto 1.5x5 D'Intimité

Guía de Instalación - Cerrojo de Privacidad Stretto 1.5x5

1 Door Prep

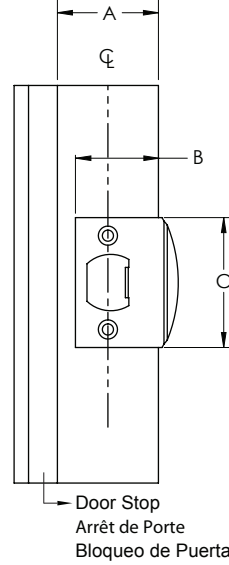
Préparation de la porte
Preparación de la puerta

See template for door prep specifications
Pour les instructions d'assemblage de la porte, voir le modèle
Ver plantilla de especificaciones para la preparación de la puerta



2 Strike Plate Prep

Préparation du jambage de la porte
Preparación del marco de la puerta



Dimension B & C should be used as reference only. Due to tolerances as reference only. Due to tolerances actual door jamb prep dimensions will vary. Using the strike plate outline edges and locate screw holes on strike with center line on jamb.

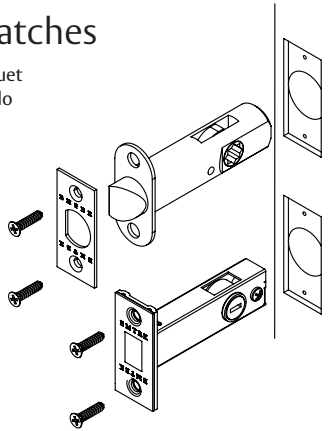
Les dimensions B & C devraient être utilisés comme référence seulement. À cause des tolérances actuelles de la porte, les dimensions de la préparation du jambage peuvent varier. En utilisant la bordure extérieure du gâche, localiser les trous de vis avec la ligne centrale du jambage.

Las dimensiones B y C solo deberían ser usadas como referencia. Debido a los rangos, pueden variar las dimensiones reales de preparación de la jamba. Usando la placa de impacto delinear los bordes y ubicar los orificios de los tornillos en la placa, con línea central en la jamba.

A	B	C
1-3/8"	1-1/4"	2-1/4"
1-1/2"	1-5/16"	2-1/4"
1-3/4"	1-7/16"	2-1/4"

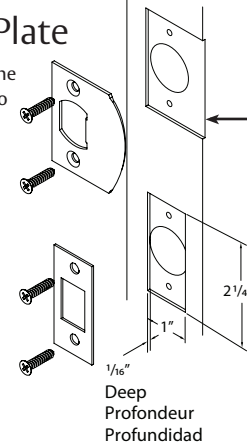
3 Install Latches

Installer le Loquet
Instale el Pestillo



4 Install Strike Plate

Installer la Plaque de Gâche
Instale la Placa de Impacto



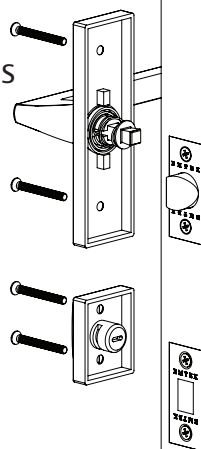
See Step 2 for door jamb prep instructions.

Voir l'étape 2 pour l'instruction de la préparation du jambage de la porte.

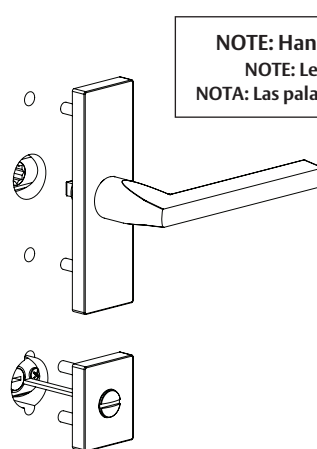
Consulte el paso 2 para obtener instrucciones de preparación de la jamba de la puerta.

5 Install Outside and Inside Trims

Installer les Garnitures Extérieures et Intérieures
Instale las Molduras Exteriores e Interiores



Outside · Extérieur · Exterior



Inside · Intérieur · Interior

NOTE: Handles vary depending on style.

NOTE: Les leviers varient selon le style.

NOTA: Las palancas varían dependiendo del estilo.

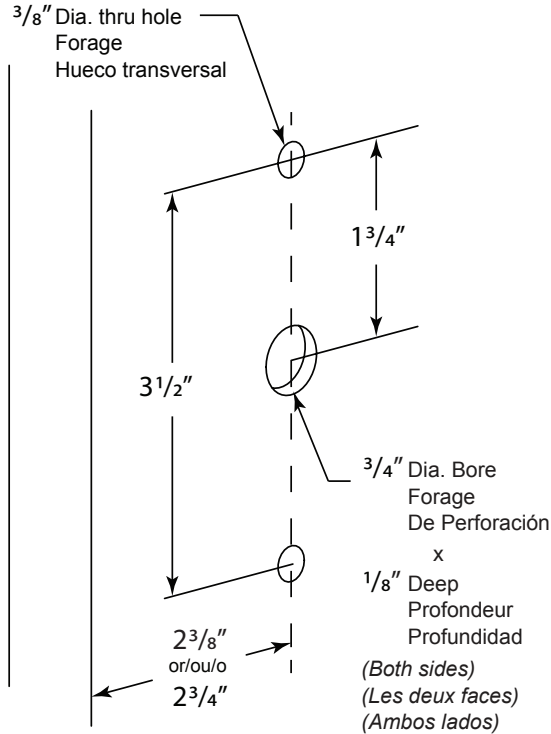
STRETTO 1.5x5 Dummy Installation Guide (Pair and Single Sided)

Guide d'installation - Entrée Factice Stretto 1.5x5 (Paire et Simple Face)

Guía de Instalación - Picaporte Falso Stretto 1.5x5 (Par y de Una Sola Cara)

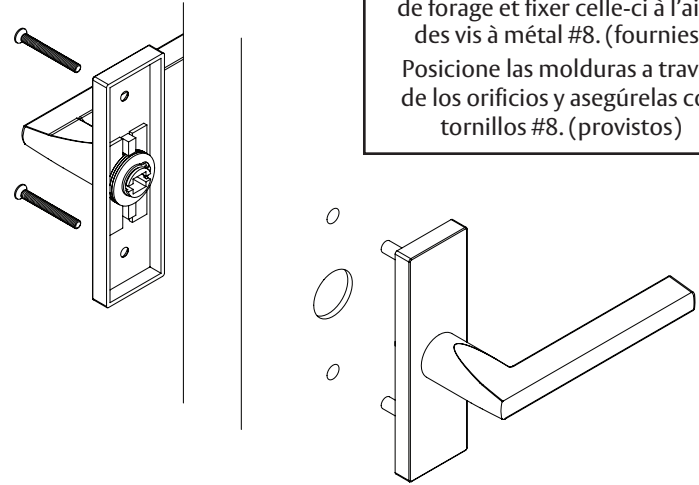
1 Door Prep For Pair Dummy

Préparation de porte pour l'entrée factice (Paire)
Preparación de Puerta para Picaporte Par Falso



2 Pair Dummy Installation

Installation de l'Entrée Factice (Paire)
Instalación del Picaporte Par Falso



Position trim through the bore holes and tighten with #8 machine screws. (provided)

Insérer la garniture dans les trous de forage et fixer celle-ci à l'aide des vis à métal #8. (fournies)

Posicione las molduras a través de los orificios y asegúrelas con tornillos #8. (provistos)

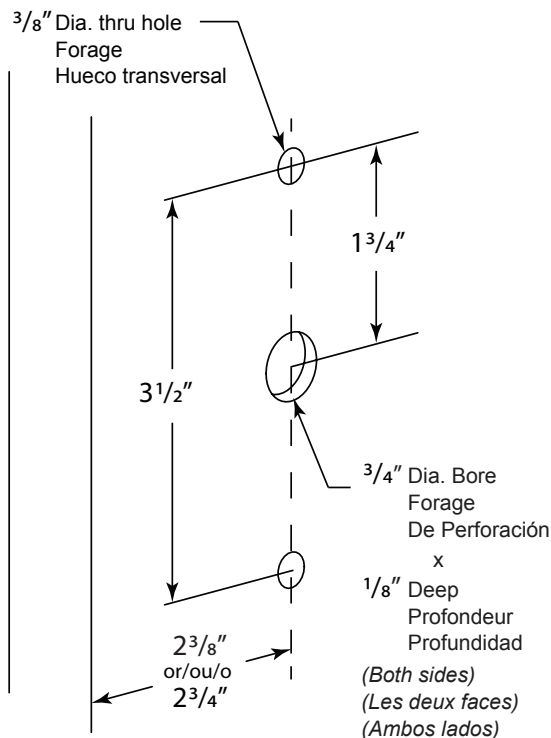
NOTE: Handles vary depending on style.

NOTE: Les leviers varient selon le style.

NOTA: Las palancas varían dependiendo del estilo.

1 Door Prep For Single Sided Dummy

Préparation de porte pour l'entrée factice (Simple)
Prep de Puerta para Picaporte Falso de Una Cara



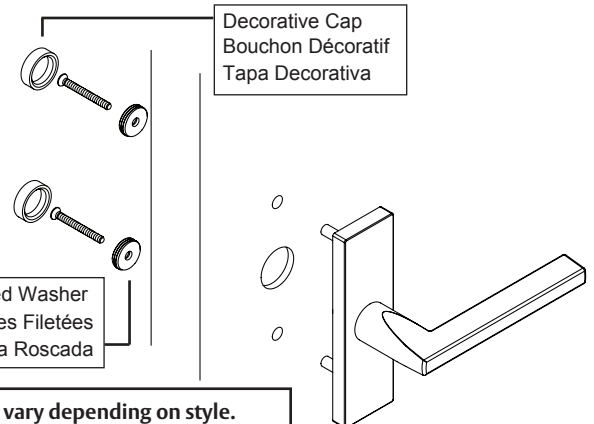
2 Single sided Dummy Installation

Installation de l'Entrée Factice (Simple)
Instalación del Picaporte Falso de Una Sola Cara

Attach trim plate with screws and threaded washers (provided); After attaching trim plate, tighten decorative caps onto threaded washers.

Fixer la plaque de garniture avec les vis et les rondelles nervurées (fournies). Après avoir fixé la plaque de garniture, serrer les bouchons décoratifs sur les rondelles nervurées.

Sujete la placa decorativa con tornillos y arandelas roscadas (provistas); Después de sujetar la placa decorativa, ajuste las tapas decorativas sobre las arandelas roscadas.



Decorative Cap
Bouchon Décoratif
Tapa Decorativa

Threaded Washer
Rondelles Filetées
Arandela Roscada

NOTE: Handles vary depending on style.

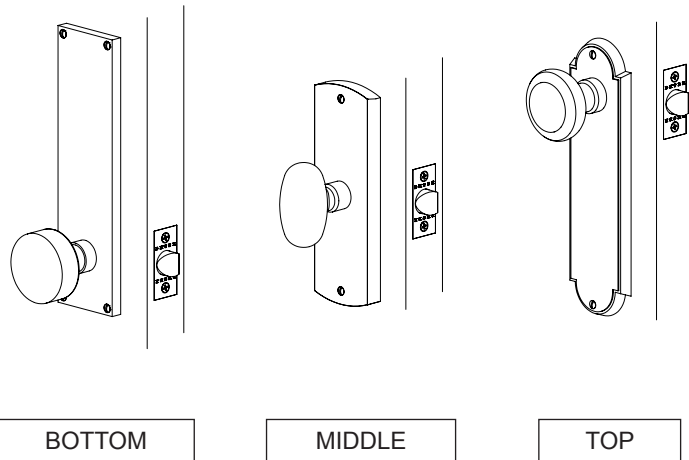
NOTE: Les leviers varient selon le style.

NOTA: Las palancas varían dependiendo del estilo.

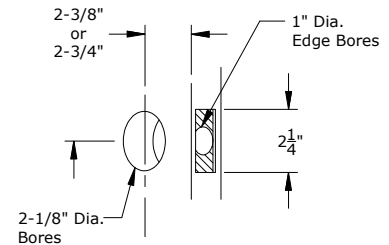
Installation Guide - Non-Keyed plates: Knob

IMPORTANT!: Knob location on the sideplate (Top, middle, bottom) varies depending on style. Determine proper orientation BEFORE drilling holes.

1. Determine knob location & plate orientation

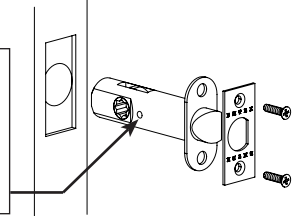


2. Door Prep



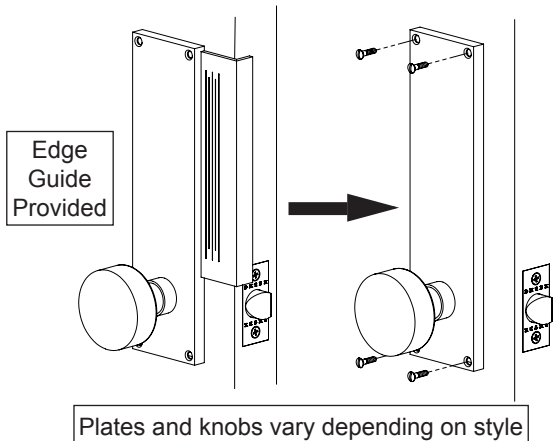
3. Install latch

For Privacy function:
Threaded hole for the privacy pin must face the interior side of the door.

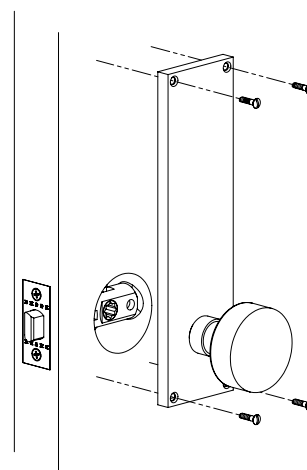


4. Mount Inside Trim Plate

Prior to drilling holes, align side plate using Edge Guide (provided).



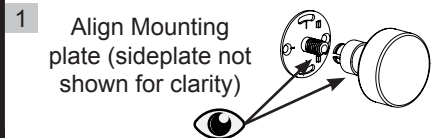
5. Mount Outside Trim Plate



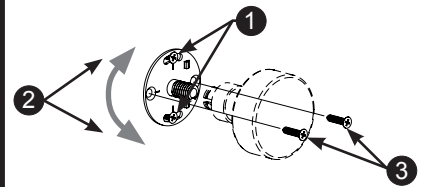
6. Tighten Knob

After lock has been installed tighten set screw with Allen Wrench.

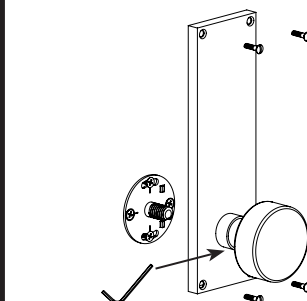
Dummy plate



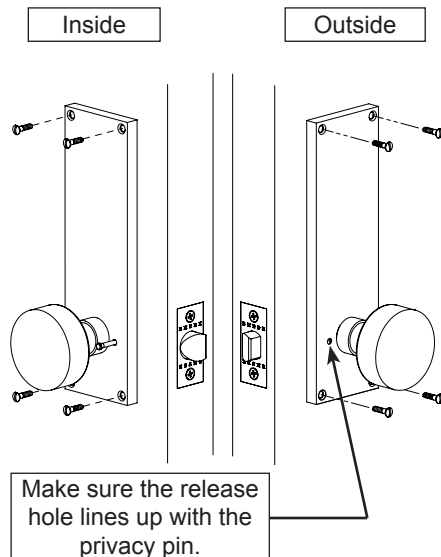
2 Install Mounting Plate & Adjust for level



3 Install Sideplate

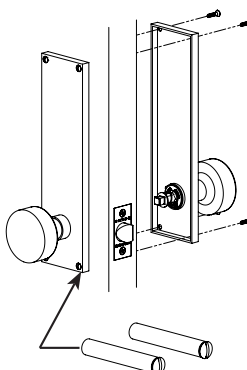


Privacy Function



Optional Thru Bolts

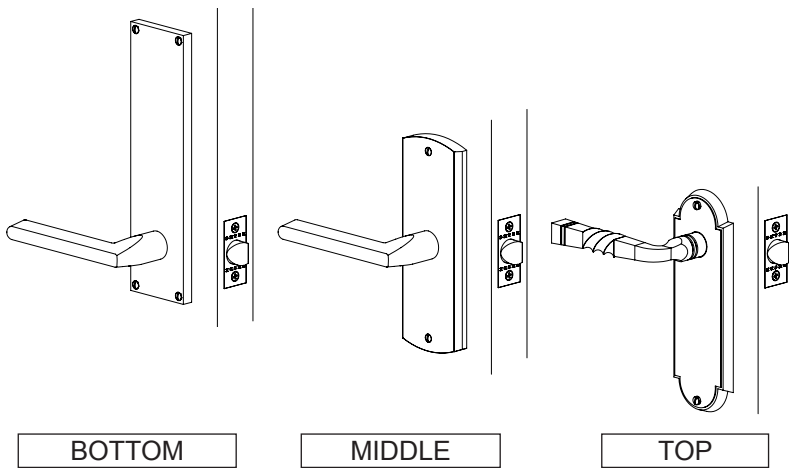
Thru bolts (provided) may be used on hollow doors instead of wood screws (also provided).



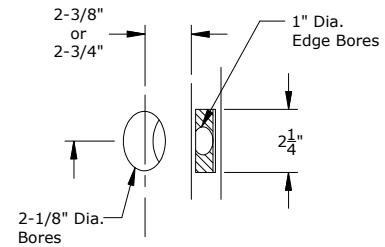
Installation Guide - Non-Keyed plates: Lever

IMPORTANT!: Lever location on the sideplate (Top, middle, bottom) varies depending on style. Determine proper orientation BEFORE drilling holes.

1. Determine lever location & plate orientation

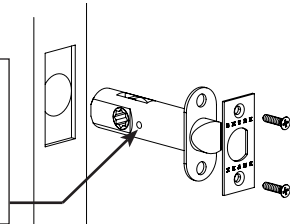


2. Door Prep



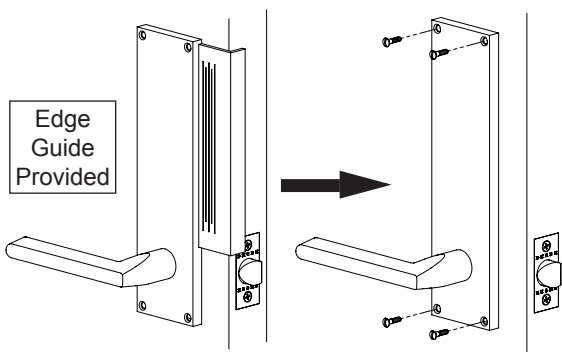
3. Install latch

For Privacy function: Threaded hole for the privacy pin must face the interior side of the door.



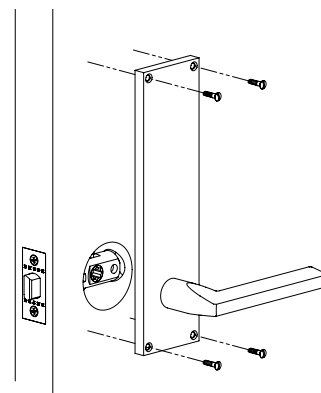
4. Mount Inside Trim Plate

Prior to drilling holes, align side plate using Edge Guide (provided).

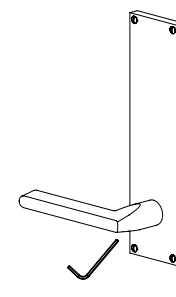


Plates and lever vary depending on style

5. Mount Outside Trim Plate

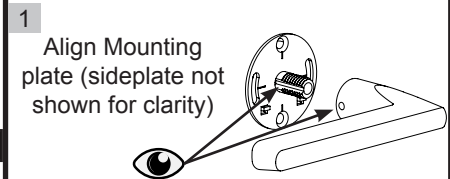


6. Tighten Lever

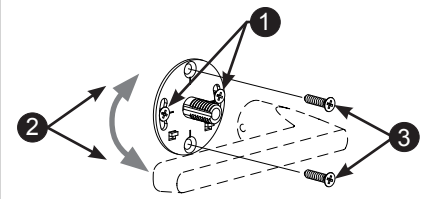


After lock has been installed tighten set screw with Allen Wrench.

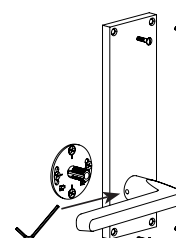
Dummy plate



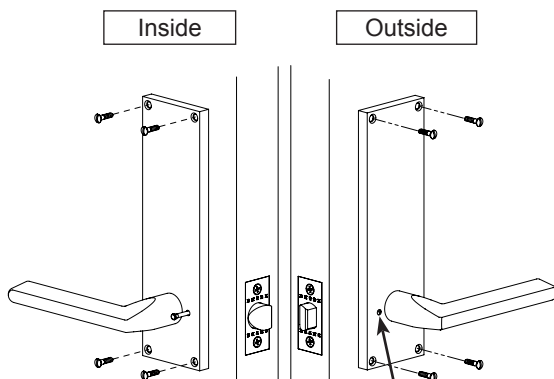
2 Install Mounting Plate & Adjust for level



3 Install Sideplate



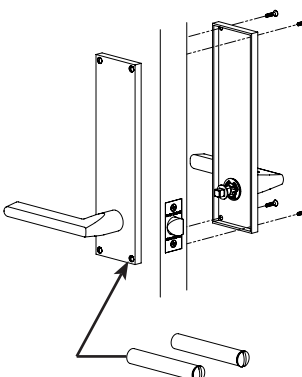
Privacy Function



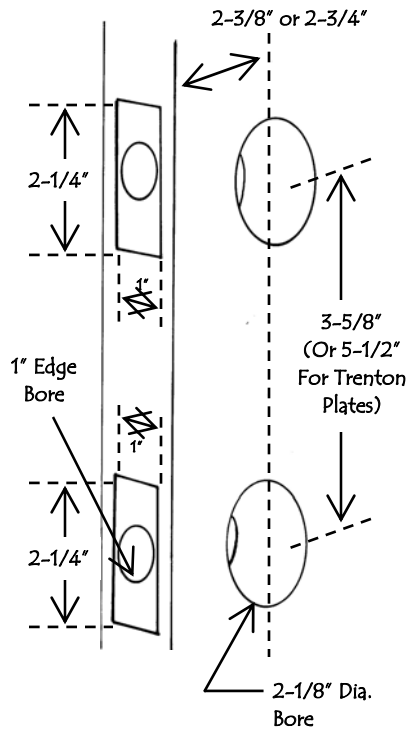
Make sure the release hole lines up with the privacy pin.

Optional Thru Bolts

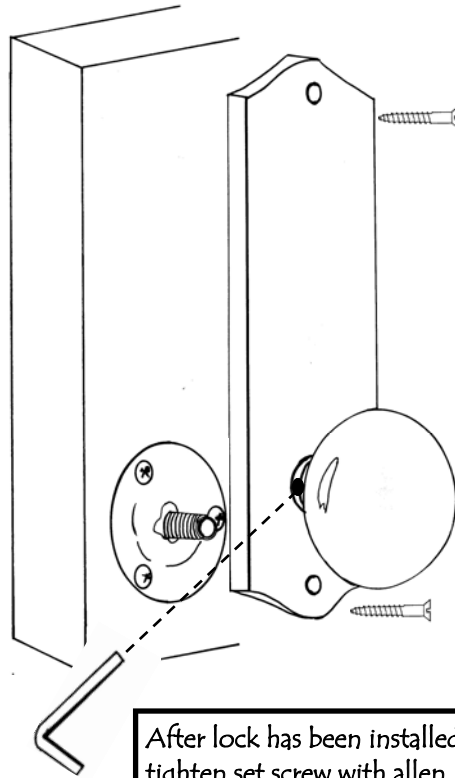
Thru bolts (provided) may be used on hollow doors instead of wood screws (also provided).



Door Prep. Active



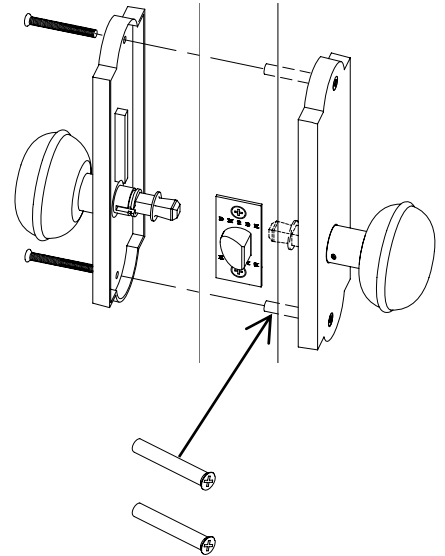
Dummy



After lock has been installed
tighten set screw with allen
wrench.

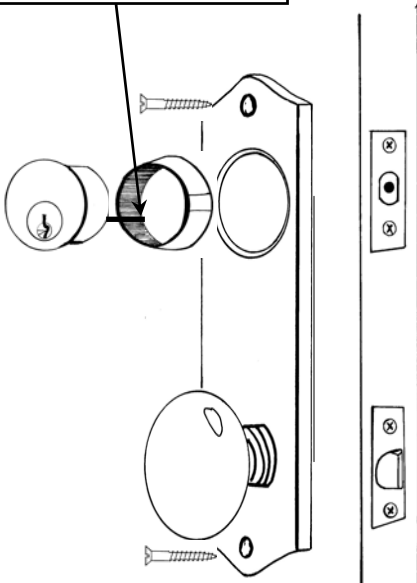
Optional Thru Bolts

Thru bolts (provided) may be used
on hollow doors instead of wood
screws (also provided).

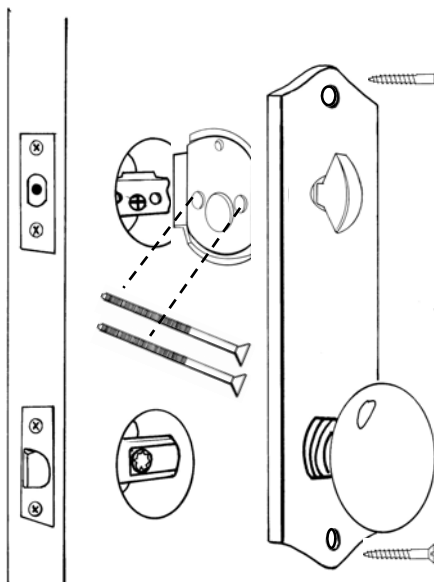


Outside
Single or Double Cylinder

Tailpiece - Horizontal

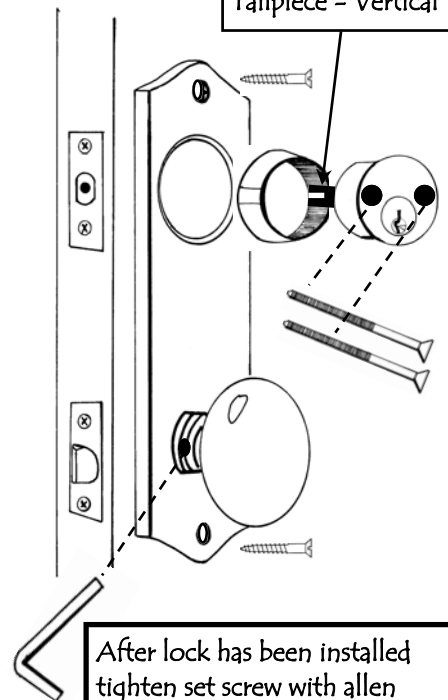


Inside
Single Cylinder



Inside
Double Cylinder

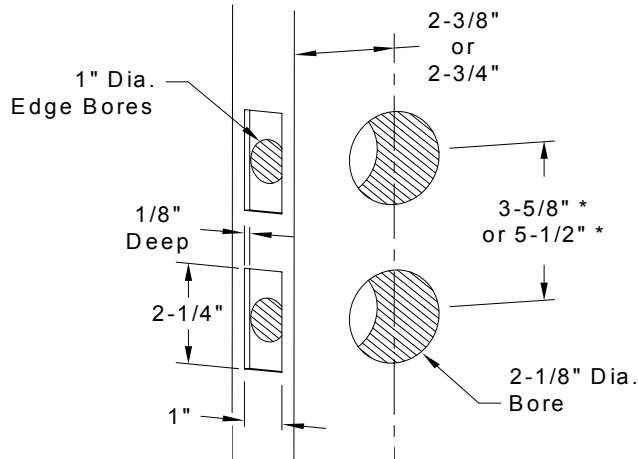
Tailpiece - Vertical



After lock has been installed
tighten set screw with allen
wrench.

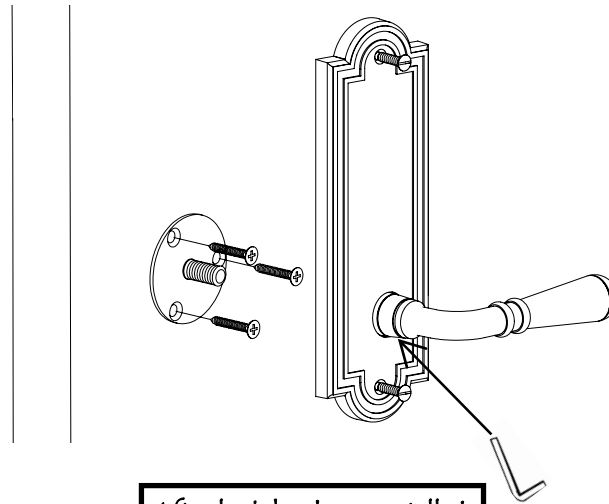
Installation Guide— Keyed Plates : Lever

Door Prep. Active



*NOTE: DIM. VARIES DEPENDING ON STYLE

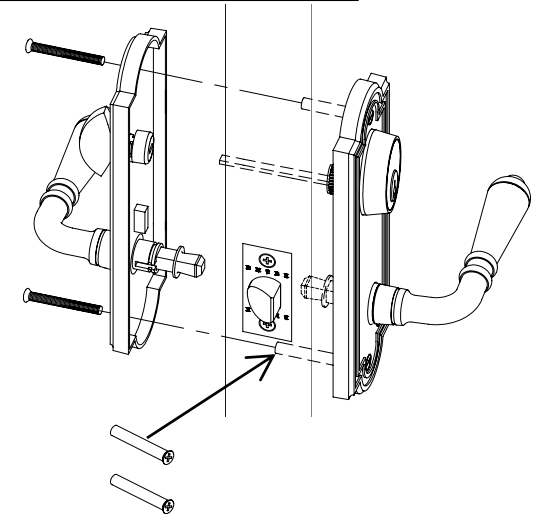
Dummy



After lock has been installed tighten set screw with allen wrench.

Optional Thru Bolts

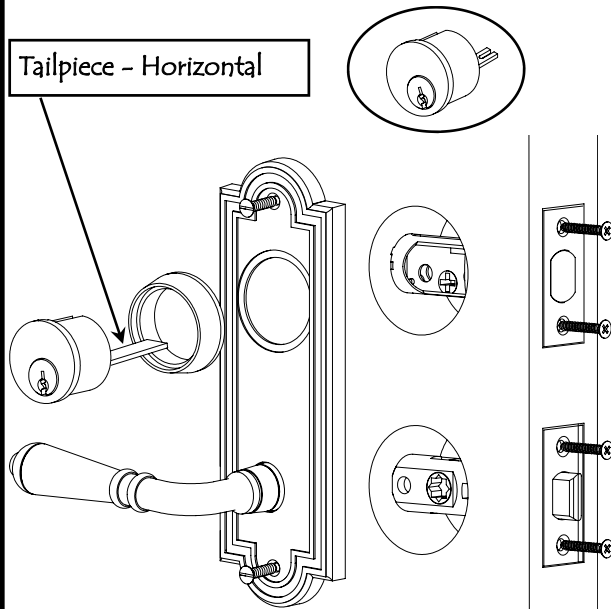
Thru bolts (provided) may be used on hollow doors instead of wood screws (also provided).



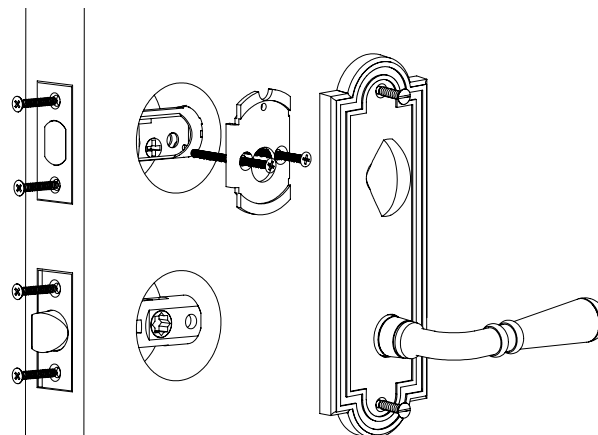
Outside Single or Double Cylinder

Double Cylinder

Tailpiece - Horizontal



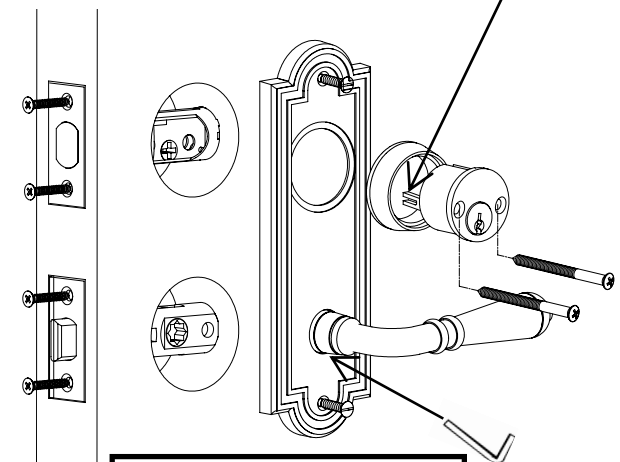
Inside Single Cylinder



EMTEK[®]
ASSA ABLOY

Inside Double Cylinder

Tailpiece - Vertical



After lock has been installed tighten set screw with allen wrench.

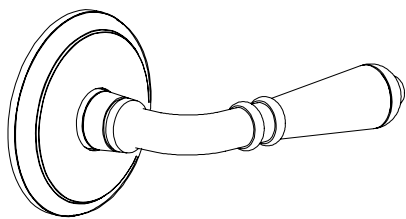
Installation Guide - For Thumb-Turn Privacy

Door Prep	Door Jam	Door Prep for Victoria Plate	Door Jam for Victoria Plate
1" Dia. Edge Bores 2-3/8" or 2-3/4" 2-1/8" Dia. Bore 2-1/4" 1/8" Deep 3-3/8" 7/8" Dia. Bore 1" SEE INSTALLATION TEMPLATE	1/8" Deep 1-1/4" 1/8" Deep 2-1/4" 1"	1" Dia. Edge Bores 2-3/8" or 2-3/4" 7/8" Dia. Bore 2-1/4" 1/8" Deep 3-3/8" 2-1/8" Dia. Bore 1" SEE INSTALLATION TEMPLATE	1/8" Deep 1-1/4" 1/8" Deep 2-1/4" 1"

Inside	Outside
Remember to install Plastic Alignment Device	Tailpiece Horizontal



WARNING: This product can expose you to chemicals including lead, which is known to the state of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov.



Installation Guide - Passage/ Privacy - Knob or Lever

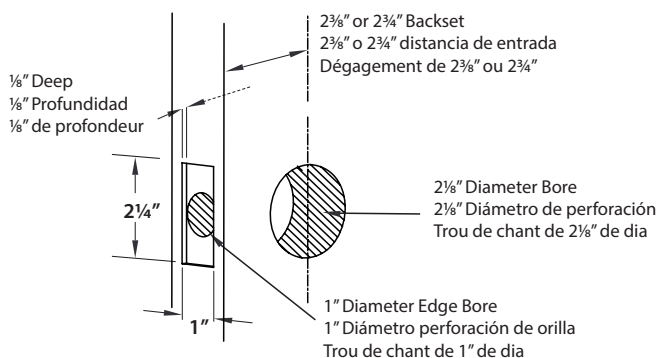
Guía de Instalación - De Paso / Privacidad - Perilla o Manija

Guide d'installation - Passage / Intimité - Bouton ou béquille

1. Door Prep

Preparación de la puerta

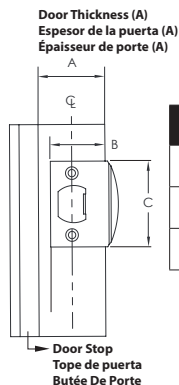
Préparation de la porte



2. Standard Strike Plate Door Jamb Prep

Placa de pestillo estándar para jamba de puerta

Prep pour jambage de porte à gâche standard



A	B	C
1 3/8"	1 1/4"	2 1/4"
1 1/2"	1 5/8"	2 1/4"
1 3/4"	1 7/8"	2 1/4"

NOTE: Dimensions B & C should be used as reference only. Due to tolerances actual door jamb prep dimensions will vary. Using the strike plate outline edges and locate screw holes on strike with center line on jamb.

NOTA: Las dimensiones B y C deben utilizarse solamente como referencia. Debido a las tolerancias, las dimensiones reales de la placa de pestillo para jamba de puerta variarán. Use los bordes de la placa de pestillo para localizar los orificios de los tornillos y alinear con la línea central de la jamba.

REMARQUE: Les dimensions B et C n'ont qu'une valeur indicative. Compte tenu des tolérances, les dimensions de la prep de jambage de porte réelles peuvent varier. Définissez les contours à l'aide de la gâche et localisez les trous de vis sur la gâche avec la ligne centrale sur le jambage.

3. Install Strike Plate

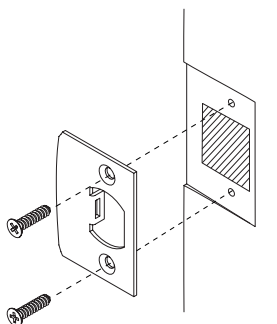
Instalar Contra

Installer la gâche

Fasten Strike Plate with #8 wood screws (provided).

Fijar la contra con los tornillos #8 para madera (incluidos).

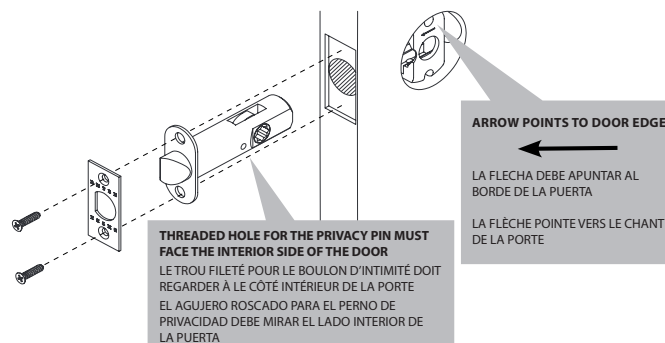
Fixer la gâche à l'aide des vis à bois n°8 (fournies).



4. Place Plastic Alignment Tool in Bore Hole & Install Latch

Coloque la herramienta de alineación de plástico en el orificio & Instalar picaporte

Mettre l'outil d'alignement en plastique dans le trou & Installer le pêne



5. Install Outside and Inside Trims

Instalación de unidades externa e interna

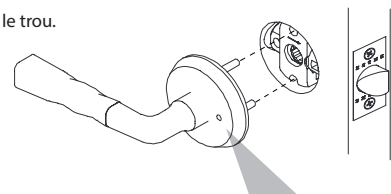
Installer les garnitures intérieures et extérieure

1

Position the outside trim through the bore hole.

Coloque la unidad externa através del orificio perforado.

Placer la garniture extérieure dans le trou.



MAKE SURE THE RELEASE HOLES LINE UP WITH THE PRIVACY PIN

ASEGÚRESE QUE EL ORIFICIO DE LIBERACIÓN ESTE ALINEADO CON EL PIN DE PRIVACIDAD

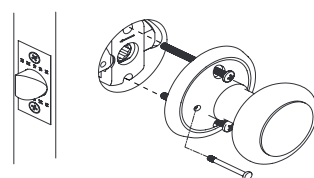
S'ASSURER QUE LES TROUS DE DÉGAGEMENT S'ALIGNE SUR LA TIGE D'INTIMITÉ

2

Fasten Inside Trim using two #8 machine screws (provided), and install Privacy Pin.

Fije la unidad interna usando dos tornillos #8 (incluidos), e instale el pin de privacidad.

Fixer la garniture intérieure à l'aide des deux vis à métal (fournies) et installer la tige d'intimité.



Dummy Installation

Instalación de la función Dummy

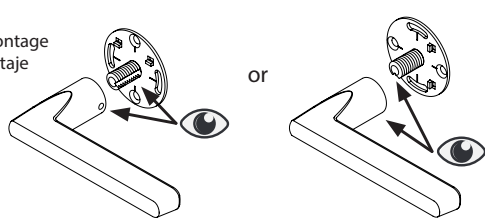
Installation du faux ensemble

1

Align Mounting Plate

Aligner la Plaque de Montage

Alinear la Placa de Montaje

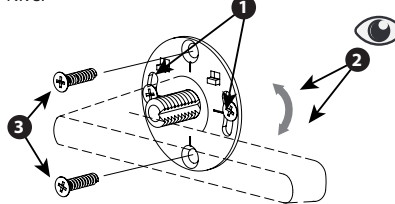


2

Install Mounting Plate & Adjust for Level

Instalar la Plaque de Montaje y Ajustar al Nivel

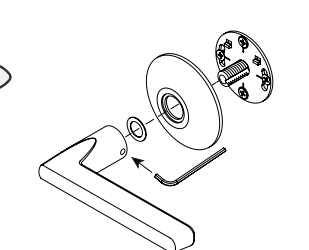
Instalar la Placa de Montaje y Ajustar al Nivel



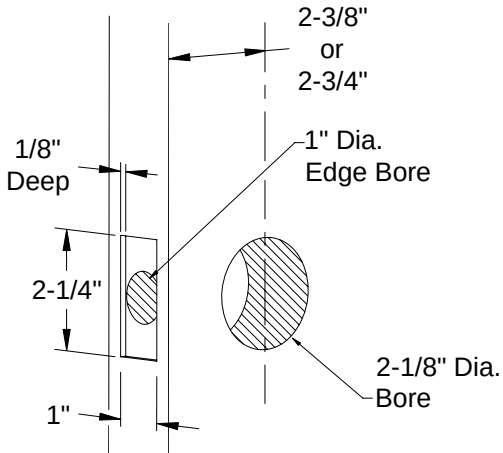
3

Assemble Lever/Knob & Rosette

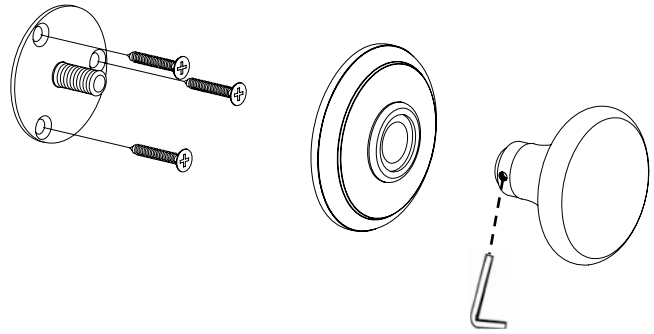
Montar el Levier/Poignée y la Rosetón



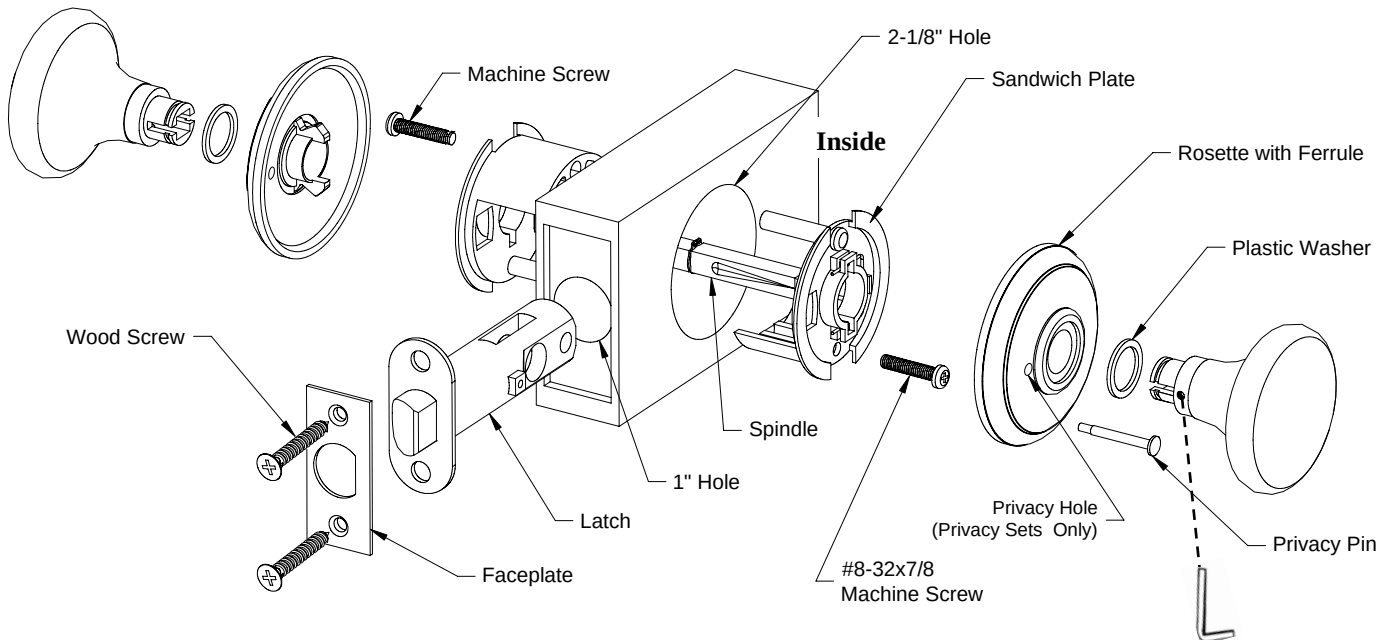
Passage/Private Door Prep.



Dummy Set



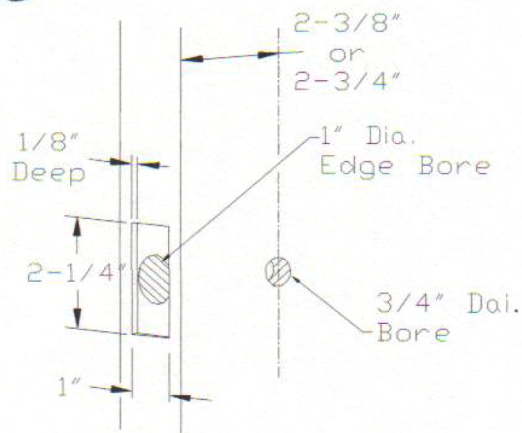
Passage/Private Installations



- 1) Install latch and faceplate into 1" diameter door edge hole securing it with wood screws.
- 2) Mate the two sandwich plates from opposite sides of the door into the 2-1/8" hole, fitting them over the latch. Secure each side with machine screws.
- 3) Install rosettes onto the door by pressing the ferrule straight into the sandwich plate until they snap into place. Privacy rosettes must have the holes towards the door edge.
- 4) Insert the square spindle into latch, assuring that groove on spindle aligns with set screw in knob. Spindle must be centered in door. Privacy sets: push spindle until it hits the stop. Spindle must be centered in the latch (reference center split on spindle).
- 5) Insert each knob with a plastic washer into the ferrule, positioning the knob so that the set screw will engage the groove in the spindle. On a privacy set, particular care should be taken to install the knob on the same side as the stop on the spindle first, and tighten the set screws to assure the split in the spindle stays centered in the latch. Tighten all set screws after installation.

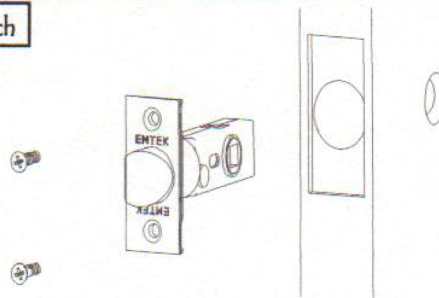
Passage Door Prep. Active

1



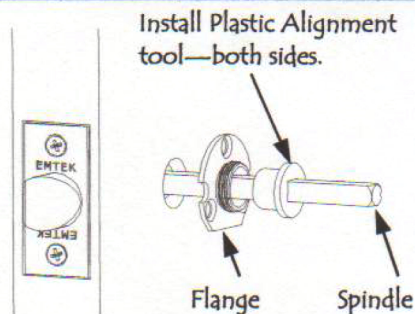
Install Latch

2



Align Flange

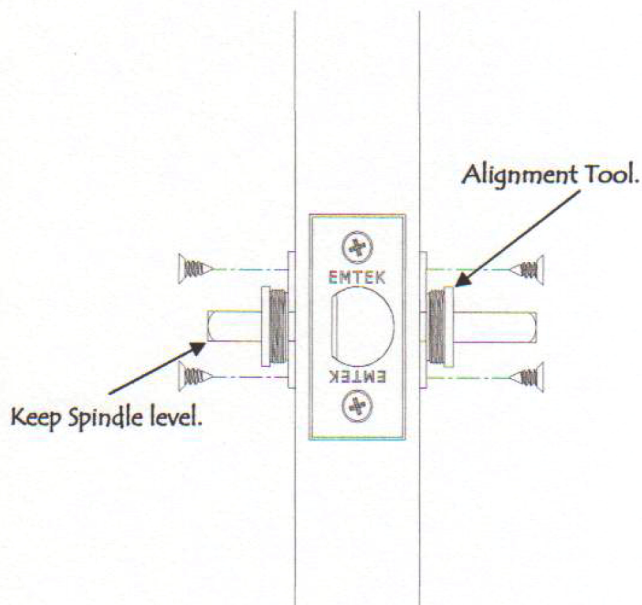
3



Install Flanges

4

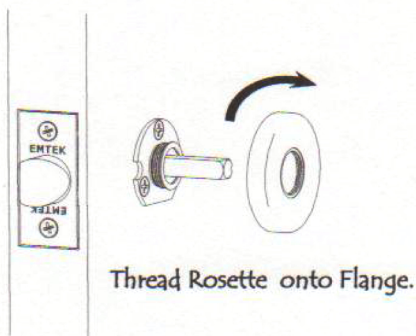
IMPORTANT: Make sure that the spindle is level before screwing Flange to door.



Remember to Remove Plastic Alignment Tool after Flanges are installed.

Install Rosette

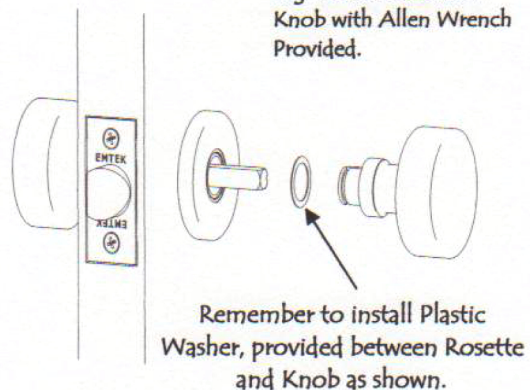
5



Install knobs to Spindle

6

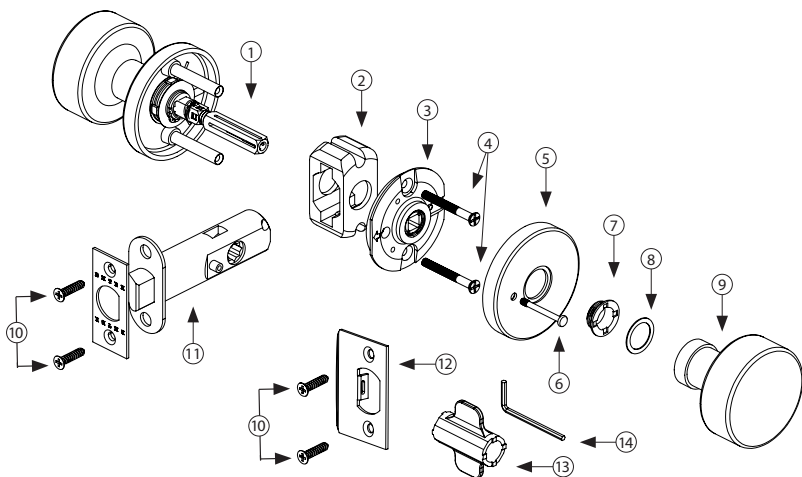
AFTER INSTALLATION:
Tighten Set Screws on Knob with Allen Wrench Provided.



CF Mechanism

Passage & Privacy Locksets

Installation Guide



What's in the Box

ITEM	DESCRIPTION	QTY
1	Pre-Assembled Trim	1
2	Plastic Alignment Tool	1
3	Concealed Fastener Mechanism	1
4	#8-32 x 1" Flat Head Machine Screws	2
5	Rosette	1
6	Privacy Pin (For Privacy Lock Only)	1
7	Ring Fastener	1
8	Plastic Washer	1
9	Knob or Lever	1
10	#8 x 3/4" Wood Screws	4
11	Latch	1
12	Strike Plate	1
13	Ring Fastener Wrench	1
14	3/32" Allen Wrench	1

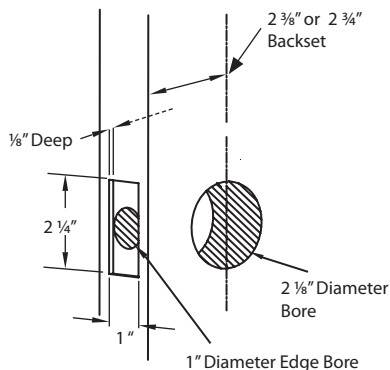
Download the **BILT** App
for EMTEK Interactive installation



BILT®

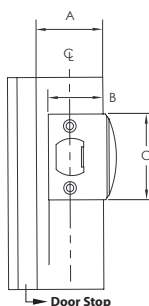


1. Door Prep



2. Standard Strike Plate Door Jamb Prep

Door Thickness (A)

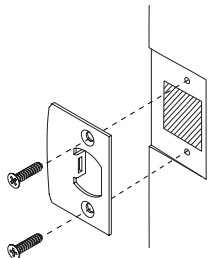


A	B	C
1 3/8"	1 1/4"	2 1/4"
1 1/2"	1 5/16"	2 1/4"
1 3/4"	1 7/16"	2 1/4"

NOTE: Dimensions B & C should be used as reference only. Due to tolerances actual door jamb prep dimensions will vary. Using the strike plate outline edges and locate screw holes on strike with center line on jamb.

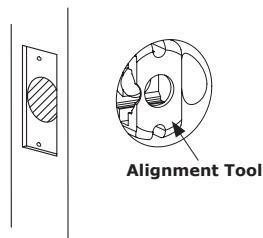
3. Install Strike Plate

Fasten Strike Plate using two #8 x 3/4" wood screws.



4. Install Latch

Step 1: Place Plastic Alignment tool in bore hole.

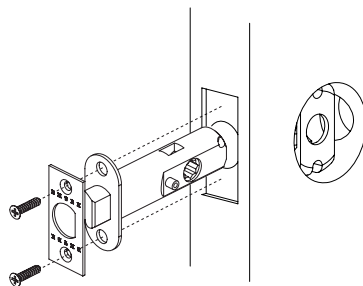


Step 2: Insert the latch through the alignment tool.



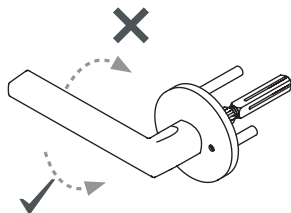
! ROTATE THE NOSE BOLT SO THAT THE CURVED FACE WILL HIT THE STRIKE PLATE WHEN CLOSING THE DOOR.

Step 3: Fasten Latch using two #8 x 3/4" wood screws.

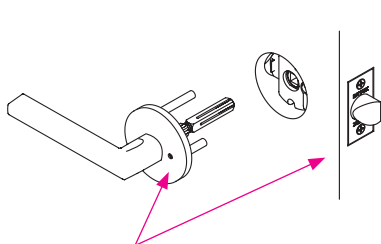


5. Install Inside Trim

Lever sets are universal and can be flipped for right or left handed doors.

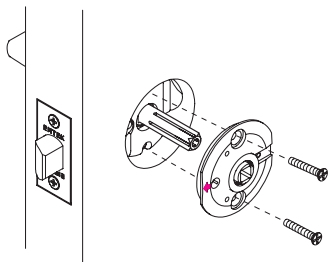


Step 1: Mount Pre-Assembled Trim, with the spindle entering the center of the plastic alignment tool.



! If this handle set has a privacy function, ensure that the release hole is on the side closest to the edge of the door.

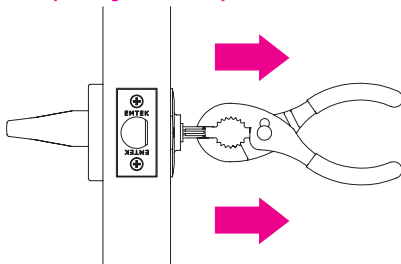
Step 2: Place the CF Mechanism with the arrow pointing to the door edge. Fasten it with (2) machine screws. Check the trim alignment before fully tightening the screws.



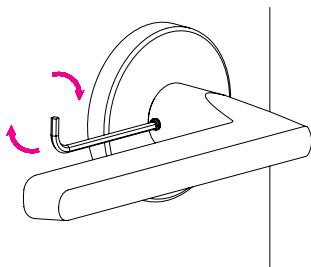
! Ensure the hole in the CF Mechanism aligns with the privacy pin hole in the Latch.

Step 3: Fully extend the spindle by pulling it outwards to ensure it is against the internal stop.

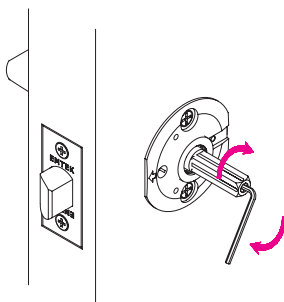
! It's important to check if the spindle is fully engaged with the latch. Rotate the lever or knob until the spindle is retracting the latch. Pull the spindle again if necessary.



Step 4: After the spindle has been fully extended, tighten the Pre-installed set screw in the lever or knob with the provided Allen wrench. Ensure that it is firmly tightened.

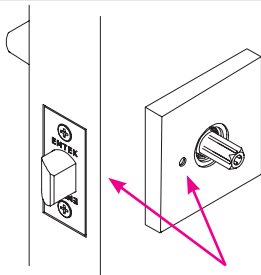


Step 5: Insert the short end of Allen wrench into the spindle and ensure that it is securely tightened.



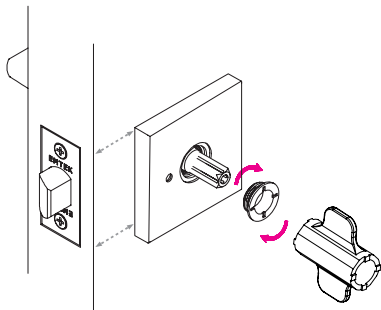
6. Place the Outside Trim

Step 1: Place the rosette.

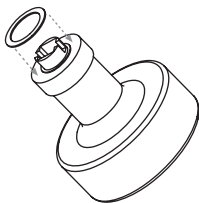


! In the privacy function, ensure the privacy pin hole in the rosette is on the side closest to the door edge and aligns with the hole in the CF Mechanism.

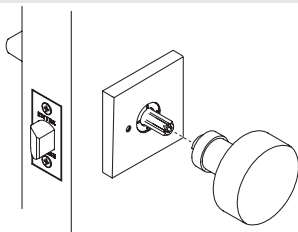
Step 2: Secure the rosette to the door using the Ring Fastener Wrench.



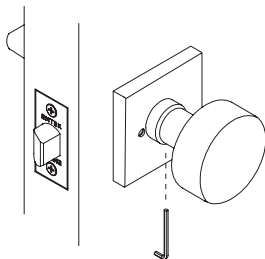
Step 3: Place the Plastic Washer on the door lever or knob.



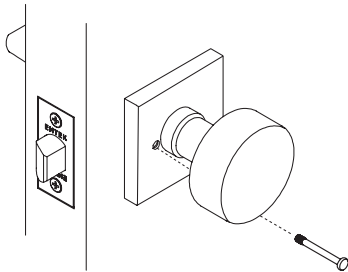
Step 4: Slide the door lever or knob onto the spindle. Make sure the plastic washer remains centered on the stem as you slide the lever or knob onto the spindle and up against the rosette.



Step 5: Firmly tighten the Pre-installed set screw in the lever or knob with the provided Allen wrench. Ensure that it is firmly tightened.



Step 6: For Privacy Lock, screw the Privacy Pin through the rosette, into the latch. To check functionality, turn the interior lever/knob to engage the latch. Now, push the privacy pin in and turn the exterior lever/knob. The exterior lever/knob should not retract the latch.



! For emergency, insert a nail type object into the release hole of the exterior rosette to open the lock.

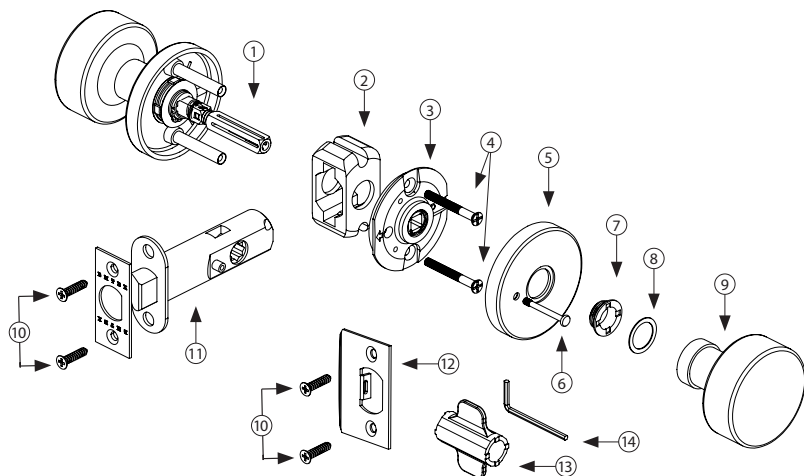
! **WARNING:** This product can expose you to chemicals including lead, which is known to the state of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov.

Mécanisme CF

Serrures privées et pour passage

Guide d'installation

French



Ce qui est compris dans la boîte

N. DE ART.	DESCRIPCION	CANT.
1	Garniture installée à l'avance	1
2	Outil d'alignement en plastiqueConcealed	1
3	Mécanisme de fermeture dissimulé	1
4	Vis à métal à tête plate n° 8-32 x 1 po	2
5	Rosette	1
6	Broche pour mode privé	1
7	Bague d'organe de fermeture	1
8	Rondelle en plastique	1
9	Bouton ou levier	1
10	Vis à bois n° 8 x 3/4"	4
11	Loquet	1
12	Gâche	1
13	Clé pour bague de fermeture	1
14	Clé Allen de 3/32 po	1

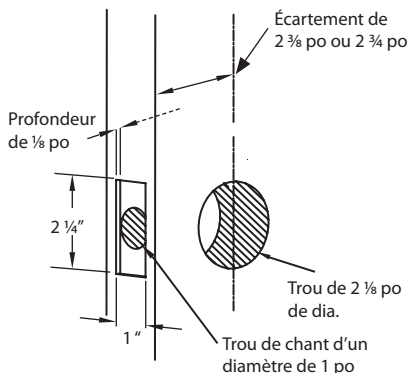
Téléchargez l'application BILT
pour l'installation EMTEK Interactive



BILT®

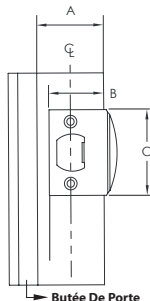


1. Préparation de la porte



2. Préparation de l'embrasure de porte

Épaisseur de porte (A)

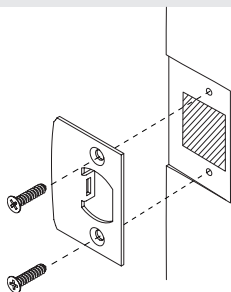


A	B	C
1 3/8"	1 1/4"	2 1/4"
1 1/2"	1 5/16"	2 1/4"
1 3/4"	1 7/16"	2 1/4"

REMARQUE: Les dimensions B et C n'ont qu'une valeur indicative. Compte tenu des tolérances, les dimensions de la prep de jambage de porte réelles peuvent varier. Définissez les contours à l'aide de la gâche et localisez les trous de vis sur la gâche avec la ligne centrale sur le jambage.

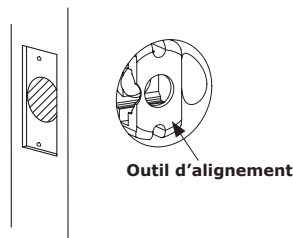
3. Installation de la gâche

Fixez la gâche à l'aide des deux vis à bois n° 8 x 3/4 po.

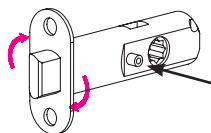


4. Install Latch

Étape 1: Placez l'outil d'alignement en plastique dans le trou de forage.



Étape 2: Insérez et fixez le pêne à l'aide des vis à bois n° 8 x 3/4 po.

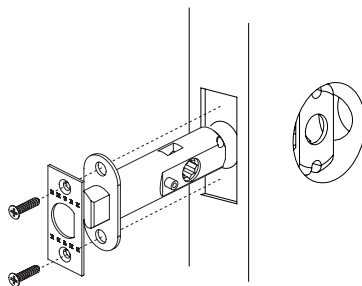


Si le loquet a une fonction de sécurité, le trou fileté de le verrou de sécurité doit faire face au côté intérieur de la porte.



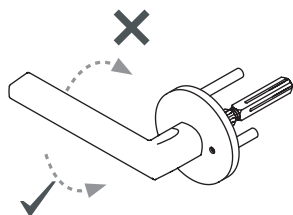
INSPECTEZ LA DIRECTION DE FERMETURE DE VOTRE PORTE ET, SI NÉCESSAIRE, FAITES PIVOTER LE LOQUET DE SORTE QUE LA FACE INCURVÉE HEURTE LA PLAQUE DE GÂCHE LORS DE LA FERMETURE DE LA PORTE.

Étape 3: Fixez le Loquet en utilisant (2) des vis à bois de trois-quarts de pouce.

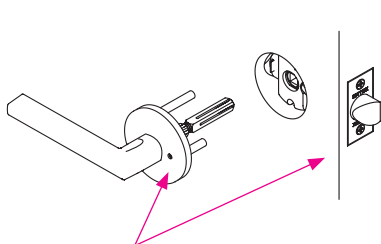


5. Installation des garnitures

Les ensembles de levier sont universels et peuvent être retournés pour des portes droites ou gauches.

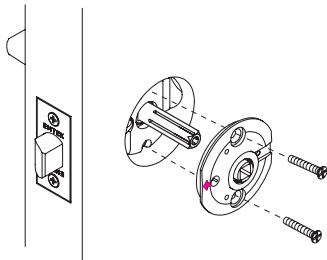


Étape 1: Montez la garniture pré-assemblée, avec la tige entrant au centre de l'outil d'alignement en plastique.



! Si ce jeu de poignées a une fonction de sécurité, assurez-vous que le trou de dégagement se trouve du côté le plus proche du bord de la porte.

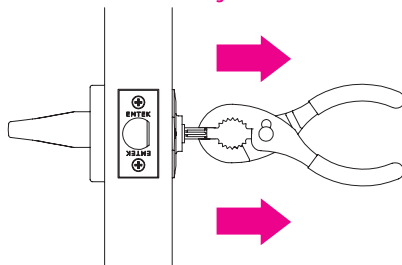
Étape 2: Placez le Mécanisme CF avec la flèche pointant vers le bord de la porte. Fixez-le avec (2) vis de la machine. Vérifiez l'alignement de la garniture avant de serrer complètement les vis.



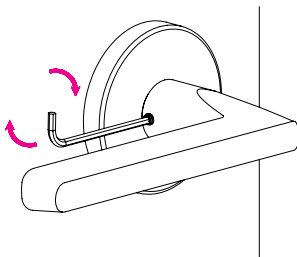
NOTE: Assurez-vous que le trou de la Mécanisme de CF fermeture dissimulé est aligné avec le trou de le verrou de sécurité dans le Loquet.

Étape 3: Étendre complètement la tige en la tirant vers l'extérieur pour s'assurer qu'elle est contre la butée interne.

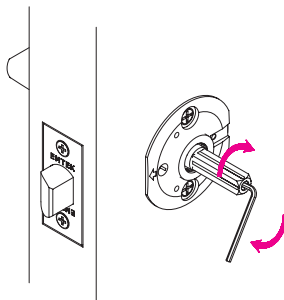
! Il est important de vérifier si la tige est complètement engagée dans le verrou. Tournez le levier ou le bouton jusqu'à ce que la tige rétracte le loquet. Tirez à nouveau sur la tige si nécessaire.



Étape 4: Une fois que la tige a été complètement étendu, serrez la vis de réglage pré-installée dans le levier ou le bouton à l'aide de la clé Allen fournie. Assurez-vous qu'il est fermement serré.

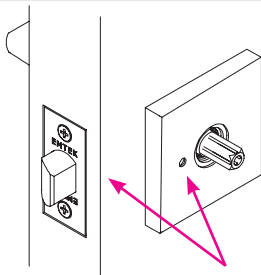


Étape 5: Insérez la clé Allen fournie dans la tige et assurez-vous qu'elle est fermement serrée.



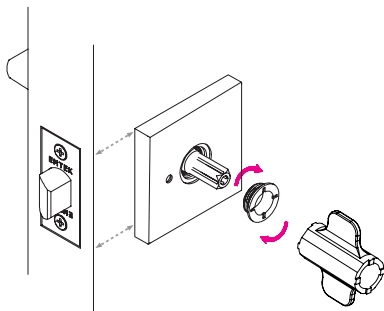
6. Installation des garnitures

Étape 1: Placez la rosette.

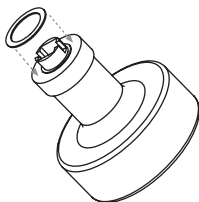


NOTE: Dans la fonction de sécurité, assurez-vous que le trou de le verrou de sécurité dans la rosette est du côté le plus proche du bord de la porte et s'aligne avec le trou dans le mécanisme CF.

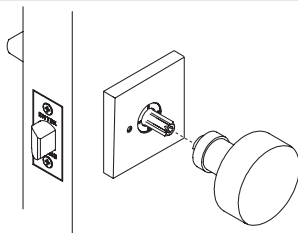
Étape 2: Fixez la rosette à la porte à l'aide de la clé à anneau.



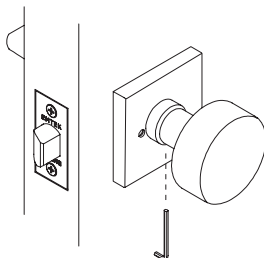
Étape 3: Placez la rondelle en plastique sur le levier ou le bouton de la porte.



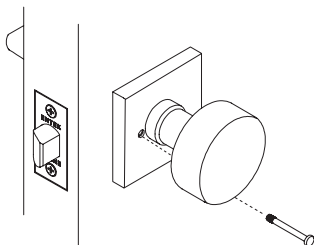
Étape 4: Faites glisser le levier ou le bouton de la porte sur la tige. Assurez-vous que la rondelle en plastique reste centrée sur la tige lorsque vous faites glisser le levier ou le bouton sur la tige et contre la rosette.



Étape 5: Serrez fermement la vis de réglage pré-installée dans le levier ou le bouton à l'aide de la clé Allen fournie. Assurez-vous qu'il est fermement serré.



Étape 6: Visser le verrou de sécurité à travers la rosette, dans le loquet. Pour vérifier la fonctionnalité, tournez le levier ou le bouton pour engager le loquet. Maintenant, enfoncez le verrou de sécurité et tournez le levier ou le bouton. Le levier ou le bouton ne doit pas rétracter le loquet.



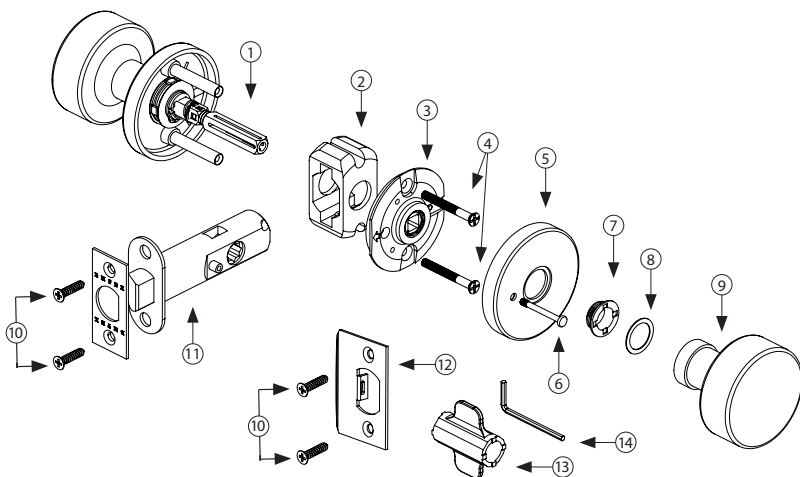
! Pour l'urgence, insérez un objet de type clou dans le trou de dégagement de la rosette extérieure pour ouvrir la serrure.

AVERTISSEMENT: Ce produit peut vous exposer à des substances chimiques incluant le plomb qui, selon l'État de Californie, causeraient le cancer et des malformations congénitales ou autres dangers pour la reproduction. Pour de plus amples renseignements, visitez le www.P65Warnings.ca.gov.

Mecanismo CF

Cerraduras de pasaje y privacidad

Guía de instalación



Que esta en la caja

Article n°	DESCRIPTION	QTÉ
1	Trim pre-ensamblado	1
2	Herramienta de alineación de plástico	1
3	Mecanismo de sujetador oculto	1
4	Tornillos de cabeza plana #8-32 x 1"	2
5	Roseta	1
6	Perno de privacidad	1
7	Anillo de sujeción	1
8	Arandela de plástico	1
9	Manilla o Perilla	1
10	Tornillos de madera #8 x ¾"	4
11	Pestillo	1
12	Placa de la cerradura	1
13	Llave anillo	1
14	Llave Allen ⅜"	1

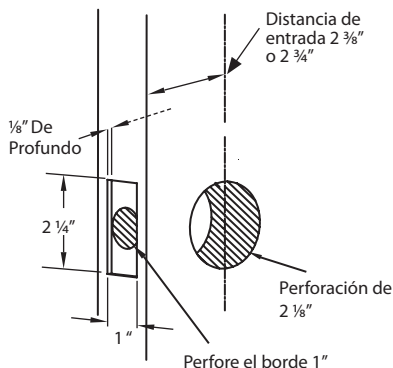
Descarga la aplicación BILT
para instalación interactiva EMTEK



BILT®

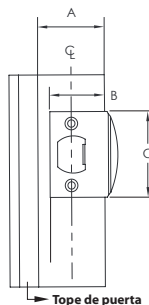


1. Preparación de la puerta



2. Preparación del marco de la puerta

Espeor de la puerta (A)

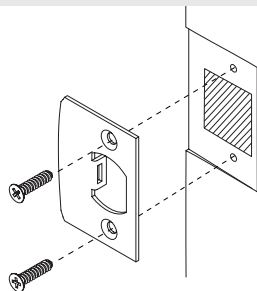


A	B	C
1 3/8"	1 1/4"	2 1/4"
1 1/2"	1 5/16"	2 1/4"
1 3/4"	1 7/16"	2 1/4"

NOTA: Las dimensiones B y C deben utilizarse solamente como referencia. Debido a las tolerancias, las dimensiones reales de la placa de pestillo para jamba de puerta variarán. Use los bordes de la placa de pestillo para localizar los orificios de los tornillos y alinear con la línea central de la jamba.

3. Instale la placa de la cerradura

Sujete la placa de la cerradura con dos tornillos de madera #8 x 3/4".

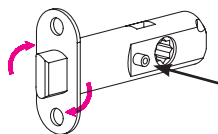


4. Instale el pestillo

Paso 1: Coloque la herramienta de alineación de plástico en el orificio.



Paso 2: Inserte el pestillo a través de la herramienta de alineación.

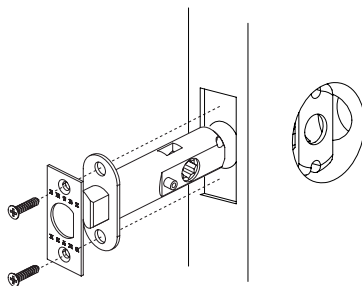


Si el pestillo tiene una función de privacidad, el orificio roscado del pasador de seguridad debe estar orientado hacia el lado interior de la puerta.



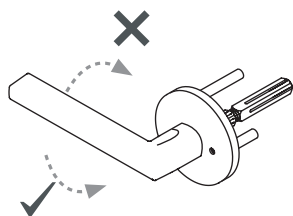
INSPECCIONE LA DIRECCIÓN EN QUE SE CIERRA LA PUERTA Y, SI ES NECESARIO, GIRE EL PESTILLO PARA QUE LA CARA CURVA GOLPEE LA PLACA DE IMPACTO AL CERRAR LA PUERTA.

Paso 3: Sujete el pestillo con (2) de los tornillos para madera de tres cuartos de pulgada.

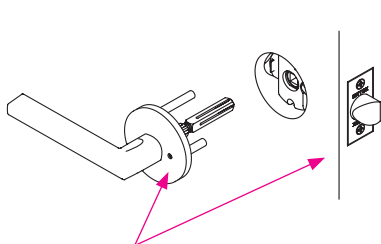


5. Instale el Trim

Los juegos de palancas son universales y se pueden dar la vuelta para puertas diestras o zurdas.

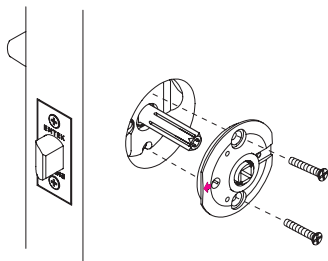


Paso 1: Monte la placa preensamblada, con el husillo entrando en el centro de la herramienta de alineación plástica.



! Si este juego de manijas tiene una función de privacidad, asegúrese de que el orificio de liberación esté en el lado más cercano al borde de la puerta.

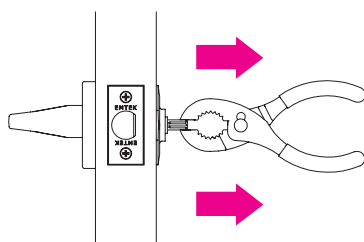
Paso 2: Coloque el Mecanismo CF con la flecha apuntando al borde de la puerta. Fíjelo con (2) tornillos mecánicos. Verifique la alineación de la placa antes de apretar completamente los tornillos.



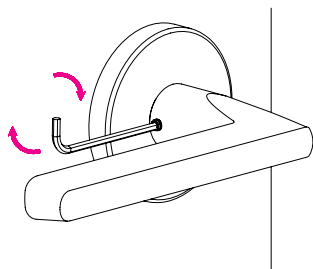
! Asegúrese de que el orificio en la Mecanismo de CF esté alineado con el orificio del pasador de seguridad en el pestillo.

Paso 3: Extienda completamente el husillo tirando del mismo hacia afuera, para asegurarse de que esté contra el tope interno.

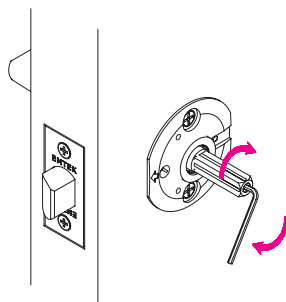
! Es importante verificar si el husillo está completamente enganchado con el pestillo. Gire la palanca o la perilla hasta que el husillo retraiga el pestillo. Tire del eje nuevamente si es necesario.



Paso 4: Después de que el husillo se haya extendido por completo, apriete el tornillo de fijación preinstalado en la palanca o la perilla, con la llave Allen suministrada. Asegúrese de que esté bien ajustado.

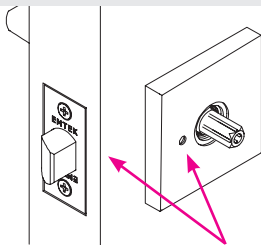


Paso 5: Inserte la llave Allen suministrada en el husillo y asegúrese de que esté bien ajustada.



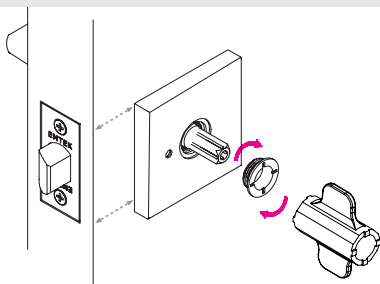
6. Place the Outside Trim

Paso 1: Coloque la roseta.

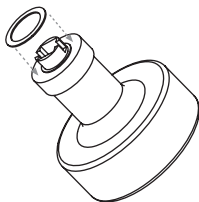


! En la función de privacidad, asegúrese de que el orificio del pasador de seguridad en la roseta esté en el lado más cercano al borde de la puerta y que esté alineado con el orificio del Mecanismo de CF.

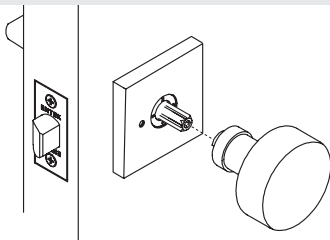
Paso 2: Asegure la roseta a la puerta con la llave de cierre de anillo.



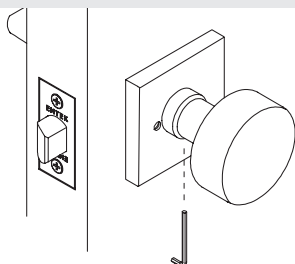
Paso 3: Coloque la arandela de plástico en la palanca de la puerta o la perilla.



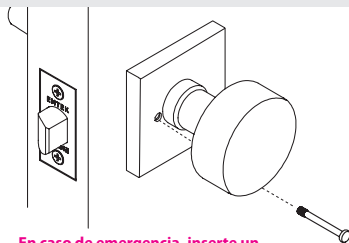
Paso 4: Deslice la palanca de la puerta o la perilla en el husillo. Asegúrese de que la arandela de plástico permanezca centrada en el vástago, a medida que desliza la palanca o la perilla hacia el husillo y contra la roseta.



Paso 5: Ajuste firmemente el tornillo de fijación preinstalado en la palanca o la perilla, con la llave Allen suministrada. Asegúrese de que esté bien ajustado.

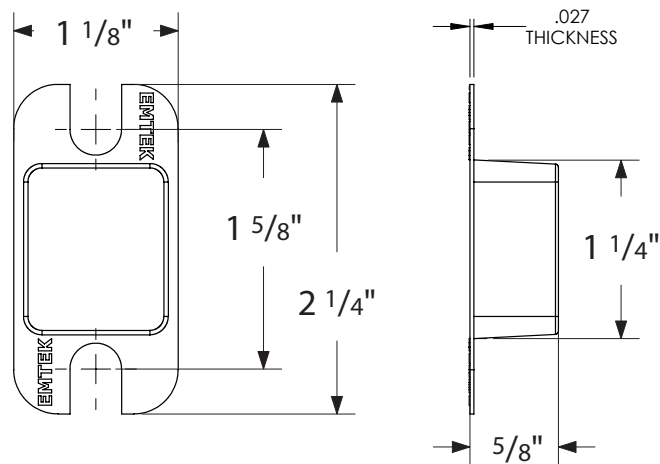
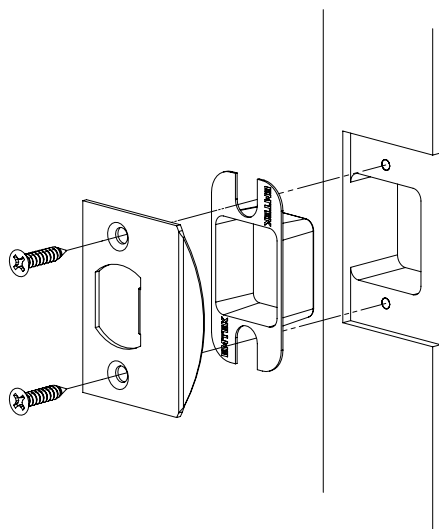


Paso 6: Atornille el pasador de seguridad a través de la roseta, en el pestillo. Para verificar la funcionalidad, gire la palanca o la perilla para enganchar el pestillo. Ahora, empuje el pasador de seguridad y gire la palanca o la perilla. La palanca o perilla no debe retraer el pestillo.

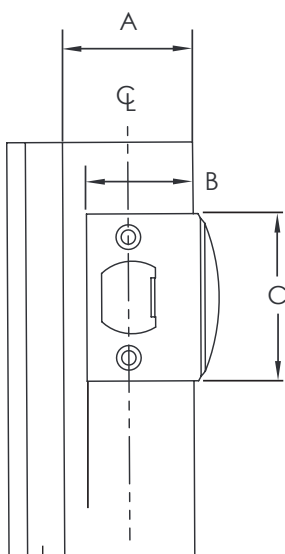


! En caso de emergencia, inserte un objeto con forma de clavo en el orificio de liberación de la roseta exterior, para abrir la cerradura.

! ADVERTENCIA: Este producto puede exponerlo a sustancias químicas, incluido el plomo que, en el estado de California, es conocido como causante de cáncer y defectos de nacimiento u otros daños reproductivos. Para obtener más información, visite www.P65Warnings.ca.gov.



Door Thickness (A)
Espesor de la puerta (A)
Épaisseur de porte (A)



Door Stop
Tope de puerta
Butée De Porte

A	B	C
1 3/8"	1 1/4"	2 1/4"
1 1/2"	1 5/16"	2 1/4"
1 3/4"	1 7/16"	2 1/4"

NOTE: Dimensions B & C should be used as reference only. Due to tolerances actual door jamb prep dimensions will vary. Using the strike plate outline edges and locate screw holes on strike with center line on jamb.

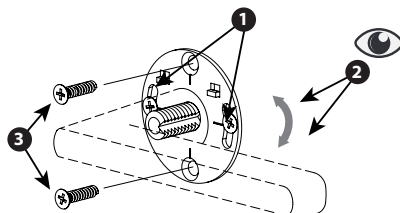
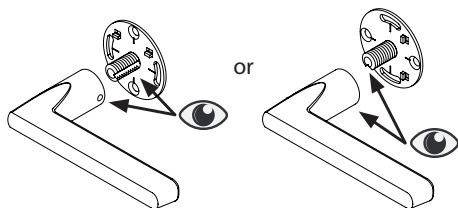
NOTA: Las dimensiones B y C deben utilizarse solamente como referencia. Debido a las tolerancias, las dimensiones reales de la placa de pestillo para jamba de puerta variarán. Use los bordes de la placa de pestillo para localizar los orificios de los tornillos y alinear con la línea central de la jamba.

REMARQUE: Les dimensions B et C n'ont qu'une valeur indicative. Compte tenu des tolérances, les dimensions de la prep de jambage de porte réelles peuvent varier. Définissez les contours à l'aide de la gâche et localisez les trous de vis sur la gâche avec la ligne centrale sur le jambage.

Installation Guide for Large Multi Point - Dummy Function

1 Align mounting plate

2 Install mounting plate & adjust for level



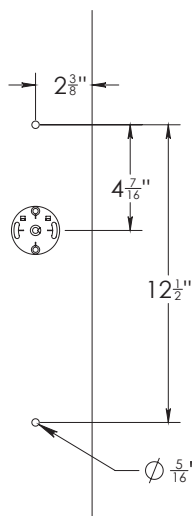
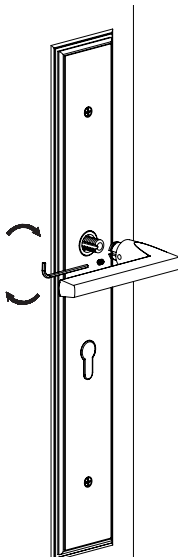
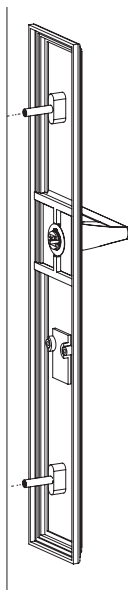
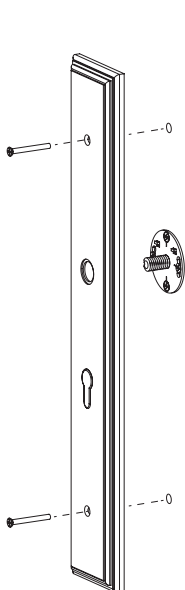
3 Install trim plates

4 Tighten set screw

Inside

Outside

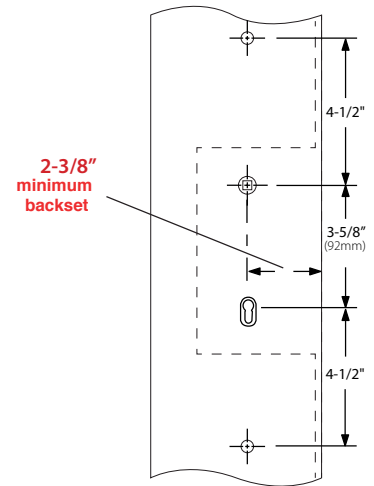
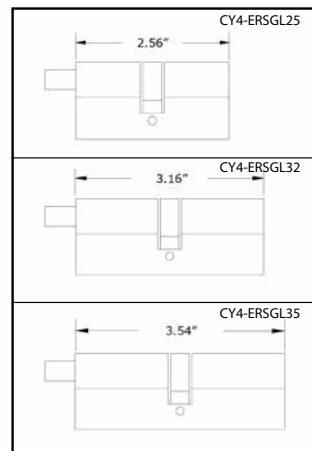
Inside



Note: For general info only.
Do NOT use as a drilling
template.



WARNING: This product can expose you to chemicals including lead, which is known to the state of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov.



Keyed Plates with Euro Profile Cylinder

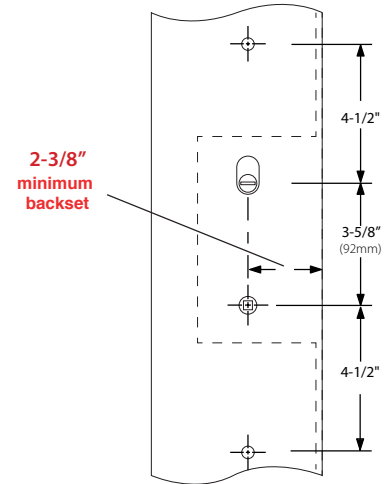
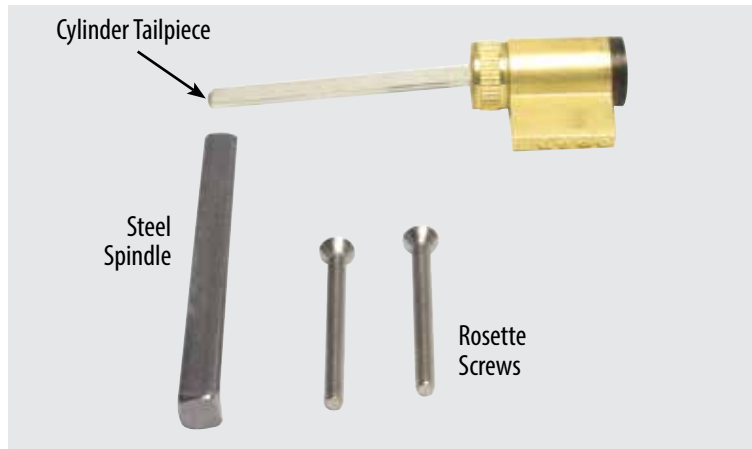
Standard Door Thickness: from 1 5/8" to 2"	Extended Door Thickness: Over 2" to 2 1/2"	Extended Door Thickness: Over 2 1/2" to 2 3/4"
Standard Components: • 2 9/16" Euro Profile Cylinder • 3 3/4" Steel Spindle • 1 1/2" Rosette Screws	Extended Components: • 3 5/8" Euro Profile Cylinder • 4 1/2" Steel Spindle • 2" Rosette Screws	Extended Components: • 3 1/2" Euro Profile Cylinder • 5" Steel Spindle • 3" Rosette Screws

Dummy Plates

Standard Door Thickness: from 1 5/8" to 2"	Extended Door Thickness: Over 2" to 2 3/4"
Standard Components: • 2" Rosette Screws • 1 1/2" Rosette Screws for 1 5/8" thick door	Extended Components: • 2 1/2" Rosette Screws • 2" Rosette Screws for 2" - 2 1/8" thick door

CUSTOM KEYING

Charge for Re-Keying - \$2.00 (NET) per Cylinder
• Locks that are keyed to code or keyed alike in a house group will be charged \$2.00 (NET) per cylinder.
Keying to Code
• Order by indicating "Key Code XXXXX" next to applicable locks.
Keying Alike
• Order by indicating "Keyed Alike" next to applicable locks if only one keyed alike group is wanted. • If ordering multiple groups (houses) indicate "Keyed Alike House #_" next to applicable locks.



Keyed Plates with American Cylinder

Standard Door Thickness: from 1 5/8" to 2"

Standard Components:

- Single Cylinder Tailpiece
- 3 3/4" Steel Spindle
- 2" Rosette Screws
- 1 1/2" Rosette Screws for 1 5/8" thick door

Extended Door Thickness: Over 2" to 2 3/4"

Extended Components:

- Long Single Cylinder Tailpiece
- 4 1/2" Steel Spindle
- 2 1/2" Rosette Screws
- 2" Rosette Screws for 2" - 2 1/8" thick door

Dummy Plates

Standard Door Thickness: from 1 5/8" to 2"

Standard Components:

- 2" Rosette Screws
- 1 1/2" Rosette Screws for 1 5/8" thick door

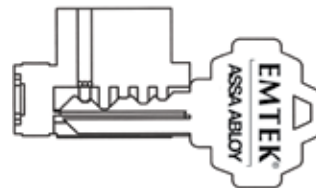
Extended Door Thickness: Over 2" to 2 3/4"

Extended Components:

- 2 1/2" Rosette Screws
- 2" Rosette Screws for 2" - 2 1/8" thick door

CONSTRUCTION KEYING

- Lost ball system.
- Last four pin locations drilled for lost ball application.
- Master key pins used for code variability.
- Construction keys and owner keys sent separately.
- Order by indicating "Construction Keyed, House #_" next to applicable locks.



- Construction devices used on one or more of last four positions.



- Dimples drilled in plug in this position.

Charge for Construction Keying - \$3.00 (NET)

- Locks that are both construction keyed and keyed alike in a house group will be charged a total of \$5.00 (NET) per cylinder.

Charge for Re-Keying - \$2.00 (NET) per Cylinder

- Locks that are keyed to code or keyed alike in a house group will be charged \$2.00 (NET) per cylinder.

Keying to Code

- Order by indicating "Key Code XXXXX" next to applicable locks.

Keying Alike

- Order by indicating "Keyed Alike" next to applicable locks if only one keyed alike group is wanted.
- If ordering multiple groups (houses) indicate "Keyed Alike House #_" next to applicable locks.